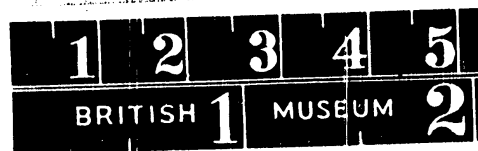


656.d.17



*Arthur of little Britaine.*

**THE HISTORY OF THE**  
**most Noble and valyant Knight, Arthur of**  
**little Britaine,** translated out of French into English  
by the noble Iohn Bourghcher Knight,  
Lord Barners,



Imprinted at London by Thomas East.



As much as it is delectable to all humane nature to read and to heare these auncient & noble histories of the valiaunt seates & martiall prowesse of the victorious knightes of times past, whose triumphant deedes if writing were not, should be had cleane out of remembrance. And also because that idlenesse is reputed to be the mother of all vices, whereof somewhat in eschuing thereof and in the waie of crudition and learning, Iohn Bourghchere knight, Lord Werners, haue enterprised to translate out of French into our naturall tongue a noble historie, making mention of the famous deedes of the right valiaunt knight Arthur, sonne and heire to the noble Duke of Britaine and of the faire Ladie Flozence, daughter and heire to the mightie King Emendus, King of the noble Realme of Soroloy, and of the greate trouble that they endured ere they attained to the performance of their vertuous and amozons desires, for first they overcame many hard and strange aduentures, the which to our humane reason should seme to be incredible, wherefore after that I had begun this sayd processe, I had determined to haue left and giden by my labour, for I thought it should haue bene reputed but a tollie in me to translate by being such a sayned matter, wherein seemeth to be so many impossibilities, howbeit then I called againe to my remembrance that I had read and seene many a sundrie volume of diuerse noble histories, wherein were contained the rebouted deedes of the auncient inuincible conquerours, and of other very valiaunt knightes, who atchiued many a strange and wonderfull aduenture, the which by plaine letter to our vnderstanding should seme in a manner to be supernaturall, wherefore I thought that this present treatise might as wel be reputed for truth as some of those. And also I doubted not but that the first authoꝝ of this booke deuised it not without some manner of truth or vertuous intent, the which considerations and other gaue me againe avaricie



## The Translatours Prologue.

to continue forth my first purpose till I had finished this said booke, not presuming that I have reduced it into the fresh English phrase, for I knowe my selfe insufficient in the conditions art of Rhetorique, nor also I am but a learner of the language of the French, howbeit I trust my simple reason hath lead mee to the understanding of the true sense of the matter, according to which I have followed as nere as I could, desiring all the readers and bearers thereof to take this my rude translation in good part, and if any fault be to laie it to my un cunning and darke ignorance, & to diminish, adde, or augment, as they shall finde cause requiste, & in so doing I shal pray to God that after this vaine and transitorye life, he may bring them vnto the per durable love of heauen. Amen.

Thus endeth the Prologue.



Here after foloweth the Table of  
this present Booke.

**O**f the birth of the noble Knight Arthur, sonne & heire to the Duke of Britaine. Chapter. i. folio. i.

How the Duke of Britaine delivered his sonne Arthur to the gouernance of a prudent knyght named sir Gouernar, who did instruct him in al good manners & vices of armes, so that after ward ther was none like vnto him. Chapter. ii. folio. i.

How Arthur found in the Forrest a noble Ladie without succour, and with her a faire young maiden her daughter, named Iehannet, befoze a little lodge, the which they hadde made of the bzaunches of the trees; and how Arthur was amorous of the said Iehannet. Chap. iii. fol. ii.

How Arthur caused to be deliuered to Iehannet and her mother the reuenues that belonged to the stag or pond of the Forrest, wherby there stood a faire goodlie place of pleasure, & afterwards Arthur did often times resort thether to passe the time with them. chap. iiii fol. iiii

How within eight daies after Arthur and Gouernar went to the stag to see the Ladie Iehannet her daughter. chap. v fol. iiii

How the Duke and Dutchesse took counsaile to marrie their sonne Arthur, and how they sent their steward to the Ladie Duke of Estridge, for to demaund her daughter for Arthur, chap. vi folio, v

How the Seneſhall demaunded the daughter of Estridge for Arthur of Britaine, the which request with great ioye was graunted him, chap. vii folio, vi

How Arthur was soze displeased for that his father wold marry him to the daughter of Estridge, because it was said he was of ill gouernance, chap. viii fol. vii

Howe that Arthur went to see Iehannet; and declared to her

how the duke his father should marry him whereof he was sore displeased for the love of his car. fol. viii

How that Arthur and Hector his cousin germaine were made knights for the love of Arthur, who than did ensure Perron daughter to the lady Luke of Estrige, and of the great journey that was therin at. fol. x

How that Arthur married faire Perron daughter to the lady Luke of Estrige. And of the protestacion that he made before all the barony. fol. xi

How this lady Luke of Estrige sent for Jehannet and caused him secretly the first night to lie with Arthur because that Perron was no mayde, so intent that Arthur should not perceive it. ca. xii. fol. xii

How that Jehannet who was a bed with Arthur in the stede of his wyfe Perron, and of the wounde that he made to touch him she demaunded his ennobyle. ca. xiii. fol. xiii

How that Arthur, Hector and Gouvernar went early in the morning to the Jehannet at the stange, who shewed unto Arthur all the treason of his wyfe, and how that she had layne with him all that night in stede of Perron, whereof he meruailed greatly. ca. xiiii. fol. xiiii

How that Gouvernar vanquished in bataille sir Ansel, & caused him to make knowledge of this treason, and confessed how that he brought Jehannet from the stange for to ly all night with Arthur. ca. xv. fol. xv

How Arthur demaunded licence of his father and mother to go play him out of his owne countrey for he would go seeke adventures to shewe thereby his force and prowesse. ca. xvi. fol. xvi

How the mightie king of Bozoloys called Emendus held open court in his realme, where as was foure puissant kinges, who were all his subiects, and there he had here of thinges right meruaillous. ca. xvii. fol. xvii

The description of the facion & situation of the mount perillous, the which was conquered by the prowess of Arthur. ca. xviii. fol. xviii

How

How it was determined that the Quene Jénice should take her chamber in the palays beside the castell of the port noye. ca. xix. fol. xix

How that the daughter of the mightie king Emendus and of Jénice his quene was bestowed over the fountaine in the berber of the mount perillous by foure Quenes of the sayde, the chiefe of them was named Boscerpine, who was the most fairest creature of all the world. ca. xx. fol. xx

How the king of balcound sent his sonne to the citie of Sabba for to be brought up in the company of Flozence, capitula. xxi. fol. xxi

How the Quene Jénice mother to Flozence dyed, and how she made her testament, giving to her daughter a ring in putting her thereby in possession of the realme of blaunch toure. ca. xxii. fol. xxii

How the Quene Jénice mother to Flozence was nobly buried. ca. xxiii. fol. xxiii

How the Emperour of Inde the more demaunded of kinge Emendus the faire Flozence his daughter in marriage. And of the answere that king Emendus made to him. And also of the terme that was taken to marry Flozence, and how that master Steuen knew by the regarding of the planets, that ther was comming out of the west a knight, who should achieve the adventures of the port noye. And how he should have and enioye the white shelde and the sword and obtaine Flozence in mariage, whereof he was greatly comforted, for in no wyse he loved the Emperour. capitula. xxiiii. fol. xxiiii

How that Arthur slew twelve knights, who had taken awaye a young damosell from her father and mother, and had tryed her to a tree, there to have defiled her virginite, who was saved by Arthur. ca. xxv. fol. xxv

How that Arthur, Hector and Gouvernar slew thirtie shepherds in a great forrest the which was a great welth to all the countrey, for they had pyllled and wasted the countrey all about. ca. xxvi. fol. xxvi

How that sir de la launde shewed to Arthur the occasi-

on why that this journey was first taken by the lord Bea-  
nien.ca. xxvii

How that Arthur hadde the honour in the journey that  
was made at Wlen betwene the Marhal of Myrpoys and  
the Carle of Beaufen, where as was diuerse great kings,  
Erles, barons, and many other good knights right ballant,  
whereby Arthur gaue him great thank and praise and was  
greatly honoured of all ladies and damosels there assem-  
bled ca. eight and twentie. fol. thirtie nine

How that Arthur the second day had the honour of the  
journey, and so with him abode the prize of the felde.  
capitulo nine and twentie. folio fortie soure,

How that the marhal of myrpoys for enuy that he had  
because that Arthur had the honour of the journey, and be-  
cause he had beaten him downe, for he had thought him self  
to haue bene the best knight of the worlde, therefore he de-  
fied Arthur and challenged him to fust. And how that Ar-  
thur vanquished him and dyd breake one of his armes and  
two rybbes in his sides, capitulo thirtie. fol. fortie eight.

How that Arthur was crowned to be kinge of all the  
knightes of the journey, and they promised him faith and  
trouth to serue him in barres of armes alwaies and in eue-  
ry place where as it seemed him best, and the young king of  
malogres did crown him, capitulo thirtie one, folio fiftie

How that Arthur after his crownacion toke leue of the  
young king and of all the other lordes and knightes, ladies  
and damosels, who conuatted him on his journey ward, and  
hadde greafe sorrow to leaue his companie, chapter. xxxii  
fol. li

How Arthur and his company arriued in the Erle dome  
of Brewele marching against the land of Sozolois and en-  
tered into the citie of Brewele. the which was besieged by  
the Duke of Dygoule named Malaquis, because the Carle  
would not let him haue his daughter in mariage, whereof  
by false treason he slew the Carle, ca. xxxiii fol. li

How that Arthur went alone to the Duke of Dygoule  
and

and gaue him his answere and bad him abide no longer for  
the faire Alice, and shewed him how that he hadde giuen  
her to Hector his cousin, and how that hee hadde promi-  
sed to her his head because he slew her father by trea-  
son, with the which aunf were the Duke was soze displea-  
sed, in somuch that there was betwene them a greafe bat-  
telle, chap. xxxiiii folio. lv

How Hector and Gouvernar, and Sir Othes rode out  
of the Citie well accompanied, to rescue Arthur, who all  
alone assailed the Duke of Dygoule and all his armie.  
chap. xxxv folio, lvi

Howe Arthur, Hector, Gouvernar, and Sir Othes,  
discomfited Peter the Cozune, Brother to the Duke,  
who was come to him with foure hundred knightes,  
and there this Cozune was slaine, and all his people slaine  
and taken prisoners, and how Arthur toke the dukes horse  
named Afile, the best horse as then in the worlde, chap. xxxvi  
folio, lix

How that Arthur and his companie bitterlie discom-  
forted the Duke and strake off his head, and did send it by  
Gouvernar to the faire Ladie Alice and to her mother as  
hee hadde promised before, cap. xxxvii folio, lxi

Howe Arthur and his companie went to the Ci-  
tie of Dygoule for to take it by force, but the Burge-  
ses thereof brought vnto him the keyes, and dyd vnto him  
homage, and so did all the nobles of that Countrie, as  
vnto their chiefe soueraigne Lord. Chapter. xxxviii  
folio, lxi

How that Arthur made his cousin Hector Duke of Dy-  
goule, with the assent of all the Lordes of that Countrie.  
chap. xxxix folio, lxii

Howe that Arthur and Gouvernar departed a sun-  
der, and of the terrible adventures that each of them  
founde ere they met together againe. Chapter. lx.  
folio, lxvi

Howe Gouvernar after that he was departed from Arthur  
found

found in a great forest two knights armed who had been  
 ten and wounded another knight, and would have ravished  
 his sister, and how he rescued her, and did vanquish all her  
 enemies, chap. xlii. folio. lxxvii

How Gouvernar came to a strong Castle called the Bzolle,  
 and banquished the knight that kept it: and how that af-  
 terward he was kept in that castle against his will in great  
 danger of death, till at the last Arthur deliuered him, as  
 you shall heare hereafter. chap. xlii. folio. lxxviii

How Arthur conquered the Castle of the Port Floire by  
 his prowess, and slew all them that kept it, and how after  
 that he entered into the halls of the pallas, where he was  
 assailed of two great and horrible Lions, and of a great gi-  
 ant, and how he overcame them all with great paine, and  
 atchined all the meruallous adventures of the Castle, the  
 which are right wonderfull to rehearse, cap. xliii. fol. lxxix

How Arthur after that he had atchined the adventures  
 of the pallas, and deliuered the prisoners, and after how he  
 atchined the adventures that was in the gallerie going  
 into the garden of the mount perillous, and by his might  
 with a great barre beate downe two masse Images of  
 copper, each of the holding a shilde that was of such weight  
 that ten men might scarce lift one of them from the earth,  
 wherewith they were euer beating with greafe strokes,  
 made by enchantment, to the intent that none should passe  
 into the gardens of the mount perillous, and so then failed  
 and ended all the inchauntments of that place, chap. xliiii.  
 folio. lxxx

How maister Steuen went with Arthur into the Pallas  
 within the castle, to the intent to see the wonderfull adven-  
 tures that Arthur had there atchined, chapter. xlv. folio. lxxxv

Howe Prosperina Queene of the Fairies about mid-  
 night appeared to Arthur with greafe light of torches,  
 and how that she shewed him that within the mount perillous  
 there was the white shilde the good knight called cal-  
 led Clarence, and how that he should haue them with much  
 honour

honour if his heart durst serue him. And how the next daye  
 maister Steuen ledde Arthur into the herber where as the  
 white shelde was, the which could neuer be remoued from  
 the tree whereon it hanged, and how that Arthur took it at  
 his ease, and clarence the sword also, the which could neuer  
 befoze that tyme be drawn out of the shethe, nor it would  
 help no body but all onely Arthur who drew it out lightly,  
 and after that it dyd him much helpe as you shall heare af-  
 ter. ca. xlv. fol. lxxxvi

How maister Steuen shewed Arthur how that Gouver-  
 nar his knight was in the castell of bzolle, and how that the  
 custome of the castell was first begun, ca. xlv. fol. lxxxvi

How that Arthur when he was departed from the port  
 Floire for to go to deliuer Gouvernar out of the castell of the  
 bzolle, and also for to fight with the monster, he found in a  
 faire medow the newew of the duke of hygoz accompanied  
 with thirtene other knights, who assailed him right fiercly,  
 but he defended him selfe so valiantly that he slew thre of  
 them, and wounded so the dukes newew that he was faine  
 to be caried away in an horse litter, ca. xlv. fol. lxxxvii

How that Arthur fought with the monster, the most  
 foulest and horrible figure that enor was sene with mans  
 eyen and so vanquished him by his valiant prowess, and  
 strake of his head, and did sende it to the faire Florence  
 cap. xlv. fol. lxxxviii

How that the king Emendus sent a knight named Byle-  
 bar accompanied with a thousand men of warre to them,  
 sent that he and his company should go fight with the mon-  
 ster, and how the saide knight arriued at the monsters pytte  
 the same season while that Arthur and the monster were  
 fighting together, ether he and al his company dyd see how  
 that Arthur slew the monster, without help, ca. l. fol. lxxxix

How sir Glembarthes cosin ambushed him in a great  
 forest with a great multitude of men of war, to the intent  
 to slay Arthur by treason, and there Arthur did with his  
 handes such dedes, that in a maner it was incredible. And  
 how that Gouvernar and Bylebar were taken prisoners

and led forth to a toure, and there Arthur slew of his enemies five hundred, and mounted into the toure, and so rescued the prisoners in the spite of all the towne, and there was the palays. ca. li

fol. r. ri

How Arthur and his company were besieged in the palays by the duke of Wigor, but thanked be God they escaped by the subtil art of maister Steuen clearks to the faire Florence of Dorolops. ca. lii.

fol. r. cb

How maister Steuen by the vertue of his arte of nigromancie deliuered Arthur and his company from perill and daunger of the duke of Wigor and his newew.

capitulo liii.

fol. r. cbiii

How the newew of Bysebar argued at the court of the mightie king Emendus with the head of the monster, and how salute the king & also the Emperour of Inde who was sit in the court attending that the king should give him in marriage his daughter the faire Florence, & to hir the head of the monster was presented from Arthur, and shewed hir how that all onely by his noble prowesse he had slaine the terrible monster of the bysse. ca. liiii.

folio. c. ii

How that Arthur and maister Steuen went to the garden pertainning to the palays of the port noye, and entred into the rich pavilion where as the Image was holding in hir hands the chaplet the which she had set on Arthurs head in significacion how that he should haue the sayre Florence to whome the Image was resemblable, for that was none that should haue Florence in marriage with out he should dye an euill death, without it were he that the Image dyd give vnto the sayd chaplet. ca. lb

fol. c. liii

How that Arthur slew and discomfited fiftene knights right mightie, and puissant, who were come to assault his host, who was called the Maier of the palaces.

capitulo liiiii.

fol. c. liii

How the great villaine brought Arthur where as he did fight with a great and terrible Lyon, but finally Arthur slew him: and how after he fought with a great gyaunte and

and an horrible gyaunt, and by his promesse he conquered them both, and after that fought with a great Gryffon, and this was the beginning of the adventures of the toure tenebrous, wherein ye shall heare many terrible and meruailous thinges, the which were all achieved by the onely prowesse of the valiaunt Arthur. ca. lvi.

fol. c. rxi

How on the next morning the vilaine brought Arthur to an other adventure nye to the toure tenebrous, where as he was first assailed with terrible monstrous Wydes and great Gryffons, without number, and after that he was assailed with foure and twentie knights, and how he by his prowesse slew them all. And also he beate downe the great Pachomet of brasse, out of the which there issued suche a wynde that it tourned about great milstones lyke powder, and also how that he entred into the castell tenebrous, and quenched the fyre which was the cause of the great darkness the which contained the circuite of five leagues compass as ye shall heare afterward. ca. lviii

c. rxi

How Arthur beate downe the great Pachomet sitting in the vessell of brasse, and thereby the wynde ceased.

capitulo. lix

fol. c. xvi

How that Arthur entred into the toure tenebrous, and how he there quenched the fyre, whereby all the terrible enchantment ceased. ca. lx

c. xvi

How after that Bysebar and maister Steuen were departed from Arthur from the port noye they argued at coynpte wher as king Emendus was, and in his company the Emperour of Inde, and his other foure kinges holding the same tyme a great sumptuous open Courte, and there maister Steuen and sir Bysebar recounted to them all in open audience the noble chivalry of Arthur, and this same meane season there came into the court a knight all armed and brought tydings to the king how all the adventures of the toure tenebrous were achieved by the onely prowesse of one noble knight. cap. lxi

fol. c. xviii

A. liii.

How

## The Table.

How the Emperour was afeard least Florence should cast her loue on Arthur, wherfoze he demaunded of þe King her father to haue her in marriage without anie longer delay, wherewith the King was content, but Florence would not agræ thereto, wherwith the King her father was right soze displeased with her as you shall heare afterward. chap. lxii

fol. c. xx

How Florence when she knew that master Steuen was come to the court, she was right glad, & how that he by his pollicie gate her longer respite, that was till Barthelmew next after. chap. lxiii

fol. c. xxiii

How Arthur was receiued of the faire Lady Margaret into the citie of Argence. chap. lxiiii

folio cxxvii

How that the next daie the master answered for the Lady, and Arthur toke her quarrel in hand against the dukes nephew sir Isembart. chap. lxx

folio c. xxx. iii

How the same season while the King of Diquenie and all these other noble people were at dinner in greate ioye and mirth, ther came a messenger from the wounded knight to Arthur, desiring him to come and helpe him, or else he wold wit him of his death, wherwith all the court was soze troubled, and ceased all their ioy for the loue of Arthur, soz incontinentlie he went forth from the court with the messenger, and how that all the Court feared greatlie Arthur for that enterpryse, soz there was neuer anie that euer retourned againe aliue from that aduenture. chap. lxi

fol. c. xl

How Gouvernar in searching for Arthur had the honour of a tourney that was made by the Earle of the Ile Perdu, and there Gouvernar was amorous of the Countesse: And how the Earle charged the Countesse that shee shoulde not speake to Gouvernar, whereof euill came to him, soz the next daie Gouvernar did beate him well in the tourney, and late all night after with the Countesse his wife. cap. lxxviii. folio c. xlii

How Gouvernar did beate downe at the tourney the earle of the Ile Perdue. chap. lxxviii

fol. c. xlviii

How after Arthur was departed from Argenton to goe to

## The Table.

to the Castle of hurtbise to the wounded knight who had sent for him, in his waye at the last he found at the entering of a faire Forrest thre Ladies of right excellent beantie, of whom the chiefe was called Proserpina Quæne of the Fairies, who greatlie desired Arthur of his loue. but in no wise he wold agræ thereto, and there he lost the varlet that was his guide, wherfoze it behoued him to tarrie there all that night, soz it was dark and he knew not whether to go. chapter, lxxi.

folio. c. li

How Arthur conquered the Castle of hurtbise, the most strong place of the world sauing the Port Poire, whereas was the damsell by whom the wounded knight was hurt, and there Arthur did so much by his pꝛouesse that the said knight recovered health, chap. lxx

folio. c. lxx

How Arthur when he was departed from the Quæne Proserpina, it fortunèd him to take his lodging with the nephew of sir Isembart, who tooke Arthur and lodged him in a towꝛe, to the intent to haue slaine him by night, but there Arthur did so valiantlie that he brake out of the towꝛer and slew the knight and all his people. Chapter, lxxi, folio. c. liii

How Gouvernar in searching for Arthur, by aduenture he passed forth by the same Castle whereas Arthur hadde slaine the Lord therof, and there was assailed of the friends of the sayd knight, and there did so valiantlie that he slewe the most part of them. chap. lxxii

foli. cliiii

How Arthur found forthie knightes who hadde taken a Damzell, the which they found in a Forrest, and they wold haue rauished her, and there Arthur rescued her, and slew all the knightes who wold haue pilled and robbed the ladies castle, & haue slaine all that had bene within. cap. lxxiii folio. c. lxi

How master Steuen departed from the Port Poire to goe to the turney at Coznite, and toke with him the noble Florence rich Dauiilon, wherein was the Image with the Chaplet, who resembled in all things the ladie Florence the most fairest creature that was as then in all the worlde.

A. v.

chap.

chapter, lxxiii.

folio, c. lxxv

How Sir Rowland of Bygoz appenched Arthur of treason, because that he had slaine his cousin at Argence, and so deffed him at the utterance, but Arthur at the first stroke brake him horse and all to the earth, and brake one of his armes and two of his ribs, wherof Florence was right ioyous, and speciallie when she sawe her lover Arthur, whom she neuer sawe before: and how after Sir Rowland's servants assailed Arthur to have slaine him, but he valliantlie defended himselfe & slew many of them. chap, lxxv, fol. c. lxxvi

How Duke Philip and master Stephen went for to fetch Arthur to the king of Brquenie, and to the faire Florence. chap, lxxvi

fol. c. lxxvii

How a great and puissant knight deffed Arthur because he fate by Florence, and did pull downe a corner of her kerchiefe, the which the winde had blowen vp, and so Arthur did iust with him, and did cast him to the earth so ruellie, that he was not able to leape on horsebacke sine monethes after. chap, lxxvii

fol. c. lxxviii

How Florence and Arthur spake together at goode leasure at the end of a Forrest, and there promised to loue each other, and there the Quene Proserpina appeared to them and shewed to Florence how that Arthur loved her trulie, and howe that they shoulde haue each other by the waie of marriage, but first they shoulde endure great paine & trouble. cha, lxxviii

folio c. lxxviii

How Arthur had the honour of the tourney the first day, the which was made for the faire Florence betwene the king Emendus and the Emperour, who would haue hadde Florence to his wife, on the which daye Arthur gate himselfe great praise among al the Barons, insomuch that every knight was glad to be in his companie, wherfore the faire Florence was right ioyous, for she loved him above all other, cap, lxxix.

folio, c. lxxxv

How Florence fained her selfe to bee sicke, so the intent that Arthur shoulde not tourney the next daie, for shee was in feare that Arthur had ben wearie because of the traualle that

that he had indured the first daie of the tourney: and howe that the Emperour when he knew that he went to see her, and so did her father king Emendus, and al the other kings, Dukes, Charles, and Barons, and all the whole chivalrie. chap, lxxx

fol. c. lxxx

How that the tourney the next daie was deferred because of the disease of Florence, chap, lxxxi

folio, c. lxxxiii

How the image in the Pavillion did set her chaplet on Arthurs head in the presence of the Emperour, and of ten other kings, and of all the whole assemblee, wherewith the emperour was right sorrowfull, because he thought to haue had Florence in marriage, but he failed of his purpose, for the Image toke no regard neither to the Emperour, nor none other there, but all only to Arthur to whom traly she did giue her selfe, cha, lxxxii

fol. c. lxxxv

How Proserpina Quene of the Fairies, who resembled Florence, laide her downe in Florence bedde in Florence Reed, and she sent her vnto the Port Poire with the Archbishop and all her knights, chap, lxxxiii

folio, c. lxxxviii

How the Ladie Margaret of Argenton with all her noble Barons went & met Florence, and receiued her into Argence with great feast and ioy. lxxxiii

folio, cc

How that Proserpina was assured to the Emperour in the stede of Florence, and how that the king bannished out of his Countrie the king of Brquenie, and also the king of Walesbunt, and master Stephen & Arthur. cha, lxxxv. fo. cc, i

How that Proserpina Quene of the Fairies was lead to Church to haue bene wedded to the Emperour, thinking that it had ben Florence, but when the Bishop had thought to haue put the wedding ring on her finger, sodainlie shee vanished away, so that none knew where she was become, and so then they stood all abashed as though the clouds had fallen from heauen, chap, lxxxvi

fol. cc. iiii

How Arthur sent Conernar to his cousin Hector duke of Digoile, desiring him to come and succour him against the Emperour of Inde, & against the king Emendus, who would besige him in the castle of the port Poire, cha, lxxxvii, fo. cc, vi

How

How that Hector as he went toward the Port Poire to succour Arthur, he encountered one of the kinges that was coming to succour the Emperour, and had in his compaignie well to the number of eighteens thousand men of war, the which king Hector slew and all his people, so that there was none that euer escaped sauing two, and so they fled a waie, and there Hector got a great bootie, and much treasure, and great abundaunce of victuals, the which was all brought into the Port Poire. chap. lxxxviii. folio, cc, vii

How that the Emperour of Inde and the king Cymenduz accompanied with eight kings, and wel to the number of foure hundred thousand men of warre, laide siege about the castle of the Port Poire, whereas Florence and Arthur were, whereof euill turned to the Emperour, for there hee lost thre of his kings, and an hundred thousand of his men. chap. l xix folio, cc x,

How Duke Philip of Sabarie and master Steuen, sonne to the king of Walesound, were made knightes, and of the discomfiture that Arthur made on the Emperour. chap. lxxxx folio, c, xliii

How the Emperour spake with the Quene Doroferina, thinking to him that it had bene the faire Ladie Florence, but he was deceived, for she did set a great discord betwene him and the king Cymendus, as you shall heare after. chap. lxxxxi fol. c, c. xvii.

How after the Emperour was thus departed in displeasure, and had belied the king with mortall warre, the next night following by the subtil arte of master Steuen all the kings hoast was brought euerie man fast a slepe, and in the meane time the master and five other knightes with him bare the king Cymendus fast a slepe as he lay, beand all by into the pallace of the castle of the Port Poire. chap. lxxxvii fol. cc, xx

How that king Cymendus when hee awaked forgane all the ill will to Florence his Daughter, and did put all the gouerning of his Realme into her bandes, chap. lxxxviii fol. cc, xxi

How

How Arthur demanded licence of King Cymendus, for to his Ladie Florence, to depart into Britaine to see the Duke of Britaine his father and the Dutchesse his mother, the which licence they gaue him with much paine, and Florence was in great sorow for his departing. ca. lxxxviii folio, cc, xxi

How Arthur in the waie as he went to Britaine he arriued in a faire meadowe that was toyning to the towne of Lyons sur le Rhone, and ther he found the king of Palagore accompanied with diuerse Charles and other Barons, and they had there cried a great tourney, and there Arthur and his compaignie were friendlie receiued, and had great chere both of the king and of all other Lords and Knightes. chap. lxxxix fol. cc, xxviii

How Arthur and Hector his cousin with all their compaignie arriued at Blois, and how the Earle of Bloys father to Hector, and the Countesse his mother, and all the whole Baronie of the Realme met them on the waie & receiued them with great ioy, for they had bene before in great feare that Arthur their nephew and Hector their sonne had ben dead. chap. lxxxix folio, cc, xxxii

How Arthur arriued in Britaine, and how the duke his father and all his chiuairie met and receiued Arthur with great honour and triumph, and how that the dutchesse his mother solined for ioy when she saw her sonne Arthur, and in likewise did Jehannet his olde loue, whereof the master and Philip had great feare least that Jehannet wold draw awaie Arthurs hart from Florence, because of a great lone that they saw betwene them. chap. lxxxviii folio, cc, xxxii

How after that Arthur was departed from king Cymendus and Florence to goe see his friendes, Florence then departed from the Port Poire, and the Quene of Drogenie and the Lady Margaret of Argenton with her, and went to spozt her in her owne Realme and Castle of the Clare tower, wher as the emperour came and besieged her ere she was ware thereof, and his compaignie were laide round about the towne, and they were to the number of two hun-

dred

dead thousand, what of Emperines and of Sarasins, chap.  
lxxxviii folio. cc. xxxvi

Howe Arthur was right sorrowfull because that his  
horse did stumble vnder him, and howe the master shewed  
him how that Florence was besieged by the Emperour in  
her castle of the Clere tower, wherof Arthur was in great  
feare and trouble. chap. lxxxix folio. cc. xxxvii

How that Arthur and the master, Hector, Gouvernar,  
and sir B:isebar, entered into the Clere tower whereas  
Florence was besieged, and they five discomfited a pui-  
saunt king Sarasin, who was called the Soulbau, who  
was come thither to helpe the Emperour, and there were  
all the Sarasins and Turkes slaine. chap. c. fol. cc. xxxix

How that truse was taken for a moneth betwene the  
Emperour and Arthur. chap. c. i fol. cc. xliii

How the young King of Malagoze & the Duke of Brit-  
taine, with diuerse other Charles and Barons, and accom-  
panied with a great armie of men of warre, arriued at the  
Clere tower, to the intent to succour Florence and Arthur,  
who were besieged by the Emperour, who had nigh enra-  
ged out of his wit when he knew that they were come into  
that countrie. chap. c. ii folio. cc. xlv

How that king Jonas all alone came to the Castle of the  
Clere tower, and ther bid his message from the Emperour  
of Inde the moze. chap. c. iii folio. cc. xlix

How the Emperour and King Jonas accompanied with  
fiftie thousand men of warre came to the Clere tower for  
to haue made assault thereto, and then they found the gate  
open, and entered both into the towne and into the Castle,  
for they thought verilie that all the French men had bene  
slaid, but they were deceived, for then the French men leapt  
out from their ambushmentes and shut fast the gates, and  
there slew King Jonas and all their fiftie thousand, so that  
none escaped alive but one and the Emperour who was ta-  
ken prisoner. chap. c. iiii fol. cc. li

How Gouvernar went to the Realme of Mozoloyr, to  
the

the intent to giue knowledge to king Emendus how that  
the Emperour hadde besieged his daughter Florence in her  
castle of the Clere tower, desiring him to hasten his host to  
rescue her at that time. chap. c. v folio. cc. lv

How that Arthur accompanied with the French men  
discomfited king Flozipes brother to the Emperour, & slew  
all them that were in his companie. chap. c. vi fol. cc. lvii

How master Steuen by his art and cunning caused the  
Emperines to goe a wong waie from Arthur, and so en-  
countered the mightie king Emendus and all his host.  
chap. c. vii folio. cc. lx

How that the emperour died in prison for sorrow, when  
he knew that his kings and people were all slaine and dis-  
comfited. chap. c. viii folio. cc. lxiii

How that King Emendus came to the Blanch tower  
with all his noble companie, to the burying of the Empe-  
rour and of the other foure kings. cap. ix. fol. cc. lxv

How after the discomfiture of the emperour and al his  
people, the king gaue licence to all his host to depart euery  
man home, and went himselfe to Argence, ther to make the  
wedding betwene Arthur and Florence, & how that Flo-  
rence went to the Port Royre to make cheere to the Dut-  
chess of Britaine and to the other Ladies, & to bring them  
to Argence to her father king Emendus. chapter. c. x  
folio. cc. lxvii

How Florence because of the doubt that she had least yf  
Jehannet shuld take her lone from Arthur, she gaue her to  
Gouvernar, & gaue them the Realme of Mozmall, and cau-  
sed them to be assured the same houre, and also the same  
time shee caused the Ladie Margaret to be assured to ma-  
rie Steuen. chap. c. xi fol. cc. lxviii

How Arthur wedded the faire Florence Daughter to  
the mightie king Emendus, with great honour and tri-  
umph, and king Gouvernar wedded the faire Jehannet, and  
master Steuen wedded the faire Margaret of Argenton, al  
in one daie and one houre. chap. c. xii fol. lxix

How

## The Table.

How the French knights, and those of Mozelais, of Ar-  
genre, of Diquene, of Almaelise, of Maletoun, and of Ma-  
barie did tourney together, whereof Arthur and Gouvernar  
had the honour, chap. c. xlii fol. cc. lxxviii

How after the marriage of Arthur the Barons and La-  
dies of Fraunce returned into their owne Countries, ex-  
cept King Alexander whom King Emendus kept still, and  
made vnto him great chere, and he tarried there so long till  
that Flozence was deliuered of a faire sonne, whome King  
Alexander held on the font, chap. c. xliii folio. cc. lxxviii

How King Alexander returned into his Country, & led  
with him Arthur, Gouvernar, Hector, and master Steuen,  
and tarried in Britaine so long till Flozence sent for Ar-  
thur, because that her father King Emendus was departed  
this life, wherefoze he made great lamentation, chap. c. xlv  
folio. cxxviii

How Arthur was sent for because of the death of King  
Emendus, and how he was crowned king of Mozelais.  
chap. c. xlv folio. cc. lxxviii

There is denised how long that the noble Arthur liued,  
and how that he was buried, chap. c. xlv folio. cxxviii

Thus endeth the Table of this present hystoris.



## The Historie of Arthur

### of Britaine

Of the birth of the noble knight Arthur, some and  
how he came to the Duke of Britaine.

## CHAPTER.



After the death of good King Arthur, who  
was right noble and gentle, speciallie in  
cherishing and enhauncing of noblenesse, &  
in the training of the chivalrous knights of  
the world. As was Guyon & Launcelot,  
and many other noble knights, as it is more  
plainly contained in diuerse auncient. Chronicles. It is of  
truth that in those daies, in Britaine there was a Duke  
right potent and aboue all other right vertuous, rich, and  
powerfull, whose behaviour & friends, who was come of the  
noble and high lineage of the valiant knight Lancelot du  
Lake, who was in his daies of right high and noble prow-  
esse, and is now at large comprised in the booke making  
mention of his chivalrie. This Duke had to name John,  
and was so endued with sapience, that the king, who as then  
gouerned all the land, loved and honoured him aboue all  
other, in so much as it was said: wher soeuer he went, behold  
the wisest man of Britaine: he was one of the kings  
prime Counsaile, so that the king was onely gouerned by  
him, and abate because of the great trust and stedfastnesse  
that was reposed in him: This Duke had a right noble  
daughter, of good & holy life, who was daughter to  
the Duke of Exeter in England, and they loued together  
right feruently by heartie loue all their life, and in accom-  
plishing betwene them the workes of marriage, obtained  
by nature, finally, it pleased the good Lord to send them a  
faire sonne, who in the remembrance of good king Arthur &  
of his high noblesse, was named Arthur. This child was  
goodly and of full great beautie: for afterward he grew to



and in debts of money, and in such things, that there was no report of him, but that he was the noblest knight of the world, yet finally he lost his life so, that he spent and wasted his goods so largely, to the intent, to get him laud and praise, that in the end he became thereby, both poore, and then with himselfe he sought to make shifts of all that he had, both of his lands, and of the goods that he had, & so dyed in great pouertie. And when he was buried, such persons as he was indebted to, took all the landes & goods that pertained either to him or to the lady his wife, so that thereby the good lady fled and departed pynely out of the Countrey, so that none of her friends knew where she was become, for she thought she had rather live pynely in a strange Countrey farre from her friends and acquaintance, then to endure pouertie in her owne countrey, where she had bene noble brought up before. So this lady went, & her daughter with her, who was of the age of fiftie yeres, right beautiful, howbeit she was pynely apparailed, and had to name Jehannet. And they traualled so long by their journeys, that by adventure they came into the Forrest where Arthur and Governar used to chase and to hunt. And in a desolate place of the Forrest, farre from any high waie, there these two ladies did rest them, and made them a lodge to abide in of boughes, and of such things as they coulde get. Thus they continued the space of a moneth, and this lady went euery daie right pynely to the next village for to get such thinges as she and her daughter needed. And so it fortuned that the same daie that Arthur and Governar departed from the court of his father, and was entered into the said Forrest, a noble huntsman had found a great hart; and a noble knight that was in his company, named the Lord Olivier of Bryac, followed after this hart on a great courser, and all the other hunters after him. And this young Arthur began to follow after; howbeit Governar took heed that he should not follow too fast, so that this said Lord Olivier and all other were past forth by him, and were gone so far into the thicke of the Forrest, that Arthur & Governar had cleane lost both

the

the sight & hearing of the & their hounds, & so by gesse they followed faire & safely after: and so long they followed, that by adventure they came to the same place wheras the lodge was made for the lady and her daughter, who were both the same time sitting without the lodge doore. And as sone as Arthur saw them he lighted downe off his horse, and Governar with him: and when this Lady saw Arthur, she was greatly abashed, for she thought wel that he should be some great man, and therewith she arose, and Arthur right courteously saluted her, & the Lady in like manner him, it was at that time about thre of the clocke. But when the Lady saw Arthur and Governar descende from their horses, she remembred the state of her Father and of other Gentlemen that she had seene before in her owne countrey where she had bene nourished, wherewith her heart was greatly troubled. Then Arthur took her by the hande and her mother also, and set them downe altogether, and demanded of the young maide, saying: faire damosell what is your name? Sir quod she, I am called Jehannet: Jehannet sweet loue where were ye borne? certainly sir, I was not borne in this countrey: then her mother said, sir, my daughter saith truth, for verely she was borne in the land of Desart in a Castell called the Moure. When said Arthur, whose daughter was she? God is my witnesse said the lady, a knights right strong and puissant, who in his time loved cuer daies of armes, & was acquainted with manye noble men, howbeit his fortune was such ere he died, that he lost and wasted both his landes and goods, and mine also, who was his poore wife, and we were brought so far behinde, that little or nothing was lefte vs. When after his death, such persons as he owed any thing to, & peradventure some other that he owed nothing to, were so importunate on me, & I was faine to sell all I had, and when I saw that I was so far brought vnder that I had nothing lefte me whereby to lyue, the occasion thereof caused me to steale away by night: for I thought it better to go like a poore woman a begging in a strange countrey, than there where I was Lady and gouern

25.iii.

uer

uernour, and therewith right piteously she wept, and said :  
 ah gentle knight now am I come into this countrie, onely  
 accompanied with this young maid my dære daughter,  
 who was wont to be brought vp in faire pallaces and rich  
 halls and chambers, and to lye in a bed with curtaines of  
 silke, and now she is constrained to lye on the mosse in this  
 lodge couered with greene boughes. When Arthur answe-  
 red and said, ah faire Ladie, why did you not require your  
 friends to helpe and succour you in your necessitie, at least  
 to gine you meate, and drinke, and cloathing: in my minde  
 that had bene moze honourable for you, then thus desolate-  
 ly to come into this strange countrie. Truly sir said this  
 Ladie, poore folkes haue but few friends, howbeit I ought  
 to haue many, but betwene the rich & the poore there want  
 teth friends, for the rich maketh his friend of his money, &  
 the poore is put out in euery place: and I sorrowfull crea-  
 ture who haue bene a great Ladie and much honoured, and  
 haue had much people vnder my obeyssaunce, thought great  
 shame to require any creature in my own countrie to help  
 or succor me, and specially for this young maid my daugh-  
 ter, she is come of noble lignage: alas, as for me I am old,  
 and alwaies she hath serued me right well, and now she is  
 like with me to lose her time, and therewith she began a-  
 gain to wepe. When Iehannet saw her mother so wepe,  
 she could not abtaine her selfe from weeping tenderly. Ar-  
 thur seeing them so full of sorrow, had great pitie, and sayd  
 to the Ladie: Right dære Ladie, wepe ye no moze, but set  
 your heart at rest: for from henceforth I will be in y<sup>e</sup> stede  
 of your olde Lord, and in all god honour loue and cherish  
 you to the best of my power: and all this while Iehannet  
 made still great lamentation. So there Arthur toke the  
 youngmaide in his armes, and right louinglye saide: My  
 owne dære Ladie and loue, abandon your heart to ioye &  
 leaue this sorrow, for as God is my succour, I shall cause  
 you to haue moze honour and wealth, then as yet euer  
 came vnto you, for I am and shal be your owne god louer,  
 & will take you into my hands, to deliuer you frō all pauer-  
 tie,

tie, faithfully assuring you, to keepe the honoz of you and of  
 your bodie, as much as your owne proper brother would  
 or might doe.

How Arthur caused to be deliuered to Iehannet and  
 her mother the reuenues that beloged to the stag  
 or pond of the forrest, whereby there stood a faire  
 goodly place of pleasure: and afterwarde Arthur  
 did oftentimes resort thether to passe the time with  
 them. Cap. 4.

**A**t y<sup>e</sup> time as Arthur had this communication with these  
 Ladies, there came to them the master forester na-  
 med Piers, who was also receiuer of the reuenues of the  
 forrest: and he had all that daie sought his master Arthur,  
 and by aduenture there he founde him talking with these  
 ladies: and incontinently as Arthur saw him, he called him  
 by his name, and demaunded of him, if he had receiued at  
 that Paboleintide the reuenues of the forrest: And Piers  
 answered and said, sir I haue alreadie at your commande-  
 ment, the sum of five hundred pound. Well quoth Arthur  
 I command thee incontent to deliuer it to this ladie and to  
 her daughter, also the mannoz place pertaining to y<sup>e</sup> stag  
 of this forrest wherein thou hast dwelt till this time. It  
 was so that in this stag or water the wilde beastes of the  
 forrest did euer resort to drinke, and nere adioyning to this  
 water there were houses and manners, which the duke  
 had given to Arthur his sonne to sport himselfe in the forrest: &  
 this Piers was keeper thereof to Arthurs behoufe. Then  
 said Arthur to Piers, I deliuer to thee these two ladies, and  
 I charge thee that thou truly keepe and honour them, and  
 bring them to my mannoz, and deliuer to them such things  
 as appertaine to so goodly Ladies as they be, and as such a  
 man as I am, haue taken into my hands & keeping. Ther-  
 fore keepe them well and truly, for by the faith that I owe  
 to my lord my father, if I know that thou intende or ima-  
 gine against this ladie or her daughter any displeasure. I  
 shall cause thee to suffer an euill death, & I warn thee loke  
 they lacke nothing. Sir said Piers I will so vse my selfe,  
 B. iiii. that

that both you and they shall be with me content. And so when Arthur had bene there a greafe season, he took his leaue of this Ladie and of her daughter. So Piers did ordinaunt them to the sayd manno, and brought for them adilements and icwells, meate and drinke of the best that could be gotten, and all other things that was conuenient for noble Ladies to haue. And garnished euery office in the house with plate of silver, and with al other necessary things: and when Arthur and Gouvernar were departed from these Ladies, they rode after the track of Sir Oliuer of Iryac and his companie, and at the last they met together farre in the forest in a great deepe valley, whereas Sir Oliuer had killed three great hartes, & was breaking of them: and therewith Arthur came to him & lagged right heartely. Then resorted other of the hunters fro all parts, and so ther Arthur commaunded a seruauant belonging to the sayde Piers, to take one of these hartes and to beare it from him to saide Ladie & to her daughter: and the second Arthur did giue to the Abbot that was come to them by aduenture, and the third he commaunded that it should be conueyed to the Duke his father, who had great ioy thereof.

How within eight daies after Arthur and Gouvernar went to the stange to see the Lady and Iehannet her daughter.

Chap. 5.

The eight daie after that Arthur was come from the forest, he rose earely in a faire morning and saide to Gouvernar, friend let vs goe leape vpon our horses, and goe see our damsell in the forest we two alone, gladly sir sayd Gouvernar. So Arthur took a Sparhawk on his hand, and Gouvernar a Gersaulcon, and Arther apparailed himselfe all in greene silke, and his hat auailed, with a fresh chaplet of flowers on his head. And they rode so long, that by the Sunne rising they came to the stange, and founde the Ladie Iehannet apparayed right noble: for Piers the forrestier had purueied them of all things necessarye to such Ladies:

dies: and as then Iehannet had dronke good wines and taken her sustenance of good meates, and had forgotten all her sorowe, whereby her beautie was newly renewed. And when Arthur saw her, she pleased him much better than she did when he sawe her first, and so he took her by the hande and set them downe together aparte, and in the meane season the Ladie her mother and Gouvernar were talking together, and the morning was verie faire and clere, and the earth all bedewed with clere silver drops, and the Birdes sung melodiously on euery branch: so that these two young lustie louers greatly reioyced, and had great myrth in their harts because of y<sup>e</sup> sweet season, being timely for such young people to play and laugh, & they loued together with true harts, without thinking of villanie or shame each to other. When Arthur said to her merely: My sweet damsel haue ye any louer: she halfe smiling, beholding Arthur right louingly, said, by the faith I owe to you my own deere lord, I haue one right faire and gracions: and where is he my sweete Iehannet. By my faith sir, he is of a Countrie wherof hee is Lord: and saye loue, how is he called? By you not displeased, this that I haue said is sufficient at this present time. Howbeit sye I wold ye knew, y<sup>e</sup> King Arthur was a noble knight and of great vertue, and sir, I wold my louer were so good, if he be not better alreedy. But one thing sir I assure you, he resembleth you more then anie other vnder the Sunne liuing, both in bodie & all other things that one person may be likened to another. My owne sweete and faire damsell said Arthur, I wold faine see him, and if it be to you no dishonour, I praye you shew him me, and I promise you faithfully I shall loue and cherishe him ryght deere, and for loue of you, if hee will, he shall be one of my house, if he be no greater of lignage nor riches then I am. My right deere Lord sayde this Damsell, I humbly thanke you, howbeit he is no greater Gentleman than yee bee, but hee thinketh well to haue as greate honour and friends as ye haue, but as now ye may not see him,

but it may well be that hereafter ye shall haue knowledge of him. And so thus they communed together of manye things, till it was time that Arthur should returne to the Court, for as then it was about Prime. When Arthur took his leaue of the Ladie and of Jehannet, and so he and Gouvernar mounted on their horses, and rode forth, alwaies deuising of the behaniour of this damsell Jehannet. And at the last Arthur saide: Master, how saie you by the sweetnesse of our damsell, and the frenesse of her heart, and how sagely and graciously she aunfwereth to euerie demaund, remembryng also her gentle manner and noble countenance, her beautifull fashion of bodie and of visage: as God helpe me master, al these things and many other that spring of vertue be in her, which causeth me to loue her hartely. Sir said Gouvernar, that ye saie is true, howbeit mine owne dære Lorde, take good heed to your honour, and remember howe great a Lorde ye be, both of linage, honour, and friends, and thinke how she is but a poore Gentlewoman, for ought you knowe, and if you doe anie villanie to her bodie, as in taking from her that ye cannot render againe, it were a great sinne, and you ought therein to be moze blamed, then another meane person. Master said Arthur, I pray God neuer to helpe me, if I thinke to go about to dishonour her, but I will loue her and keepe her honour faithfully, in like case as she were mine owne proper sister, without euer desiring any wrong to her bodie. So they rode forth talking till they came to the Court, and then went to dinner, for it was by that time neere two of the clocke.

How the Duke and Dutchesse tooke counsaile to marrie their sonne Arthur, and how they sent theyr steward to the Ladie Luke of Ostridge, for to demaund her daughter for Arthur. Chap 6.

**I**n this wise Arthur sojourned a long space, so that there was no weeke but that twice or thrice he and Gouvernar would

would ride to the stang without anie other companie: and it soortuned one daie he tarried ther longer then he was accustomed to doe, wherefore he was sought all about by the commaundement of the Duke his father, howbeit no tidings could be heard of him, but that he and Gouvernar wer gone together to spozt them, but no man wist whether. The Dutchesse said to the duke, sir I know not what it meaneth that our sonne goeth forth so priuely euerie daie, and no man can tell whether, for he taketh none with him but Gouvernar, verily I doubt me of our child, least he should set his heart and loue of some person, whereby we should haue anie dishonour: he is now of yeares sufficient to perceiue and knowe the guiles pertaining to loue, wherefore I would he were noblie married, for it is time, he is xxii. yeares of age. Madame quoth the Duke, ye haue right wisely sayde: and I accorde thereto, but to whome thinke ye best we giue him in marriage. Sir said the Ladie, in my minde it were well done, that we demaund the faire Perron of Ostridge, and I trust my Ladie Luke her mother wil be therof right glad, verily madame said the Duke, I haue heard saie, that this Ladie Perron hath not wisely demeaned her selfe, but hath had great blame for her nise keeping companie with a knight of her Countrie, and I would for no good that we should demaund such a person as hath deserved blame. Sir said the Ladie, beleeue not ye the reportes of them that lusteth to saie ill, for as God helpe me she is slandered wrongfully, for I am sure ther is not a better maid liuing, wherefore they are in greate fault that repozte other wise of her. Ladie sayd the Duke, if it be so, I am right ioyfull, let vs therefore send thether in all hast. Then was called to them syr Oliuer that was Seneshall. And the Duke sayd to him, sir Oliuer, my will is that ye go to Ostridge to my Ladie Luke, and desire of her in my behalfe Perron her Daughter, to be giuen in Matrimonie to Arthur my sonne. When sir Oliuer prepared him to ride forth and tenne other knightes in his companie, and so departed and rode forth so long, that the Wednesday after

## The Historie of Arthur

after Matdelintide they came to Ostridge. When sir Oliuer was in the great hall whereas the lady Luke was accompanied with many great barons, ladies and damosells, he did right reuerently salute her, and all the other Lordes and barons as a messenger sent from the Duke and Dutchesse of Britaine: and this lady Luke right honourably did receiue him and all his company, and demanded what was the cause of their conuning.

How the Seneschall demaunded the Daughter of the Duke of Ostridge for Arthur of Britaine, the which request with great ioy was granted him. Cap.vii.

Then sir Oliuer began his proposition and saide: Right high and mightie Princesse, my lord and ladys of Brittain hath sent vs hether to publish vnto you their intents, for they are right desirous to be in loue and affinitie with you as it well appeareth, hauing hearde such bryte & fame of my lady Perron your daughter. Wherefoze they haue sent me hether to your presence to require you in their behalfe to giue your daughter Perron in mariage to Arthur their sonne, who is right gentill, noble and valiaunt. Madame this is the effect of our request. In the name of God said the lady Luke humbly I thanke the Duke your lord, that it will please him to haue with vs acquaintance, wherof I haue great ioye: and with a good heart I giue freelye to him my daughter Perron to be all whollye at his commandement. Madame said Oliuer, this deed ought greatly to be thanked: and how say you faire lady Perron, do you accord to this marriage. Sir said Perron, I shall euer fulfill the pleasure of my lady my mother. Certainly faire lady then do you wisely, for I ensure you, ye shall be coupled to him that is both faire and goodly. When this Lady Luke and her daughter, did giue to sir Oliuer and his company many noble Jewells and other things. And their appointment was to be at Sauntes within viii. daies of the middle of the next August.

How

## Of litle Brittain.

7

How that Arthur was sore displeased for that his Father would marrie him to the Ladie of Ostridge, because it was said she was of ill demeanor. Chap.8.

Then the Seneschall took leaue of the lady Luke, & the faire Perron & returned into Britaine. At which time he found the Duke risen from dinner & the Dutchesse with him: and Arthur and Gouvernar were playing at y cheesse, and as soone as the Duke saw sir Oliuer, he friendly entertained him, and the knight right humbly saluted them, and thanked them greatly for the great loue and gifts that the Dutchesse of Ostridge had bestowed on him for their sakes, and shewed him how the lady Luke would be at Sauntes, and bring with her Perron, readie apparailled to be giuen to Arthur about the middle of August next ensuing. And when Arthur heard that his father would marrie him, hee stepped forth & left his plate, & said, what is that right deere father, wil ye marry me. Pea faire son said y duke, right nobly. And good father vnto who will you giue me, faire son, vnto the gentle Perron of Ostridge. What sir, as it is noised she hath trespassed with another knight, set ye so litle by me that ye will now giue me Perron who is of ill name & fame? Certainly it is not for your worship nor honour so to doe, nor to any of my friends. Wherefoze in no manner of wise will I take her. Faire sonne sayd his mother, be not displeased, neither beleue euill reportes that are made by this lady, it is greates sinne to saie such thinges as cannot be proued, for I am certaine that she is a cleane maiden: and therefore we will that ye shall haue her, or else ye shall greatly displease my Lord your father and me also. Well madame (said Arthur) with that it behoueth me to take her, and that it is your pleasure that I so do, I am content, how be it if she be of such conditions as is sayd of her, I shall neuer loue her. When sayd Gouvernar to the Duke, sir if ye will that Arthur shall haue this damsel. Peruerthelesse may it please you to graunt that if this case be found true, the let Arthur leaue & forsake her. And if that she did neuer such trespass,

trespasse, then let Arthur keepe her as he ought to doe his wife, but how shall this be knowen said the Duke, whereas wisdoms in such things are lightly done so euertly, that it is harde to knowe: Sir said Gouvernar, let it be enquired wisely of such as doe presume should knowe of the matter. Also let the damsell her selfe be wisely examined, and if she be good she wil keepe her selfe, if she be other wise, peradventure it will be espyed. I am content with this said Arthur, and for that time they leste their communing of that matter. Then the Duke sent out his commandements to all his Barons, knights, and Damsells, that they should be all ready at Paantes by the myddest of August, for then he would keepe open Court, and make Arthur his son knight, and marrie him to the faire Perron of Astringe. The duke also did write to the Carle of Blois, brother germaine to the dutchesse his wife. He sent also for the Carle of Anion, who was nere of kinne to the duke, and also to the Archbisshop of Tours, desiring him to be at Paantes at y said day. How that Arthur went to see Iehannet, and declared to her how the Duke his father wold marry him, wherof he was



fore displeased for the loue of her.

Chap. 9

Then Arthur and Gouvernar toke their horses, and rode to the stang in the Forrest, whereas they found Iehannet and his mother, who made great ioy, and Iehannet beheld Arthur, who was as then right pale for displeasure, and demaunded of him what was the cause thereof. Certainely my loue saide Arthur, greater displeasure coulde neuer haue fallen. For my Lord my father will now marrie me, the which I so yetthinke with all my hart, because of y loue that I haue to you, for I thinke verily ye will not bee content therewith. And your displeasure pearceth mine hart, mine owne sweet Lord saide Iehannet, for Gods sake trouble not your selfe for no such cause, for certain I am in like case intreated to be married. A good loue, sayde Arthur, I prae you to whome: Sir, to him of whom I haue spoken to you before, is that of a truth faire Damsell, quoth Arthur, I require you when shall ye be marryed, in truth the same daie that ye shall be married: now faire damsell, by the faith that ye owe to him, I desire you let me see him, for ye may not see him as yet, but certainly he shall be apparailled in the same clothing, as ye shall be the daie of your wedding. In the name of God said Arthur, I haue of this great meruaile, for ye haue sayd here before to me, that he is as great of linage as I am, and as greatly endued with behaviour and friends, and how that he resembleth to me in all pointes, and also how that he hath a rich and puissaunt vnkle. I wot not whome I should thinke, without ye meane all this by my selfe, for I knowe well the Carle of Blois is my vnkle by my mothers side. Well sir, sayde Iehannet, no I will not shew you at this present time. So thus they communed together of that and of other thinges, till finally Arthur toke leaue of her for that time, and returned to the Court of his father. And thus dayly he rode to see this faire Damsell Iehannet, till it came the next daie before his wedding. And the Carle of Anion and the Archbisshoppe of Tours were come, and also the Carle of Blois, who brought with him Hector his sonne.

sonne was a gentle and faire creature, and was descended of the linage of Britaine, and was cousin germaine to Arthur, and also of one age, for they were borne both in one yeare. And when Arthur sawe him, he joyfully entertained him, and alwaies they kept companie together: And there came from all partes Lordes, Knights, Ladies, and Damselfs, by great flockes for to goe meete the Ladie Perron of Ostridge, and then mounted the Duke and all other Barons and knights, to goe likewise to encounter Perron, who was as then come within the space of halfe a league, and brought with her a great companie of Lordes, Knights, Ladies, and Damselfs.

How Arthur and Hector his Cousin Germaine were made Knights for the loue of Arthur, who then did ensure Perron daughter to the Lady Luke of Ostridge. And of the great tourney that was held at Nautes for the loue of Arthur. Cap. 10.

**W**hen all these noble people were assembled together, the Duke and Dutchesse, and all the other Lordes made great ioy and feast at the meeting of this Ladie Luke and Perron her daughter. And the Dutchesse took her in her armes, and said, mine own sweete daughter you are right welcome into this countrie, and kissed her oftentimes, weeping for ioy, for she was so faire a creature that the Dutchesse could not abstaine her selfe from embracing & kissing her. And there with called to her Arthur & said, Son Arthur, be holde here this faire Ladie, who is and shall be yours. Madame sayde Arthur, will it please you to suffer her to mount vpon her horse, and we shall speake of this matter well inough hereafter. So they went all to horse and rode forth to Nautes, & their Lordes, knights, & other, took by their lodging in the citie, & some were harboured in the pallace with the Duke. And when it came to the time to speak of the marriage, the Arthur sayd in open audience. My Lord and father, & also my Ladie my mother, ye will cause me here to take this

damself. And yet I know not what name or name she is of. Howbeit sir I saie surely both to you and to my Ladie Luke, who is mother vnto her, that I take her against my heart, because of the suspicious noise and ill reports which I haue heard of her. Nevertheless it becometh me to take her to eschew thereby the displeasure of my Lord my father, and my Ladie my mother, and other of my friends, for I perceiue well it is their mindes, howbeit I saie openly here to you all, if that I finde the noise as runneth on her to be of trouth, I ensure you that while I liue she shall neuer haue anye good daie with me in rest. My faire sonne said the Dutchesse, what if ye finde her good and true, and that all such ill report as ye haue heard of her be untrue and false? Well madame said Arthur, then shall I loue her as I ought to doe my wife. Then the Duke called forth the Archbishoppe of Bautes, and so caused Arthur to bee there openly affianced to Perron, and on the next daie to be married: Then began great feasts and ioye in the Pallace, and dauncing of Ladies and damselfs, and breaking of speares, and battering of harneies with swordes in euerie streete of the Citie. When the Duke saide, that whosoever wold take the order of chivalrie with his sonne Arthur the next daie, with a good will he woulde giue it them. Then Arthur said to Hector his cousin, sir, I require you to meane to take the order of knightthode with me, and from hence forth let vs keepe companie together in iusts and tourneies and in all other things as sworn bretheren. Where cousin said Hector, I require you let vs goe knowe the pleasure of my Lord my father, whether he will agree to this or not: ye saie well said Arthur. When Arthur came before the Duke his father and all other Lordes, and held his cousin Hector by the hand, and said openly to the Carle of Blois: My Lord and vnkle, I require you let my cousin Hector be made knight to morrowe with mee, for wee shall loue together the better euer after, certainelie saide the Carle: Faire nephew, Hector hath as yet too little lande to maintaine therewith the noble Order of knightthode:

and that he said because he would not that his sonne should be made knight so lone. Trulie sir said Arthur, he hath riches to be a knight, for as long as you live he can not lacke, and though he faile of you, yet God hath so provided for him, that after your daies he shall be Carle of Blois. Psea faire nephew quoth the Carle, we maye both be desceiued by that, for it may so fortune, that I maye lose all my right in the Carledome of Blois, and his also. Neither let my sonne Hector looke to be Lord ouer me, for as long as I live one soote of the land of the Carledome of Blois getteth he not, no sir said Arthur, and tourned to Hector and saide: faire cosin it would seme well by my Lord your father, how y he is verie poore, howbeit I desire you, to be knight with me, and I faithfully promise you that I shal giue you as much land or more as my Lord your father will giue you, and I praie you from hence forth let vs be together as companions in hoise, in affire, in land, in house and in currie thing, and so I retaine you from this present time forward. As God helpe me sonne saide the Duke (who hadde heard what Arthur had said to Hector, I am well content that ye thus retaine Hector your cosin: also I require him that he will be your companion, and to the Carle of Blois he said: also sir I desire you to giue licence to your son here present, that he may be knight with his cosin Arthur. When the Carle of Blois did laugh thereat, and said to the Duke. Sir, as God me helpe I am right well content. But of one thing let him be sure, y as long as I live he shall neuer be the Carle of Blois. Then Arthur said to his cosin Hector. Well sir we be young inough, therefore wee shall seeke to get our living, for I trust God will helpe vs. When he said to the Duke his father, sir Gouvernar hath serued and nourished me vp sweetly, therefore I require you let me make him knight, and when I maye, I will bee better to him: certainly faire sonne it pleaseth me right wel, so then they were made knights with great triumph: and there was great ioie both with Lordes and Ladies, and a great tourney was there ordeined for the loue of these new knights.

And

And while this triumph and tourney endured, Arthur said to Hector: faire cosin come on with mee and wee will goe see the most sweete and gentle damsell that euer yee saue. In the name of God quoth Hector, I am well content, and so Arthur, Hector, and Gouvernar mounted on their horses, and rode forth to the mannor of the Stang, whereas they found Jehannet and her mother leaning in a windowe talking together, & when they saue Arthur they came to him and were verie ioyfull, and then Jehannet demaunded of Arthur, what Gentleman is this that yee haue brought with you. faire Lady said Arthur, he is sonne to the Carle of Blois, and he is my cosin germaine. In the name of God sayd she he is welcome hether for your sake. Then Jehannet beheld wel Arthur, & she perceiued by his countenance that hee was troubled, therfore she desired of him to know what he ailed, in god faith god loue, this daie haue I made a dolorous iourney, for I haue affianced a woman against my will, the which I sore repent, because it is grieuous to me to leaue your companie: certainly faire loue Arthur, quoth she, take no displeasure though you haue fianced a ladie, for certainly in the same proper houre y ye fianced your Ladie, I was affianced to my loue, & my deere Lady quoth he, I require you who is that, and where is he? By the faith that I owe vnto you sy, I knowe full well where hee is. Well faire Ladie said Arthur, I praie you then shew him to me: surely sy that will I not doe as yet, but I promise you to shew him to you within these three daies next coming, and sir knowe you for certayne that hee resembleth you both in gate, in behanour, in friendes, in gentleness, in fashion of bodie, and all other thinges. In the name of God sayd Arthur, I meruaile greatlie: for by your wordes it should appeare that it is my selfe, for there cannot two persons bee resembled together, but there must be some faulte and difference. I beleeue you deuise these wordes by mee, howbeit I am troubled againe when I thinke how yee saie, that yee were affianced to daie, and howe that yee shall bee married to morowe the same

C.ii.

houre

houre that I shall be wedded in: as God helpe me sir saide  
 Jehannet, it is truth, he resembleth you, without failing of  
 anie point, verilie saide Arthur I cannot thinke whome it  
 should be, and so they talked together so long, till it was  
 time for him to depart, for he doubted to be blamed of his  
 friends: So he took leaue of the Ladies and departed, and  
 as they rode Hector said to Arthur, sir, vndoubtedly this is  
 a faire young ladie, right gracious, sweete, and of good be-  
 haviour, as God helpe me faire cousin saide Arthur, she is  
 mine owne, howbeit she is a poore Damsell and hath no-  
 thing but that she hath of me. But by the faith I owe vnto  
 my lord and father the Duke of Britaine, I loue hir better  
 all naked, than she yf I shall haue with all the riches of the  
 world, for I must take her against my will, and therefore  
 cousin I am verilie purposed that as soone as this triumph  
 is passed, and all straungers be departed, and mine vncle  
 your father and all gone, then I thinke to aske license of my  
 father to goe seeke aduentures in some strange countries,  
 and to take with me onelie Governar, and to abide from  
 home the space of five or six yeares, and so shall I leaue her  
 that troubleth me, for in her companie in no wise I can a-  
 bide. Trulie sir said Hector, and if that ye will thus doe, by  
 the faith that I owe to you, I will depart with you, and ne-  
 ver leaue you while I liue. Ah good cousin Hector, quoth  
 he, it pleaseth me verie well to haue your companie, and  
 heartelie I thanke you therefore. Howbeit I beseech you  
 keepe this thing secrete that it be not knowen till the time  
 of our departure. And as soone as Arthur was departed  
 from Jehannet, shee did send all about for minstrelles and  
 instrumentes of musicke, and caused all the house to be  
 hanged with filke, and commaunded all her folkes to  
 make as greates ioie as they could imagine. Arthur rode  
 forth till hee came to Pauntes, where as the Ta-  
 bles were couered to supper, and the Duke sate him  
 downe, and all the other Lordes, euery one in his  
 place, and they were serued right richlie & with greates  
 ioie, and after supper they played and sported themselves,  
 eue

euery man as he best liked till it was time to goe to rest.  
 For then it was past midnight, the Duke entered into  
 his chamber, and Arthur, Hector, and Governar went to see  
 Jehannet, & when they came nere to the place of the stang,  
 they heard great noise and mirth of instruments, & found  
 all the house newly hanged, and the Ladies arrayed with be-  
 stures of pleasure, & they found as great apparell as though  
 a King should haue come thether, and Jehannet was appa-  
 railed as though she should haue ben married incontinent:  
 and when she heard that Arthur was come thether, shee  
 came royally vnto him. It was a maruell the to behold her  
 she was so faire: as soone as Arthur saw her coming, his  
 heart reioyced and he sayd vnto himselfe. Oh Jesu, a gentle  
 and a gracious meeting is this, as God helpe me I had ra-  
 ther haue your companie then to be combred with her I  
 must haue, and therewith he clipped her in his armes and  
 sayd. Ah sweete loue, God that formed all the world send  
 you a better daie then I haue had a night. Sir said Jehan-  
 net, God giue you as good a day as he hath done to me. For  
 this same night I shall be with my louer: and God send you  
 in likewise with yours. Certainly saide Arthur, I repute  
 her not for my loue that I shall be with. But ye that shall  
 be as ye saie with your louer, shall be nether to my heart  
 then she shall be. But I praise you sweete Jehannet for  
 me your louer, sir I haue alredie promised you that ye shall  
 see him within these three daies, therefore I beseech you to  
 abide till that season. With a good will said Arthur, and so  
 farried there so long till it was faire daie, and then it beho-  
 ued him for to depart.

How Arthur wedded faire Perron, daughter to the  
 Ladie Luke of Ostridge. And of the protestation  
 that he made before all the Baronie.

Chapter. 11.

C. 111.

How



**N**owe sheweth the Historie howe that when Arthur, Hector & Gouvernar wer departed from Jehannet, they came to the court, & by that time were al <sup>h</sup> Lords, knights, and therest risen from their rest, and the Archbisshope of Tours was readie to say service, and solemprise the Matrimonie. Then the Duke and the Dutchesse and all the other Lords, knights, Ladies, and Damselles, did conuaie Arthur and this Ladie Perron to the Church, and there in the sight of al the people, & in open audience Arthur said. I will that it be knowne that if ever I finde true such words as I haue hearde of this Ladie, though I were wedded to her a hundred thousand times, yet I will leaue and utterle forsake her, and on that condition here I am now content

sent to take her to my wife, and no other wise: and thereto agreed her mother and al other of their friends, and so with great solempritie they were wedded together, and greates was the feast and ioye that then was made in all the citie, Ladies and damselfs did daunce, and made greates ioye and mirth, and made garlands and tokens, and did giue them to Lords and knights in the signe of loue.

How this Ladie Luke of Ostridge sent for Iehannet, and caused her secretly the first night to lie with Arthur, because that Perron was no maide, to the intent that Arthur should not perceiue it. Chap. 12.



**W**e must vnderstand how that Ladie Luke during all this season that this great ioy & mirth was made, was in great thought in her heart because she knew well that her daughter Perron was no maide, therefore she doubted greatly to haue reproch, therefore she knewe not what was best for her to doe. So at the last she called to her one of her owne knightes whom she trusted best in all her businesse, and shewed vnto him all the demeanour of Perron, and desired him to giue her in that behalfe the best counsaile that he knew, for she sawe well how that Arthur woulde faine find some cause by her, to the intent that he might be detacted from her companie: For sir, quoth she, if Arthur finde her to be no maide, then I doubt me of infamy, therefore I require you for Gods loue to counsaile me in this case. When this knight, who had to name sir Aunsell, answered & said, madame sith it is thus the case must be suffered as easilie as it maye bee, for when the deede is done it is time to take counsaile both sage and secret. I shal tell you what we will do, here by is dwelling at the stang in the forrest a poore damsell, right faire and young, who hath to mother an ancient Lady, and I thinke verily she be a good maide: send vnto hir mother some of your money, & promise to doe much for her, so that she will lend you her daughter, for this first night to lie with Arthur till midnight be past.

And I thinke verily ye shal haue her, if she be wisely intrea-  
sed and secretly; & then if ye haue her, when Perron should  
be laide in the bed, she shall be in her steele till that Arthur  
be a sleepe, and then she shall rise, and so Perron shall lye  
downe by Arthur. Sir, said the Ladie, for Gods sake re-  
member to bring this matter about. Take my chariot and  
five hundred pounds of gold, and beare it vnto her mother,  
and shew her how I shall giue her large lands and rentes,  
and shall marrie her daughter right highly, so that I maye  
haue hir this night. When incontinently this knight leapt on  
his horse, and toke with him the golde and the Chariot, and  
caused it to be couered, and rode vnto the stang, whereas he  
found this faire Ladie and her daughter, & did salute them  
right curtesly, and drew them a part, and said to the La-  
die, Madame I am come hether to you from my ladie Luke  
of Estridge, who right tenderly sendeth greeting vnto you,  
as she that from hence forth will be your especiall louer &  
friend, and aboue all other will loue and honour you, and in  
the signe of loue she hath sent you five hundred pounds of  
golde: and furthermore promisseth to giue you great lands  
and goods, and to marie right highly Iehannet your daugh-  
ter, so that you will doe her that curtesie and pleasure now  
at this time, as to send your daughter to her, to the intent  
to lie this first night with Arthur of Britaine til midnight.  
For y<sup>e</sup> case is so, that Perron her daughter is not in so good  
point as she would she were, for she hath trespassed with a  
nother knight. Wherefore good Ladie I humbly require  
you for to be her speciall louer and friend in this matter, for  
great charitie it is for one Ladie to haue the worship & ho-  
nour of another. When said the Ladie, I thanke my Ladie  
Luke for the great loue and honour that she presenteth to  
me, if her wer either loue or honour in this case, sir knight  
as me thinketh, heere lacketh loue when she requireth my  
shame and dishonour, for she would that I should sell to  
her my daughter for her money, certainly that I shall not  
doe it. I do therefore I praye you beare her againe this  
money, and God giue her good adventure. When Iehannet  
said

said vnto her mother. Madame, for Gods sake be ye not dis-  
pleased with my wordes, for sauing your grace, the desire  
that this knight maketh is no selling of me, for my Ladie  
Luke is a great and noble Princesse. Wherefore her reproch  
should be more spoken of, then if she wer of a meane estate,  
and all women ought to endeauour to couer and hide such  
matters, and also to helpe and sustaine the blame & defame  
of other, and this Ladie requireth not your discredit, for she  
doth it to hide her owne dishonour. Truly daughter quoth  
the Ladie, the mother that demeaneth not wisely her childe  
is to be blamed, and if my Ladie Luke haue not kept this  
Ladie Perron her daughter, as curiously and as wisely as  
I haue done you, by the which negligence she is now run  
into folly and daunger, let her take it in godd worth & thank  
no bodie but her selfe. Madame said Iehannet, it is a hard  
thing to overcome youth, if this Ladie Perron haue done  
amisse, yet remember how she hath bene easily and sweetly  
nourished, and euery creature desirous to serue her flour-  
ishing youth. For Gods sake madame beholde the might  
of loue, by whom she was overcome, for she loued and was  
loued againe: remember also the greete ease wherein she  
hath all her youth bene nourished. In the which one came  
and put into her heart amorous loue. Madame if I tres-  
passe I aske mercie, for by the faith that I owe to you, I  
will fulfill the pleasure of my Ladie Luke, in sauing of her  
honour I shal put mine in jeopardy, howbeit sir knight, take  
againe your money, for if I should take money I should  
sell my bodie, the which I will not doe, for that I do is free-  
ly for the loue of my Ladie Luke, and she shall doe me good  
when it shal please her best. When her mother said to her,  
sith ye will needes doe as ye list, and if ye followe follie take  
the aduenture that will fall therof. For much better worth  
is a woman poore and true, than foolish and rich: ye shall  
not goe for me nor by my will. For honour surmounteth  
all things. Madame that ye saie is of troth, howbeit I re-  
quire you to suffer and let me alone. Sir Knight, let vs re-  
pare, we tarrie herie long: mine owne faire Damsell  
C. v. the

the knight, I humblye thanke you, and so certayne I ensure you ye shall be right highly rewarded, and thereto I will be pledge. When the knight left the gold there for all that Jehannet could doe: and so Jehannet mounted into the chariot and rode forth, and when they were come to the Court, the Ladie Luke receiued her priuely, and kept her till it was time to goe to bedde, and then priuely they laid Jehannet in the bed in the stead of Perron, and the curtains of the bed were hanged betwene the light and her, and then came Arthur and the Duke his Father, and then the Duke said, sonne Arthur, you shall giue to Perron your wife this night the Charter of her endowzie, wherein is comprised the land of the Citie of Saintes and of Pois, attaining to the bounds of Gasgoine. And also ye shall giue her this ring, with this rich and precious Emeraulde, this dowrie amounteth to the summe of ten thousand poundes by annuall rent, then it was time for Arthur to goe to bed, and when he was going thereto, the Ladie Luke saide to him, Dære sonne Arthur I requyre you that ye speake this night as little as ye maie to Perron my daughter, for she is somewhat shamesfast. Well madame quoth Arthur, with a right good will, and so he went to bed.

How Jehannet who was a bedde with Arthur in the stead of his wife Perron, before she would suffer him to touch her, demaunded her dowrie.  
Chap. 13.

**W**hen Arthur was thus a bed, he began to drawe nêre to his wife as he thought. When Jehannet counterfaited her speech, and saide softlye. Sir it is so ere ye touch me, I will know what shal be mine dowrie, I requyre you fir first assigne it to me first: then shall I be ready to fulfill all your commaundement. When Arthur take the Charter and the ring, and deliuered it to Jehannet, and saide, my Ladie Perron ye shall haue a faire dowrie, for it draweth nere to the summe of tenne thousand pound: and so did put the

the ring vpon one of her fingers: My right dære Lord saide Jehannet, I humblye thanke you, and so toke the Charter and the ring and laide them vp priuely vnder the beddes side. So thus was Jehannet most part of the night with Arthur in great ioie and mirth vntill the time that Arthur fell a slepe, for he had not slept of all the night before: and while that he thus slept, Jehannet priuely rose, and tooke with her the Charter of Perrons dowrie, and came to the Ladie Luke, and incontinent she was conueied againe priuely to the stang to her mother, and then was Perron put softly into the bed to Arthur, who waked not till it was faire daie, when he was waked he saue where Perron laie fast a slepe by him, for she had not slept of all the night till then.

How Arthur, Hector, and Gouvernar, went early in the morning to see Jehannet at the stang, who shewed vnto Arthur all the treason of his wife, & how that she had lien with him all that night in the stead of Perron, whereof he greatly meruailed. Chap. 14.

**A**ND when Arthur saue her so slepe, he let her lie, and rose faire and softly. And at that time there were none in all the Wallaice out of their beds, for it was about thre of the clocke, save onely Hector and Gouvernar, and when Arthur saue them he curteously bad them good morow, and said, sirs I praie you let vs leape vpon our horses, and goe see Jehannet, wherewith they said they were well content, & so rode forth til they came to the stang, at which time Jehannet was laide on her bedde in her clothes, and fallen a slepe, couered with a mantell of greene. But she awaked when she heard that Arthur was come, and rose vp halfe sleeping, and set her vpon her bed side, and therewith Arthur came into the chamber, & incontinently as she saw him, she wared greatly ashamed & blushed, & cast down her looke to the earth, wherof Arthur had great maruell & said, what cheere make you faire Jehannet, ye were wont to come clip & kisse me, and make me greate mirth, and nowe it sameth

ye be halfe aspid. what is the cause ye be risen so early, and  
 sleep this clothed on your bed. Sir said Jehannet I behaveth  
 me so to doe, for I was nere to my Lord and lover, when it  
 was convenient for me to rise: and how faire ladye was it  
 y<sup>e</sup> your lord howe doth not remain on stil, for I meruaile, y<sup>e</sup>  
 he would suffer you to rise from him so early, certainly, y<sup>e</sup>  
 when I rose he was a sleepe. Of w<sup>h</sup>che cause why did ye not  
 then wake him, certainly said she, I thought not to doe him  
 so much trouble: When it seemeth faire Jehannet that yeo  
 loue him, certainly that is moze true then all the world.  
 O faire Ladye, is that he which you haue said should marry  
 you, certainly sir, yea, and this night he hath lycn with me:  
 Well faire Ladye, I praye you what hath he given you for  
 your dowry, sir he hath endowed me right richly, for he hath  
 given me well nere ten thousand pound by annuall rent.  
 Ten thousand pound said Arthur that is a great gifte. It  
 seemeth then he is a right noble man and a rich, and hath  
 great friends, Perron my wife hath no greater a dowrie.  
 Sir I cannot tell what she hath, but I am put in possession  
 thereof by a charter and a faire ring: by my faith quoth  
 Arthur, the same possession haue I given Perron my wife.  
 But I pray you Jehannet shew me your charter & ring, sir  
 with a right good will. When she toke a booke that was at hir  
 beddes side and did open it and deliuered it to Arthur, and  
 when he sawe it, he knew right well the seale of his father,  
 and looked on the ring, and knew it right well, wherewith hee  
 greatly meruailed. When he called vnto him Perron  
 and Gouernar, and demaunded of them if they knew that  
 seale or not, sir said they, this is the seale of my Lord your  
 Father. O God quoth Arthur, w<sup>h</sup>che Jehannet tell me  
 where had you this King and Charter, or you deliuered it  
 out of your owne hands to mine. Of my deliuerance quoth  
 Arthur, I praye you saye ladye where was that, certainly  
 y<sup>e</sup> in your bed: in my bed, and when? as God helpe me sir  
 this same last night. And how faire ladye may I haue perfect  
 knowledge thereof: mine owne deere lord and loue, may it  
 please you to remember that when ye wer a lad you wold  
 haue

you had me to fulfill your pleasure: but first I desired of  
 you to know what shoulde be my dowrye, & you answere  
 me, that ye had given me the citie of Saintes and of Pois,  
 and all the countrie pertaining to the bounds of Gascoigne, &  
 this ring ye did put on my finger, and then deliuered mee  
 this charter. In the name of God quoth Arthur, these to-  
 kens beare witness, that all which you say is true: but I  
 requyre you w<sup>h</sup>che loue tell me how ye came into my bed?  
 Sir, knows ye for a truth, that Perron your wife was no  
 maide, for before this time she had bene faultie: and there  
 she shewed vnto him, how that ladye Luke of Arrige doub-  
 ted greatly to haue reproch, wherfore she sent sir Aunsell  
 her trustie knight vnto my mother and me, and sue hun-  
 dred pound of golde, all which is here as you may see: and  
 furthermore she shewed to him all the conference of the  
 knight and her mother, and how in conclusion she went to  
 the court, and by the ladye Luke was brought into his bed,  
 in stead of his wife Perron and how about midnight when  
 he was a sleepe, she pryncely rose from him, and then Perron  
 came into the bedde. When Arthur had heard all this pro-  
 cesse, he meruailed much thereat, howbeit he greatly reioi-  
 ced thereof in his heart, and friendlye embraced and kissed  
 Jehannet saying, faire loue, ye spake full true to me, when  
 you shewed me, that you had ben all night with your lover,  
 and truly so haue ye ben, for I assure you I am your faith-  
 full lover, and am right glad of this aduenture, for nowe  
 shall you abide still with me, and she that hath wrought  
 this treason against me shall depart with sorrow & shame,  
 therefore keepe surely this ring and charter, and when I  
 send for you, be not dismayed, but boldly come to me appa-  
 railed in the best manner that ye can, and your mother al-  
 so. Sir with a right good will saide Jehannet, howbeit I  
 require your noblenesse not to be discontent with me for  
 this dede, nor to thinke that I did it for anie wanton or  
 sensuall appetite, for I take god to recorde I did it for no  
 intent but onely for the singular loue that I haue to you, &  
 that by this meane you might haue knowledge of y<sup>e</sup> false  
 demea,

hame as you of your wife, for I would rather have suffered  
my selfe to have bene drawn with wilde horses, than I  
would have consented to have done this deed with any  
other creature living, for other fouer then you he, will I  
not have, nor ever had. O my dere Ladie lady Arthur, I  
pray God I live never longer if I should, for this matter  
thinks aile ill in you, for of right I ought to thanke you  
as much as any my pleasure in this world cometh to, for  
if you had not bene, I should have continued my daies  
with dolour and gelouste, wherof I am now discharged by  
your meanes. I wil now betterly forsake her companie, and  
so shall I live out of doubt and trouble, and you shall have  
me as faithfull and true as ever ye had, & better if it might  
be, and so right gently he took his leave and departed, and  
rode forth devising and talking with Hector and Gouvernar  
of this matter. And Hector saide to him, as God helpe me  
cousin Arthur this great treason that is done to you, shall  
surely be revenged, for by the grace of God, yet before Ea-  
ster nexte coming I will over runne her Countre with  
hanniers displayed, and leave standing neither Castell nor  
tower upright, but beate them downe to the earth, and by  
the faith that I owe unto God almighty, if she wer a man  
as she is a woman, I would neither eate nor drinke, till I  
had stricken her head from her shoulders. Well friend quoth  
Arthur, this matter must be wisely handled. So these gen-  
tle knightes rode forth, devising on this matter till they  
came to Bautes, and then they went to the Ballance, at  
which time all the Lords and knightes were ready appa-  
railed, and there was so great ioye and mirth, that it was  
meruaile to thinke thereon. When the Duke saw Arthur  
his son he began to smile, & demaunded of him whether his  
wife wer dead, nay he quoth y Carle of Anjou. I thinke she  
sleepeth fast in her bed, well my Lordes quoth Arthur faire  
& softly, ther are other things that ye know litle of, & to his  
father he said, Sir, & it please you, you have married me, & gi-  
ven me the charter of y dowrie of Perron my wife, & also  
a ring with a flaming Emeraude, Sir I know not whether  
there

there be in this charter any thing which ought to be am-  
ended, therefore I would not though otherwise come of me  
than well, that Perron should lose her dowrie for lacke of  
formall making. Therefore I require you let the charter be  
brought forth & read openly in the presence of mine Uncles  
and of the Archbishop, & if it ought to be amended, I beseech  
you let it be reformed by them: it is wel said son quoth the  
Duke, where is it? Sir said he, Perron hath it, for I deliv-  
red it her the last night. Let it be sent for good newewe said  
the Carle of Blois. When the ladie Luke and Perron wer  
brought forth to the duke, who said, daughter Perron, Ar-  
thur your husband hath a care for your profite, therefore  
bring forth y charter of your dowrie that Arthur gaue you  
this night, & if it ought to be reformed it shall be amended:  
Sir said Perron it sufficeth me verie well as it is, for I am  
therewith right well content: well daughter said the Duke,  
yet because it please me, let it be seene & read. Sir quod she,  
in truth I have it not, why wher is it then quoth the duke,  
surely said she, I have sent it by a trustie messenger into my  
owne countre. Well faire daughter quoth the Duke have  
you no doubt nor feare thereof, for here is none that would  
beguile you, and therefore bring it forth before me. Where-  
with Gouvernar stepped forth, his hart was so great for the  
wrong that was done to Arthur his master, that he coulde  
not abstain nor forbear any longer, but in open audience  
he said to the duke, Sir it is so that ye have married my lord  
your sonne to such a woman as ought not to be receiued in  
matrimonic with so great a gentleman as he is: for she is  
a woman dishonoured in everie noble mans Court, as one  
that hath abandoned her will unto another man, beside my  
lord Arthur, as it well appeareth, for she hath defiled her  
bodie with another knight: & therefore this night she cau-  
sed a damsell who was a true maid to lie by my lord: and to  
proove that this I saye is true, behold here this knight Sir  
Gunsell, who conveyed the damsell, and left with her mo-  
ther y C. pound in golde which the ladie Luke of Estridge  
sent unto him, and when he had brought this Damzell, she  
was

was laide in bed with my lord Arthur: but best she was not so foolish, but ere she would suffer him to touch her, she demaunded her dowrie, who deliuered to her the Charter and the ring thinking no ill: and to verifie this thing, send for the damsell, and then shall ye know by her own mouth all the troth how my Lord was betrayed. When incontinently this damsell was sent for and her mother also, & when Iohannet was come there, openly he declared all his matter, and shewed forth the charter and the ring. When was the Duke and Duchesse greatly dismaied, and all the other Lords and friends of Arthur. When slept forth sir Aunsell and cast his gloue against this damsell, saying, that he neuer went to fetch that maide, nor brought the foresaid manie to her, and that he would proue against anie that durst saie the contrarie. Therewith the gentle Hector came forth, and cast his gloue against the knight in the damselfs quarrell, and said he would proue that he falsly lied like a traitor: and as for you ladie Luke of Marige I assure you, ye haue not in all your countrie, castell nor tower so strong, but I will breake them downe to the earth, and from henceforth repute me for your enimie, for surely so I am & will be: and sir Duke I beseech you receiue my gloue against this knight, who hath falsely and traitterously deceiued my cousin Arthur. Sir quoth Gouvernar, ye shall not doe so, for it is against reason that so high a person as you be, shoulde haue battaile with such a false traitour, litle there be other to take the quarrell in hand: this matter toucheth my lord, and I am his man, and haue nourished him vp in his youth, therefore I ought to defende his right. Therewith he cast downe his gloue and said, most honourable Duke receiue my gage, and do iustice to my Lord your sonne, for I saie that this damsel saith true in euery thing, and this knight falsly lieth, and that I will proue with my bodie against his: and therewith the knight receiued Gouvernar's gage. And by the knights the battaile was iudged to be held the next daie following without anie longer delay.

How

How Gouvernar vanquished in battaile sir Aunsell, & caused him to confesse the treason, and how hee brought Iohannet from the stang to lie all night with Arthur. Cap. 15.



When the battaile was thus determined to bee on the next daie, Hector was not content in his minde, because his gage was not receiued, so in this manner for that daie they went to their rests: & the next morning betimes Arthur and Gouvernar, and al the other Lords his friends, went to Church to heare service, and there Gouvernar did first offer, and after him all the rest, and when the service was ended, Arthur led Gouvernar to his chamber to bee armed. When hee was surely armed he leapt on a mightie courser, and Arthur and Hector were armed and mounted on their horses to keep the field, to the intent that ther shuld

D.

be

he no treason, & the Earle of Blois went to the place where as they shoulde fight, by that time was sir Aunsell armed, & came into the place, so then ther was brought forth a booke, whereon Gouvernar did sweare that falsly and vntruly he bannet the damsell of the strang, was brought by sir Aunsell vnto the court, & by his aduice put into the bed to Arthur, in stead of Perron his wife, and when he had thus sworne, he kissed the booke, and rose vp like an hardie knight. When sir Aunsell did sweare with great feare and trouble, howe that Gouvernar said by him vntruly, and he rose with great trouble and paine, so that all the people which saw him said that he had an euill countenaunce and seemed to bee in the wrong. When they were both mounted on their horses, it was cried by an Herald of armes that each of them shoulde do their best. When said Arthur to Gouvernar, now my good friend, acquite you like a valiant knight, and so these two drew a part either from other, & placed their speares in the rests, and dashed their spurs to their horses sides, and met together so fiercely that they broke their speares to theyr hands like hardie knights, and full of great valure, howbeit sir Aunsell was not to be compared with Gouvernar, for Gouvernar had ben a man greatly renowned: and after the breaking of their speares they past by, but speedely returning, they set their hands to their swords, and Gouvernar stroke sir Aunsell so fiercely, that he brake his shield to the buckle, and brake a greate parte of his harnais, so that the sword entered deepe into the flesh, & sir Aunsell stroke Gouvernar againe on the helme, and brake with the stroke many barres therof, and the stroke glaunced downe on the left side, and tooke awaie a great part of his harnais to the saddle, but God kept him that it entred not into the flesh. When Gouvernar flourished about his sword, and stroke sir Aunsell on the top his helme, and cut it to the hard circle of the Steele, and the stroke glanced downe by the shield so furiously that he clane it to the middell, and with the stroke the sword did light on the necke of his horse, wherewith being soe wounded, he fell downe to the earth, when sir Aunsell felt

felt his horse fallen vnder him, he leapt on his feete with his sword in his hand, wherefore he was of some greatly praised, and other did greatly commend the stroke of Gouvernar. But when Gouvernar saw him on the earth, he thought not to run on his enimie with his horse, he being of foote, therefore incontinently he did alight downe on foot, and put his shield before him, and went toward his enimie, and gaue him such a stroke that he cut awaie part of his cheeke, and the stroke descended to his shoulder, & wounded him to the hard bones, wherewith sir Aunsell was constrained to kneele and well nere to fall. When all the Lordes said that there was none could long endure the strokes of Gouvernar, and therewith Arthur laughed heartely, so that Gouvernar heard him, wherby his heart doubled in courage. When sir Aunsell felt himselfe thus hardly bestead, he swore in his mind that he would be auenged of that stroke, and therewith lift vp his sword to haue striken Gouvernar, but when he sawe the stroke coming, he put his shield before him & marked well how sir Aunsell had his arme aloft, and with a crosse blow he stroke him vnder the armour so strongly, that his arme and sword and all flew into the field. Wherewith sir Aunsell had so much paine y he fell to the earth in a trance, and Gouvernar leapt to him to haue striken off his head, but he cried for Gods sake for mercie. Then came the duke and Arthur, Hector, and other Lordes and knights, and in the presence of them all he recounted all the treason, and howe that he went for Jehannet, & brought her to his lady Luke, and how that he was of counsaile that she should be laid in bed with Arthur in the stead of Perron. When he had iudgement for his trespass as he hadde deserued, and Gouvernar was led home by Arthur and Hector, and vnarmed, whome they found without anie hurt, whercof they thanked God, & Jehannet had as great ioy as anie creature could haue, and she embraced and kissed Gouvernar oftentimes with merry hart. When all the other Earles and Barons came to Gouvernar, and demanded him how he dyd. He answered & said, right well thanked be God, & that he felt no hurt,

the same very houre the Ladie Luke departed sodainly out of the court, and her daughter Perron with her, greatly ashamed, and when they were in the field on their waie, the Ladie Luke said vnto her daughter. This great shame that we haue hast thou caused, soz now we shall neuer haue honour, noz be reputed honourable, and therewith bitterly she wept, whereof Perron toke so great inward thought, that she died within xx. daies after, and so thereby Arthur was again at liberty, and Jehannet from thenceforth remained still in the Court with the Dutchesse, and was right well beloued with euerie creature, and the Duke and Dutchesse were well content that she shuld keepe still the dowrie that Arthur had giuen her, and so she kepte it till such time as Arthur caused her to be a crowned Queene, and gaue her Gouvernar in marriage, as it is moze plainly shewed in this present booke.

How Arthur demaunded licence of his father and mother to depart out of his owne Countrie, for he would go seeke aduentures, to shew thereby his force and prowesse.  
Chapter. 16.

**A**fter the end of fiftene daies, tidings came vnto the duke and Arthur that the faire Perron was deceased & departed out of this world, of which tidings Arthur had great ioy, and especially Jehannet, howbeit the Duke soz his honoz and wo2ship, caused her obsequie to be kept right solempnly in the Church, & then after this the court departed, & euery man repaired in to their owne countries, sauing onely Hector, who remained still with Arthur, & so in great ioy they continued with the Duke, and Arthur when it pleased him toke his pleasure with the faire Jehannet. It soztuned on a night that Arthur, Hector, and Gouvernar, were all thre lodged in one chamber, and that night Arthur was soze troubled in his slepe, and turned and sighed many times. So that Hector and Gouvernar heard him, and saide each to other, Arthur is

is not well at ease, let vs goe wake him: and then Gouvernar waked him & asked him what he ailed. A friende Gouvernar said Arthur, I haue bene soze troubled in my sleepe, soz I dreamed that I was farre out of this Countrie. Arthur said Hector, we ought to go into straunge countries, soz he hath this time yee haue promised to doe, therefore let your minde no longer to carrie at home, but shortly let vs depart: as God help me cosin said Arthur, the daies come, so that if I might haue the cite of Paris I would tarry no longer, soz to morrow will I aske licence of my father and of my mother, and will haue with me no moze companie but you and Gouvernar, and Iaket my Squire. Sir sayde Gouvernar, ye saie well, soz a young man without paine is little wo2th, howbeit I doubt me greatly that ye shall get no leane. Merily said Arthur, I will assaie to morrow, and so they laie still all that night till it was daie. When arose Arthur and his companie, and when the Duke was vp, Arthur came befoze him with his hat in his hand, and kneeled dovvne to the earth, and humble required both his father and mother that it would please them to giue him licence to trauaile a season out of that countrie, wherewith in their mindes they were soze displeased, & intreated him as much as they might to leaue this enterprise, but in no wise they could turne his minde, and at the last with soze weeping they gaue him licence, and enquired of him with whom he would be accompanied. Might dere father, I will haue no other companie, but onely my cosin Hector and Gouvernar, and Iaket my Squire. Well some said he, sith ye will not abide here with your gold and siluer at your pleasure. Then Gouvernar came to Arthur and demaunded of him what space it would be, he would returne into his owne countrie. Shortly quoth Arthur, the space of five yeaeres. So then and so these tidings were spread abroade in the court, and all about the countrie, how that Arthur would depart, and tarrye out five yeaeres, and at the last Jehannet hearde thereof, where with all her bloud trembled, and she ran out of her chamber to the Pallace whereas the Duke and Dut-

cheste were together weeping, and then she perceined well how it was truth, wherewith her life nere failed, and she fell downe in a deadly trance in the armes of her mother, and being reuiued, she cried and said, O Arthur my sweet loue, with this iourney shall thy poore Dyphane lose her good Lord and chiefe father: Ah Arthur my deare heart wil ye thus leave mee? When the Duke sawe her make this great lamentation, his hearte melted, and he rendered many salt teare from his eyes, and in this season Gouvernar prepared all such necessarie thinges as was needfull for their iourney. When Arthur toke leave of his father and mother, who were right sorrowfull of his departing, then he went to Jehannet to take his leave of her, and as soone as she sawe him she ranne and toke him in her armes, and said right sorrowfully, O good sir, the sale of my heart, and the comfort of my life, how can you finde in your heart to leane me poore Dyphane? When Arthur heard her speake so lamentable, it touched his heart nerer then all the sorrow both of his father and mother, and of all his kinne. But finally he commended her to God, and said, I sweete Madie I require you to praye to God for me, for I promise you if I live I will doe more good and honour then euer yet I did, and so kissing her sweetly he departed, and mounted on his horse, being in a garment covered all with greene, gilt about with a red lase, and both hee and Hector, and Gouvernar, were all in adute in scarlet hosen, and each of them a garland on their heads, like young lustie lovers. They rode so long till they were out of the Towne, then Arthur entered into a great thought, and rode musing along space, which when Hector sawe, he called Gouvernar to him, and said, friend, see ye not how Arthur is ethenough? I thinke it best we awake him out of his thought, as there with Hector called Arthur, and demanding of him what hee aimed to ride so sadly, and when Arthur hearde him, hee turned his head to him, and saide, Cousin I praye you come ride heere by my side, and you Gouvernar on the other side, being both with them besayde, friends I have mused all this

this while of my dreame that I hadde the last night when ye awaked mee, I tolde you parte and not all, and surelie it is the chiefe cause wherefore I haue taken vpon mee this iourney: Harken to mee and I shall shewe you my whole dreame, for I can hide nothing from you: this last night when I was in my first sleepe, me thought I was in the most fairest Pallace in all the world, where I sawe a fresh Fountaine, and me thought the beautie of it caused mee to sit downe on the brymme thereof, and with the faire cleere water thereof washed my face and handes: finally I cast by mine eyes alofte, and on my right hand me thought I sawe the richest pavillion pight that euer was scene, and in the toppe of this Pavillion was an Eagle of golde, the richest and fayrest that coulde be devised, and me thought I sawe this Eagle come downe and light on my bosome, and shewed me so greate a signe of loue, that it pleased mee so much, as I could not bee satisfied with beholding thereof, and me thought it flickered about me with her winges, in token of greate affection, and at the last me thought I sawe come to mee ward, a greate Griffon foule and horrible, and he brought with him a greate multitude of Serpents, wherewith all the earth about me was couered, and would haue taken from me mine Eagle, who was asfearde, and kept her euer by mee, and looked on mee louinglic, as though she would haue said, Arthur keepe mee. And then me thought I tooke my sword in my hande, and fought with this Griffon and all these serpents, by whome mee thought I suffered much paine and greate perill, but at the last me thought there came a Turtle to helpe mee, and brought with her manie Doves. And out of another parte I sawe where came a Sparhawk, accompanied with many falcons, and all these did succour me, so that we flew the Griffon and all the other serpents, and sodainely me thought that the Eagle, and the Turtle, and I, were in a high tower, and both you and Hector and Gouvernar with me, and by vs my thought people without number, then me thought there was a Lyon and foure greate Leopardes,

and all they did encline themselves to me ward, and did me great honour, and they were all crowned with golde, & me thought they gaue the Eagle frelpe to me, and she pleased me so well that I woulde neuer haue departed by my will from her companie, and euer sith I awaked, my heart and loue hath bene let on that Eagle, that I cannot drawe my minde from her, for I loue her so entirely, that so long as I liue I shall neuer cease to labour and trauaile till I haue found her, and is the verie cause wherefore I am departed out of mine owne countrie. Merlie sir said Gouvernar, this betokeneth that great honour shall come to you, for ye know well the Lion, who as ye thought did giue you the Eagle, is a beast rotall. For the Lion is the king of all beasts, and the Eagle is king of all foules. So the signification thereof is, that a King shall giue you a Quene, howbeit great paine shall be first suffer: & the Griffon that wold haue taken your Eagle, betokeneth some great man that wold haue her that shall be giuen to you, and therefore it shall behoue you to conquere her with the sword, and I Gouvernar your seruauant am hee that neuer will faile you while I liue, no more will I cosin said Hector, by the faith that I owe vnto my Lord my father. Friends said Arthur I heartely thank you, and so they rode forth on their waie, and because yee shall vnderstand the signification of the Eagle and the Lyon, therefore we will leaue speaking of Arthur & his companie a while, riding on their iourney, and ye shall heare of this Eagle till time serue that we retourne againe to Arthur.

How the mightie king of Sorolois called Emendus, held open Court in his Realme, where as was foure puissant kings, who were all his subiects, where yee shall heare of things meruailous. Chap. 17.

Wont the time that Arthur thus rode as ye haue heard here before, there was in the realme of Sorolois a king, the which realme is in the more, ioyning to the great sea

sea called Byzthinium, and also to the red sea betwixt Mesopotamia and Persia. This king was called Emendus, being right puissant of honour and friends, for he hadde vnder him foure Kings, mightie and valiaunt, who were to him obedient, and held all their Realmes of him. The first of the first was the King of Aquenie, which land is on the one side of Babylon, and extendeth to the red sea, and this Countrie was full of Gyants. The second was King of the Realme of Mozmall, which is in the land of Sodome and Gomorre, and it extendeth to the region ioyning to the red sea: & this King might well bring into battaille more then a hundred fighting men. The third had the government of the realme of Alefound, a verie obscure and darke land, the people whereof are as blacke as sofe, and it extendeth into the Orient, whereas the Sunne riseth, the which people were greatly feared in battaille, for they were without pittie, and did eat rawe flesh like dogges. The fourth king was of the realme of Ismaelite, which extendeth into Egypt, and vnto the land of Semene. These four kings were subiects to the mightie king of Sorolois, Emendus, who had to wife a noble Ladie named Fenice, by the reason of the countrie that she was borne in. For it was named Fenicia, because in that countrie bred a birde that was called Phenix, and in all the world there is neuer but one, and as it is said when she is olde & auncient, ther maketh her nest of drie thornes on the toppe of an high mountaine, as nere the Sunne as she can, so that by the heat of the Sunne the nest quickeneth and flameth on fire, and then she burneth her selfe, and of her ashes there is another Phenix ingendered. This Ladie Fenice wife to King Emendus, was Quene by inheritance of the clere Tower, the which was a noble and rich Citie, and by great force hadde subdued the Citie of Comeine, of Constantinople, of Coznite, of Macedonie, of Phelale, of Boeme, & of all the Countrie of Denmark. She was a right high and mightie Princesse, and both good and vertuous, so that it was hard to haue founde one Ladie comperable to her: and it fortun'd in the freie

and merrie moneth of Maie, at the feast of Pentecost, that King Emendus held open Court at the Citie of Coynis, at the which feast were these foure afoze said Kings, and all the leauen Peers of his Realme, and this feast was great, & the Court full of people, & the first daie of this feast the king Emendus was in his Pallace leaning on a Scepter of gold y he helde in his hand, and about him there stood these foure Kings, and his leauen Peeres, accompanied with the high and mightie Duke of Alatre, and yviii. Carles, and his noble Quene Jfenice sate by him great with child, and nere to the time of her deliuerance, and the king of Arquency beheld her well, who was her nere cosin, and said: Madam me thinke it should bee meter for your grace from hence forth to drawe to that place where the king will that you shall take your chamber, for I thinke your time appoacheth on fast. In dede cosin said the Quene, yee saie right truly, howbeit I knowe not as yet where my Lorde will that I shall lie. Where to the king answered and said: In dede as yet I am not determined in what place yee shall lie in. When said the king of Poymall, who was a sage Prince, sir I wil counsaile you to let the quene lie at the Port Poire, & when she is deliuered, let the child be bozne to the hil of adventures, & if ye do thus, I think ye shall do wisely. By my faith quoth y King of Walesound I know not what to saie in this matter, whether it were best to heare the childe thether or not, for this is your first childe, and it is harne to tell what destinie the child shall haue, for if it be good, then were it well done that it were bozne thether, but peradventure the adventures of this childe may be such that it were better it were hidden & kept secrete, then be openlie known. For in chaunce lieth oftentimes as well euill as good. Wel quoth the King Emendus, Madam I will that yee goe to the Port Poire, and when ye be deliuered I will haue the child bozne bp to the mount perillous, there to know what destinie the childe shall haue.

The

The description of the scituation and fashion of the mount Perillous, which was conquered by the prowesse of Arthur. Chap. 18.



In this mount Perillous there was a Castle named the Port Poire, this castle was right strong and of greate surenesse, & it was ordained by Mederpina, who was one of the Queenes of the Fairie, and the scituation of this castle was such, that ten leagues of length there ran a greate river about the circuit of this castle, which was so deep fro the earth, & bankes so high, that scant the water might be seene running vnderneath, & it ran so swiftly, that whosoever entered into it, was utterlye perished, it was blacker then Smiths water, and smelled loathsomely: Also it was full of craggie and sharpe Rocks, & swarming with vermin,

bermine, this river enuironed the Castle on euerie side: ad-  
topping to this river there was about the castle moun-  
taines so high, that no creature could attaine to the toppe of  
them, neither on horsebacke nor on foote, and they were so  
bare and hard, that the birdes with great paine could scant  
raise or get any grasse, or sustenance on them, & among these  
mountaines there was a passage about the largenesse of a  
chariot waie, whereby one might go and enter into the ca-  
stle, and in certaine places there were Barbicanes that de-  
fended the entrie from all people, and vnder these moun-  
taines there was a great marrish deepe and soule, so that  
none might enter into it, but incontinent he was lost and  
perished, for there were pits of water innumerable, so that  
it seemed in a maner to be an arme of the sea, howbeit ther  
was neither barke nor ship that might abide in it: and this  
marrish was so deepe, that it might well bee thought that  
it attained downe to the depth and entrailes of the earth,  
the which marrish endured well nigh the largnesse of two  
leagues, wherein there was a passage of the breadth of a  
Speare length, made by Pigromancie, wheron there were  
thirtie or awe bridges: and so this marrish enuironed the  
castle ouer all partes, and the mountaines compassed the  
marrish, and the rivers the mountaines, so that it was im-  
possible to be assaulted, besieged, or wonne: The castle also  
was closed with double walles made of chalke stone and  
sand, and great barres and crampones of yron and Steele fir-  
ed in Lead: the Walles were xv. fote thicke, and xxx. of  
height, enuironed with three hundred Towers, cramped &  
knit together with great chaines of yron, & the bulwarkes  
were bended and bordered with Steele: So saie the trouth,  
this castle of the port Noyre, doubteth not al the world: & in  
this castle wer halls of strange adventures, where no crea-  
ture might enter without death, and many knights had  
there perished, which took on them to vndoe the enchan-  
tments of that place, but in conclusion all such there died &  
finished their mortall liues: for none could ever bring the  
adventures to an end, save onely Arthur of Britaine, as ye  
shall

shall after heare. And before the gates of this Castle, a li-  
tle higher on the hill, there were pallaices, halls, and cham-  
bers, with great and high strong battlements, whereas  
four Kings might well haue bene harboured, and to these  
pallaices men might go surely without anie perill, for the-  
ther came all such as passed through the Countrie: and out  
of this pallaice, men might go to the mount of adventures,  
whereas the four Quenees of the Fairie walked euerie  
night, and did much hurt to them that came there agaynst  
their wills: and to this hill accustomedly these ladies came  
nightly. The chiefe of them was called Proserpina a fresh  
young ladie, and faire without comparison: for if the beau-  
ties of all the women in the world had bene ioyned toge-  
ther in one person, yet she should not haue had the fourth  
part of y<sup>e</sup> beautie that Proserpina had, who was y<sup>e</sup> quene  
and ladie of the other three, and the chiefe ladie of this Ca-  
stell of the port Noyre, and of the mount perillous, wher-  
as she had pight a rich pavilion with a displaid Eagle of  
golde on the top thereof, which was the same Eagle that  
Arthur saw in his dreame: and in an other Tent by, was  
the white shield of the Fairie, and the good sword named  
Clarence, which shield was of such force and might, that it  
could not be impaired, neither with yron, nor Steele, nor a-  
nie other thing. The which shield was ordained to helpe no  
creature, but onely him whom it was destined vnto, & the  
sword should not be pulled out of the sheathe to helpe anie  
man, but onely by him that it was predestinate vnto.

Howe it was determined that the Queene Fenice  
should take her chamber in the pallaice beside the  
castell of the port Noyre. Cap 19.

Thus as you haue heard before the mightie King Men-  
ous agreed that Fenice his Quene should lye in childe-  
bed at the port Noyre, and that her childe should be borne  
up

bp to the mount of aduentures, and he ordained that the King of Diquenie her cousin Germaine should goe with her, and the Archbishop of Coynite, who was brother to the King Emendus, and also the Duke of Jsmelite, and manie other Ladies and Damselfs, Lodes and Knights, should accompanie the Queene Fenice. And there they made to the Kings and the prieres of the Realme faithfull assurance, that they would make true report of euerie thing, that they should heare or see in the mount of aduentures. And also the King Emendus and the twelue prieres sware and made faithfull assurance, that whatsoeuer should be determined of that childe, they would not withstande in ante point the chilles destinie, but keepe & maintaine the childe, like the sonne of a King: and of this promise there was made a Charter, sealed by King Emendus and the twelue Prieres of his realme, which was deliuered into the keeping of the Archbishop of Coynite. And by that time they were readie to heare service, which finished, the tables were layed, and they were serued right richly, as it appertained to the honour of such a noble King: and this feast and triumph endured the space of fiftene daies. Then the King Emendus did giue great plentie of golde and silver, horse and harnels to Lodes and Knights, & euerie person after their degree, and so euerie man repaired into their owne countries, and the Queene Fenice prepared all her necessities to remoue to the mount perillous. And so shee toke her leaue of the King, and toke with her all such companie as you haue heard declared heere before, and laboured so long in her iourney, that at the last she arrived at the Port Poyze, and went to the pallace before the gate of the Castle, and there she remained, till in proceffe of time she was brought a bedde of a verie faire daughter. When the Archbishop toke the childe bp in his armes, and went therewith to the mount perillous, and with him was the King of Diquenie, and the Duke of Jsmelite.

And when they were alone on the Hill, they founde a faire

faire & godly ground, where also was a meruailous faire Fountaine, and rounde about there were set foure riche chaires, and on euerie fountaine there was pight a stone, wherein there was ordained a place for a childe to lie in, in the which place they layed faire and easely this noble child: and then they withpzeue themselves into a priue place there by her, to see what should fortune after. When anone it began to were darke, and within a little space they saw where there came foure of the fairest Ladies in the world, two and two together with great torches and lightes before them, being all crowned with gold like noble quenes: the first was so excellent faire that the beauties of the other three were nothing to be compared to her, who was the queene and ladie ouer the other three, and the Castle of the Port Poyze pertained to her, and also the faire Pavillion with the Eagle of golde, wherein was an Image holding in her hands a chaplet made of paunces, the which Image in all points resembled this faire Queene Proserpina: wherein was also the white shield and sword inchaunted, the which pavillion was not farre pight from the fountaine whereas this childe was laid.

Then these foure Queenes wrapped in mantellets of silke, satte downe in the saide foure chaires, and the childe was in the middest betweene them all foure.

How the Daughter of the mightie King Emendus, and of Fenice his Queene, had her destinie tolde ouer the Fountaine in the arbor of the mount perillous by foure Queenes of the fairie, the chiefe of them was named Proserpina, who was the most fairest creature then of all the world.

The xx. Chapter,

When



Then this Quene Proserpina beganne first and said : I perceine well, here is the daughter of our deere friende the king Emendus, whom he hath sent hether to vs with great triumph, therefore it is good reason that we doe him our good & pleasure. Madame said the other three quenes, begin you, and we shall followe. Certainly said she, with a right good will : First, I wil that this childe be named Florence, and that she be the floure of beantie of all other creatures, as long as ever she shall live, so I will that she resemble me both in face, bodie, and countenaunce, and in all other things so like, that whosoever shall see vs both together, shall not be able to picken the one from the other: and also to her I give this my Castle of the port Royre, & my pavilion with the Image holding the chaplet, and also my white shield and sword : and therewith she held her peace. When

Then the second Quene said : Madame sith that yee have made her, so he faire without comparison, I will also that she shall be gracious and pitiable. Well quoth the thirde Quene, sith I see that she shall be exceeding faire and gracious without comparison, and in a while sith shee shall have your countenaunce, and your shield and sword, I wil that she be the best knight of the world: that he have her in marriage, and that he shall beare the white shield, and the sword, and that they shall helpe no other creature but alonely him, and I will that he shall achieve the adventures of this Castle, and put to death Sir Igraine the monster, and to him I give the shield and the sword, and the Chaplet that the Image holdeth in the Pavillion, and also I will that hee shall have this maid, Florence in marriage. When the fourth Quene said, well offer sith yee have given this maid to the best knight of the world, I will then that if any other be so bold to take her, that instant he shall die before he have power to touch her. And therewithall these Quenes arose and went their waies. When the quene of Gualtere and the king of Brekeney, and the Archbishop take the childe and bare it to her mother, and there openly recounted to her all that they heard & sawe of these quenes of the Fairie. When the Archbishop did christen this childe, and named her Florence, and the quene of Gualtere and the king of Brekeney held her on the fount, the which childe was brought up by fourre nurses, and she grew and prospered daile so, that she was like to be the fairest creature of the world: when the quene was purified shee went to the Citie of Sabba, whereas the king Emendus was accompanied with his kings, and the sequen of his realme. And this was the first time that he kept a great open Court. When the king was come the king mother with great triumph, and he was led forth to the hall with a king and an Archbishop, and there openly they recounted all the destinie of the childe, and how that she should be given in marriage to the best knight of all the world. And when they had said this, they did sit downe, and after that they had dined, they did sit downe againe, and after that they had dined, they did sit downe againe, and after that they had dined, they did sit downe againe.

How the king of Valence sent his sonne to the child of  
of Sabba, to be brought up in the court of  
Florence, and Chap. 21. and how the king of  
this time the king of Maladour had a sonne who  
was named Steven, and he was sent to Maladour to be  
nourished and brought up in the court of Florence. And  
so these two children were brought up together to long till  
this child Steven could go to school. Then the king of Maladour  
sent him to the school of Athens to learne. And by pro-  
cess of time this child learned so well, and so profoundly,  
that he became a most mighty clerk, specially in French and  
and in governance that in no part there could be found a  
man like him in cunning. When the king of Maladour did send  
for him to be in his Court. And Florence desired of her fa-  
ther that he might be her clerk, and of her counsaile, and the  
king in this right good will granted to her request, & Flo-  
rence loved him right well, so he served her nobly and  
truly, and she had after great need of him, as ye shall hear  
more plainly when time shall serve to speake thereof.

How the Queene Fenice, mother to Florence died,  
and how she made her Testament, giving to her  
daughter a Ring, putting her thereby in possession  
of the realme of Blanchetours. Chap. 22.

Then this Queen Fenice loved exceedingly her daughter  
Florence, who was the most fairest creature that at  
then could be found in all the world. For there was none  
that ever saw her, but incontinently they were ravished  
with her beauty: yet the Queen her mother was so  
dearly that there were but few that saw her face, for  
her, for the king her father, for he was so old, and  
would have gone, and in this manner she was kept till she  
was eighty years of age. When it was told on a certain  
that this king Emericus had a son, and that he was  
to him were come all his other kings & barons, at which  
time

time the queene his wife was right sore grieved with a fe-  
ver, and her health impaired more & more: & so the second  
day of this feast the noble queene Fenice as she lay in her  
bed, sawe whereas her daughter Florence stood weeping be-  
fore her bed, where with she began to make a pittifull  
lamentation, and said: Ah my daughter Florence, I have  
kept and cherished you untill this date with great hono-  
ur, and now the time is come that I must needs leave you,  
and I feare me that after my death ye will have need of me,  
and therewith she sent for the king Emericus her hus-  
band, and for the other four kings, and for all the seaven Peeres  
of the Realme, and when they were all come into her pre-  
sence, she said to king Emericus her husband: Right noble  
Lord, I am sure the destiny of your daughter Florence is  
not out of your remembrance, therefore now in my last  
daies I humbly require you that ye will keepe and uphold  
the promise and oth which you made in that behalfe her to-  
fore, to the which you are bound by your seale and writing,  
and suffer her never to be given to any other Lord in mar-  
riage but to him that she is predestinate unto. In the name  
of God quoth the king, madame I faithfully assure you to  
uphold all that I have promised: wel then to you first, quoth  
the queene to the other kings, & seuen peeres: Now say ye,  
will ye all uphold the same? & all they answered that they  
would never agree to the contrarie. Then the queene took  
a ring from her finger and openly she said: Florence my  
faire daughter, I give you my realme of Blanchetours, &  
put you in possession thereof by this ring: and Florence took  
the ring and delivered it to the Archbishop her uncle to  
keepe. When the queene said to the King of Ardenne, and  
to the Archbishop: My Lordes, I leave in your hands my  
deere daughter Florence, praying you to keepe her well &  
truly, so sir Bishop she is your own niece, & to you sir king  
of Ardenne, she is both cousin & God-daughter, therefore ye  
ought to take good heed unto her: & of you my owne deere  
lord & of my husband, & all other, I humbly require pardon for  
every thing wherein I have trespassed against any of you,  
C. ii. beseeche

bestowing you all to sale for my soule, and to the redemption  
the blessed Trinitie, I commit you, either with the mark  
her with the signe of the crosse, and commend her spirit to  
God, and therewith losse her speech and most all life. When  
began in the Court so greut sorrow and lamentation that  
it was lamentable to behold and heard, for the King possi-  
red sooth abundance of teares, and all other that were there  
present, and Florence right pittously cried and said, alas  
sorrowfull and poore Dyphane that I am, O my hart why  
doest thou abide and linger in my wofull bodie. Alas  
Ladie and mother, how is it that you be thus gone, I leaue  
behinde you your so sweet daughter Florence, her with  
the wrong her little whippings and said, Alas sorrowfull  
and desolate creature, and were with would have gone and  
killed the dead corse of her mother, but her heart failed her,  
and she fell down to the earth in a deadly faint. And there  
one was so full of sorrow, that no bodie took heed of  
the wofull Florence, till at the last the Archbishoppe and  
master Steuen took her up in their armes, and so remoued  
her, and bare her out of the sight of the dead corse, and then  
to her there came the Abbess of our Ladies monestarie in  
that Citie, and all her consent for to comfort her. And these  
sorrowfull tidings anon ranne ouer all the Citie, where  
for all the bells in the Church began to ring, and every  
creature made greut lamentation for the death of the queene,  
and the king caused her bodie to be kept about the Redoubt  
xx. daies, for to abide for the Barons and Knights of the  
kealing of Blaunche tower, to the intent they might see at  
the entering of their queene and Ladie.

How the Queene Felice, mother to Florence was no-  
ticed in the inferred.

About the end of xx. daies ther came a knight to King  
Emendus from the Emperour of Inde the more, who had  
beene slayned by the hand of the French, and he departed  
this transitory life, and he desired the King to pro-  
long

long daies more the Obsequie of the Quene, for he  
sent word that he would be with him by that time, wherof  
the King Emendus was verie gladd, that so high a person  
as the Emperour was, would take the paine to be at the  
burying of the Quene his wife. And at the daie of his com-  
ming he was receiued right honourable, and then the ser-  
uice was ministered to the dead bodie full solemnly, and she  
was laide in the Cathedrall Church of the Citie. And this  
Emperour abode there a great space afterwarde with the  
King, to the intent to ease him of his great sorrowe: and  
all the other Kings, Charles, and Barons, departed euerie  
man into his owne Countrie, and also the Archbishop re-  
turned to Comite, and took his leaue of the King his bro-  
ther, and carried with him Florence his Peere. So Flo-  
rence took leaue of the King her Father, and of the Empe-  
rour, being then all bedewed with teares, and not apparai-  
ng as appertained to her estate, but after the manner of a  
sorrowfull mourner. Wherbest in the state she was in, she  
was of great beautie, wherby this Emperour was stricken  
with such iole that he was almost in an extasie: and from  
thence forth he loued and desired Florence so much, that he  
thought on nothing, but onely on her. And thus departed  
Florence with the Archbishop her vncle, and traiailed so  
long till at the last she arriued at Comite on a fridaie about  
the houre of enen long time and there was receiued honou-  
rable, and remained ther a great season. And master Steuen  
euer serued her well and truly, and she trusted more in him  
than any other after the death of the Quene her Mother.

How the Emperour of Inde the more, demaunded of King  
Emendus the faire Florence his daughter in marriage, &  
of the answere that King Emendus made to him. And  
also of the tearme that was taken to marrie Florence in,  
and how master Steuen knew by regarding of the Pla-  
nets that there was comming out of the West a knight,  
who should atchieue the aduentures of the Port Noire,  
E.iii. and

and how he should haue and in by the white sheeld, and  
 to be his Florence in marriage, where with she was great-  
 ly comforted, for in no wife shee loued the Emperour.  
 Chap. 24. *Then the Emperour abode still with the king Emendus,  
 and departed together from Pontopore, and went to  
 Macedonia, but euer the Emperour was in greates trouble  
 and thought for the lme that he had to Florence, so that the  
 king Emendus being much of him what hee wiled to bee, so  
 sayd, and the Emperour answered and said, I will tell you  
 the troth, for I cannot send to you a more certaine messen-  
 ger then my selfe, because ye may beleue my saying rather  
 then anie other meane messengers. For it is so that you be  
 a Prince of great power; and also it is well knownen that  
 my strength is not small, for I thinke now we two are in a  
 manner the greatest men that raigne in anie place of the  
 world. Wherefore it shall be a great comoditie for vs to  
 continue together as faithfull friends, and truelye from  
 hence forth I will be your friend & familiar. For certain it  
 is, that I am a man vnmarried, and I thinke I can set my  
 lone in no place so well as on Florence your daughter, ther-  
 fore here in mine owne person I desire of you to haue her  
 in marriage. And sir quoth the king it may not bee, for shee  
 may haue no other marriage but that which she is destin-  
 ed vnto, for if that anie other presume to take her shee shall  
 presently die, and also I haue sworn and set to my seale to  
 vpholde her destinie, and neuer to breake it. Sir sayde the  
 Emperour, beleue you then the fantasies of the Fairies,  
 surely they haue no power nor might, but I require you to  
 giue mee your daughter, and so wee shall bee together as  
 friends: truelye sir said the king I would bee gladd there-  
 of, but I promised my Queene to keepe faithfullie the  
 promise that I made. In the name of God sayde the  
 Emperour, sir your Queene is dead and past, and will ne-  
 ver retourne againe, nor complaine of you for the brea-  
 king of anie couenaunt made to her, and there is none  
 other*

other that will bee so hardie as to reprove your deede, for  
 if they doe they shall leese their heades: wherefore sir I  
 require you to fulfill my desire, and then ye shall binde mee  
 to be your faithfull friend, well sir quoth the king, if my  
 Daughter bee content therewith, it shall please me right  
 well, wherefore let vs ride to morrowe towarde Coznite,  
 and speake with her and knowe her minde in this matter:  
 So be it in the name of God quoth the Emperour. And on  
 the next daie betimes they leapt on their horses and rode  
 forth to Coznite, and rode so long that on a wednes daie  
 they arriued at the Citie of Coznite, and went to the Pal-  
 laice. When the Archbishoppe came to see the king, and  
 brought Florence with him, and they altogether went by  
 into the Pallace, and entered into a faire chamber, then  
 the Emperour and the king sate them downe together,  
 and betweene them the faire Florence, and at the last the  
 king Emendus saide: Faire daughter, your mother is de-  
 parted this life, and it is now time that from hence forth  
 I prouide for your noble estate, you bee a greates Ladie and  
 a puissant, therefore I will marrie you to this noble Em-  
 perour heere present. And when Florence heard her father  
 speake to her of marriage, all her bloud beganne to quake  
 and tremble, for she hated the Emperour euer since the be-  
 ginning of her youth, howbeit she answered right wise-  
 ly and said: Deere Lord and father, ye knowe well that it  
 is not yet three monethes sith the death of my Ladie my  
 mother, and if I should marry so quickly I should be great-  
 ly blamed, therefore sir I require you let this yeare passe,  
 and then I will take counsaile and tell you what I will  
 doe. And when the Emperour heard her speake so reason-  
 able, he could not charge her any farther at that time, and  
 accorded to abide the tearme of her desire, and beheld well  
 how that she changed colour, and soe trembled, and so  
 did the king her father also: Howbeit he made no counte-  
 nance thereof, so they were together a long season, till at  
 last she took licence of the king and departed into her chamber soe  
 amazed, and so abode till the Archbishoppe and master  
 C. lili. Steven

Steuen wens come from the Court : & as sone as they wer entered into the chamber of Flozence, they sawe where she was sitting soze sighing and weeping . When the Bischoppe toke her by the hand and demaunded of her why she made that lamentation. Unkle said Flozence, my Lord my Father keepeth not the couenantes that he made to my Ladie my mother, soz now he is minded to marrie mee to the Emperour. And ther is no man that I hate so much as him, certainly I had rather to suffer death then to haue him, and I haue no longer respite then the end of this yeare . Why Madame quoth master Steuen, if ye haue purchased so long a respite, I faithfully ensure you that I will giue you two yeare longer, soz I warrant you that two yeare after your daie ye shall not be married to him . Master saide Flozence I thanke you of your comfort. Well quoth the Bishop, the Emperour is unwise to demand you against your will, soz there may soztune little god come to him thereby . When the Bischoppe toke her by the hand and led her into a faire garden to walke. And ther on a faire græne bench she sat downe betwene the Bishop and master Steuen, and passed the time with many pleasaunt sportes . At length it began to waxe late, and the euening was verie clere, and the Starres shined full bzight : When master Steuen beheld them a great space, and at the last he saide, madame I knowe soz certaintie by the course of the Planets that ther is a knight comming into this Countrie, and is now well onward on his waie, who shall atchieue the aduentures of the castle of the Port Poire ere this yeare be past. And surely it is he that shall haue the white shield and the twoorde Clarence, verillie sayd the Bishop, if this be true, the Emperour may goe fish in another place, soz here he shall be sure to faile, soz I am sure that it is the same knight that my Ladie Flozence is predestinated vnto, therefore I am right gladde of the Emperours chance . And how saie you master, doe you not hate him, yes sir thereof he may be as sure, as an ell of cloth will make his head a hode, whereat the Bishop laughed. Thus they were long together in this talke,

talke, till it was time to goe to rest . When they brought Flozence to her chamber and departed to their owne lodgings, about midnight this Ladie awaked, and then came vnto her remembraunce the displeasure that she boze to the Emperour, and as she was in this thought, she behelde the foure Tapers of Ware that stode burning befoze her beds feete, wherewith she sawe how there came into the chamber a faire Ladie as white as the lillie, with a mantel of græne hanging about her shoulders, fastned with a lase of golde, and a crowne of golde on her head, and she held another Ladie by the hand, and saide vnto her . Faire sister, sawe you not the Leopard with the seuen heads crowned with gold, who hath the loke of a grim Boze, and the heart of a Lyon, the bodie & armes of Lead, and the fete of a white Hart, and when she had thus said, the other Ladie demaunded of her, what all this might meane, soz herein are diuers things to be considered. When the aunf wered and said, Sister this Leopard shall haue the Eagle of gold that is on my Baulion, and by him shall the gates be opened of my castle of the Port Poire, and then shall all inchauntmentes faile, and therewith both these Ladies vanished awaie, so that Flozence knew not where they were become, wherewith shee was right soze afraied, soz she vnderstode not what it might meane . In like case the same vision came that night to the Archbishop, and also to master Steuen, where as they laye seuerally each from other, whereof they had great meruaile what their dreame might signifie. And within a litle while after the light of the daie began to appeare, the Archbishop arose, and master Steuen also, to attend on their ladie, and whē it was seruite time, master Steuen went soz Flozence, who was then readie apparailled, and went to Church: and there the Archbishop read seruite . When it was finished, the Bishop saluted Flozence, and demaunded what good rest she had taken that night . As God help me dere unkle saide Flozence, there neuer as yet came to me such a chance as did this night, neither was I ener so asfearde, soz about midnight I did awake, and as I laie waking, I saw befoze

my bed the most fairest figure of a Ladie that ever I sawe,  
having a crowne of golde vpon her head, and there seemed  
to be another Quene in her companie, crowned likewise,  
who was also me thought a verie faire Ladie, but nothing  
in comparison of the other Quene, and such wordes mee  
thought she spake vnto her fellowe, and there Florence re-  
counted worde for worde as yee haue heard before of her  
whole vision, and how they were sodainely vanished awaie  
from her. When the Bishoppe heard this, he said: Ah faire  
Peace Florence, by the faith that I owe vnto you, euen in  
like case as yee saie it fortuned to mee this same night, and  
certainly I thought properly it hadde bene you: for if the  
Quene that I sawe and you were both together, I could  
not discerne the one from the other, you are so like. In the  
name of God said master Steuen, the same vision appea-  
red also to me in euerie part as you haue rehearsed, and ve-  
rilie I also thought it hadde bene my Ladie Florence here  
present: verilie saide the Bishop this thing is not thus for-  
tuned to vs all three without some cause, master I require  
you goe loke what the signification of it may be. When the  
master went from them and entered into his chamber, and  
toke his booke and searched for this matter, so long, that  
he perceined finally the mysterie thereof: and then came  
again to Florence, and saide to the Bishoppe, sir let vs  
sette our heartes at rest, for verilie my Ladie needeth  
not care for the Emperours being her husband, for there is  
another worthy knight, amiable, & faire, who is the foun-  
taine of all chivalrie, for his prowesse surmounteth, and shal  
doe all other. Therefore knowe for certaine that whereas  
the vision shewed vs how that out of the West shuld come  
a Leopard which signifieth a gentle knight, borne about of  
Counties of France, and whereas this Leopard hath the  
looke of a Boare and the heart of a Lyon, in likewise this  
knight is the hardiest that ever was borne, and where his  
body shoulde be of fotele, it betokeneth that there is no  
knight so strong as to abide the byntes hee canne, and  
where it is sayde that his armes be of lead, which is an  
beaute

beaute thing. It betokeneth the beute strokes of this knight,  
which cannot be suffered: and as for the sette of the Hart  
which is a light beast and a mightie, it signifieth this knight  
is strong, and light, and quicke to goe towarde his enemies,  
and whereas hee shal haue the Eagle, the which is soue-  
raigne and King of all fowles, it betokeneth this knight  
shall haue my Ladie Florence, who is Quene and Soue-  
raigne of all beaute and riches, aboue all Queenes of the  
worlde, and he shal be the confusion of the Emperour of In-  
de, whereas he beareth seauen heades crowned with golde,  
signifieth that this knight shal beare the crownes of seuen  
Kingdomes, the which he shal conquere with his swoord:  
and whereas the gates of the Castle of the Port Poire,  
shall be opened by him, and that all the inchauntmentes  
shall then faile, it representeth the highe prowesse of him  
that shal beat downe al the aduentures of the Port Poire,  
and suretie this is the signification of our whole dreame or  
vision. Therefore it is necessarie that I repaire to the Pal-  
lace of the Port Poire, to knowe when this knight com-  
meth, and to see by his estate what manner of man he is: ve-  
rilie said the Bishoppe I allowe well that you doe as you  
haue deuised, and that you remoue thetherward as hastily  
as yee canne. But when Florence heard tidinges of this  
knight, she was sodainly stricken with so greate loue, that  
from that houre forthward she gaue vnto him her hart. Thus  
she loued him trulie and knewe him not, and Arthur loued  
the Eagle and hadde neuer sene it, so then this Ladie Flo-  
rence made great ioye all that daie. The next daie betimes  
master Steuen arose and prepared for his departing, and  
then asked licence of King Cinendus to goe to the castle of  
the Port Poire for matters pertaining to his Ladie Flo-  
rence, & the king gaue him leaue. When the matter came  
to Florence, & to the Bishop, and toke leaue of them, & Flo-  
rence toke him aside & said, gentle master, if yonder knight  
come to y port Poire, bring him to me if it may be possible,  
for verily I haue great desire to see him, & know his estate.  
I praye, said y master, w a good wil if I can bring it about.

and so he departed and foure other knights with him: and rode so long that on a saturday he came to the *Pass Poir*, and toke his lodging at a *Ballace* without the castle gate: for there was none that entered into the *Castle* without death: and in this *Ballace* master *Steven* remained nigh a whole yeare. Now let vs leave to speake of the *Passer* and *Florence*, and of the *Court* of king *Emendus*, and the *Emperour* of *Jude*. And returne we to *Arthur* and his companie.

How that *Arthur* slew twelue knights, who had taken awaie a young *Damsell* from her *Father* and *Mother*, and had tied her to a tree, there to haue defiled her *virginitie*, who was deliuered by *Arthur*. Chap. 25.



*Arthur*, *Bedo*, and *Gouernat*, were riding after they departed from the *Court* of the *Duke* his *Father* 15. dayes without abiding in any place, of finding of adventures, to persue anie

enightment in made. And they rode so long, that at the last they came into the countrie of *Rosnach*, and entered into a great thirke covert, in which they traualled a long space, and at the last they founde a great strange water, & a faire greene meadowe opening thereto, the which contained the length of two miles and a halfe, wherein they rode still keeping the side of the meadowe: finally, in the bottom of a great valley, they espied a strange towne closed with mightie walls, and *Arthur* sawe well, how the gates of the place were open, wherefore they lighted from their horses, entered into the towne, and went vp into the hall, and all that way they found no creature, wherof they had great marvel: at the last *Arthur* heard the voyce of a woman in a little chamber beside him, who cried right pitteously and said, *Lord God help me, and send some manner of succour: there with Arthur* leapt into the chamber, where he found a right faire *Ladie*, who had bene dauen all about the chamber, with her yeolow haire torne & cut from her head, and she was so sore beaten, that she had no power to helpe her selfe: and in this chamber there stood a table ready covered, whereon there stood wine and meate great plenty, whereat *Arthur* greatly meruailed, and remained of the *Ladie* who it was, & had done her so much harme: When the *Ladie* saw *Arthur* & heard him speake, she was sore abashed, & all afraid said: O gentle knight I require you, haue some good word, & haue done through already: faire *Ladie* said *Arthur* be nothing afraid, for I will warrant and defende you from all enemies, therefore shew me howe you hath thus mistreated you: When the *Ladie* with much paine arose upon her feet, and said: As God helpe me, there departed from hence right now twelue knights all armed, and they haue thus mistreated me as you see, and I thinke they haue slaine my lord my husband, and haue a way with them my deere daughter to defile her *virginitie*, if God doe not: I would faine see you for her sake, & I praye you to helpe me, where the *Ladie* began to weep, and said, *Arthur* I praye you to helpe me.

I beseech you take about you for a while. I have mine  
 wither quicke or dead. And when they were at the  
 the place, and as the last in a little boat by the bank, and  
 his hands bound behind his back, and his head  
 and on the shoulders. When they were thus bound, his father  
 and his mother, his brothers, and his friends, and  
 his knights, and his squire, and his clerk, and his  
 his knights, and his squire, and his clerk, and his  
 the knight, and his squire, and his clerk, and his  
 there, and a stranger, and a knight, and a clerk, and  
 twelve knights, and therefore thus they have told me with-  
 out cause, and have lead away my daughter to see her bil-  
 liois, as they thus talked together, the Lord of the place  
 saw where his squire and clerk lay down, where he had  
 great griefe. Well, quoth Arthur, this is a great outrage,  
 come on, friends, get on our harness, and when they were  
 all armed, they followed after these knights, and rode so  
 long, till at the last they found the chiefe master of them at  
 the entering into a faire forest, who was busied about this  
 himself so hee desired her. When Arthur espied him, and  
 said, Thou shamelesse knight, be not so hardie as to come to  
 touch her, for I assure thee thou shalt come to her father in  
 spite of thy hart, to the intent that he may take vengeance  
 of thy trespass, and therefore I wille thee, wherewith hee  
 and all his companie kept on their hoots, and the captain  
 of them answered his challenge against Arthur, and strook him  
 so rudely, that he brake his speare to his hand, but Arthur  
 stroke him so mightily, that his speare head entred cleane  
 through his bodie, and he fell down dead to the earth. When  
 Arthur drew out his sword, and smote the second to the  
 ly, that he pierced his heart, and then he strook him, that  
 he cut him down to the saddle, and from the four he cut  
 the head from the shoulders. And then, for his part, he stroke  
 one of them so furiously, that he ranne his speare into his  
 bodie more than a fote, and then he took his sword, and  
 stroke among them so, that he smote all that were before  
 him to the ground. And then he made them of their heads, and  
 into the sea. When the remnant saw their companions thus  
 dealt

dealt withall, they betooke them to flight for dread of death,  
 as they fled they said each to other, let us save our selues  
 from these devils of hell, for surely they be no earthly crea-  
 tures, Arthur followed them no farther, but came to the  
 himself, where as he was fast bound to a tree, and did un-  
 loose her, and caused her to mount on a horse of one of the  
 knights that was there, and then brought her againe to  
 her father: when he saw his daughter, his heart re-  
 joiced, and he knelt down before Arthur, and rendred him  
 great thanks. Then Arthur took him by the hand, and  
 so remained there all that daie and night, and the next mor-  
 ning he and all his companie tooke leave of their host, and  
 of the damsell, who loved Arthur with all her heart: and  
 so they departed and entered into their journey, and rode  
 south so long till they came into the countrie of Mienne,  
 wher as they met a messenger, having as it seemed great  
 hast with a javelin in his hand, a shepher of armes on his  
 breast, and a boquet with letters hanging at his saddle bow,  
 whom Arthur courteously saluted, sir saide the Page, God  
 give you good adventure: my friend quoth Arthur to whom  
 doe you pertaine? Sir said he, I dwell with my Lord the  
 Carle of Beaulieu. Then quoth Arthur can you tell us a-  
 nie newes? Sir I cannot tell whether you already know  
 of the Turpaine that my Lord of Beaulieu hath taken a-  
 gainst the Marshall of Mirpois, which shall be belde on the  
 Sunday next after Holy roode daie. Is it of a troth quoth  
 Arthur, that the Carle of Beaulieu hath taken on him this  
 enterpryse? Sir, without faile. And good friend I praise  
 you, what manner of man is your Lord? Sir as god helpe  
 me he is a noble man, for the Carle of Flanders is his uncle,  
 and the Carle of Mount Belais is his younger brother, and  
 of himselfe he is as courteous, as gentle, as liberal, and  
 as meeke as may be. But the Marshall of Mirpois is con-  
 frame, for he is fierce and cruell, and a hurie man to wel  
 withall. Now what he is a good knight of his handes, and  
 of his heart. And so hee rode on, and came to a town, that hee  
 where.

[illegible]

Arthur and his companie, and incontinently they tooke all the stuffe, and did beate & kill intreate them that were con-  
ducters thereof, till at the last Iaket Arthurs Squire drew  
his sword, and to his power did helpe to aide and defende  
his masters stuffe, but they were so many on him that hee  
was sore wounded, wherewith Arthur and his companie  
came to them. And when he espied his seruicant Iaket sore  
wounded and in great leopordie, hee drew his sword and  
strooke the first so, that he claue his head downe to his chin,  
& of the second he strooke a waie the head, and from the third  
he cut cleane a waie the shoulders with the arme. When  
Hector and Gouvernar right strongly laide on euerie side a-  
mong these theeues, and by the helpe of Arthur they slewe  
and killed all that euer were befoze them. When they were  
all dead, Arthur commaunded to search whereas they were  
wont to resort, & thus by the pzoouesse of these three knights  
these thirtie theeues were brought to death and confusion,  
& at the last they found a faire auncient man vnder a tree,  
lying naked and bound fast with two cheines, so that hee  
could not helpe himself, then Arthur did loose him and gaue  
him the apparell that was on the dead bodies of the sayde  
theeues, wherfore the good man humblye thanked Arthur,  
and specially for sauing of his life. When Arthur and his  
companie rode forth, and traualled so long, till at the last  
they found a strong house, and knocked so long at the gate,  
till there came to them a seruicant bare legged, readie to goe  
to bed, for all other in the place wer as then gone into their  
rests, and this fellow demaunded of them who it was that  
knocked so fast at the gate at that time of night. Two friend  
quoth Gouvernar, it is a knight that wold saine this night  
hauing lodging for him and his companie. Sir saide hee, if it  
please you to carrie, I will goe speake with my Lorde and  
master, and shew him your minde, howbeit I thinke hee  
be nowe at his rest, for hee is olde and auncient, and  
hath bene in his dayes a verie good knight, and as yet  
hee is gladd to heare speake of good knightes, and lo-  
ueth them that be noble herdes of armies, and therewith

the seruant departed and went to his master, saying: Sir, there is at your gate three knightes armed, which seme to trauaile to Wiemie to the Turnay, and they desire by waie of curtesie this one nightes lodging: holwe saie ye sir, shall I open to them the gates: He the a pace quoth the Lorde, for I am not content that thou hast made them tarry without so long, and when they be entered come againe to mee and bring me worde what manner of men they be, & what harnais and armes they beare, then the seruant went againe to the gate and set it wide open, and suffered Arthur and his companie to enter, whereof they had greate neede. When the seruant beheld Arthur, and saue well that hee was like a Gentleman, being well proportioned, and meruailous faire aboue all his companie, and next him he saw Hector, who was right faire, tall, and well made, and also he beheld Gouvernar, who was in all pointes like a man, bigge, and bosome of colour, and he perceived well holwe all their harnais were faire and rich. When was ther wordes brought forth, and seruants ran for their horses, then the first seruant returned againe to his Lorde, and saide: Sir, since I was borne I neuer sawe so godly knightes as they be, and specially the chiefe of them, and as for their armour it is both faire and rich, for I assure you it shoulde seme that they be right greate men, and come of noble linage. Well quoth the Lorde, loke that thou in all hast prepare their lodging, and see that they be serued right honourable. Well sir quoth the seruant, it shall be done incontinently. Then the Lorde saide to the Ladie his wife who was then lying a bed by him: madame by reason of your honour and gentilitie you should rise and keepe companie with yonder noble knightes, for I thinke they be some great men, and it will greatlie griene them if they see not the chiefe of the house to make them some cheere, for as God helpe me, I woulde haue greate love to speake with them, if I might arise and not hurt my selfe, therefore madame in my absence I praye you go and make them the best cheere that ye can, sir said the Ladie with a right good will,

if it please you I will doe so. When the Ladie rose and accompanied her selfe right righte, being a right faire younge Ladie, of the age of xxi. yeare. And when Arthur and Hector sawe her, they rose and curteously each of them did salute her, and she saue downe betwene them. When Arthur saide, madame, you haue taken great paine to leaue the companie of your Lorde to come to see vs, sir said she, it pleaseeth my Lorde that I shal doe so, and therefore I am come to you in the steepe of him, for hee woulde with a right good will haue come to you himselfe, if he might so haue done, but he is auncient, and it would hurt him to haue broken his rest. And so thus they talked of diuerse things, and in the meane season there was meate provided for them and the Tables were couered, and they washed and sate them downe Arthur and the Ladie together, and Hector and Gouvernar, but Hector had his eyes on the Ladie, and did neither eate nor drinke, the which Arthur and Gouvernar right well espied. When Arthur saide to him, friend it is yours all that ye see, sir saide Hector, I haue seene some thing, of which if I might, I woulde faine be master. O Hector, quoth Gouvernar, a mans will ought euer to followe the order of reason, and so I beleue ought yours to doe, and therewith they left these wordes, holwebeit all that little or nothing refrained Hector's loke, for still he beheld this Ladie till it was time for them to goe to their rests, and taking their leaue of the ladie, they thanked her for the great cheere that shee hadde made them. And on the next daie betimes they departed, and entered into the Forrest, the morning was faire and cleere, and warme, for it was as then about the ende of Aprill. So these lordes rode forth with greate ioye, tyll at the last Gouvernar saide to Hector, sir, was your will accomplished this last night, when as you saide yee woulde gladlie haue fulfilled your will, to saie the truth, I thinke your will was on our Hostesse, who was both fayre and young. By my faith quoth Hector, I woulde haue ben right glad to haue fulfilled my will with hir, for vndoubtedly she is faire and gracious, and I loue her with all my heart.

And sir what was your will quoth Gouernar, by my faith said Hector, that thee shoulde haue bene all night in mine armes & I in hers, now truely sir said Gouernar, that will was neither good honest, for it was against reason, seeing the good Lord her husband did cause her to rise from him to the intent to honour vs and to keepe vs companie, remembzing also how honestly she receiued vs, and the good chere we had of her, and would you haue then done such villanie to that good Lord, as to haue had his wife vnto his dishonour in his owne house, by the faith that I owe vnto God it had not bene well done, nor yet it was no honest thought. A sir Gouernar quoth Hector, I am sure ye be so sage in science, that you will doe no follie, wisdom is great if the Cat neuer touched milke, I meane when loue toucheth, wifedome is oftentimes overcome. Well, as for all that quoth Gouernar it maketh no matter, but yet I saie as I saide, that it should not haue bene well done of a Gentleman to haue done as ye thought, for it were treason so to doe, wherewith Hector began to be soze chafed and saide, what Gouernar saist thou that I am a traitour, thou liest falsely I was neuer anie, and drew nere to Gouernar, laying hand on his sword, then said Gouernar, strike me not, I saie not that you be a traitour, neither be you so great a man that your noblenesse sozethinketh me, for I would you were greater then you are, yet for all that, I saie that this doo accordyng to your will had ben treason, remembzing the trust that y<sup>e</sup> Lord had in vs, if in the colour wherof we should haue dishonoured his wife, surely I saie it is no noble thought, with the which worde Hector was so angrie, that hee drew his sword & stroke Gouernar on y<sup>e</sup> helme, so y<sup>e</sup> he was therewith astonied, wherewith Arthur was soze displeased. Then Gouernar said, sir strike me no more, by the faith I owe to our lord, if you do I wil not sozbeare you. Why good sir (quod Hector) what wold you do else, that shal be some sene, & so stroke Gouernar againe, wherewith Gouernar drew his sword & stroke Hector on the helme, & there began a great battaile betwene them, & Arthur labored w<sup>th</sup> gentleness to part the,

but

but they were soze displeased and bered each with other, that Arthur could in no wise cause them to leaue: & when Arthur sawe that, he drew his sword, and stroke Hector so soze, that hee made him stroupe downe to the necke of his horse, and with another stroke he hit Gouernar so, that hee was soze astonied therewith, and had nigh fallen from his horse, and as Arthur would haue reconered on him another stroke, Gouernar went from him. When Arthur came to Hector and would haue striken at him againe, but Hector said, cosin what will ye doe, are ye displeased with mee? yea verilie said Arthur, right soze, for Gouernar shewed to you your follie, and therefore you haue smiten him in my presence, wherewith I am not content. Sir said Hector, I repent me, but he displeased me so, that I coulde not refraine my selfe at that time: well quoth Arthur, now from hence forth be in peace, or by the faith that I owe to my Lord my father, the first of you that beginneth, shall leese my companie, and also my good will for euer, therefore come on Gouernar and make amends vnto my cosin Hector, in that ye haue striken him, sir said Gouernar, with a right good will. When he put off his helme & desired Hector's good will, now cosin Hector quoth Arthur, make you him amends, sir sayd Hector, right gladly, for it sozethinketh mee greatly of the displeasure that hath bene betweene vs, & so hee did also off his helme, & there each of them embraced other, and passed forth on their iourney, and rode so long till they were passed the sozrest. And then they sodainly encountered the knight Sir Delalaunde, and the messenger that they had met with the date before, and there each of them did salute other. When Sir Delalaunde demaunded of Arthur to what partes he would goe vnto: Certainly said Arthur, it hath bene shewed me, that at holie rood tide next comming, there should be at Wienne a great assemblie of noble men & good knightes. Therefore I am riding thetherward to see that turney, and so be acquainted with some of the good knightes that will be there, trulie saide sir Delalaunde, it is of truth that there shall be a great assemblie of knightes, and there

¶.iii.

shall

shall bee a greates tourney. I praye you Sir saide Arthur, for whom, and for what cause was it first taken, Sir if I should shew quoth Sir Delalaunde, you shoulde then knowe something soundyng to my reproch, nevertheless it seemeth that you be a noble man and the chiefe of your companie, therefore I will shew it you.

How Sir Delalaunde declared to Arthur the occasion why this Turney was first taken by the Lord Beauchieu. Chap. 27.

It is true my Lord the Earle of Benton hath alwaies loved me since the beginning of my youth, and it fortuned when I was young and lustie, I thought to goe out of mine owne countrie, accompanied onelie with my squire, hoping to vanquish all the valure of the world, and at the last I came into the lande of Myrpois, and fell therein acquainted with two noble Lordes of greates lignage, who did me much honour, and one of them had a right faire lady to his wife, named the faire Lady of Monition, for whose this tourney was first taken, and she had such affection to me and lone, that within a little while I was made chiefe ruler and Seneschall of all her countrie, and was of her private counsaile, and ther was nothing done without my consent, for she trusted more in me than in any other person of the worlde, and in like case, I was loved with the good Lord her husband. And so I continued with this lone and favour more then the space of sixe yeares, and it fortuned one yeare that for my sake they kepte a Christmas with open court, whereto came many knights of the Countrie, when the first daie of this began, the Lady of Monition wife to my sayd Lord, was rieble apparailled as it appertained to the least and to her estate, at which time to me she seemed so faire, so gentle, and so proper, that I thought I had never seene her halfe so faire before, and then her beautie stroke so inwardly to my heart, that I lost thereby both meat and drink, and everie day I began to have lone of body that never

rie than had meruaile what ailed, and demanded often times of me what was the cause that I so impaired, but never I coneyed it as privelie as I coulde, yet at the end it awaited me nothing. For at the last Love constrained me to shew unto my lone and Ladie, all the dolour and paine of mine inward hart. And on a daie as it happened I rose betime early, for the thoughtes of the night ever troubled mee, and luckelie I found this Ladie leaning in a windowe, by whom boldly I leaned me downe, then she bad me god morrow, and desired God to send me my health, well madame quoth I, then the king that hath formed all things give you a better daie then I have had a night, and also better helth, for my health is verie weake, the which sorrelly troubleth me. When this Ladie turned her toward me & said, Sir, how is it that your health is so farre from you, maye it not bee brought nearer for silver or golde. Madame quoth I, peradventure if I shew you, you woulde not inbraunce to helpe me, although you can verie well do it, therefore it were better that I kept it still secret, then to shew it, and she never the more. Sir said she, I require you shew it, and I will with all my heart be glad to labour for your ease & health, whereto it is great shame for you when you maye have counsaile and remedie, I will not seeke it, but thus to suffer paine and hearts grieve, the which I ensure you cometh right soe both my Lord and me, therefore good friend by the faith that you owe unto me, shew me your grieve, and therewith she came nearer to me & embraced me in her arms, and shewed me great tokens, of love and kindnesse, as these women be accustomed to doe, when they will drawe out of a mans mouth that is inclosed in the heart, and when I sawe her gentlenesse and swete behaviour, my heart was ravished and brought into that case, that of a greates season I coulde speake no worde for weeping. But Sir, quoth this knight to Arthur, though I shew unto you my fondnesse, I praye you thinke not any hurt in it, but take it in good parte, for that youth dooth verie manie foolish things, By my faith, saide hee, Sir no more I will, and there.

therefoze proceede forth in your tale. Sir then I said vnto this Ladie: Madame, whatsoeuer fortune fall thereby I will shew you all my desire. Deere Ladie, it is of truth that I haue set my heart and all my thought on you, moze then on all the creatures of the world, with so faithfull and profound a loue in my minde, as it well appeareth, and shall ener doe by me, so; no other person I loue no; can loue, but onely you. And therewith my heart failed me that I could speake no moze, but sate downe, and shee sate by mee, and said, What sir Guy Delalaunde, is it then thus as you say, yea madame said I, without faile, well sir quoth she, speake you these words either to assay me, or else for verie loue, I require you tell me the truth: on my faith madame quoth I, this that I haue saide is for the greate griefe that I am like to be in without your helpe, therefore Ladie for Gods sake haue pittie on me, and therewith I ioynded together my handes with great sorowe of heart. When she beheld mee well and said, sir you be a wise and prudent knight, therefore consider well if your desire bee not prejudiciall to any person: Madame quoth I, for trouth I see and know well that I desire against my Lordes treason and falsenesse, who loueth and honoureth me so much aboue all other, howbeit good Ladie, knowe well that youth and loue bringeth mee to this, so that measure and reason faileth in mee, therefore I hadde rather die then liue. When this Ladie who was both wise and discret, sayd, sir be in rest and let ioy increase in your heart, for wee will speake moze of this matter at better leasure: this she said to giue me comfort, and not to the intent that she would in any manner wise trespass against her husband: In this manner I dwelt of the time a great while, but as sone as I coulde finde her at leasure, and in a conuenient place, I was euer reasoning with her of this matter, and importunatelie each daie required her to haue pittie of my distresse, and so it fortuneth on a daie that we were together leaning in a windowe looking out toward a Forrest. When I spake to her so faire, and in so pittifull order, that she could no longer digne of my request,

but

but said: Sir, your fate is so importunate, that it becometh me to assent to fulfill your desire, therefore see yee not yonder great Duke standing in the Forrest, yea madame sayd I, right well, well quoth she, I am content to fulfill your desire on this condition, loke that this same twelue moneth, and this houre, you faile not to be vnder yonder Duke, and without faile thether to you will I come readie apparailled to accomplish your intent, and befoze that daie neuer loke to haue it. Ah mine owne deere Ladie (quoth I) I humblye thanke you of your good will, with I cannot haue it sooner, at the least I shall passe the time moze ioyfully, hoping for that fortunate daie, wherefoze I will take my leaue nowe of you, and you shal not see me againe til that time be come, for if I should abide in your dailie presence, the delaying of the time would be my death. When I toke leaue, praying her to keepe covenant with me, & she promised me that she would. When I got licence of my Lord her husband, shewing him how I would depart into mine own countrie for a while, yet he was loth to giue me leaue: but when he sawe that I would needs depart, he offered me to haue for taken his owne Countrie, and to haue gone with me, he loved me so entirely, & at the last with much ado I gat leaue, and departed priuely on a night, and disguised my selfe, and went wandering about the Countrie till the yeare was past. At the same daie and houre that mine appointment was, I came to the said Duke in the Forrest, befoze the castle windowe, and incontinently I perceived where this Ladie stood talking with my Lord her husband in the same windowe whereas she and I made our agreement together, and then I made so many tokens and signes that at the last she perceived me, and began to smile: when her Lord sawe her laugh, he demaunded the cause, and she answered and said, sir for nothing: for nothing quoth the Lord, I am sure yee will not laugh for naught, therefore shew me the cause, for surely I will know it, wherefoze I commaund you to tell it me: she quoth she, with it pleaseth you I am content to shew you, but first I require you tel me when you sawe or heard

J. b.

of

of Sir Guy Delaunode. In good faith madame said he, not a great while, whereof I am full sorry for if I had knowne he would haue tarried so long, I wold haue sought him out ere this time, but sir quoth this Ladie, he is not now farre hence, for it is of trowth he hath before this time desired me of loue, and in a manner his sute was importunate; and the loue that he haue me was so feruent, that he was right sore afflicted thereby, which was well seene by him while he was here with vs, and there this Ladie tolde the Lord her husband all the matter that was betwene her and me vnto that present daie, and then she shewed him & saide, sir this is the daie that I promised him to fulfill his desire, thing king by this time he would haue forgotten his sute, but loe sir you may see him vpon yonder great Dake, whereas he is all amazed because he findeth mee not there as I promised him. And you may see by him how that these foolish lovers are overcome with loue. And this is the cause that he departed from you, for that he might not endure any longer the great torment that he was in. Pea madame quoth the Lord, if it be thus, I commend you on the loue that ye beare vnto me, that you go and appareile you in the best manner that you can deuise, and then come againe hether to me. When the Ladie did as he commanded, and came againe to him. When he said to madame I wil and also desire you euen as you think to keep my loue, that you go to yonder knight vnder the Dake, and suffer him to doe whatsoeuer he will with you, and commend me heartely to him. A sir said the Ladie, her tie I will not doe thus, for if I hadde euer thought to haue fulfilled his foolish desire, you should neuer haue knowne it by my will; and sir if I should now doe it, it were to mee great rebuke both before God and all the world. Madame said the Lord, I will take all the sinne on mee, and if I were to you faithfullie on my trowth, that I will loue you and keepe you the more deere euer after, therefore I will that ye doe thus incontinently. Well sir saide the Ladie, I shal do what you bid me to doe, for it is your pleasure, if you will come thither, and sit to you, and

it shal come thereby, ye must take it in good parte, and so this Ladie came into the Forrest to mee, and as soone as I sawe her I was neuer so ioyfull as then. For I thought I could haue giue all the world for her, then I came to her and embraced her in mine armes right sweetly, and sayd: My deere Ladie and heartes desire, you bee to mee most heartely welcome. Sir Delaunode quoth she, God put it into your heart that you do no wrong nor trespass against anie person, but first sir, my Lord my husband heartely commendeth him vnto you as to his onely friend. Howe so madame quoth I, where is my Lord? certainly said she, he is here by in this Castle. But madame quoth I, how is it, doth he knowe that you be come hether to me. Pea sir, said she, as God helpe me, for he hath caused me to be appa- relled in the best manner, to the intent I should please you the better, and so he hath sent me hether to you to the intent to fulfill all your will and desire, and therefore beholde me herereadie for to accomplish your will, as for hurt or ill ther shall come none vnto you, neither by my Lord, nor yet by anie other for him, and so my Lord dooth faithfully assure you, and sendeth you worde by mee that he loueth you in all things better then he doth himselfe. When I heard the great curtesie of my Lord, and holwe that he loued me as well as himselfe, and that he had sent me the thing that he loued best in all the world to fulfill my desire therewith, & how that he would suffer that villanie for my sake, all my follie and vnrasonable desire was quenched. For then I thought it was better to leaue my sensual appetite, then to haue done which I had inteed in my hart, for I thought then it wold haue bene to great a shame for me to requite with iniurie so noble and so doly curtesie. When I knoeled downe before the Ladie requiring her of pardon for the great outrage and follie that I thought against her, desir- ing her for Gods sake to helpe to make peace againe with the good Lord her husband for us. When she tooke me by the hand and brought me into the Castell before the presence of her husband, and sitting vnto me, she said

And

And as soone as he sawe me he embraced and kissed me, and I knelled downe before him and cried him merite, & there the accorde was made betwene us, and ever since hee hath loved me as well as ever he did before or better. Now good sir I have shewed you all mine adventure, which is right well knownen to many: and so it fortuned that but now of late my Lord Beauieu was at the feast with the Earle of Fozeest, and there my said Lord tooke his Ladie Rosslyn by the hand to daunce, and the Marshall of Myrpoys was there present, who is verie envious, and when he sawe this my Lord and Ladie daunce together, he said how that my Lord of Beauieu shuld be the second. When the lord of Beauieu knew well inough what he meant, and said, Sir Marshall, as for sir Guy de la Launde, he is a good knight, both wise and true. The Marshall answered and said, his bountie appeared well when he tooke his owne Lords wife. Sir said the Earle of Beauieu, though he desired her lone, yet I dare well saie that hee never trespassed, either against his Lord or her, for he did not disguise himselfe like a ribaude, for to come unto the wife of his foster, as some have done, that I knowe right well: wherewith the marshall was soze displeased, because it touched his owne dealing, and saide. Sir ye be but a fool to speake these wordes to me, and thus they multiplied language so farre, that the Earle of Fozeest and the Earle of Fozeest hadde much a doe to appease them, and for this cause was the Tourney taken of both parties, which shall be on Wednesday next coming, and there wil be many great lords of the marshall's partie, as the Earle of Fois, the Earle of Montbelliall, and the Dolphin of Vienne, and many other knightes, and also Alexander the young King of Malagore. And in my Lords partie will be sir James Earle of Fozeest, and the Earle of Fozeest, and divers other, yet I doubt me greatly of the Earle of Beauieu, for I would be verie sorry if he had not the honour, therefore I praye you and all your companie to be at this tourney on my Lords party, for when you see him you will saie it were pittie but he should have the victory.

Thus

Thus have I shewed unto you all the troth of the matter. Werelye sir saide Arthur, with a good will I shall bee with your Lord, but I pray you will this Ladie of Rosslyn bee at the Turney: Yea truly she shall be there, and manie of there great ladies and damfels: and also it is ordained by common consent, that he which doth best, shall be held as a King over all other Carles, Barrons, and knights, that shall be there assembled, and crowned with gold as a King, and all they with all the power that they can make, shall be content to goe with him in battaile whether soever he will haue them, and from thenceforth he shall be called king of the company, and this marshall intendeth to haue the honour if he may, wa surely he is a good knight of his hands, & much goodnes is in him, if his tongue were not, but that little member shameth all the rest of his bodie, as it doth all them unto whom God hath given an euill tongue.

How Arthur had the honour in the Turnay that was made at Vienne, betwene the Marshall of Myrpois and the Earle of Beauieu, whereas wer diuers great Kings, Earles, Barons, and manie other good



Knightes

Knights eight valiant whereby Arthur gave him  
great thanks and was greatly honoured of all the  
Ladies and Damselfs there assembled. Cap. 28.

After that Sir Guy Delalaund had shewed all this pro-  
cesse to Arthur and to his companie, they rode forth to-  
gether, and came to Lion sur le rone, and so passed over the  
bridge, and rode through the towne, and in a faire medowe  
vnder the towne side, they espied where tents and pavil-  
lions were richly pight, at which time they were assembled  
many great and noble Kings, Carles, Barons & Knights  
as well of the one partie as of the other. Then Sir Guy  
Delalaund sent a messenger to the Carle of Beauceu, cer-  
teffing him howe he was with so many valiant knightes with  
him, and that in any wise he should retaine them to bee of  
his companie. And when the Carle of Beauceu, and the  
Carle of Fozeff, and the Carle of Fleuers hearde these fi-  
dings they came out of their tents, and saw where Sir Guy  
Delalaund and Arthur and his companie came riding.

And when they came nere they alighted and saluted these  
Carles, who did behold Arthur, and perceiued well that he  
was a meruailous faire knight great, bigge, and well fur-  
nished, and seemed well to be of great fierconesse, and noble  
estate: and also they saw Hector, a bigge knight, and well  
made, both of bodie, armes and legges, and also they beheld  
Gouernar, who was a bigge man and well proportioned,  
and those Carles praised much these knightes in their hearts.  
Then the Carle of Beauceu toke Arthur by the hand, and  
said: Sir, you be right hartely welcome into the Countrey  
of Viennes, praying you to take your lodging with me, &  
with these other two Carles here present. Then Arthur  
said, Sir with a right good will, and so they lead him into  
their tents, and there Arthur, Hector, and Gouernar were  
sharped. And when they were out of their harness, eue-  
rie man behelde Arthur, for he was meruailous faire: so  
that tidings came into the Ladies tents how that Sir Guy  
Delalaunde was come, and had brought with him three  
goodly

godly knightes, and specially one of them, who was so fair-  
rest and properest that cuer was seene, so that ther was no  
bute nor talking throughtout all the host but of these three  
knightes. Some saide, of whence be they, or who knoweth  
them, thus they continued of them in euery place. Then  
Arthur and his companie issued out of the tentes, and be-  
helde the fresh banners, standers, and streamers wauering  
in the winde, pight before euerie Tent and Pavilion, and  
hearde also the trumpets, drums and cornets sounding in  
euerie corner of the field, and great couriers baying, and  
knightes running to assay their horses, casting of speares,  
shining of shieldes against the sunne, and glittering of  
helmes, and knightes by great companies talking together:  
also they espied the great tent of the Ladies, and on the top  
thereof there was a great shining apple all of burnished  
golde, and Ladies and Damselfs therein singing & danc-  
ing. Then Arthurs heart began to reioyce, and he said to  
Hector: Cousin, how say you, is it not better to be here to  
see all this worthinesse, then to creepe into our mothers  
lappes? Yes verely said Hector, for now here shall appeare  
who be noble men. You say true said Arthur, and therewith  
he returned into the Carle of Beauceus tent, and went to  
supper, and first there sate down the Carle of Fleuers, and  
Arthur next him, and then the Carle of Fozeff and Hector,  
and the Carle of Beauceu and Gouernar, and they were  
richly serued. And after supper they played and sported till  
it was time to goe to rest, and they went to their lodg-  
ing, till the next morning, at which time they arose & heard  
service, and then walked & talked together without their  
tents, wherewith came to them a knight from the Mar-  
shall of Pirpois, & said to the Carle of Beauceu: Sir, when-  
soever you will begin this turnay, my Lorde the Marshall  
is readie. Now as God help me said the Carle of Fleuers,  
let vs goe to it incontinently: But sir knight, I pray you  
tell me, with what companie doth your lorde the Marshall  
turney withall. Sir saide the knight, he hath in his com-  
panie well nere the number of nine hundred knightes,

readie appointed to the turney. In the name of God saide the Earle of Foress, but that is great odds, for I thinke our companie passeth not five hundred. Well sir saide Arthur, what then care not for the number of people, wherefore let vs shortly goe and see these noble men, and I trust God will helpe vs. Sir said the Earle of Beaulieu, as God will, so be it: but will ye then helpe vs & be of our partie? With a right good will, said Arthur, Hector and Gouvernar also. And then this knight of the Marshalls praised Arthur much in his heart, and returned to his master, who as then was in the companie of the King of Malogre, and with them the Earle of Mount Beliall, and the Earle of Foys, and the Dolphin, who was a little diseased, and therefore he would not as that day turnay. When the knight said to the Marshall, Sir, the Earle of Beaulieu demaundeth of you the Turnay incontinently: but one thing I will tell you, sith you were borne, you neuer sawe three so goodly knights as sir Delalaund hath brought with him, but I cannot know of whence they be, but one of them surmounteth the other two, both in beautie and stature. Jesus saide the King of Malogre, what knights be they? In good faith sir said y<sup>e</sup> knight, there can no man tel. Will they turnay to daye said the King: yea verely saide the knight, for right now when the Earle of Beaulieu feared that he had not companie sufficient to aunswere your power, I heard the chiefe of these three knights, say vnto him, Sir care not for that, for God shall helpe vs, let vs shortly go see them. When it seemeth said the King, that he hath a good heart. Yea sir said the Marshall, belike he belieueth, that there is not in all the world his peere in deedes of chivalrie, therefore let vs goe shortly see what he can doe: he said truer then he was ware off, for Arthur could verie wel give great strokes, as was well appoyed after by his noble deedes. When was it commaunded that trumpets & cornets should be sounded, and then knights on euerie part went to their harness: then the Marshall, and the Earle of Mount Beliall, and the Earle of Foys, with the number of nine hundred knights

knights were anone readie armed, and the young King of Malagozes was mounted on a great courser, and the Dolphin with him to the intent to see this turney, for they would not turney that daie, and incontinent as the Ladies and damselfs heard the sounding of the Trumpets and hornes, they issued out of their Pavillions, and there was together in companie the Countesse of Peuers, the Countesse of Foress, and the Countesse of Mount Beliall, and the Ladie of Rossylon, and a Ladie who was the marshalls sister, named madame Blaunch. Then the Countesse of Peuers said, let vs take good hede of this knight that is come with sir Guy de la Launde, and see what he can doe. In the name of God said the Ladie of Rossylon, there bee three as I understand, but I know not what they be, and all this while Arthur was in companie with the Earle of Foress, and with the Earle of Peuers, and the Earle of Beaulieu, and when they were readie armed, they mounted on their horses, and the Earle of Peuers and Arthur rode first together, and after them the Earle of Foress and Hector, and the Earle of Beaulieu and Gouvernar, and after them al the other of their companie, and in right good order they rode forth to the turney: and then the Ladie Rossylon said to the other Ladies that were in her companie, beholde yonder is one of the straunge knights that commeth riding with the Earle of Peuers, and another with the Earle of Foress. In the name of God said the marshalls sister, the third cometh with the Earle of Beaulieu, it seemeth that the earles make much of these three straunge knights, but they know not as yet the force of the marshalls my brother, but when they meete here in the turney, they shall haue of him such acquaintance, that they will wish that they had not come here to daie. So saide Ladie said the Ladie of Rossylon, I praise you then shew them some curtesie, send some word to them that they lie a while before they see the marshalls your brother, for I am sure if they see him they are but lost forever. At which wordes all the Ladies did laugh and haue greater sport. Thus the Earle of Peuers and Ar-

thur rode forth till it was time to beginne the turney, and when the Earle of Beuers sawe the marshall on the other part readie prepared to iust, hee shewed him to Arthur. When Arthur sayd: Sir he cometh verie hastilie, wherefore I require you let mee encounter him first. Doe your waie in Gods name sayde the Earle. When Arthur rusht forth so fiercelie as Thunder had fallen from Heauen, and all the other knightes of the tourney beheld him well, and praised him in their heartes. When the Ladie of Rosslyn said to the marshalls sister: Faire Ladie, I thinke yonder knight hath espied your brother, for you may see how fast he rieth, and at that course the marshall hitte Arthur in the middest of his shield, and brake his spere, but Arthur strake him so stronglie on the hearme, that hee shauered his spere all in peeces, with the which stroke hee sent both knight and horse to the earth, and at another course Arthur hitte another knight so sore, that hee brake a greate pece of his hearme and shield, & ouerthrew him flat to the earth in a great traunce sore wounded, and when the young King of Malogres sawe y, hee sayd to the Dolphin: Good Lord who is yonder knight, hee seemeth to be the best knight of the worlde: Verilie sir saide the Dolphin, I neuer sawe such strokes giuen of anie knight before. When saide the Ladie of Rosslyn to the marshalls sister: Madame, beholde how yonder straunge knight rieth, but your brother the marshall holdeth againe, I had thought hee durst haue gone no farther for feare of your brother. At which time Hector also for his parte strake a knight with so greate force, that hee ouerthrew him flatte to the earth, and Gouvernar strake another downe horse and man, and put himselfe in the thickest of the preele, and did meruailes in armes, so that all that behelde him praised him greatly. When the Ladie of Rosslyn sayde: Faire Ladie Blanch, howe saie you, are not these straunge knightes right balladint, therefore madame for Gods sake cause the marshall your brother to absent himselfe out of their sightes, and in so dooing, I thinke verilie you shall doe a greate almes deede. When Arthur

rusht into the thickest preele, and strake on the right hande and on the lefte so mightelie that it was meruailous, for there was none that euer abode him but hee leste the arson of his saddle and fell to the earth, at the last Arthur espyed where there was a Squire holding in his hande an ariltre of an olde broken Chariot, the which hee pulled out of his hande with such force, that hee cast downe the Squyer flat to the earth, whereat the Ladies and Damselles laughed, and then Arthur put vp his sword, to the intent that hee shoulde maime or hurt no man, but with that pece of the Chariot hee thrust into the preele, and gaue therewith so greate and heauie strokes, that all that hee touched went flatte to the earth. For he was of that condition, that the more he had to doe, the more his strength increased, hee vnbarred healmes, and claue asunder shieldes, and beate downe many knights, for whom so euer he touched, were so astonied, that either hee auoided the saddle, or else his horse bare him in a traunce all about the fielde: also Hector and Gouvernar did as well for their partes as anie knightes might doe. So it fortunied as Arthur went searching the rankes and preele, hee encountered the Earle of Foye, who had righ vnhorsed one of the knightes of the Earle of Beauiens partie, then Arthur spurred forth his horse, and strake the Earle so fiercelie, that he thrust downe both horse and man flat to the earth, then Arthur turned againe to him, and whether hee woulde or not, hee caused him to yelde himselfe prisoner to the Earle of Beauieu, who was Lord of that tourney on his side. When the knightes of the Tourney assembled them together by flocks, heere tenne and there fiftene, and yonder twentie, and fought eagerlie together, so that when one was fallen another diddereloue him. Some laughed, and other some complained, but Arthur was euer in the most thickest of the preele, and fared so among them, as the wolfe doth among sheepe, and laide on with so great and heauie strokes, that hee done downe all that euer hee touched. When y earle of Beauieu said, & so did all the other

knight, how that they neuer sawe knight of so greafe courage nor valure in deedes of armes. The Ladies and dam- sels also greatly meruailed at him, and said that better then he was neuer any, and they concluded among them that hee was likeliest to attaine to winne the crowne of that turney if he continued his pꝛowesse according to his beginning. When it fortuneth that a great part of the marshalls com- panie ranne all at once on the Carle of Peuers, and on his companie, who were farre ouermatched, wherefoze hee was soze bestead, and lost manye horses, and manye of his knights soze beaten, and hee himselfe ouerthꝛowen downe from his horse, and was likely to haue bene taken and yel- ded to the marshall. But then an Heraulde of armes began to crie, and saide. O Arthur of Britaine where art thou, now the Carle of Peuers is beaten and nere taken pꝛiso- ner. When Arthur heard that, who as then had by the help of Hector and Gouvernar discomfited a greafe companie of knights, and espied the Carle of Peuers on the ground, he spurred forth his horse, and ranne into the thickest of the pꝛease, and strake the first that he encountered so, that hee fell downe to the earth both horse and man, then hee strake on the right side and on the left, that he beate downe al that was befoze him, so that none durst abide, and also Hector and Gouvernar laid on so on all sides, that all that were be- foze them trembled soz feare, and by cleane force in spite of all his enemies he horsed againe the Carle of Peuers, and when he was thus remounted, Arthur then leapt againe into the pꝛease, and did meruailes with his handes, soz he claue asunder sheldes, and vnbarred healmes, and beate downe knightes by greafe heapes. Thus was Arthur re- garded of all people, who saide each to other: Jesus, what a wonderous knight is yonder, God defend and keepe him. And the young king of Malogres had his eyes euer vpon him, and sayde to the Dolphin. I thinke yonder knight bee no earthlye man, but I suppose hee is some spirite or fiend of the aire, soz hee confoundeth all that hee mee- teth. When the ladie of Rosslyn said to the marshalls. Sister madame

Madame you haue done right well, soz I beleue surelie ye haue pꝛaied your brother that he should do no hurt to these strange knightes, and all the other ladies had right great sport at the merrie iesting of these two ladies, and thus al- waies Arthur was fighting, and at the last ther were three knights ranne all at once on the Carle of Peuers, & beate him downe to the earth, and would haue taken him pꝛiso- ner. But when Arthur sawe the Carle at that point, he spurred his horse thetherward, and the first that he encoun- tered he dꝛawe downe flat to the earth, and the seconde hee tooke in his armes, and pulling him out of his saddle, hee cast him downe on him that he had ouerthꝛowen, the which grieved him right soze, soz the knight was great and hea- uie, because of the harneis that was on him, then hee that laie vnder him said: A sir you be but ill welcome to me, nor he that sent you hether. I pꝛaise God hee may haue some ill aduenture, soz you haue all to bzused me with your falling. When Arthur tooke the knights horse and caused the Carle of Peuers to mount thereon, and Arthur put himselfe a- gaine into the chiefeest pꝛease, and began againe to fight as freshlie as though hee hadde done nothing befoze of all that daie, so that he was doubted in euerie place, soz there was none durst abide him, but all fled from him, so at the last hee came whereas the chiefe Standard was, whereas he found the Marshall, who did indeanour to beat downe all that was befoze him, at which time he hadde stricken from Gouvernar his shield, and therewith Arthur strake him on the helme so fiercelie, that he dꝛawe him downe too the earth all astoni- ed, and Arthur tooke his horse and gaue it to Hector, soz his horse failed him and was soze wounded, and then Hector mounted on him, and this stroke was scene of the King and the Dolphin, and of all the ladies and damscells, and they all said that the Marshall hadde bene the best knight of the world, but now he hath met his master, soz certainly yon- der faire knight surmounteth in pꝛowesse all other knights of the worlde. When the ladie of Rosslyn saide vnto the Marshalls sister. Madame your brother is not so mischie-

nous as you spake off before, you may behold these strange knightes how they are before him, and yet he doth nothing to them, I thinke hee sleepeth, you may see yonder how still he lyeth on the ground, for all that while he laie still on the earth soze astonied, and in a greate traunce, and when all the knightes of his partie sawe him lie so still vppon the ground, they feared least he had beene dead and said one vnto another: yonder is the diuell, I thinke he will confound vs all, therefore let vs depart out of this field, and therewith they went their waies, and so there remained still Arthur, Hector, and Gouvernar, and when the young king and the Dolphin, and many other sawe Arthur alone in the fielde, they came to him and saluted him saying: Sir, God keepe you that are the best knight of the world, and increase your noble honour and valure: my Lord said Arthur, God that hath formed all thinges of naught increase your honour and be your safegard, and sir sauing your grace I am no such knight, worthe of such praise as you giue mee. Well sir saide the king, we haue seene right well how it is, therefore mine owne swete friend, I require you that you will bee one of my house, and you shall be my companion. Sir saide Arthur, I am yours to my power wheresoeuer I be, howbeit I haue a Lord already, who hath nourished me like his owne childe. Sir, in truth sayde the Carle of Foze, rest, it is then good right right that you loue him. And as they were thus talking together, the marshall arose from the ground, and when hee sawe that the tourney was finished, and that he had done nothing to him that had beaten him downe, hee was right soze displeased, and then hee sent a knight to the Carle of Beauieu, desiring him for to haue the turney to begin againe the next day, and how that hee would encounter yet againe with Arthur. This knight found the Carle of Beauieu in the companie of the young king and Arthur: and then he said, sir my Lord the marshall saluteth you, and desireth you againe to haue a tourney to morowe. By the good Lord, quoth the young king, your master ought to be content with that which hath

beene

beene heere this daie, wherefore it is reason that he now rest himselfe, for the king full well thought that the marshall wolde not be in rest till hee were reuenged of Arthur. Ah sir sayd Arthur, the marshall is not yet wearie, and he wolde thinke my Lord of Beauieu for recreant, if hee should refuse his request, therefore sir for Gods sake graunt it him. Sir said the Carle with a right godd will, sith it pleaseeth you, but sir I require you to helpe our partie: Verilie sir said Arthur, with all my heart to the best of of my little power: then there was graunted to be another tourney on the next daie. Then sir Guy de la Launde came vnto Arthur and ledde him to be unarmed, and Arthur toke his leaue of the king, who wolde right gladlie haue had him in his companie, and the people ranne to behold Arthur, and saide with a common voice, beholde him that hath vanquished: When Arthur was unarmed, the Carle of Beauieu kept him companie, and also Hector and Gouvernar were unarmed, and the Ladies and damisells returned into their Hauilions, alwaies speaking of Arthur, and they assembled together in companies, heere ten and there twelue, and all the Countesses were together in one place, & with them the marshalls sister dame Blanch, and the Ladie Rossillon speaking euer of Arthur: verilie saide the Countesse of Foze, sith I was first borne I neuer sawe so good a knight nor so valiaunt in armes as hee is. It is of a trowth sayde the Ladie Peuers, saue you not howe hee brake the greate companies of knightes, and tourned and ouerthrewe all that euer hee couched. By my faith sayde the Countesse of Foze, I saue him when hee embraced a knight in his armes all armed, and cast him downe vppon another knight, and brused him right soze therewith: and also saue you not howe that he strake the marshall downe to the grounde, to saue the trowth hee is the best knight that now liueth in all the worlde, and the most hardiest. And moreover all the beautie of the worlde that maye be comprised in any man is in him.

C. liii.

Ala

Also he is replenished with all grace and vertue, for hee is free, meeke, and gentle as a lambe. By the faith that I owe vnto God said the ladie Rosslyn, my ladie the Countesse of Forrest I would he were your knight, I beleue you well said the ladie Blaunch, for then I thinke verilie you would speake with him oftentimes, when other ladies were a bed fast on sleepe, with as few a companie as you might, without making of anie noise, but shame haue she that will forsaite with an other that which is not her owne. Certainly aunswered the Ladie Rosslyn, I thinke there be but few in this world borne, that liueth cleane both in thought and doede howbeit I am not she that closeth priuelic knights in her chamber by night times, without the licence of my lord, nor keepe anie vnder my couerture, how saie you faire Ladie, know you anie other wise by me, if ye doe, spare not, but speake it here openlie, if you be of that conditions, or haue done so your selfe, you ought then the rather to be more secret, if you knowe that malodie to bee in anie other, when you know your owne estate, leaue to enquire farther then needeth of another, for I am certaine that you be sometime in the shadowe oftner then I am in the Sunne, with companie oftner then I am alone. When all the Ladies & Damells began to laugh, and turned all the matter into iestes and sports, and all this while Arthur was in the Carle of Beaucous Tent, and there was with him sir Guy de la Launde, and there he was well serued and much honoured of euerie man, and after supper they passed forth the time in great ioy and much mirth, till it was conuenient time to goe to rest.

How Arthur the second daie had the honour of the Turnay, and how with him abode the price of the field. Chap. 29.

**T**HE next daie betimes Arthur arose, and all the other Carles, Barons, and knights, to heare seruite, and after they armed them all on both parties, and came into the field,

field, whereas they shoulde turney, and as soone as Arthur and the Marshall sawe each other, they prepared themselves to runne together, and dashed their spurs to their horses, & encountered so fiercely that they all to brake their speares the which were great and big, as though they had ben but reedes, and so passed forth without hurting of each other, & when that Arthur had perfourmed his course, he encountered another knight, and strake him so with the tronchon of his speare, that he was therewith soze wounded and fell downe to the earth. Then Hector and Gouvernar began to striue and to beate downe knights valiantlie, and did enforce them to doe noble deedes of armes, and Arthur fought so among them, that he caused all the ranks and preale of knights to auoide and giue him place, euerie thing set to him as he would with it, for hee hewed shalbes and beate downe knights, and wanne horses, and enforced prisoners to yeld them at his pleasure, so that all fled before him, and none durst encounter his mightie strokes. When the Ladie of Rosslyn who was then nere to the Countesse of Forrest, said to the Marshalls sister, Madame, yet I spake truly yesterdaie, when that I said this knight was worthy to be retained of a noble Ladie, & heresore I woulde hee were pertaining vnto my Ladie the Countesse of Forrest here present, for he is no knight to bee common for all Ladies, such as spinne in the chunney, and I thinke some such you knowe verie well, for ther be many that chouse not by their will one onely, but are glabbe to take such as they may get, or else peraduenture they might farrie verie long or they found such a like knight as this is. When the Countesse of Beuers said to the Countesse of Forrest, madame this Ladie paieth without pawning, truelie saide the Countesse of Forrest, they that speak well, shall heare no worse, but this marshalls sister spake yesterdaie villany to my ladie Rosslyn, and therefore now she remembreth her thereof: and it fortuneth that in this season the Lord of the Castle of Mervert, and Reinolde of Bierrele, and welnigh fiftene other knights of their companies, toke their counsaile to runne

all at once against Arthur, to the intent to bring him to the ground, and when they sawe Arthur had bene well trauaileled, and that they thought he had bene wearie, they all together ranne at him and strake him on all sides, and charged him with so many blowes that his horse sounded under him, howbeit as his horse fell, hee tooke sir Isembart that was before him in his armes, and cast him downe to the earth in spite of his heart, and when they both on the ground, then Arthur stept vpon his feete and laide hands on sir Isemberts horse, and mounted thereon against the will of all his enemies, and when Reinolde of Wierle sawe that he went with such good aide, he embraced Arthur with both his hands, and so each of them helde other right soze, and therewith other knightes came so fiercelie on them, that they were driuen downe to the earth horse and man. Then Arthur leapt on his feete againe, and as hee was right displeased, ranne to the Carle of Foys and toke him in his armes with greate force, and pulling him so strongly that he brake girthes, pattrell, and harneis, and so the Carle fell with the saddle betweene his legges, and Arthur leapt on the horse bare backed, and toke from a squire a mace of Steele that he hadde, and laide on with both his hands, striking the first that hee encountered so fiercelie, that he turned his legges vppward, and then hee went to another knight and strake him so soze, that he was so astonied therewith, that his horse bare him halfe a mile ere he knew where he was, and in this rage Arthur droue downe ten knightes or euer hee rested, and laide on both on the right side and on the lefte. With so greate strength, that he confounded all that euer he touched, for hee confounded all that euer he touched, so hee was in such a furie, that hee knew not well whether he was on horsebacke or on foote, with saddle or without saddle, and hee foamed so at the mouth, that all those which sawe him, sayde hee was out of his witt: so that all fledde before him, and gaue him waye where so euer hee went, and hee did so much that hee escaped cleane from all the knightes which thought to put him

to

to rebuke and shame, so that the place whereas hee stood was clean auoyded. When came to him Hector and Gouvernar, who when they sawe him without a saddle, greatly meruailed: and therewith Hector rode towarde a knight so fiercely, that he bare him downe to the ground, and Gouvernar tooke his horse and brought him vnto Arthur. And when Arthur perceiued that hee had no saddle vnder him, he meruailed greatly, for he was so sore vered before, that he tooke no heed thereof. Then he asked of Hector & Gouvernar how he had lost his saddle, and whether he had anie fall or not, and they shewed him howe it came to passe, whereat they laughed. And when that Arthur was mounted into the saddle, hee sawe before him where as there stood all the Countesses, and diuerse other Ladies and Damells without their tents for to beholde the tourney, then hee spurred his horse, & came to them and alighted downe to the earth, and humbly saluted him and saide: Faire Ladies, God that guideth all thinges giue ioye and honour to all your noble companie, which is right faire and beautifull. Sir saide they, all you be heartelie welcome. Well faire Ladies saide Arthur, for Gods sake be not displeased that I am so bolde to come to you, for it shoulde haue bene great shame to mee, seeing that I was so neere your presence, if I had not done my duetie in saluting of your honour: and in the meane time as they thus talked together, the Carle of Foys and his companie ranne to the Carle of Foress and his traine, and held him so thort, that hee brake all the ranke of this companie, and had nigh taken prisoner the Carle of Foress, for was beaten downe to the earth: and when the Countesse his wife sawe her Lord so nigh overcome, shee sayde vnto Arthur: Gentle Knight, I praise you of what companie bee you off in this tourney. Faire Ladie saide Arthur, so it is that I am of the companie pertaining vnto the Carle of Foress: certainelie sir answered the Ladie, I canne scarcelie beleue that, for if so be that you were anie of his companie, you woulde not suffer him to be dealt

dealt with as he is now, but I thinke you loue better ease and rest then to turney, and in so dooing, you doe well and wisely, for it is better to bee in the shadowe then in the sun light. When Arthur heard her saie so he was greatly abashed, and turned his face toward the turnay, & saue where the Earle of Fozeest was beaten from his horse, and rode defending himselfe on foote, & then he said to the countesse of Fozeest: madame I beseech you pardon mee, for I thought full little that my Lord your husband had bene in this case, but by the grace of God I will sone help and succour him. Hea said the Ladie, but you be verie farre, now we you see him almost ouercome, & yet you stand here stil preaching to vs. When Arthur heard that, he was soze displeased, and mounted on his horse without anie longer delate, and dast into the thickest of the rout so fiercely, that his horse went like the thunder, and all the Ladies beheld him verie well, and said, God keepe and defende thee from mischief or shame. And Arthur rush into the pzease, & strake the first so rudelie, that he ouerthrew both horse and man, then the Ladies began to laugh, then Arthur toke another with his hands by the shoulders, and cast him rudely to the earth, then he toke his male of Steele hanging at his saddell bowe, and strake so fiercely therewith round about him in euerie place, that he brake the pzease, and beate downe knightes, so that there were none that durst approach vnto him, but they all fledde befoze him, as the small fowles doe befoze the Faulcon. When Arthur came to the Earle of Fozeest and brought him a new horse, and helped him to mount thereon. When Arthur rode to the Earle of Fois, and the earle gaue him a great stroke on the helme, but Arthur moued no more for all the stroke, then though he had striken a great tower, but Arthur strake him againe so fiercely, that he caused him to auoide the arson of his saddell, and Jaket Arthurs squire toke the horse, then Arthur said to him: Jaket, goe with that horse and present it from mee to my Ladie the Countesse of Fozeest, who euen now blamed me full soze. Sir quoth Jaket, with a right good will,

and

and so went forth with the horse: and Arthur all this while held vnder him the Earle of Foys, in such wise, till at the last the Earle of Fozeest came to them, and there to him the Earle of Foys was faine to yelde himselfe. When Arthur put himselfe againe into the pzease, and strake so on all parts, that finally euerie man fled from him, and leste him in the place all alone. When Arthur cried openly and said, If there be anie knight that dare come, let him appeare: but he might haue tarried long inough, or anie ther would haue come to him. When sir Guy Delalaund came to him and saide: Sir, I haue promised you that I would shewe vnto you the Ladie of Rossylon, please it you now therfore to come with me, & you shall see her. By the faith that I owe to God quoth he, I will goe with you gladly: & then they two and Pertor and Gouvernar rode forth to the Ladies tent, and by the way they encountered Jaket, who had done his message, and he shewed to Arthur howe that the Countesse of Fozeest right heartely thanked him. When they were befoze the tent they alighted, and then generally all the Ladies and Damsells came towards them with great ioye: and when Arthur was within the Tent with the Ladies, they affectionately beheld him, and the Countesse of Peuers and the Countesse of Fozeest right hartely welcommed him, and he said: Faire Ladies, great wealth and honour God send vnto you all. When the Countesse of Foys did salute him, and said: Sir, I ought not thus to salute you, sith you haue so ill intreated my lord my husbande this day. Dære Ladie said Arthur, you ought not therfore to blame me, for it was but the fortune of the play. Truly sir said she, you say nothing but troth, neither beare I to you therfore any euill will. When the Countesse of Fozeest who had spoken to him befoze right sharply said: Sir, I humbly require of you pardon, and I will make you amends, in that I haue so straungely spoken to you befoze this time, wherefore noble and gentle knight, take no regard to the vaine wordes of a woman, who lightly openeth her mouth to speake: but weigh your great bountie and noble

## The Historie of Arthur

noblenesse, wherewith you be greatly endued: yet sir, that which I said, was because I saw my Lord in great neede, When came to them sir Guy Delalaunce holding the ladie of Rosslyn by the hand, and saide to Arthur: Sir, I haue before this time promised to show you my Ladie of Rosslyn, therefore beholde her, for here she is now present before you. And when Arthur sawe her he had great ioye of her, and promised her faithfully to be alwaies her owne knight, and she againe right courteously thanked him, and all the other Ladies and Damsells stedfastly behelde him, and required him that he would take the paine to vnarme himselfe among them, for they said that they would faile se him vnarmed: and somewhat for cartesse he withstode their desire, but finally they desired him so earnestly, that he was faine to agree to their request, and when he was vnarmed, he was of bodie meruailous faire and comely to behold: for he was bigge, full and straight. When these Ladies behelde him meruailously, and said each to other: how that she shoulde bee right happie, that might haue such a knight vnto her louer, and all these Countesses and great Ladies wished each of them, that he might haue bene pertaining vnto their Lordes. Then a Ladie brought to him warme water in a bason of silver to wash his necke and visage because of the sweating in his barneis, and the ladie of Rosslyn put a mantell of scarlet about him, the which was pertaining to the Countesse of Auers, to the intent he should take no colde after his labour, and so he remained a good space among them, and finally toke his leave. When the Ladies desired him that he would be their knight, and that hee would suffer his barneis to remaine still among them till he had neede thereof, and that he would vouchsafe to weare the mantell of scarlet still on him. And Arthur did graunt them their desire, & so mounted on his horse, & al his companie, and rode forth till at the last he met with all the whole assemblie of both parts, and there was y<sup>e</sup> young King of Malogre, and all the other foure Carles, and the Dolphin, and fower hundred other knights.

Then

## Of little Britaine.

49

When the young King sayde to Arthur: Sir, you bee right heartely welcome, as hee that is the flower of all chivalrie, and the best knight of the worlde, and there he desired him greatly to abide with him, and that they might bee companions together euer after and friendes. But Arthur excused him as well as hee might: and all this season hee hadde on the fresh mantell of Scarlet, wherein he seemed bigge and long, and meruailous straight and sayre, and generallye all the knights behelde him and sayde, howe that hee was highly blessed of God, in that hee was both faire and hardie, and in chivalrie surmounted all other: for they all sayde, that the valour of all other knights was nothing in respect of his prowess.

How the Marshall of Myrpoys for enuie that hee had because Arthur had the honour of the Tournay, & for that hee had beaten him downe, who thought himselfe before to haue bene the best Knight of the worlde, and howe that therefore



he

he desired Arthur, and challenged him to fight. And how Arthur vanquished him, and brake one of his armes, and two of his ribbes on the lefte side.

Chapter 30.

**T**hen the marshall who had his hart inflamed with great pyre, because Arthur had put him to the worst, and also because he heard so much good spoke of him, had so great enuie in his heart, and so great despite, that he could not hold himself in rest, so he beliewed himself to be the best knight of the world: then openly he spake so high and lowd that euery knight might heare him, and Arthur also, saying in this manner of wise: Certainly this straunge knight can not swowe when he is led by the hand with faire ladies & damselfs, and cloathed with their mantells, he lacketh nothing but a softe pillow to play thereon with some of them. And when Arthur heare him, he answered and said: Sir if these ladies take me by the hand, I thanke them therefore, for it is by their conuiesie, and not by my deseruing, therefore I loue them the better, and will be the gladder to serue them, and to be a faithfull knight to them all in general: for as much is a knight worth, as he can deserue praise of ladies and damselfs. When the marshall full of anger answered: In faith as for you ye be but little worth, and that appeareth well, when you are faine to take the reuerfion of these ladies olde cloathing. Well sir said Arthur, as for all that I see whatsoeuer they doe to mee, I am right well content therewith, I thinke I haue nothing of yours, if I haue take it from me if you may. Certainlie saide the marshall, if ye had any thing of mine, so woulde I doe, therefore thinke not the contrarie, for I woulde not spare neither for you nor for anye other to take it, grudge thereat who wold. When Arthur smiling said, well sir then I am verie gladd that I haue nothing of yours, for if I had, me thinke I shoulde not keepe it long by your will. And when the marshall sawe him selfe be thought he did it so, despite of him and said. Sir, will you doe so much for all these la-

dies

dies sake, that you & I may plaie together with two faire speares. Sir said Arthur, you be so valiant a knight that you ought not to be refused or denied for so small request. Then the marshall was blamed of the king and of all the other knightes, and they would full faine haue letted these iusts, because they thought Arthur was wearie of the labour which he had in the tourney befoze, but the marshall said, he hath promised it me, and therefore if it please him, I trust he will not faile me, if he doe I will saie that he is recreant. Saie said Arthur, by the faith that I owe vnto God I will not faile you: and so euery man praised God that the shame might fall vnto the marshall, because of his proude and disdainfull minde. When Arthur demaunded incontinently for his harneis, and sir Guy de la Launde went vnto the Ladies tent, and shewed them how the marshall had challenged Arthur to iust with him again, then the Ladies gaue him all his harneis, and praised God for to giue vnto Arthur the honour of that course, for they said how that the marshall was a foole, and of an outrageous & wilfull minde, wherefore they praised vnto God that hee might speede the worse. When madame Blaunch said to the Ladie of Rossilon: Ladie I beleue now that your straunge knight shall haue yet ere it be night great need of some soft bed to lie in your chamber, by that time my brother hath bzurd a candle for his head, for I assure you he neuer as yet encountered so deere a phisition. Well madame said the Ladie of Rossilon: Faire and softly, at the end shal be seene who wil win the wager as yet you can make no boast, for you haue got nothing. When Arthur and the marshall both did arme them, & being both in the field, there was brought to them great speares, and they spurred their hozes with so greate furie, that the bloud dasht out of their sides, for they were both good and redoubted knightes, but the marshall was not to be compared vnto Arthur, for sith Arthur was first made knight, he feared no man liuing, wherefore the marshall committed greates follie to enterprise anye such thing against him: but it so falleth out, that pride dooth often-

times

times much harme to his master: well, the marshall at the first course strake Arthur, and brake his Speare to his hande, and Arthur for all that moued no more then if there had bene but a reede broken on him, but he strake the marshall so stronglie, that he bare downe horse and man to the earth. Then began all the Ladies and damselfs, knights, and Squires to laugh, and the Ladie of Rossilon said to the Ladie Blaunch: madame, your brother is not so outrageous as I had thought that he hadde bene, for he taketh no more of the earth but his own length, I thinke he sleepeth, beholde how still he lieth: and when the marshall awaked out of his trance, hee was soze ashamed in that hee was so ouerthrowen, and demanded if he had ouerthrowen Arthur, then it was shewed him nay, wherwith he was right soze displeased: yet againe he praised Arthur on his knight-hood that hee would iust with him another course: but all that euer heard him thought he played the proude foole, and counsailed him the contrary, but all that availed not, for he saide he would needes yet iust once againe, and when Arthur heard him of that minde, he had great disdain thereat, and wared angrie in his heart to consider his foolish and presumptuous minde, and saide, well, if hee will needes abide the second, I thinke he will gladlie let the third passe. Then they took much greater Speares then they had before, and with great ire ranne together so eagerlie, that it seemed the earth trembled vnder them, and the marshall stroke Arthur right fiercely, for he was a verie good knight, and shauered his Speare all to peeces, but Arthur hit him with his Speare, the which was greates and bigge, so that the Saddle, Watrell, Girths and all burst, and horse and man went downe to the ground so rudelie, that with the fall, the Marshall had one of his armes broken, and also two of his ribbes, and his bodie soze bruised, so that he lay still a greates while without moving, and then all the knightes that sawe the stroke were greatly abashed, and saide each to other, howe that the marshall was beate downe to the earth both horse and man, and in greates

leopardie

leopardie of his life

How Arthur was crowned King of all the Knightes of the tourney, and they promised him their faith and troth to serue him in decedes of armes, alwaies and euerie place whereas it seemed him best, & the young king of Malogre did crowne him. Chap. 31.

Then when the marshall was thus ouerthrowen, the ladies did laugh, and said: Blessed be God, pride alwaies ouerthroweth his master. When the Ladie of Rossilon said to the Ladie Blaunch: madame, now it seemeth that your brother hath lost the wager, it had bene better for him that he had bene in his chamber, hee speaketh no more wordes, he hath little care now for the flies, beholde how hee shaketh his legges. When all the other Countesses and Ladies that were there present did laugh, and said, the pride of him is now well abated, God keepe and defend such a Knight that can giue such balliaunt strokes: as God helpe me saye the ladie Rossilon, the marshall is now in good rest, I thinke he hath little lust to remount again, let him be wel apaied, for now he hath that he sought for, & so each of them spake their verdit. When the young king and the other Carles came to the marshall, and demaunded of him how hee did, and he answered and saide, right ill, for I haue two of my ribbes broken, and one of my armes, but I praise you how both Arthur: In good faith said the Carle of Beaucien, he is yet in the field, whereas hee attendeth if you will goe to him to brake the third speare. Alasse saide the marshall, I beleued this daie in the morning that I had bene the best knight of the world, for I thought that ther was none that had anie power in comparison vnto mee, but now I haue found my master, therfore I require you cause him to come to me. When the carle of Beaucien took Arthur by the hand and saide. Sir, the marshall would faine speake with you.

V.ii.

An

In the name of God said Arthur, let vs goe to him, by that time the marshall was laide on a pillow that was brought to him, and when hee sawe Arthur, hee saide that all might heare him: Sir you bee to mee right heartellie welcome, as he that is the chiefe flower of all chivalry, and sir I crie you mercie of the great pride that I vsed, the which mooued me to iust with such a knight as you bee, verilie I was enuious and sorrowfull of the honour that I hearde spoken of you, and therefore I tooke on mee to iust with you, intending to abate your praise and renowne: but such there be that thinketh to grieue other, and the hurt tourneth vnto themselves, God hath done to me according to my thought, for hee hath brought me into the same case, that I hadde thought to haue you in, therefore gentle knight, I require you to pardon my follie that I haue thought against you: and when Arthur heard him speake so louinglie, hee hadde greate pittie of his hurt and saide. Ah sir I ought to crie you mercie because that I haue hurt you so sore, wherefore it soze-thinketh mee, and I praise you to pardon mee, certainelie sir, saide the marshall, with all my heart, and I giue you my voice for the crowning at this tourney, as vnto him that is the best knight of all the worlde. When the king saide, sir marshall then you bee content that hee shall bee crowned as the best knight of this turney. Sir saide the marshall, as God helpe mee with all my heart, and the king saide, by the faith that I owe vnto God, hee shall haue my voice and good will, and all the other Carles saide that they were agreed therevnto, for hee was worthie and none other. When came to them all the Ladies and Damselles, and they were all of one minde, that hee shoulde bee crowned for the noblest knight of all other, and then presentlie the crowne was brought forth, and the noble young king of Malogres didde sette it vpon Arthurs head by the common consent of all the whole assemblee that were there present, and they were all verie well content that hee shoulde bee king of

of those knights that were there assembled, and they all proffered him succour and aide in all places and against all people, and as often as he would commaund them. Thus they remained in great feasts and ioy welnigh the space of fiftene daies, with all manner triumph sounding to noblenesse.

How Arthur after his coronation tooke leaue of the young King, and of all the other Lordes and Knights, Ladies and Damsells, who conuaied him on his journey, and sorrowed greatly to leaue his companie. Chap. 32.



At the end of the fiftene daies Arthur tooke leaue of the king, and of all the Carles and Ladies, who were not well content at his departing, and the king said, right deere knight and friend, I require you as heartellie as I can, that you will goe with me into my Countrie, and I promise you by the faith of a king, that you and I will be in all thinges as companions and friends, and I will loue you right deere, and giue you land so great and good, that you shall be right well content therewith, therefore mine owne sweete friend, I require you graunt me my desire, and therewith hee embraced and kissed him, and when Arthur heard him, he smiled and said: my good Lord I thanke you, and woulde to God most puissant Prince that I might do as you desire me, for it were great ioy vnto mee to abide in your noble companie, if it were not for one thing that I haue enterprised, and as yet I knowe not well what it is, nor where to finde it, but as mine aduenture happeneth. I haue tarried here verie long, therefore now is this time that I depart, and when they heard that he would needes goe, they were right sorrowfull, and the king and all the other offered him to goe in his companie to helpe and aide him to attaine his desire, but Arthur woulde not consent thereto, and said that he would haue no companie but such as came with him. As sir said the king, you

you shall haue with you Balwein my Squire, and I will deliuer him to you for god and true, for I will undertake he would rather die then his master shoulde take anie hurt or domage by his default, and also he knoweth the vertues of all herbs, and he is a soueraigne Surgeon. In the name of God, said Arthur, I am content to take him of you, and for his cunning I will lone him better then two thousand pound of yarelie lande. Then Arthur, Hector, Gouvernar, Balwein, and Jaket, toke leaue of euerie man, and departed and entered into their journey, and Balwein and Jaket rode before, Hector and Gouvernar rode together, and Arthur betwene them, and as they rode together they communed of the great valure of the young King of Malogres, and of the other Carles and Knightes, Ladies and Damselfells, and of the great honour that they had among them. In this manner they rode euerie daie the space of three weekes, without finding anie aduenture whereof mention is made.

How Arthur and his companie arriued in the Earldome of Brewle, marching against the land of Sorolois, and entered into the Citie of Brewle, which was besieged by the Duke of Orgoule, named Malagues, because the Earle would not let him haue his daughter in marriage, wherefore by false treason he slew the Earle.

Chap. 33.



At the end of three weekes Arthur and his companie entered into the Earldome of Brewle against the land of Sorolois, and ouer this earldome there gouerned an Earle, noble of behauiour and of friends, and accounted her his wife, and had to his wife a noble Ladie and a vertuous, who was named Jakkell, and they had betwene them a faire and gracious daughter, named Alice, ioyning to this Earldome there marched a Dutchie where there was a Duke which was named Malagues, a cruel man and an enuious, and this Dutchie

Dutchie was called Orgoule, and this Duke had often and many times demaunded of this Earle his daughter Alice in marriage, but the Earle nor the good ladie his wife wold not in anie manner of wise graunt therunto, because of the euill conditions that wer in this Duke, and when the duke sawe that he could not get this faire Ladie Alice, he bare in his heart greete hate and enie to the Earle her father, in somuch that at the last, this Duke had knowledge vpon a daie how that the Earle was gone to chase in the forrest, & there by his prepenssed mallice he caused this Earle shamefullie to be slaine and murdered, and when the Earle was thus mischiously slaine, he was brought home to his wife which was right sorrowfull for his death, & made him to be honozable buried, but this sorrowful lady in no wise could verilie tell how he was slaine, but she had great suspition in the Duke, and so within halfe a yeare after the Duke came vnto this Countesse, and demaunded of her dame Alice her daughter, but the Countesse because she had him in suspition for the death of her husband, would in no wise graunt thereto, also this faire maiden Alice wold in no wise haue him, but rather desired to die, and when the Duke perceived that he might not haue her at his pleasure, he hadoe great despite therat, and so desired the Countesse, and assembled a great host, and he besieged the Citie of Brewle, and wasted all the Countrie round about, and made a how that he would not depart thence till that hee had wonne her by force, and in the meane season Arthur and his companie arriued in that Countrie and the Duke had lien at the siege as then the space of a yeare before, and in the Citie there were foure hundred knightes besides other fouldiers, and thus Arthur and his companie rode through this Countrie, the which he found all desolate and wasted, and met with much peple flying out of the land, whereat he was greatly amazed, and demaunded of two victuallers, that he met leading of victuals to the host, what was the cause of this exile and wasting of the countrie, & they answered, that the Duke of Orgoule had wasted it in such sort. My friends said Arthur,

D.iii.

and

and I praie you for what cause? Sir said they, that will not we tell you, for we haue neede to sell our victuall, to gette thereby our liuing, and therefore it behooueth vs not to saie ill, nor to accuse anie person, but if you will know, you may demaund of this people that you see flying out of the countrie. When Arthur demaunded of them the cause, and they shewed him how that the Duke of Burgoules demaunded in marriage the Carles daughter, and how that he caused the Carle to be slaine by treason, because that he would not agree to his desire, and now how he hath besieged the Countesse in the Citie of Brewele, and hath wasted all the countrie: and when Arthur heard all this, hee saide: Sirs, God speed and helpe you all, and when he was ridden farre from them, he said to Hector his cousin. Cousin, howe saie you, what is best that wee shall doe? Sir saide Hector, in the name of God let vs enter into this war. I allow it wel said Arthur, but we will not aid the Duke who is in the wrong, though he haue the better power: may sayd Hector, that is not mine intent, let vs aide them that be within the Citie, who be in great ieopardie & nigh vndone, wherefore they are in right great feare, and this in my minde is best for vs to doe, because they are in the right, wherefore God will helpe and succour vs. Truelie said Arthur, it is well saide, and so we will doe, but how shall we enter into the Citie, seeing this Duke hath besieged it round about. Well quoth Gouernar, we must enter by one way or other, and thus they rode forth till at the last they espied the Citie of Brewele, the which was verie strong, with high walls and mighty towers, and round about the Citie they sawe Tents and Pavilions pight, & glistering of standards, and streamers waivering with the winde, and much people prepared for the warre. When saide Arthur: Friends, this Duke belike hath much people, I will goe and speake with him ere I enter into the citie: ye saie right well said Hector, to the intent that ye may know him & better another time, if it fortune you to encounter with him in the field. So they rode forth straight vnto the great Tent of the Duke, and there they found

found him standing without the said Tent, commaunding his Beneshall that the next day betimes he should assault the Citie with three hundred halberds, and with those weapons Arthur and his companie lighted of their horses, and saluted the Duke right curteously, and when the Duke sawe them, he praised them greatly in his heart, and friendly did salute them againe. Sir saide Arthur, wee departed from our Country when we heard speake of this warre that you haue in hand, and we three knightes are of Fraunce, and wold gladlie serue some noble man, and be retained to him for his wages. In the name of God saide the Duke, you bee hether right heartelie welcome, and though it bee so that I haue people sufficient, yet wil I be glad to retain you all to be of my house, and haue wages, meat and drinke, horse and harness, and all that you can conquere of your enimies shall be your owne. Sir said Arthur, I thank you, of this matter I shall speake with my companie and know their mindes. But sir, I require you against whom shall we haue to doe: as God helpe me, said the Duke, against the Citie, where in ther is a ladie who hath refused to giue me her daughter in marriage, wherfore I wil win her by force. Sir said Arthur, how long hath it bene since you haue besieged this citie. Verilie said the Duke, it is now more then a yeare, but I will abide here this seauen yeare but I will winne it. Well sir said Arthur, heard you anie thing of late from this Ladie, whether she will agree to your desire or no. I praye in truth saith the Duke, I heard not from them a great while. Well sir said Arthur, peradventure this Ladie repenteth her that she hath not fulfilled your will, for now at the end she knoweth better her owne follie then shee did in the beginning, and neuer the longer, the better shall she know how that her lande is wasted, and she may well see how that shee is inclosed within the citie, & it wasteth her goods, & her people also by all likelibode are greatlie annoyed with so long penning in, so all these thinges ought to moue her to fulfill your desire: Sir said the Duke, it is verie true, howbeit I thinke there is none of her counsaile that can shew her so much

much reason, or elle they will not show it her. But since you haue saide so much as you haue done, I will desire and praye you to doe so much as shew her that which you haue done to me, for you be as yet indifferent, and of neither party, therfore you may speake to her the more belovely, as if she will not agree, let her be certain that I will take her by force, and burne her in my sight, for you haue good reason to doe, saide Arthur, and sith it pleaseth you that I shall goe on this message, I am verie well content therewith. Then Arthur and his companie mounted vpon their horses and rode toward the Citie, then Hector saide: sir where is your Stutcheon of armes on your breast, for you be a good Pursuivant, and thinke to end well your message: yea sir saide Gouvernar, this Duke hath a rich messenger, hee ought to giue you good wages: so thus they rode forth talking and sporting them til they came to one of the gates of the Citie, and knocked thereat so long, till at the last the Porter opened a little windowe, and there he saue three knights all armed and well horsed, and hee demaunded of them what they sought, Arthur answered and saide, wee be messengers sent from the Duke to speake with the Ladie and gouernour of this Citie. Sir saide the Porter, staie a little space and I will goe and speake with her, then the Porter went to the Ladie, who was then among her Barons and knights, and Alice her daughter in her companie, and hee said: Madame may it please you to knowe how that there is at the gate three goodlie knights armed, the fairest that euer I saue, and they saie that they are messengers come to speake with you from the Duke: therfore I came to knowe how you would commaund me to answer them. When Sir Othes who was cousin germaine to the Duke, saide: Madame, mee thinketh it were well done to let them come in, sith they bee messengers. In the name of God saide the Ladie, open the gates to them, and let them enter: When the Porter returned againe to the gate, and suffered them to enter. When Arthur was within the Citie, hee saue greates plentie of Halbes and Spears, horse,

horse and harnais, knights and squires, and great & mighty houses full of riches, and in his heart he praised much this Citie. And all the knights of the Citie behelde these three knights as they rode, and saide each to other, what knights be these, or fro whence they come, & some answered and saide, how they could not tell, and some saide they were messengers sent from the Duke, but whatsoeuer they be they are meruailous faire knights. And thus they rode forth to the palais, and there lighted from their horses and went vp into the hall where they found the Countesse and her barony about her. When the Countesse and her daughter Alice, & all her barons arose against Arthur, and welcomed him, and caused him to sit downe by her and the faire lady Alice and Hector, and sir Othes and Gouvernar. Then Arthur said, Madame we be come hither from the Duke of Burgoule, who demaundeth of you that ye shoulde giue to him in marriage my lady Alice, your daughter, & me thinke that diuerse reasons ought to moue you thus to do. First ye ought to consider how ye shal set her in a right and honourable place. Also you see well the great number of people, & the strength which he hath, and how that your lande is destroyed and wasted, and all the people therof put to exile. Also you ought for to consider how that ye be locked & enclosed here in this citie, and all your noble knights and gentlemen are in great perill of their liues, and leseth their time and substance, the which is right great damage vnto them, so madame all these thinges, and many other wisely considered, ought to moue you to accomplishe this his desire, sith it is but for your honour, and no shame, therefore Madame may it please you to giue me an answer what in your will in this behalf. For saide the Ladie I will giue to you an answer quicklye without takinge of anye other counsaile. Rather than I woulde giue my daughter to a false murtherer, and specially to him that by false treason hath slayne her Father, as God helpe me, I woulde rather suffer him to be burnt to powder.

For gladder would I be to giue her to the poorest groom of  
 Page in all my house, than to him: but I require you tell  
 mee whether you be anie of the knightes retaining to the  
 Duke or no. Madame said Arthur, I am not retaining as  
 yet vnto him, nor with anie other, for I and my companie  
 are knightes arrant, who haue forsaken out owne Coun-  
 tries to seeke adventures, and by fortune we are arriued in  
 to this Dukes host, who would gladly haue vs retained in  
 this his war against you. Sir saide the Countesse, I know  
 not what you be, nor of what linage or Countrie you be of,  
 but it seemeth to me that you are come of some noble house,  
 therefore sir if it would please you to help to deliuer vs out  
 of this thraldome, and defend vs from our enemies, I will  
 giue you my daughter for to do with her what it please you,  
 sauing her honour: yea madame said Arthur, and is that  
 your minde, will you put her into my hands to marrie her,  
 wheresoeuer it shall please me, and to put all your trust in  
 to me in that behalfe. I truste sir with all my heart, saide the  
 Countesse, & how saie you faire Ladie Alice, wil you agree  
 to this. When Alice beheld Arthur, & perceined right well  
 how he was faire and gracious, and saide: Sir I will ac-  
 complish the will of my mother. Well madame quoth Ar-  
 thur, then will it please you to know of all your noble Ba-  
 rons and knightes, whether they will accoord that I shall  
 haue your noble daughter in marriage, or else for to mar-  
 ris her wheresoeuer it shall please me. Sir Dthes, saide the  
 Ladie you be neere a kinne to her, call together all my Ba-  
 rons and my knightes, and conferre with them of this mat-  
 ter to knowe their mindes. When they all entered into a  
 great hall, and there they communed of this matter, and  
 diuerse opinions there were among them, but finally they  
 were all agreed to put their verditte on sir Dthes, the  
 which they all promised to keepe firme and stable. When  
 they all came before the Ladie and Arthur, and there sir D-  
 thes saide, madame we perceine it is your will to giue Lady  
 Alice your daughter to this knight, either for himselfe, or  
 else to giue her wheresoeuer it shall please him best, and we  
 be

we all accorded vnto your minde, that he shall haue her him-  
 selfe, if it pleaseth him in marriage, or else giue her vnto a-  
 nie other whereas he thinketh best, so that she be not there-  
 by abated of her honour and estate: verilie sir said Arthur,  
 I shall bestowe her in as great place and lignage, or grea-  
 ter then she is of her selfe. When they all aunswered and  
 said, we desire nothing else. Well madame said Arthur, are  
 you then agreed, and my Ladie your daughter also, and they  
 aunswered both, they were well content. In the name of  
 God said Arthur, how saie you al my lordes, are you agreed  
 thereto also, and they all answered with once voice & said:  
 Sir, we be right well content, and promise you faithfullie  
 that you shall haue helpe and aide of vs and of ours, to the  
 uttermost of our powers. Well sir, said Arthur, I thanke  
 you as heartely as I can for you good will, and as God help  
 me I will bestowe her in such a place, where shee shall bee  
 better content then with the Duke of Burgoule, who would  
 full gladielie haue her, therefore faire Alice come hether to  
 me. When the maiden arose and came to him, and he right  
 louinglie took her in his armes, and saide vnto her: Faire  
 Ladie Alice, from hence forth you shall be my daughter, my  
 cosin, and my loue: cosin Hector arise and come hether to  
 me, then Hector came to him, and Arthur said to him, mine  
 owne good cosin Hector, I put you in possession of this faire  
 maiden, and with great honour and ioy I freely giue her to  
 you, to haue her in marriage, and al such riches as we may  
 get of the Duke of Burgoule, if it bee our fortune for to dis-  
 comfit him, as I trust to God we shall, and I giue it freelic  
 to you, and as for you faire Alice, sith hee hath laine your  
 father by false treason, I promise you therefore his head  
 for recompence. Sir saide the Damisell, I humbly thanke  
 you of that gifte, for I rather haue that than he made a  
 Queene. But sir, I require you tell mee what is this Gen-  
 tleman to whom you haue giuen mee: Madame saide Ar-  
 thur, as God helpe me he is my lignage and of great blood,  
 for I assure you hee is sonne and heire vnto the Earle of  
 Blois, who is a great Lord and much feared, and when the  
 Countesse

Countesse and her daughter, and all her Lordes heard that, they were right gladde and said, how that God had visited them. When Hector right heartelic thanked Arthur for his gift of the faire Ladie dame Alice, and the same houre they were affianced together, and then beganne there a greatesse feast, and much ioye was made throughout all the Citie. When the Tables were covered for dinner: where they wer right richly serued, and after dinner they sported them together till it was time to goe to their restes. In the next morning Arthur rose betimes and hearde diuine seruice, and then went vp to the pallace, where hee found all the Barons readie apparailled, and there was Hector and Gouvernar, and Sir Mthes. When Arthur saide: faire Lordes, I promised yesterdaie to the Duke when I departed from him, that I woulde retourne to him againe the same night, to shew him the will and intent of my Ladie the Countesse, therefore I will goe now to him all alone, and shewe him his aunswere, for all you shall abide heere still till I come againe, therefore gette mee my harnais, and so anone it was brought to him, and there hee armed him. When Hector saide plainely hee woulde goe with him, but Arthur bad him neuer speake thereof if he would haue his loue and fauour.

How Arthur went alone to the Duke of Orgoule, and gaue him his aunswere, and badde him abide no longer for the faire Alice, for he shewed him how that hee had giuen her to Hector his Cousin, and how that hee had promised to her his head, because hee slew her Father by treason, with the which aunswere the Duke was sore displeased, insomuch that there was betweene them a great battaile.

Chapter. 34.

Then



Then when Arthur was mounted on his horse, hee issued out of the Citie all alone. When Hector saide to Gouvernar and Sir Mthes: Friends, let vs take our harnais, for I feare mee least Arthur shall haue somewhat to doo, or euer hee come againe. You haue right well sayde quoth Gouvernar, and they armed them, and so did all the men of warre that were in the Citie: and when they wer all armed, they went to the battlements of the walles to beholde the demeanour of Arthur, who as then hadde rode so farre, that hee descended from his horse at the Dukes Tent, and there hee saide to the Duke: Sir, verely I answer you, how you neede not to farric heere anie longer for the faire Ladie Alice, for certainlye I assure you, I haue giuen hir to my cousin Hector, and all the lande that belongeth to her both by father and mother: therefore sir, with faire meanes I require you to departe quickly out of his Countrey, and if you will not, I haue promised the faire Ladie Alice, to render her your head in recompence, because you slawe the Carle her Father, by false and deceitfull treason.

When the Duke of Orgoule was so sorrowfull, and filled with displeasure and griefe, that of a greatesse space hee coulde speake neuer a worde to Arthur: but he bad by him

him a cousin, who said to Arthur: Sir Knight you do great wrong to demaund the head of my Lord the Duke, but by the faith that I owe vnto him, in the first place that euer I meete you, I shall make him a present of your head. Then sir said Arthur, and why will you abide so long, seeing you may do it now if you can, wherefore behold me I am heere present, mount by shortly on your horse, and you shall soone meete with me: you say right wel said þe knight, get me my harneis, and so he armed him, & Arthur then mounted vpon his horse, and he espied well where there stood before the Dukes tent a great speare, the which hee tooke in his hand, and withdrew him from the tent to abide the knight: and so when the knight was armed, he leapt on his horse, and saw where Arthur was abiding for him. When Hector as he was vpon the wall of the Citie saide to Gouvernar: Sir, it seemeth my Cousin Arthur shall not come agayne without iuffs. When the knight ranne to Arthur, and hee at him, and they met so fiercely, that the knight brake his speare, but Arthur hit him so violently, that þe speare head entred into his heart, where with he fell downe dead to the earth, and when the Dukes knights being in their tents, saw him fall downe dead, they were soze displeased: and also this knight hadde five knights to his brethren in the Dukes host, and they armed them all at once to runne at Arthur.

How Hector and Gouvernar, and sir Othes, roade out of the Citie well accompanied, to rescue Arthur, who alone assailed the Duke of Orgoule, and all his Armie. Cap. 35.

And when Hector saue them of the Dukes host runne to their harnets, he said vnto Gouvernar, Friends let vs issue out speedely: and sir Othes deliuered the chiefe standard of the Citie to sir Lionet his nephew, and so they issued out of the Citie in good order, and well ranged in battaille: and when Arthur saw the foresaid five knights coming

ming toward him, hee dashed his spurres into his horse, and encountered so with the first, that he thrust his speare through his bodie, and so he fell downe dead. Then hee set his hand to his sword, and strake therewith so the second, that he claue his head nigh to the chin, and from the third he cut his shoulder with the arme, so that all together flew into the feldes, and when sir Othes sawe such meruailous strokes as he gaue, he said, O God what knight is this, hee is the best of all the worlde, God defend him from any damage, verilie his strokes are greatly to be doubted, for they are right beaute, and when the Duke sawe his knightes so slaine onely by one man, he was right fore displeased, and cried out to his knightes, firs to harneis. When the most part of his host hastily mounted vpon their horses, and ranne all vpon Arthur by heaps, here ten, and there twentie, and when Hector saue that, hee picked forth his horse as rudely as though the thunder had giuen him, and when sir Othes saue that he ranne so hastelie, hee saide: By my faith it seemeth he will not recule backe againe, sith hee seeketh for his enemies so hastelie, and Hector encountered the first so valiantlie, that he ranne him throughout with his speare, and he fell downe dead, & then he drew his sword and strake off the head of another, and laide about him in the thickest of the preale, and gaue such strokes that hee slew knightes and drave downe horses, that it was meruile to beholde, and when Arthur sawe him, he smiled and said: Ah good cosin, you followe right well after your predecessors, and Gouvernar at his coming beate downe all about him whatsoever he attained to, that it was wonderfull to beholde, and when Arthur sawe them, hee saide: I ought neuer to faile these knights sith they take such paine to rescue mee, verilie by the grace of God I shall helpe and aide them, and by that time there were against them many of the Dukes knightes, and Arthur strake among them, that the first that he encountered, hee claue his head downe to his necke, and laide so rounde about him, that hee made bands, armes, and heads, and shietted the losse into the

field, and unbarred helmes; and mained many knights, & beat them down on enerie side, so that he made all to tremble that were befoze him, so there was none that abode his strokes without death or grievous woundes. When sir Wlthes had great meruaile at the valiaunce of these knights, and speciallie of the chivalrie of Arthur, and said to his nephew sir Lionet: as God helpe me these knights are able to discomfit the Duke and all his host without any more helpe; and all this season the Countesse and faire Alice her daughter were mounted on the walls of the citie to behold the noble deeds of these three knights. When the Ladie said to her daughter Alice, behold your lord and his companions, I thinke there be no more such in all the world; behold howe they drive asunder the great peaces, and howe the knights lie befoze them for feare; but speciallie behold Arthur, who I thinke be y<sup>e</sup> chiefe flower of all chivalrie; God of his grace hath well provided for vs when hee sent them into this countrie. Right deere ladie and mother said Alice, me thinketh Hector is well armed and demeaneth himselfe right well. Well daughter said the Ladie, dooth he please you: yea verily madam said she: ye haue a good cause daughter so to bee, for among our enemies he is a good Butcher of his hands, and by that time the Duke himself was come to that skirmish, accompanied with five hundred men of war, and sir Wlthes and all the host of the Citie assembled together and fought with the Duke, there began a great mortall battaile betwene both parties, but the Dukes companie was more then that of the citie, and therefore they suffered much pain, insomuch that sir Wlthes was overthrowen and taken prisoner; and when sir Lionet his nephew saw that, he let fall the chiefe banner which he bare, and when Arthur espied that he was neerer to sorrie, and came to sir Lionet & demaunded of him why he did let fall the banner: and hee aunswere and said, Sir, because mine knight sir Wlthes is taken prisoner. When saide Arthur, God defend that, but where is he. As God helpe me sir, he is led forth into ponder great peece that you see yonder. Well said Arthur, lift vp

againe

againe the banner, for by the grace of God he shall be shortly rescued. When Arthur dressed him thetherwarde, and met with Hector and Gouvernar, and saide: Sirs let vs goe rescue sir Wlthes, who is taken prisoner. Then rust they all into the peece, and Arthur met so with the first, that he cast him downe to the earth farre dead, and laide so on enerie side, that they made him a large waie wheresoeuer hee went and Hector and Gouvernar were greatly to be feared, for they made great plentie of saddles to bee voided, so that all that sawe Arthur & his companie said, these be no men, they be fiends of hel, let vs flee from them, for shame haue he that first brought them into this countrie, & when the duke sawe these three knights do such wonderfull meruailes in armes, & slew so great plentie of his knights, hee was so sore displeased that he was almost beside himselfe, & therewith dacht to Hector and strake him so fiercely, that he perced both his shield and his helme, and when Hector felt that rude stroke he was not well content, and lift up his sword and strake the Duke so fiercelie therewith, that the sword sanke throughtout haubert, shield, and helme, and entered deepe into the flesh. In the meane time Arthur came to the, & there he sawe the Duke and Hector fiercelie fighting together. When Arthur strake the duke so sore, that the arse of his saddle could not keepe him, but that hee went to the ground. When Gouvernar took the Dukes horse and deliuered it to Hector, for his owne was sore wounded & verie faint with bleeding, & so Hector forsooke his owne & mounted theron hastilie. When the dukes companie came to rescue him, and so there began a sore and terrible battaile, for there was many slaine and sore wounded, but finally the duke with much paine was rescued & right sore hurt, and wambod into his tent. When the night drew on, so y<sup>e</sup> both parties withdrew each from other, the duke & his companie went into their tents, and Arthur and all those that were with him of his companie repaired to the Citie, and as they went, they sawe betwene the woods and the Citie,

the

the

The Dukes Beneshall going to make assaulte to the Citie with foure hundred men in barneis, and when sir Othes perceined the Beneshall, he showed him to Arthur and said. Sir see yonder wheras is sir Clarembault, Beneshall to the Duke, going to assaile the Citie. Wherlie said Arthur, mee thinketh it is verie late, yet I will ride to him. Ah gentle knight, said sir Othes, deale not so hardlie with him, for he is a good knight, and as gentle as anie liueth, therefore if were great hurt if he wer slaine, & sir your strokes are very beaute, for there is none y can endure the, therefore for gods sake let sir Hector first encounter him. With a right good will said Hector, & so he spurred his horse & escried the Beneshall, and when he heard him, like a good knight he ranne at Hector, and they met so fiercelie, that Hector overthrewe him horse and man at the first course. When his souldiers ranne to haue rescued him, but then Arthur and Gouvernar were there present, and dealt among them such blowes that it was wonderfull to beholde, and with cleane force Arthur took sir Clarembault prisoner, and did incontinentlie send him to the citie vnto the countesse, who was right glad of such a prisoner, and caused him to be vnharmed in all haste, & made him to mount vpon the wall with her for to behold how her knights did demeaned themselves among her enemies, and there sir Clarembault sawe how Arthur did meruailes, for he claue asunder shields, and draue downe knights, & cut off armes, hands, and heads: also Hector & Gouvernar for their parts did meruaillously wel, so that nothing endured before them. Good Lord said Clarembault to the Countesse: Wha name wher got you these knights, as God helpe me they are the best of al the world, for if ye had these three knights they were able to chase out of your countrie the Duke & all his host. Sir said the Lady, God hath holpe me to them: & finally Arthur, Hector, Gouvernar, and sir Othes, did such meruailes of armes, that all the Dukes companie y were with sir Clarembault were cleane discomfited, & there Arthur took sir Clarembault prisoner, & sent them into the citie, & other xl. led to the duke, & all the rest of foure hundred were slaine, and

and when they were before the Duke, and many of them soe hurt, said: A sir, it goeth ill with you and vs, for sir Clarembault your Beneshall is taken prisoner, and softe other knights with him, & all the remnaunt slaine, sauing who be right ill dealt with all as you may see. And the Duke demaunded of them who it was that had done that dede: as God helpe vs sir, it was three knights that was in that companie with sir Othes, but we thinke they be fiends and no earthlie men: and when the Duke heard this, he waxed nigh madde for anger, and swore how that he would neuer depart from siege till he had hanged those three knights, and burnt the Countesse and her daughter. Then incontinently he sent messengers out to his Bailiues & Irouesses, and sent for his brother Peter the Cornu, who shortly came to him ward, and brought with him foure hundred men of warre, and the Dukes great courser named Assyle: and this horse was such, that there was none like him in all the world, for he was named fellowlike to Bucephall the horse of Alexander the greate, there was none that could mount on this horse but onelie the Duke, and the barlet that kept him, and both daie and night hee was euer tied with foure great chaines of yron.

How Arthur, Hector, Gouvernar, and sir Othes, discomfited Peter the Cornu, brother to the Duke, who was come to him with foure hundred knights, and where Cornu was slaine, and all his people slaine or taken prisoners, & how Arthur tooke the Dukes horse named Assyle, the best horse as then in the world. Chap. 36.



When Arthur had taken sir Clarembault the Dukes Beneshall and discomfited all his people, then he entered into the Citie, whereas the people came to welcome him, and saide: God kepe thee in thy strength and vertue, and blessed be the houre that euer thou wert borne. So thus hee came to the pallace, whereas the Countesse and her daugh-

ter met him, and demanded of him how he did: and he said right wel thanked be God, and Alice took Hector her Lord and unarmed him. When Arthur caused all such as were hurt of the prisoners to be brought into the Hallaice, and caused Surgions to search their wounds, and euerie day he would visit them three or foure times, whereby he gave him such loue of euerie creature, that they promised neuer to faile him as long as they liued. When when Arthur was unarmed, there was in his companie Hector, Gouvernar, & sir Wthes. When Arthur took sir Clarendault by the hand and said: Sir make good chere, for you shall haue heere no hurt if I may keepe you therefrom, and verilie you shall be heere in a good prison. Sir said the Countesse, hee shall haue no hurt heere, sith it please you the contrarie, whereof he thanked them greatly, & all that ever heard Arthurs words praised him much, & loued him therefore farre better. When they went to meate, and Arthur and sir Clarendault sate both together. Thus Arthur and the whole armie sojourned still without dooing anie thing the space of a moneth, & by that time such as were hurt were recovered to health, & the Duke and all his host in likewise laie still, for he abode for more companie. So it fortuned that on a wednesday Arthur was risen betimes, and had heard service, and stood leaning in a window and looked into the Dukes host for to see the order of the enemies, and in his companie was Hector Gouvernar, and sir Wthes, and Clarendault. At the last Arthur beheld ouer the Forrest, and espied where there came much people in harnais downe from a great mountaine, he sawe sheldes and helmes shine against the Sun, and saw a great banner wauiing with the wind, and Arthur shewed this to his companie: at the last sir Clarendault knew the banner and said: Sir these people that come yonder are not for your profit, for it is Peter the Cornu, the Dukes brother, who is come to helpe him. Well saide Arthur, he is welcome, it may fortune he cometh too soone, therefore Hector my friend, if we abide and suffer him to assemble his companie with the Dukes host, we shall haue then

then much a doe, toheresore by my counsaile let vs go meet with them before in this Forrest, and let vs shewe them what manner of people we be: as God helpe mee saide sir Wthes, you haue right well deuised, therefore let vs goe arme vs presently. Sir saide Arthur, cause all your people to arme them as priuely as they can, to the intent that they shoulde know nothing therof, and let vs enter as secretly as we may into the Forrest, that we be not espied of them that are comming, & so shall we be in hand with the or they be aware, and as he had deuised, so it was ordained & done, and they rode forth right priuelie into the Forrest, and parted their companions into ambushmentes, till at the last their enemies were among them. When espied sir Wthes the Dukes horse Astile, who was lead in his keepers hand, and shewed him to Arthur & said: Sir, beholde yonder is the best horse of all the world, for he was neuer as yet weary with labour, and whosoener sitteth on him can take no hurt, he is so mightie and strong, in the name of God sayde Arthur, the duke hath done right wel to keepe him so well for me so long as he hath done, for by y faith that I owe to God I wil goe seeke him incontinentlie. When Arthur dressed him toward the man that led the horse, and ere he tooke any heed Arthur caught him by the shoulder and cast him flatts to the ground, then he took the horse by the bridle and light, he leapt on him, then Arthur assaied him in the field, and found him right strong and light, whereof he was wonderfull glad, and would not forgoe him for much golde and silver, and as Arthur thus proued his horse, Peter the Cornu the Dukes brother espied him, and ranne and strake him behinde upon his backe, or euer he was ware, and when Hector sawe that, hee picked forth toward him, and so each of them ranne at other, and mette so rudelie, that Peter the Cornu brake his speare, but Hector marked him so well, that he put his speare through his bodie, and hee fell downe dead in the same place. And when that Peter the Cornues man sawe that, they assailed Hector on all sides, and enclosed him among them, and wounded

so his horse, that he fell down vnder him, but he anon leapt  
vpon his feete and noblie defended him, so that none durst  
approch nere him, but they did cast at him swordes and  
other weapons, and so wounded him in diuerse places:  
at the last Gouvernar espied him and said to Arthur:  
Sir, for Gods sake goe and succour Hector, your cosin who  
is in great neede, and when Arthur heard that, hee spurred  
his noble horse Assile, and leapt forth fiftene fote of plain  
ground, and so rusht in among them that were in hands  
with Hector, and encountered the first so, that hee claue him  
downe to the chinne, and another he carued his head to his  
teeth, and made heads, armes, and handes flie into the field,  
and therewithal the whole companie came together, where  
as there was a terrible battaile. At the last Gouvernar  
got a good horse, and brought him straight to Hector, who  
mounted shortly thereon, and dast into the pzease, and  
there did meruailes of armes, for hee confounded all that  
euer he attained vnto, and Arthur and Gouvernar did valiantly  
for their part, and sir Dthes and his companie were  
not behinde, but they did full noblie, and so finally Arthur  
and his companie bare them so well, that all their enemies  
were discomfited, and there were taken prisoners about  
thre score, which were ledde into the citie of Wzewle, and  
many fledde awaie sore wounded, and a great number of  
them were slaine, and then Arthur and his fellows returned  
to the citie, and there the Countesse receiued them  
right curteouslie with greate ioye and triumph, and when  
she knew how the Dukes brother was slaine, and Assile  
the good horse wonne, she greatlie reioyced thereof, and  
sayde to Arthur: Ah sweet friend, you overcome mine enemies  
one after another. When sir Clarembault was right  
sorrowful when he knew of the death of sir Peter the Coz-  
nel, and sayd, Woe you haue had but an ill acquaintance  
with this knight, and wonne but little thereby, and I feare  
me you are like to lose moze: ah good Peter the Coznu, God  
receiue thy soule, and thus he shewed greafe sorrowe, and  
Arthur did as much as he coude to comfort him, and such  
as

as were escaped from the battaile fledde to the Duke, and  
shewed him how that his brother Peter the Coznu was  
slaine, and all his men slaine and taken, and his good horse  
Assile ledde into the Citie of Wzewle, wherewith the Duke  
was so sorrowfull that hee could not sustaine himselfe, but  
fell downe in a traunce, and when he reuiued he sayd: Ah  
sweete brother, deere haue you bought the seeking of this  
Countesse, sith you haue lost your life for her, then he com-  
maunded that the bodie of his brother should be fetcht, and  
carried to the Citie of Wzgoule, and so it was done, and  
there he was solempnly buried, and the Duke bewailed  
the death of his brother the space of eight daies continu-  
allie.

How Arthur and his companie vtterlie discomfited  
the Duke, and strake off his head, and did send it  
by Gouvernar to the faire Ladie Alice and to her  
mother, as he had promised before. Chap 37.



**A**t the end of eight daies the Duke commaun-  
ded that all his people should be armed and rea-  
die prepared to the fight, to the intent he might  
assault the Citie, whereat he said hee would bee  
himselfe, and when Arthur hearde all that noise without  
in the Dukes host, and saue euerie man in harnais, hee  
knew right well thereby how they intended to assaile the ci-  
tie. When he called to him Hector, Gouvernar, and sir Dthes,  
and said: Friends let vs arme vs and all our companie,  
and let vs go for to encounter the Duke, who is coming  
to assaile this citie. My Lozde Arthur, saide sir Dthes,  
for Gods sake be well aduised what you doe, for they be a  
great multitude of people, and a great part of our men be  
sore wounded, and as yet not thorough whole, therefore sir  
by mine aduice we shall not issue out, but let vs defend this  
citie within. My lord said Arthur, if God be pleased, wee will  
haue no such reproch, therefore let vs issue out & go into this  
great wood loyning to the ditches of our towne, till our eni-  
mies

mies be come to the walls, then let vs assemble & fight with them, and when we shall see our time, we may if neede be, withdraw vs againe into this citie in spite of them all. Sir said Hector, you saie right wel, so let it be done. Then there was sounded a great horne, and by the noise thereof euerie man in the citie ran to their barneis, such as was able, and so they all issued out, and all they passed not the number of two hundred, and when they were issued out, they went betwene the forest and the ditches, so that they were not espyed of anye of the Dukes host, & anone Arthur perceived where there came foure hundred halbertes well araided for the warre, and xiiii. crossbowes, and also he sawe a meruailous great banner waivering with the winde, and did shew it to syz Dthes, and when he sawe it he knew it right wel and said. How gentle knights be merrie, for this banner is pertaining to syz Gace, brother to my labie the countesse, who is come out of the land of peozland for to succour my Labie. Well, good friend said Arthur, ride on afoze and knowe the truth whether it be he or no, and then syz Dthes rode forth a great pace and approached neere vnto syz Gace, & made a token of peace, & when they sawe each other, they put off their healmes & made to each other great ioy. Then syz Gace demaunded how it went with the warre of his sister and of the duke, and who as then had the better: as god help me said syz Dthes, as yet we haue y better & the ouer hand thanked be God, and that is by the reason and aide of thre knights that God I thinke hath sent vnto vs, for aboue all other knights they are full strong and mightie, and vnder knight that you may see sitting on Asyle which was the Dukes good horse, is the chiefe and soveraigne knight of all the world, for his chivalrie surmounteth all other, syz this is hee that one daie did discomfit the duke, and also he hath taken sir Clarembault prisoner, and discomfited all his rout, and also hath wonne the Dukes horse Asyle, as you may see, for he is mounted on his back, and that other knight that is by him is his cousin, and

he slew on a day Peter the Cornu the Dukes brother. Also this knight that sitteth on Asyle the good horse hath promised to my labie your sister and to her daughter the head of the Duke, because he slew by false treason my Lord her husband. God that hath created all things saide sir Gace, giue him power to accomplish his promise, let vs ride to them. So then they rode forth and all his traine, and when Arthur sawe them he put off his helme, and spurred forth Asyle his horse, and came to sir Gace, and each of other made great ioy. Then sir Gace thanked Arthur right hartely for the paine that hee had taken in his sisters warres. Sir said Arthur, I trust this day we shall end all the matter, for I know well the duke is gone to assaile the Citie, therefore me thinketh it were good y he were nobly withstood, and in my minde it is best to parte our companie in twaine, therefore syz if it please you, you shall haue in your companie my Cousyn Hector, Gouvernar and syz Dthes, & you shall goe along vpon these ditches, and so encounter our enemies face to face, and I and my companie will come in behinde their tents, so that when you be in hande with them I will be at their backes, whereby you shall see them so abashed, that they will loose the best halfe of their hardi nesse. Sir you haue right well deuised the matter saide syz Gace, and so they departed each from other, and syz Gace, Hector and Gouvernar and syz Dthes rode forth together so couertly, that neither the duke nor anye of his knew thereof, and so the duke when he came to the fortresses of the citie, he prepared himselfe and all his men to begiune the assault, and therewith syz Gace & his companie fell on them fiercely. When Hector spurred his horse, & incountered the Goffer, who was a great officer of the dukes, and strake him so fiercely, that he pearced his heart, and so he fel down dead to the earth before the duke, then Hector set his hande to his sword, and gaue the duke such a stroke, that hee wasaine to stope downe vnto the necke of his horse. When the Dukes men fell on Hector on all sydes, but he defended him like a noble man.

Then

When Gouvernar for his part, beate downe knights on all sides, and when sir Gace saie him doe so well, hee praised him greatly in his heart: then hee & all his companie freshly ranne vpon the dukes hoast, howbeit the dukes companie were farre aboue them, wherefore hee indured much paine. And when Hector saw that, hee was right sorrowfull, and spurred his horse and abandoned himselfe among his enemies, & Gouvernar likewise, who gaue such strokes, that he confounded all that euer he attained vnto, till at the last his horse failed vnderneath him, and hee fell to the ground, and then his enemies fel vpon him on all sides, but he fought so fiercely, that none durst approach him, for hee confounded all that euer hee attained vnto, and sir Gace folowed him as nere as euer he could, but for all that Gouvernar was so ouermatched, that he was taken prisoner, & ten other knights pertaining to the companie of sir Gace, and so they were lead toward the Dukes tent, and at that time Arthur was among the tents, cutting of ropes, beating downe of pavilions, and at the last he espied Gouvernar whereas he was lead forth like a prisoner, wherewith Arthur was right sore displeased, and rusht in among the, and the first that he encountred with, hee departed life and bodie asunder, and he smote the head from an other, and so then by the help of sir Gace, they brought to death all those that lead forth sir Gouvernar, and remounted him againe vpon another horse. When Arthur strake so in the pzease, that he dzone asunder shields, and crushed to death all that euer he touched, so that all fled before him, for there was none that durst abide him without that he would receive the death, and that sir Gace saw right well, and sayde, O good Lord what knight is this, I thinke there is not his peer in all the world. When sir Wther and Gouvernar and their companie laid on with so great and so beaute strokes, that they might well bee heard a great way off, and the Dukes people were sore afraid, when they perceiued how they were assailed on all partes both before and behinde, and Hector by chance encountred the duke and strake him

so sore, that he cut a waye a great peece of his harnieis, and caused him to rouse nigh to his horse crupper, and when the duke felt that stroke, he strake againe Hector so fiercely that he claued his shield, and pearced through his harnieis, but as fortune was, it did not enter into the flesh, and so there was a great battaile betwene them, but the greate pzease of both parties did depart them, & as Arthur went searching the great and thicke pzeases, he found where sir Gace was out foote defending himselfe right valiantly, and Gouvernar was there doing his best to rescue him, but the pzease was so great that they indured much paine, then Arthur strake into the thickest among the so fiercely that he ouerthrewne knights by heapes, and did such deedes of armes that it was wonderfull to behold, and so he remounted againe sir Gace in despite of all his enemies. When the dukes companie beganne to were feeble, which when the Duke perceiued he was right sorrowful, and so it fortunied him to encounter with sir Hector, who had beaten downe in his sight two of his knights, and therewith hee strake Hector so fiercely that nigh with the same stroke he was sore astonished: but Hector strake him againe so strongly on the helme that he entered into it foure fingers deepe, and right sore wounded him on the head wherewith hee was brought into a traunce, and his horse bare him all about he knewe not where. And at last hee came before the sight of Arthur, and as soone as he saw him, hee knewe well it was the Duke, and strake him so rudely betwene the necke and the beade, that his heade fell on the horse necke, and Gouvernar took and receiued it. When Arthur said, Gouvernar I will that you go and beare this Dukes head to the Countesse, and to her daughter Alice, and shew them how I do send it them, to accomplish the promise which I made. Sir said Gouvernar, with a right good will, and so hee departed from the hoast, and entered into the Citie. And anon the tidings came all about the Citie how that Gouvernar had brought the Dukes head to the Countesse from Arthur, and so all the people ranne to see the dukes head, and sang all

this faire Lady Alice to freeling him to my comferte, he said: I will that you know that the said Gentleman, and sonne and heire unto a right mightie and puissant Lord, the Earle of Blois, therefore I shew you this to knowe your misdoe whether you will agree to this marriage or no. In the name of God said the Duke, if there were no more in him but onelie this noble chivalrie, he wold be to have one much better then he is, and therefore I wold be thereto with my heart: well said Arthur, sith that ye be agreed, the matter is the better. said it is so, now this Duke hath his reward for his trespass, and you have here much people, and alsony Lady hath great plenty of men of war now here in this cite and in the countrie, and souldiers will come to us daily if we neede, therefore by my aduice we will goe into the Dukes countrie, and conquere all that land, so I haue promised it to Hector my cosin, & if it wee neede any succour or aide, I promise you I canne cause to come vnto us a king and thre great Carles with all their strengths, so that it will be hard to wither them. When Sir Gace said: noble Arthur beholde mee heere, I will bee the first and al that I can make, is and shal be at your commaundment, and I will followe you with all my heart: and all that I can make saide the countesse, shall be ready to attend on my brethers forme in lawe noble Hector your cosin, and he shall haue all my power to followe your commaundment. Madam said Arthur, I thanke you. When they left their counsaile and went to meate, whereas they were richly feted, and after meate Arthur vld visite all them that were hurt. When Arthur and the countesse, and all other Barons and knights, went into the hall, & there Arthur departed all such treasure that was worthe at the battaile against the Duke, and gaue to euerye hobie so large, that each man was well content. When the countesse sent out her commaundment to all her subjects, such as might beare burthen, either on horse or on foot, to come to her in all haste possible, and to be at the towne on his partie, and so they came to London the xijth of febr,

and

and there they all assembled together the munday befoze Shewelaine tide, vnder the cite of Brewele, and by that time such as were hurt were recouered to health, and all things necessarie was made ready to remoue, and a moneth after that the Duke was slaine, Arthur and Hector toke leave of the Countesse and of Alice her daughter, and commaunded all the host should take the next waie to the Citie of Dagonle, and then Arthur mustered his people, and found howe there were two thousand horsemen, and eight hundred on foot, so they rode forth toward the Countrie of Dagonle. But when the Gentlemen of that Countrie vnderstode howe Arthur came on them with banners displayed, and saue well how they had no capitaine sith the Duke and his brethren and cosins were all slaine at the siege of Brewele, & they knew well howe Arthur had done all this, they assembled them together in the cite of Dagonle, and there toke counsaile what they might best doe. At the last they concluded and said, how that they were weary & hurt, and lost all that euer they had in the last battell of Brewele, both their goods, their fathers, their sonnes, their nephews, their friends, and all their linage, therefore they saide they had lost inough, wherfore they were of purpose to recopard no farther, & finally concluded not to defend their countrie from Arthur, but utterly to yeld all vnto him, so they said they knew wel though they would, they were not of y power to resist against his chivalrie, & of this accord was all the burgeses of the cite, & so by common consent they sent certaine messengers vnto Arthur, desiring him if it were his will that he shuld do no hurt to their countrie, for they were in minds to yeld all to him, & so receiue him as their chiefe Lord. And when Arthur heard that, he was right ioyfull, & commaunded incontinently throughout all his host, that no man vppon paine of death should hurt any creature of y country, & so long they rode, til at the last they arriued at the cite of Dagonle, and all the Gentlemen & burgeses when they perceiued that he was nere the cite, they all issued out to meete him, & receiued him with great ioy, and yelded to him

th,

the

the keyes of the citie, & gave him full possession of the countrie. Then all the host lodged without, & Arthur & a certain number with him entered into the Citie, and remained there three daies.

How Arthur made his cosin Hector Duke of Orgoule by the assent of all the Lords of that Countrie. Chap. 39.



Arthur called before him all the Lords and Barons of that realme, & said: Sirs, you have rendered here to mee this Citie, and all the whole Countrie, therefore it is right and necessarie that you have a Lord and gouvernour ouer you, wherefore I will giue you one, I assure you right puissant both by birth and friends, which is Hector here my cosin, therefore make him Duke of all this countrie, & I wil that you do him homage, and sir Clarendault I wil that you begin first, and heere I release you of your imprisonment. Wherby sir said he, I am right well content so to doe with my Lord is dead, and hath no heires to whom his land should succede, and so he arose and did homage to Hector, and after him all other did so, & took him for their duke and soueraigne Lord. When Arthur sent to Brewele for the countesse and Alice her daughter, to the intent that Hector and she should bee married together within the citie of Orgoule, & when she was come the marriage was made betwene them with great triumph & joy, the which endured fifteen daies, and at the end of the fifteen daies all the host departed, euerie man into his owne countrie, and then Arthur called to him Hector, sir Gace, sir Clarendault, sir Dithes, and Guethas, & said: Sir Gace behold here Duke Hector my cosin, who hath wedded your niece, therefore charge you to love him from hence forth, and sir Dithes, he is your cosin, therefore I beseech you love Hector, & beare him faithful faith, and if his people happen to rebell against him, succour and help him, for from hence forth you are bound therunto: and cosin Hector, if any war fall vnto you, send me word into the Citie of Orgoule, whether I am pur-

purposed to go, & I wil presently come to you: & sir Clarendault I put my cosin Hector into your hands, therefore I desire you keepe your faith to him as you haue promised, & he shall loue you, and put his chiefe trust alwaies in your wil dome. Sir I shall said sir Clarendault beare to him faithful alliance and loue, as to my soueraigne Lord, and so he did euer after, for he was a true knight. Then Arthur said to Hector, cosin deale wisely among your Lords & subjects, & then you shall do well, & now I commend you to God: when Hector heard that, he said: sir if God bee pleased there is neither land nor wife shall holde me but I will goe with you, that shall not be said Arthur, therefore keepe wel your land, and acquaint you with your Barons, and when I returne againe I wil come by you. Thus Arthur took leaue of the countesse and Alice her daughter, the dutchesse of Orgoule, and of al other knights that offered to go with him, but he in no wise wold, and so took with him Gouvernar, Jaket, and Baldewin, & duke Hector and sir Gace, & many other conuayed him two daies on his iourney, then Arthur took leaue of them, and they returned verie sorrowfull for his departing, and went to Orgoule, whereof Hector was then Duke, and Carle of Brewele by his wife, and he used himselfe so noblie, that he got the loue of all his Lords, & kept his land in great peace and tranquillitie, and great loue there was betwene him & the faire Ladie Alice his wife. Now let vs leaue to speake of Hector till another time, and returne wee to Arthur.

How Arthur and Gouvernar departed a sunder, & of the terrible adventures that each of them found ere they met againe. Chap. 40.

When Arthur was thus departed from Hector his cosin, who was then Duke of Orgoule, he and his company rode so long till they had passed into many strange countries, and among other they past the land of Constantinople, and Armice, and at last entered among the mountains where betwene the Empire of Inde the more, and breadth of Orgolis, ther they arrived in a most sauge place, whereas

whereas there were many wilde beastes of diuerse kindes,  
and at the last they issued out of y<sup>e</sup> forrest, and entered into a  
saire graine medowe, whereas they sawe standing a great  
towre, and thether they went and found a young Squier,  
who was Lord of that place, who receiued them that night,  
and made them good chere, and after supper as they stood in  
a window, the Squier demaunded of Arthur whether hee  
was going. I will goe euer forwarde said Arthur, till I see  
my time to returne againe. Sir said the Squier, I deman-  
ded it of you for no ill, for bebbld yonder befoze you whereas  
there lieth a forked waie, the path that lieth on y<sup>e</sup> right hand  
is dangerous, for ther is none that entereth into that way  
but shortly he receiue death, and that I know well, for as  
yet there was neuer anie which went that way that retur-  
ned againe, and as for the other waie that lieth on the left  
hand, it is good enough, and without ieopardie, for that is  
the readie passage into the Country of Inde the more. When  
Arthur demaunded of him what was the cause y<sup>e</sup> the other  
waie was so deadlie and ieopardous. Sir said the Squier,  
I cannot tell you the truth, but as it is said, it is the way to  
a castle, the which is so strong and aduenturous, that none  
scapeth ther without death, howbeit it is said, that a knight  
shall at the last atchieue it, and so doe all the aduentures of  
that place, the which are right great & meruailous, but it is  
thought that knight is not yet bozn, to be brief, sir I know  
not what I shuld saye, but I know wel that al such as haue  
gone thether neuer came againe, wherefoze I knowe well  
that they be all dead, and this saide strong castle is named  
the Port Poire. Well good friend said Arthur, is there no  
other passage to this castle but by this perilous way? yes sir  
said the Squier, for this great waie that you sit on the left  
hand, goeth to Inde the more, and when you come thether,  
there is another waie which will bring you straight to  
the castle of Blanch Holme, and from thence you shall  
haue a reioys passage to the Citie of Angence, and then when  
you bee there, euerie man can shew you the next waie to  
the Castle of the Port Poire, but which waie sooner a  
man

man goe thether, he neuer commeth againe. Well sayde  
Arthur, all must be as God will haue it, and therewith hee  
called Gouvernar and said: Friend, it is convenient now,  
that we depart asunder, for you shall goe the waie through  
Inde the more, and so repaire the next waie that you can to  
the port Poire, and I will goe by the waie that lieth on the  
right hande alone, sauing I will haue with mee Balde-  
win, and you shall haue with you Jaket, then Gouvernar  
sayd: Sir & God will you shall not goe to your deathward,  
but and you die I will in like case suffer death with you. Sir  
said the Squire, for gods sake goe you not that way, nor  
thinke it not, for it is a greates follye, for I assure you shall  
die or you can obtaine to passe through that passage, for  
there is as it is said, a fel griffon greatly to be doubted, that  
keepeth short an Eagle of golde, and when Arthur hearde  
speaking of the Eagle of golde, and of the griffon, hee re-  
membred his vision that he had ere he went out of his own  
countrie, wherefoze there was none that could tourne his  
purpose, yet Gouvernar bidde as much as hee coulde for to  
chaunge his minde, but finallie he said: friend Gouvernar,  
if you lone me speake no more of the mutter, for as I haue  
devised, so shall it be without faile. And when Gouvernar  
heard that, he was in his minde right sore displeased, & said:  
Sir I haue nourished and serued you sith the beginning of  
your tender youth, and wil you then disseuer me now from  
your companie, also I haue for your sake lost mine owne  
countrie, and all my friends, in trowth you deale with mee  
right hardly, if you doe as you saie. Shall I returne againe  
to my Lord your Father, if you die in this aduenture, cer-  
tainely nay, for I wil neuer returne home againe for al the  
gold of the world, but staie my selfe if I maye knowe anie  
otherwise of you then good. Well said Arthur, speake no  
more thereof, for I will that I shall be thus. And when Go-  
uernar perceiued that his minde was so feruently fixed, he  
durst moue him no more of the matter, for feare of his  
displeasure, and so for that night they went to theyr  
restes, and in the morning early leapt on theyr horses,  
waie,

How Gouvernar came to a strong castle called the Brosse,  
and vanquished the Knight that kept it. And how  
that afterward he was kept in that Castle against  
his will in great daunger of death, till at the last  
Arthur deliuered him as you shall heere heereaf-  
ter. Chap. 42.

**T**Hus when Gouvernar was departed from the wounded  
Knight and from the damsell, he rode for the same daie  
so long, till it was full none, then he issued out of the wild  
Forrest and found a faire medow, & saw befoze him a mer-  
uailour faire castle, round about the which he well percei-  
ued how that there were pight fresh tents and goodly pau-  
lions, and also he saw many bright helmes shining against  
the Sunne, also he wel beheld how that there was pight in  
midst of the field a great piller, wheron ther was hanging  
a rich and goodly shield: then Gouvernar rested himself a lit-  
tle space to behold all these aforesaid things: and when the  
Knights that were within the tents and paulions sawe  
him so standing in a muse, twelue of the well armed moun-  
ted on their horses and went to meete him wheras he stood,  
and right curteouslie did salute him, and said: Sir it beho-  
ueth you to render your homage which is due, and accusto-  
med to be had in this place. Why sir sayd Gouvernar, what  
is that? Sir sayde they, there is no Knight that passeth by  
this place but ere he depart he must strik at this faire shield,  
and also must iust against him that is owner thereof, and  
the manner is such of this place, that if the Knight within  
ouercome him without, then hee that is so ouercome shall  
leese his horse and harnais, and shall bee ledde on foote to the  
Judge limited for this case, who shall cause it to be openly  
proclaimed and saide, beholde the Knight that is vanquish-  
ed, and if the Knight straunger ouercome him that is with-  
in, then it shall be done by him as wee haue deuised to you  
heere befoze, & then the Knight straunger that so hath ouer-  
come him shall be Lord of this castle, of the faire lady that  
is

is within it, and all we shall be his seruantes to loue and  
keepe him as our chiefe Lord. In the name of God said Go-  
uernar, this said iustes I will not refuse, but as for the seg-  
niorie of this Castle and the abiding therein, I release free-  
lie if God send me the victorie. When those that were in the  
paulions mounted on their horses all armed, who were  
wel to the number of two hundred, and all they came about  
Gouvernar and said: Sir, you must iust at this shield. Then  
Gouvernar spurred his horse & gaue the shield such a stroke,  
that it might well be heard a great disaunce off, and there-  
with the Knight within the castle issued out all armed, and  
when Gouvernar sawe him come they ranne each at other,  
and the Knight gaue Gouvernar a greate stroke, and brake  
his Speare, but Gouvernar strake him so stronglie, that hee  
bare him to the earth ouer his horse taile, and brused sore  
with the fall his left arme, so that he could not remount a-  
gaine on his horse without helpe, and when all the other  
Knights sawe that, they toke and vnarmed him, and lead  
him forth on foote to a citee there by, and there he was ren-  
dered to the Justice, and incontinentlie it was proclaimed  
thoroughout all the strates in the Towne, beholde here the  
Knight that is vanquished, and so then they toke Gouvernar  
and brought him with great ioye into the Castle, and then  
there encountered him a faire damsell, who was Ladie of  
the Castle, who said: Sir you be welcome to this place, and  
I require you be nothing dismaide, for heere shall you be ser-  
ued & be beloued as chiefe Lord of all this place, & one thing  
I assure you, you shall be in as good safetie of your bodie as  
euer I was of mine, but you must abide still with me heere  
the space of two yeares, except that another Knight ouer-  
come you, as you haue done him which was heere in this  
place last. A faire Ladie sayde Gouvernar, if God will  
I will not abide heere the space of fise dayes. Well sir,  
saide the Ladie, it will bee none other wise, therefore bee  
content therewith. Well madame, sayde Gouvernar, my  
test is better. But for all that it was not according to his  
will, for as soone as he was entered into the Castle, the

Bridges were drawen by and kept with fortie knightes, to the intent he should not escape, but alwaies he was served richlie with many goodly Squires, who did nothing else but pleasauntlie serue him, but for all that they coulde doe, they could in no wise please him, seeing hee might not goe seeke for his Lozde Arthur, howbeit hee woulde not for shame suffer anie other knight to vanquish him, yet many knightes came thether, but euer hee overcame them all. Thus Gouvernar abode ther a long space, till at the last Arthur deliuered him. Now let vs leaue to speake of Gouvernar, and returne againe to Arthur.

How Arthur conquered the castle of the Port Noire, by his prowesse, and slew all them that kept it, and how after that he entered into the halls of the palleice, where he was assailed of two great and horrible Lions, and of a great Gyant, & how he overcame them all with great paine, and atchieued all the meruailous aduentures of the Castle, the which are right wonderous to rehearse. Chap. 43.

**W**hen Arthur was departed from Gouvernar, hee tooke the waie on the right hand, & so rode forth three daies without finding of any aduenture, or anie manner of house or place, yet by the counsaile of his host he tooke with him sustenance for himselfe and for his horse for the space of three or foure daies, and thus he passed by many vales and mountains, so that he and his horse wer verie weary, and on the fourth day he found an horrible riuer, deepe and broad, the banks were so high from the water, that he could not see it runne, the which water roared and ranne so swiftly, that none might passe without drowning, and in certaine places it was full of great and mightie Rockes, the which were of such height, that from the valley beneath, the toppe of them might scarce bee seene, the which rockes were so full of vermine, that all the Riuer thereby stanke abominably.

At

At the last Arthur found a little way along by the Riuer side on the left hand, in the which he rode so long till it was high none, and then he espied a little straight way between two mountaines that were of a meruailous height, then he found a little narrow bridge over this riuer, which with much paine hee passed over, then he entered into a straight caucie made of stone, wherein he rode forth, and on euery hand of him al was but great marishes and foule stinking waters, the which way brought him straight vnto the port Noire, the which was the strongest castle in all the world, & so when he came to the bridge, he found twelue knightes all armed on horse-backe, sixe at the one ende of the bridge and sixe at the other ende, and at the gate there were xii. other knightes on foot holding hatchets and maces of stele in their hands to the intent to keepe that none should enter into the Castle, and aboue on the battlements & bulwarks there stood men of warre with crosse-bowes and other weapons to defend the place, and all this while in the mount perillous was master Steuen Clarke to the faire Florence, daughter vnto the mightie King of Sodoloy, who had liuen there almost the space of a yeare to abide the coming of that knight that shoulde atchieue all the aduentures of that Castle, and in his companie was the Constable that kept the palleices and halls without the Castle of the port Noire, and then master Steuen knewe by his bookes and cunning of Astronomie, that the knight shoulde come the same day, therefore he and his companie mounted on the walls of the Palleice, to see how the knight should do, that was as then come to the gate of the Castle of the Port Noire. And when the first sixe knightes sawe Arthur, they tooke their shieldes & speares. When Arthur said to Baldwin, friend I haue neede now to take good heede, therefore carrie you here without, and let me alone with them. When these sixe knightes ranne all at once on Arthur on the Bridge and strake him with speares and swordes, but for all that they coulde doe, he felte no hurte, but hee so furiously encountred with the first that his speare did glyde through

through his bodie, and so he fell downe dead and the speare brake, and with the tronchon thereof he strake the seconde so, that he ouerthrew both horse and man and they fell beside the bridge into the water, and when the knight hadde thought to haue recovered himselfe againe out of the water, Baldwin cast him downe againe into the riuer, and there he was drowned. When Baldwin toke his speare & brought it to Arthur, wherewith he strake another knight so fiercely, that the head of the speare pearced his heart, & he fell downe dead, and when the three other knights saw that their three fellows were slaine, they fled backe againe ouer the bridge, and went to their fellows at the Bridge foote, and Arthur folowed them with his sword in his hand and stroke one of them that he claue him to the shoulders, then all the remnaunt ranne at once at him, but he defended himselfe valiantly, as he that nothing feared, for such was his manner, the more he had to doe the greater grew his strength and courage, & he put himselfe betwene them and the gate, because of them that were on the walles, for they did much trouble and assailed him on all sides, & euer right nobly he defended himself, and gaue such strokes, that he made to flie into the field, heads, armes, and handes, and whosoeuer hee felled to the earth, neuer arose againe, for Baldwin toke them by the legs, and did cast them ouer the bridge downe into the riuer, wherein they were drowned: then Arthur began to chase and were angrie, & layde on so fast rounde about him, that finally he slewe them all saue two, who fled in at the gate, and thought so for to haue escaped, but Arthur hastened him so fast after them, that hee strake of one of their heads, & as the other stopped to haue entred in at the gate, Arthur strake him so fiercely on the backe, that he claue him nigh asunder, then they that were on the Bulwarkes and on the walls did cast at him manie great stones and other weapons, but they could do him no hurt, because that he was so nere to the gate. When when the other twelue knightes which were on foote within the gate, saw the discomfiture of their twelue fellows that were

were on horse-backe, none only by one man, they wer right sorrowfull, and so ranne out all at once at him with great hatchets in their hands, and when Arthur saw them, hee feared greatlye while his good horse, therefore hee alighted and deliuered him to Baldwin and bad him goe tie him without the bridge foote, then Arthur encountered so with the first, that he made his head to flye into the field, and to the second he gaue such a stroke, that he claue his head nigh to his teeth. And when master Stenen which was on the walls of the pallaice, sawe the noble proesse of Arthur, and the great strokes that hee gaue, saide to his companie: verely behold yonder is the noblest knight in the world, it is he that shall atchieue the adventures of this place, it is the same knight that we haue carried here for so long, and euer Arthur fought fiercely among these people, and beate them down one after another, and among them there was so great and big as though he had bene a Giant, who ranne at Arthur and ere hee was aware toke him by the legges and pulled him so fiercely, that they fell downe both together to the earth, but Arthur fell vnderneath the great churle, and then one of the other knights when he saw Arthur lie on the earth, he lift vp his are and thought to haue striken Arthur on the head, but in their bustling together the strike lighted on the great diuell, so that his huge and foule heade felle to the earth. When Arthur leapt on his feete and saide: Sir I thanke thee, for thou hast deliuered me from much paine and icopardie and sith thou hast deliuered me from this foule charle, I will pay thee anon thy wages, and therewith he lift vp his sword and gaue him such a stroke, that hee claue his head asunder, then Arthur abandoned himselfe among the remnaunt so fiercely, that he made great plentie of heads and armes fly to y ground, and to make short proesse, he did so much, that none of the twelue were left aliue, but they were all slaine and chistened in the water by Baldwin, for hee was to them a good Godfather. When Arthur kept in at the wicket of the gate and all those that were on the walls did shote and cast at him,

him, and ever he bare it off by his shield as well as he might, till at the last he came to them, and the first that he met with lost his life; and there did such overhailes that it was a wonder to thinke thereof, for some hee threw over the walles, and some leapt into the water, so that finallye they were slaine and drowned, and none left alive in all the Castle that he could see or heare, and when Arthur was right sore travailed with casting of them into the water that were slaine. When Arthur saide to Batwin, friends I will goe enter into the great pallaice of adventures, the which he saw before him in the Castle, therefore Batwin said that you abide me here in this Court, and keep wel my horse Asile till I come againe to you. Sir said Batwin, for Gods sake put your selfe no more into any place, whereas you thinke is perill. Well saide Arthur, care not for that, but I pray you do as I saye, and loke in no wise you come to me without I cal you. When Arthur mounted by certaine graces to enter into the hal of the pallaice, the which was the way unto the mount pepillons, and ther he found the most faire house that ever was seene, set al about with images of fine golde, and the windowes were all of fine Amber, with manie high and cleere casements, and out of this hall he entered into a chamber the most richest that ever was seene, for sith God first made mankinde, there was no manner of histoye nor battaile, but in that chamber it was portrayed with golde and azure, and other fresh colours so lively wrought, that it was wonderfull to behold, there was shewen how God did create the Sunne & the Moone, and in the roose were all the seven Planettes wrought with fine golde and silver, and all the situations of the heauens, wherein were pight manie carbuncles and other precious stones, the which did cast great clearnesse, as wel by daie as by night, to say the troth it was the most richest chamber and the wonderfull, that ever was seene in all the world. Prosperina Queene of the Fairie caused it thus to be made. Also there were divers haue wonderfull rich especially one that stode in the midde of the chamber,

sur-

surmounted in beaultie all other, for the vpper brasses ther, of were of greene Jasper, with great bars of gold set full of precious stones, and the crampons were of fine silver imbrodered with golde, the postes of Iuorie, with pomells of Cozall, and the staves closed in Buckram, couered with Crimolin Satten, and sheetes of silke, with a rich covering of Ermins, and other clothes with cloth of golde, and foure square pillows wrought among the Saracins, the curtains were of greene Sandall, edged with golde and azure, and round about this bed there laye foure carpets of silke, pointed and embrodered with Images of gold, and at the foure corners of this bed there were foure conduits meruailous, he wrought by subtil art, out of the which there issued so sweete an odour and so delectable, that all other sweetnesse of the world was as nothing in respect thereof, and at the head of this bed there stode an Image of golde that had in his left hand a bow of Iuory, and in his right an arrowe of fine silver, in the middell of his brest ther were letters that said thus: When this Image shotteth, then al this pallaice shall tourne like a wheele, and then whosoever lieth in this bed shall die, without it be that knight to whom this bed is beſtined. And when Arthur saw the richnesse of this chamber, and speciallie of the bed, he had great pleasure to behold it, and said to himselfe, how that at all adventures he wold lie downe on the bed, and not feare for anie dread of death, and as he was lying downe on the bed, hee espied in euerie corner of the chamber a great Image of fine gold standing, each of them holding in their hands a great horn of silver, and by their countenance they were ready to blow. When Arthur heard a great voice, which was so loud and horrible, that master Stuen who was the paller without the castle, might right well heare it, which voice sayde, beholden folow the ende. When master Stuen sayde to his companie, I am sure that knight is entered into the pallaice within the Castle, God defend him from all ill, then all the paller began to tremble and shake wonderfull, he, insomuch that one of the foure Images began to blow

blowes blowe so loud, that it might well be heard the  
space of a mile; then the Pallace trembled so sore as if all  
should euer fallen to peeces, the doores and windowes of  
tentimes did open and close againe, by their spring accord,  
then Arthur heare about him great noise of people, as  
though there had bene a thousand men together, but hee  
could see no creature, at the last he perceived greates light of  
torches, and euer he heard still the noise of people coming  
and going about the bedde; and also he heard the roling of a  
hidious water, so that it seemed to him that it had ben the bo-  
dient and wilde sea; and there with he felt such a terrible  
winde, that he had much paine to sustaine him on his side.  
When Arthur awaked againe to haue laine downe on the  
bed, and the voice began to crye againe and said, behold now  
the end, then the second Image began to blowe, and then  
came there into the chamber such noise and clamour, that  
Arthur was high deafe with that terrible din, and the Pal-  
lace began so to tremble then it did before, so that Ar-  
thur thought surely all the pallace wold haue fallen, then  
Arthur drew him toward the bed, and as hee would haue  
laine him downe, he sawe on the right hand a great Lyon,  
fierce and fell, coming to him ward, gaping and ramping  
to deuour him, and as hee came hee with his right pawe  
he took Arthur by the shoulder, so that his harness  
could not keepe him, but that his sharpe clawes entered in-  
to the flesh; and as the Lyon would haue taken him by the  
head, hee cast his shield before him, & the Lyon dashed it with  
his pawes all to peeces, and hee thrust ouerthraue him to  
the earth, but when Arthur took his strength to him, as  
the Lyon was ramping before him, hee thrust his sword  
cleane through his backe, and so the Lyon fell downe dead  
to the earth, and Arthur was right sore hurt in his shoul-  
der, and hee faste as hee approached againe to the bedde to  
haue laine him downe, then the third Image fiercely did  
blow his horn, & a great rout of the sunn thereof, as Arthur  
thought, there issued out another Lyon greater and stronger  
then the first, when Arthur sawe him, hee stepped to  
God

God, beseeching him to succour him from an euill death,  
and so the Lyon dashed him toward Arthur, and strake at  
him with his broad pawes, and Arthur held before him the  
remnaunt that was left of his shield, but the Lyon thort he  
broke it all to peeces as though it had bene but Glasse, and  
with one of his feete he took Arthur by the left side, and ra-  
sed from him a great part of his harness, and his doublet &  
shirt, and a great pece of his flesh, to the bare ribs, & if God  
had not there helped him, he had ended his mortall life, then  
Arthur with his sword strake off the Lyons foot that was  
vnder his side, and therewith the Lyon fell to the earth, and  
ere he arose againe Arthur recouered a nother stroke, and  
strake off his head by the sholders, then Arthur took a faire  
cloth of Wendall that laie on the bed, and therewith wrapped  
his wounds and staunched them from blading, then he ap-  
proched againe to the bed to lie downe to rest him, and then  
sodainly the fourth Image began terrible to blow his horn,  
therewith Arthur looked behind him, and espied a great gi-  
ant coming toward him, who was fiftene foot of length,  
beating together his teeth as though they hadde bene ham-  
mers striking on an anvil, who had in his hand a greates  
axe, whereof the blade was nigh three foote long, the which  
was so sharpe, that it would cut a sunder euerie thing it  
touched, and when this Gyant sawe these Lions dead, hee  
was so sore displeased, that he was all in a rage, and rouled  
his eyes, and dashed together his teeth, and ranne fiercely at  
Arthur, thinking to haue striken off his head, but Arthur  
feared much the stroke and leapt aside, whereby the stroke  
went beside him, and dashed into the pavement so rudely, &  
the blade of the weapon entered into the head, and then Ar-  
thur strake him with his sword, but the stroke mounted  
vp againe, and would be in no wise enter, for hee was har-  
ned with the skinne of a serpent, the which was so hard,  
that no weapon could empaire it, and when Arthur sawe  
that he was right sore displeased, and lift vp his sword a-  
gaine and strake the gyant on the head more rudely than he  
did before, but all that auailed not, so it seemed to him that

he strake on an anfield of yron. When Arthur doubted himselfe greatly, and the gyant strake many strokes at Arthur, but alwayes he watched so the strokes, that he did let them passe by him without any hurt or damage, for he perceived right well, if the gyant did light on him with a full stroke, there was no other waie with him but death. Thus this gyant ever pursued Arthur to haue stricken him, but alwayes Arthur watched the strokes and auoided them wisely, and oftentimes strake the giant againe, but he could do him no hurt, thus they fought a great space not farre from the rich bed in the myddell of y chamber, then the gyant with great anger lift by his sauchon to haue stricken Arthur vpon the head, and the stroke came furiously and dast into the earth like thunder, for Arthur auoided craftelie the stroke, which entered and cut a sunder a great base of a bench that stood before the bed of white Iuozie, and so the stroke descended downe to the earth throughout all the pavement, for the gyant was so sore displeased that his weapon entered both through woode and stone, & into the earth to the harte beane, and therewith the blade of his sauchon burst cleane a sunder in the myddell, and when the gyant sawe that, he raged like a fiend of hell, and so toke the handle thereof and cast it at Arthur, but he wisely auoided it, and it lighted on the wall of the chamber, wherin the stroke entered well nere a fote & a halfe: then the giant leapt to the base of the bench that he had cut a sunder before, and woulde haue pulled it out of the bench, but it was so sore bound with crampons of Steele to the bench, that he could not remoue it, and as he stooped to pull thereat, Arthur sprang vpon the Serpent skinne, was but short behind his backe, and so vnder the skin he thrust his sword vpon his helme to the crosse, then the Gyant fell downe and made a terrible braying, the which might well be heard a great waie off, then Arthur recovered vpon him another stroke, and so strake his sword into his heart, then he made a greater cry then hee did before, and therewith his soule departed ainate from his dwelling bodie, then the noise was heard againe that saide, he holde

the ende, then was Arthur so wearie and so sore trauailed and his woundes bledde so fast, that he had much paine to sustaine himselfe on his seete, howbeit as well as he might he repaired to the rich bedde, and had alwayes his sword in his hande, and therewith laide him downe on the bedde, then the Image of golde at the beddes head with his bowe and arrowe did shoote, and hit one of the windowes so sore, that it flew wide open with the stroke, out of which windowe there issued such a smoake and fume so blacke, that it made all the house so darke, that Arthur coulde see nothing, the which fume stanke so abhominable, that Arthur therewith was almost dead, then there rose such a winde so greate and feruent, that it burst the glasse windowes and latesles, so that the tiles and stones flew all about the house like haile, and it thundered so terrible, that all the earth shooke, and the pallace trembled as it would haue fallen all to peeces, and at the last he perceived a burning speare all of fire, the which was comming towards him, and therewith hee leapt from the bed and fled from the stroke, and saue where it went in at another little chamber by, and fel on a knight as he laie a bed, and burnt him cleane through, and the fire descended through bed and chamber and al, and sunke deepe into y earth, then sodainly burst asunder two pillars which sustained the couering ouer the bed, and then all the whole Pallace began to turne about like a wheale, then Arthur ran to the image of golde that stood at the beddes head, and embraced it in his armes, for the Image remoued nothing, and this turning of the Pallace endured a greate space. And Watwelm Arthurs Squier who was without in the Court pittieously wept and made greate sorowe for the feare that he had of his master, for he thought verilie now that he was but dead, and said: Ah my Lozde Arthur, the best knight, the most noble and hardie, the most sage and courteous creature that ever was formed by nature, alas! why did you enter into this unhappie Castle, for I thinke surely you are but dead. And so then at the last the turning about of this Pallace beganne to cease, and the

darknesse began to auoide and to waxe faire and clere, and faire peaceable, then Arthur sate him downe vpon the rich beds side right feeble & faint, because of the great trouble & he had endured, and for the fearfull & horrible things that he had seene and heard, then when it was thus waxed faire and clere, the voice said again twice, it is ended, it is ended, and when master Steuen heard that voice, he said vnto his companie: verily the aduentures of the pallas in the castle of the Dozt Poire are atchieued, therefore I am sure it can be no other wise, but that knight that is there, is either dead or else right soze wounded: and then he went and gathered hearbes, such as he knew were right precious for all manner of wounds, and made an ointment of them to giue vnto Arthur, if it were his fortune to finde him alieue, & Bawdelwin who also heard the voice, thought verilie then that Arthur had bene dead, and said vnto himselfe, that neither for the displeasure of his Lozde, nor yet for feare of anie other thing he wold abide no longer, but that he wold mount vp into the pallas to see if he could knowe how his Lozd did, & so went vp the staires with his sword in his hand, & passed through the hall entered into the chamber whereas Arthur was sitting on the beds side, then was Bawdelwin gladd when he sawe his master alieue, and demanded of him how he did, and Arthur answered and said, howe that hee was right wearie and soze wounded. Then Bawdelwin was right sorrowfull at his heart, for he feared greatly least that he had some mortall wound, and said: Sir may it please you to shew me your wounds. It pleaseth mee right well saide Arthur. Then Bawdelwin vnarmed him and searched all his wounds, for he was a right good Surgeon, and washed and staunched his woundes, and softly did anoint them, the which did him great ease. Then Arthur armed him againe and said that he would goe search farther ouer all the pallas, to know if there were anie more aduentures, & therewith there entered into the chamber a young Page, who accustomed before prepared the meate and the drinke that serued for those knightes that were dead at the

gate

gate of the castle, and when he came before Arthur, he knedled downe and said: Gentle knight, I desire you of mercie, for Gods sake saue my life, for I am a poore Page & serued for my living the knightes that you haue slaine. Thou shalt haue no hurt said Arthur, on the condition that thou wilt tell mee trouth, whether there bee in this Castle anie more men or women. Sir sayd the Page, here in this place there be no more creatures but onely two prisoners, who were deliuered to my masters whom you haue slaine, to be kept here in prison, to the intent that it shoulde neuer bee knowne where they were become, and they were sent hether by the commaundement of the Duke of Bigo. Well good friend, saide Arthur, bring me to them, then he conueied him straight to the prison whereas they were closed in, and did unlocke all the doores, which were meruailouslie wrought, & at the last they came to a great cofer all of yron, which was surelie made fast to the wal with great chaines and bars of steele, then Arthur did so much by his strength, that he burst open the cofer and toke out & prisoners with much paine, for they were soze charged with bolts of yron, so that they could stirre no manner of waie, and when they were loosed, one of them said: Ah deere Lozd, I knowe not what you be, nor whether you haue taken vs out of prison, for our wealth or for our hurt, but for Gods sake rather than you should put vs againe into this cofer, first strike off our heads: certainlie said Arthur, we haue no intent to do you anie manner of hurt, therfore tell me of whence you be, and where you were bozne: Ah sir saide they, wee are so nigh overcome for lacke of meat, & so soze bzused withal, that we can scant speake one word, therfore for Gods sake giue vs some meat. Friends said Arthur, I cannot tell whether there be anie meate and drinke in this house or no: yes sir, sayde the Page, here in this house is sufficient, if it were to recelue the mightie Emendus, king of Sozolois. Well saide Arthur, then goe fetch them some part thereof, then hee covered the Tables, and did set on them Bread and Wine, and other meate sufficient, and then they all did eate and

L.iii.

Drinke

Drinke as much as did satiffie them, & when they had done, the Page demaunded of the prisoners if they would be shaven, and they aunſwered, with a right good will. Then he prepared all things readie, for he was a good Barber, & when they were shaven the Page brought them gownes of the knightes that were slaine, and when they were appa-  
railed, they seemed to be extraxt of a noble linage, & so they were in deede as you shall heare after.

How Arthur ended the aduentures of the pallace, and deliuered the prisoners, and atchieued the aduenture, that was in the gallerie going to the garden of the mount perillous, and by his might with a great barre beate downe two maiestic Images of copper, each of them holding a shilde, that was of such waight, that ten men might scant lift one of them from the earth, wherewith they were euer beating with great strokes made by inchauntment, to the intent that none should passe into the garden of the mount perillous, then failed and ended all the inchauntments of that place.

Chap. 44.

After that Arthur had deliuered these prisoners, and atchieued the foresaid aduentures, then the Page came to me and said. Sir it is of truth that you haue ouercome all the aduentures of this place saving one, & that is in the gallerie going into the garden, and if that wer done, then euerie bodie might goe and come into this Castle as surely as into any other place. Well god friend quoth Arthur, I pray you bring me thither: With a right good will said the page, but sir we must haue first some fire with vs, for the gallery is so darke that we can see nothing ther, & then they lighted torches & went forth so far, that at the last in a litle straight waie Arthur found two images of copper one on y<sup>e</sup> one side, & another on the other side, & they had each of the a great shilde in their hands, wherw<sup>th</sup> they continuallie beat downe right, which was made by inchauntment, so that no creature could passe by them w<sup>th</sup>out death, & when Arthur saw them he toke  
his

his sword in his hand and laid on them with all his might, in such wise that his strokes might well be heard a greates way off, but for all that he could not empaire them, then hee perceived well that his sword could do him but little help, wherefore he toke in his hand a great bar of a boze that hee found there, and therewith he laid on so fast, that finally hee beat downe both these Images. When all the inchauntment began to faile: for he might see cleerely all about him, yet w<sup>th</sup> straining of himselfe in this battaile, his wounds burst out againe on bleeding, wherefore he was faine to vnarme him in the same place, and then Baldeuyn did staunch all his wounds againe and dressed them newly with swete & soft ointments, & he would haue armed him againe but y<sup>e</sup> page said: Sir your harneis shall but hurt your wounds, therfore leaue it heere still and arme you no more, for surely you be now in as good sauegard as though you were by your father that begate you. Friend said Arthur, looke that here be no treason: I warrant you on paine of my head, therfore boldlie now you may enter into the garden, & ther you shall finde a noble clarke, who is sonne to a king, and pertaining to a right high and mightie Princeesse, the noble Florence, daughter and heire to the puissant king Emendus, who hath ben there more then this halfe yere to abide your comming: for me said Arthur, thou wottest not what thou saidst: how should he haue anie knowledge of mee. Sir sayde the page, I cannot tell you, but surely it is as I say, therfore let vs go thether. So they went forth & entered into the garden, wherin was al the pleasure that could be thought, and as they went forth therin, ther came to Arthur a faire young page, & gently saluted him, saying: Sir you be right heartely welcome into the land of Dorolois, as the most desired knight y<sup>e</sup> euer was girt with sword. Why god friend said Arthur, what is that place that I am so sore desired in: sir said he, in all y<sup>e</sup> land of Argence: faire friend said Arthur, & why am I so much ther desired: sir said he, that can y<sup>e</sup> prisoner that you haue deliuered shewe you full well. Why quoth Arthur, howe knowe they what I am.

L.iii.

As

As God helpe me said he, you are better knowen here then you are ware of, for here is in this garden a noble clark, son to a king who hath tarried here a great time, who knoweth you well, and all the love that hath bene betwene you & the faire Damzell Jehannet, ere you departed out of your owne countrie, and also he knoweth right well, that which you did at Vienne in the tourney, and also what you did at Bzeule, and how you made your cosin Hector duke of Burgoule. In þ name of God said Arthur, I haue great maruel how you can tel me all this. And as they wer thus talking there came to them a great flocke of knights, then the page said, sir yonder is my saide Lorde who is coming to you. Nay said Arthur, I will goe vnto him: at this time master Steuen was apparailled in a mantel of violet chamlet, and in a coate of greene Satten furred with Ermins, & as soone as he sawe Arthur, he auailed his bonnet & did salute him. Then Arthur saide to him, ah gentle master it is to mee a great rebuke that so noble a man as you be should do to me so great reuerence, then the master did smile & toke him by the hand, saying: Sir we haue long trusted for the wealth and honour that is now come to you, therfore you be welcome as the chiefe & soueraign knight of all the worlde, for now I thinke to goe see this Pallace into the which neuer man entered befoze save onlie you, for you are the first that euer entered there into, and that is by your noble valure, & I know well you be soze wounded, therfore I haue made for you a little drinke, which he sent for incontiently, and when it was come, he said, sir drinke therof hardy, feare for nothing in the name of God, for I desire moze your health and honour, then any other creature liuing. Then Arthur toke it and dranke well thereof, & as soone as it was spred abroad in his vaines, he was thereby sodainely all whole, & moze lustie then euer he was befoze, for then he thought his strength was doubled, & truly in a manner so it was, for by the vertue of these herbs he had the grace that from thence forth there was neuer man that could drawe out of his bodie anie blood, but onely the soule monster of the Bzosse,

with

with whom he fought in great ieopardie, as you shal heare after ward.

How master Steuen went with Arthur into the pallace within the castle, to the intent to see the wonderfull adventures that Arthur had there atchieued.  
Chap. 45.

**W**hen Arthur had receiued the said drinke, & recovered therby his health, master Steuen toke him by the hand & said, Sir, I haue great desire to go see this pallace, I pray you let vs goe thither, and so they two went forth together befoze, and all the other followed them that would, and at the last they came into the same narrow entrie wheras Arthur had beaten downe these two images of Copper with they great flailles, and there a great while they stood and beheld them, and enerie man assaied to remoue one of their flailles, but it would not bee they were so heauie, then euerie one greatly meruailed how ther might be so much might in one knight, as to beate downe so mightie & heauie a thing, then they entered into the pallace, which was the most fairest and richest that euer was seene with mans eie, and at the last they entered into the rich chamber wheras the goodly bed was, then master Steuen had great meruaile of the inestimable riches of that chamber and bedde. When came to them the two prisoners, and did salute master Steuen, and when the master saw them, he knew one right well & made to him good cheere and said: What sir Marques haue you beere prisoner? yea sir said he, trulie, for the nephew of the Duke of Bigoz, when he had slaine my Lorde, and murdered my brother by false treason, he tooke me and this other knight, & did send vs into this place as priuely as he could, and did deliuer vs to the knights that kept this place, who be now al dead by the prowesse of this knight, who hath deliuered vs out of prison and thraldome, and thanked be god and his prowesse we be escaped all daunger. God be praised

L. b.

said.

said the master, it was great need that he should come into this countrie, & then he said to Arthur: Sir it becometh toward night, wherfore it is time to go to supper, & I wil sup with you heere in this chamber, I thanke you said Arthur, but I cannot tell whether ther be anie thing to receiue such a person as you be. Sir saide the master, by the faith I owe to you, I am pertaining to a noble Ladie, who hath sufficient both for you and vs all, then the master commanded to make readie supper, & anon the tables were laide, and the masters seruants ran to his tent on the mount perillous, & they brought all manner of things necessarie, vessel, & plate of golde and siluer great plentie, then was water brought forth, & Arthur refused to wash with the master, because he was sonne vnto a king. Well sir said the master, I praise you fulfill my desire, for truly I knowe better your estate & honour then you thinke I do, then Arthur did as he was required, and the master sate downe and Arthur by him, and the Marques befoze him, & all the other sate downe at other side tables, whereas they were as richly serued, as though they had ben in the house of the noble Florence, but though they were not ther, yet they paid for all their expences. Thus Arthur sate at supper, who seemed to all them that saw him to be right faire and gracious aboue al other that euer they had seene, and so they praised him much in their hearts, and when they had supped at good leasure, and the tables taken awaie, they set them down on cushions of silke, and the master said to Arthur. Sir behold heere my Lord the Marques, who is and shal be your knight, for you haue deliuered him out of prison. What is true said the Marques, and therfore I thanke him. Well sir said Arthur, I heard you saie as I remember, how that the nephew of the duke of Wigor caused you to be put heere in prison, and also how he slew your brother by treason, wherfore if it maye please you I require you shew me how it did fortune. And when master Steuen heard him enquire in that manner, hee had greatesoye, for hee knew well that Arthur would remedie that case, but the Marques answered and saide,

Sir,

Sir, the matter is verie long to rehearse, therefore I feare me to report thereof will annoy you: truly said Arthur, it shal be no paine to me to heare it. Then the Marques said: It is of a trouth that the Lord of Argenton was my brother, who was in his time a right good knight, I say it not because he was my brother, but of verie troth hee was so greatly praised, that the renoume of him was spreade abroad in all the land of Sorolois, for there he was reputed to be the most soueraine knight in all the world, and so it fortuneth, that the Duke of Wigor, who is a mightye Lord in his owne countrey, made on a day a tourney to be holden at his Citie of Wigor, because of a newwe of his, who was married the same daie into a right high lignage, and this Dukes newwe was and yet is, right fierce and proud, and is a right great redouted knight of his hands, and in euerie place he was reputed next vnto my brother to be the best knight of the world, and at this foresaid turnay was my brother, and this Dukes newwe had greatesoye at him, because of the great noblenesse that he heard reported of him, and so toke counsaile with some of his affinitie, and determined to iust against my Lord my brother, to the intent to abate his renoume, and so he toke to his companie ten other knightes, & when the tourney was begun, he and his companie ranne at once at my brother, who as then was not aware of their malicious purpose, nor had any moe in his companie, but me and his Squire, wherfore we suffered much paine, but finally my brother deliuered vs all from them, and beate down the dukes newwe to the earth, but my brother by his gentlenesse did that which I wold not haue done, for when he sawe him on the earth he alighted & brought him another good horse, & wet to the turney, and there did such meruailes of armes, that all that beheld him, maruailed thereat, and generally said, that in the world there was none like him. When the Dukes newwe heard all this praise giuen to my brother, his heart swelled with enuie, and for despite he wold iuste no moze that daye.

And

And when all was ended, the price was given to my brother by the consent of both parties and all the company went to the Court to the Duke, and ther they began greatly to praise my brother. And when his neww heard that, he was right soze displeased because he was beaten down by him the same day, therefore openly befoze the Duke for very mallice he appeached my brother of treason, and said how that he had beaten him downe in the tourney by craft and false treson. When my brother could no longer endure his words but said: In faith sir you say vntruly, for I neuer thought treason in all my life, neither to you nor any other creature, and therewith in the quarrell he didde cast downe his gloue at the foote of the Duke. And when this Dukes neww saw that hee had cast his gloue, he was beside himselfe for anger and despise, and stept on his feet, and toke a great mace of steele from a squire that stode beside, and therewith he strake my brother on the head, so that the blood fell to the earth, and when I saw my brother so stricken, I toke my sword in my hand, & thought to haue slaine him, but other knights kept vs asunder: then my brothers companie began to draw together, and his companie likewise, whereby it was likely there would haue ben a great fray, but wisely the Duke appeased both parties, and was right soze displeased with the outrage of his neww. When my brother said to the Duke: Sir, your neww hath appeached mee of treason, and therefore beholde here lyeth my gloue to defende my selfe in the quarrell, that by treason without any defiance, and ozeuer I was aware hee hath stricken mee like a false traitour as hee is, and that will I proue my bodie against his, and therefore sir Duke let me haue right according to the law of armes. When was this Dukes neww greatly blamed of euerie knight, who said generally that if he had right he should bee for this dede right soze punished. When the duke was right sorrowfull and did much labour to appease my brother, but in no wise he would be content of a great season, howbeit finally the Duke required him so much, and so did all other knights that

that my brother who had a gentle heart did forgive all the matter, and the peace was made, and each of them bounde to other in two thousand pound to keepe and obserue such directions as the Duke should take in the matter, where with they said they were wel content. When the duke said, first, first each of you shall pardon other of all euill willes that hath bene betwene you, and thereto they aunswored and said, that they were well pleased so to do, and in signe therof they embraced each other, and kissed together. When the duke determined further, how that his neww should deliuer to my brother two hundred pound of yearely land, to him and his heires for euermore, the which direction his neww there confirmed, and there my brother was put in full possession thereof both by the Duke and also by his neww, who shewed a fairer face outwardly to my brother, then he thought inwardly in his heart. When my brother toke leaue of the Duke, and his neww vnder the false colour of loue, conuaided my brother part of the way, but falsely and like a traitour, he had laid an ambush of three score men in harness, and so there oze we were aware they came behind vs, and shamefully slew my brother and two of his sonnes, of the age of twelue oze thirteene yeares, and about fortye knights that were in our companie, and toke me & this my fellow prisoners, out of the which you haue deliuered vs. And sir it is so, that my brother hath no more children lesse alieue saving a daughter, who is heire to all the land of Argenton, and the dukes neww hath taken from her all the inheritance that she is borne vnto, and hath her in keeping, & is purposed to marrie her to a boy who is his barbour, who by reason ought to bee married to a greafe Earle oze els a Lorde, both for her nobilitie, riches and progenie: but now she is in that case that there is none that will maintaine her right, for manie of her friends be dead, and I haue bene here in prison sith the death of my Lorde my brother and her father, and also her men and subiectes dare do nothing for lacke of a Captaine, and this Duke is greatly feared, for he is mightie both of lands and friends, and

and therfore my name is likely to be done, for the shall be given at this next Parliament to a ladye boie, & is like lie to be dishonored for ever, for she hath no helpe nor countsaile, and therewith this Marques pittiously began to weep for the great sorrow that he had in his heart. When master Steuen sayde, sir I assure you it is of a truth all that this Marques hath shewed you. Certainly said Arthur, if God will send me the grace & I may heare of a knight of mine that shuld come hether to me, then wil I faithfully promise you to doe mine endeavour to helpe and succour this noble damsell. Sir quoth master Steuen, I will know to morrow how your knight doth, but now it is too late, and you shall lie all night in this pallasce which is pertaining to my lady Florence, for it was given her when she was but two daies olde, howbeit shee was neuer heare, nor yet anie other but you only, therfore sir keepe it for my Ladie till the time that you may render it to her noble grace, for you have made it free from all manner of inchauntments, and I will go this night into my tent wheras I haue laine all this while, and to morrow betimes I will come to you againe & bring all my stuffe into this place, but loke that you lie all this night in this roiall bed, & ther Arthur promised him so to do. Then the master & his companie departed from him that night.

How Proserpina Queene of the Fairies, about midnight appeared to Arthur with great light of Torches, & how she shewed him that within the mount perillous there was the white sheeld, and the good sword enchanted, called Clarence, and how that hee should haue them with much honour if his heart durst serue him. How the next daie master Steuen ledde Arthur into the garden, where the white sheeld was, the which could neuer be removed from the tree whereon it hanged, & how Arthur toke it down easely, and Clarence the sword also, which could neuer before that time be drawe out of the sheath, neither would it helpe anie bodie but onelie Arthur, who drew it out lightlie, and after that it did him much helpe as you shall heare after.

Chap. 46.

When



When that master Steuen was departed, then Arthur laid him downe in the royall rich bed, and slept wel all his first sleep till it was about midnight: then hee awaked and sawe greates cleerenesse of torch light afoze him, and he perceived standing before his bedde, a Queene crowned with golde, who was the most fairest creature that ever he saw, and he thought that she spake to him, and said: Arthur my friend, here is in this place the white shield, and Clarence the good sword of the fairie, therfore thou shalt haue much honour if thy heart be good, and therewith she vanished away, wherof Arthur had great mervaille, both of her beautie, and also of her sodaine departing. Thus remained Arthur till it was clere day, then he arose, and master Steuen came to him, and they went to deuine seruice, which ended Arthur saide to the master, Sir I cannot tell what queene it was that this night was with me in the chamber wheras I lay, but it was the goodlyest figure of a woman that ever I saw, & she said to me how that ther was in this place a white shield, & the good sword Clarence. And when master Steuen heard y, hee smiled & said: sir I see wel it is you to whome the sword & shield is bestowed, diuers knights haue assayed to take them, but they coulde neuer remoue them fro the place wheras they be, therfore now I thinke they haue found their master, sir let vs goe thether, and see what wil fortune. When they issued out of the pallasce and went into the garden wheras was the rich pavilion pertaining to y noble Florence, y which was wrought of the richest work of the world, of green satten and crimson bordered with golde and azure, and the post that bare it was of puzie, and the cords of graine silke, and on the top thereof stood an Eagle of golde, and at the two corners two greates griffons shining against the sunne. When Arthur remembered his vision that he had in his own country, and beheld the Eagle a great while, and at last came to the pavilion, where he saw the personage of a queen crowned with gold,

the

the which crowne hadde fye bzaunches, the which signified fye realmes, and in euerie bzaunch there were witten letters, and in the first was witten Emendus the mightie king of Sorolois, and this bzaunch was chiefe and highest of all other, and in the second was witten Florence Quene of the Realme of Blaunch towoye, and in the third was shewen the King of Diqueney, and in the fourth was witten Diuernons king of Walesound, father to master Steuen, and in the fifth king of Dozmall, and in the sixt Jmaelise the great. This crowne was set full of pzeious stones, and this Image was faire and gentle to beholde, with her forehead plaine and white, and her haire like the colour of golde, her browes small and proper, somewhat drawing to a browne colour, and her visage plaine, neither too long nor too round, colour like as roses and Lillies together had bene medled, her nose long and straight, and her ruddie mouth somewhat smiling, her eien lounette, and all her bodie and other members made without anye default in the ordinaunce of nature, who had set in her all beautye, & she was clothed with a gowne of greene, straight girt to her with a lase of golde, so that somewhat her little round and lillie white breasts might be seene, the which became her wonderfully well, and beside all this she had on a kirtle of crimosin, lined with violet Scendall, and her wide sleeves were of greene, imbodered with flowers of golde, and with rich pearles, and this Image helde betweene her handes a chaplet of silke, wrought subtillye full of fresh flowers, and about the border therof were letters wrought of pzeious stones that said. We shall keepe me for his own that shall haue this chaplet, & when Arthur had read these letters, and sawe the fresh beautie of this Image, his heart opened for great love; and with great and fervent desire he loved the person presented by that Image, and therewith stood before it in a great Rody. When master Steuen said, sir I assure you my Ladie it is that this Image representeth. Sir saide Arthur, then in her is all the beautie of the world. Pea sir said the master, there bee two persons that resem-

resembleth this image. First, the Quene that you sawe this last night appeare to you, who is called Ioserpina quene of the Fairies, who did give to my Ladie Florence this carle and this Pavillion, and destined on her howe that she should never be married but to the best knight of the world, and to him this image should give her chaplet that she hold both in her hands, and sir I trust it be you. Secondlie, also my Ladie Florence in all things resembleth to this image, and so the quene Ioserpina & my Ladie Florence & this image are in all points so like that you cannot knowe one from the other, and the high bzaunch that is in the crowne of this image, betokeneth the mightie king Emendus, farther to my Ladie Florence, and the second signifieth my ladies realme, and the other foure representeth foure other kings, who are subjects to my Ladie Florence and to her father, therefore sir and it please you let us enter into this pavilion and see whether you may haue the shield & sword that all others haue failed of, & so they entered into the pavilion, and in the middelt thereof Arthur sawe where there hanged on a pin the shield & the sword. When Arthur went thereto boldly, and took it as easily as though it had ben his owne before, then he set his hand to the sword and drew it out of the sheath, & the blade thereof was so cleere that it did cast a mercurious great clerenesse, and therefore it was called Clarence, & before that time it was neuer drawn out of the sheath, nor seene with mans eie, and Arthur dealt as easily therewith as he did with his owne, and when master Steuen sawe this he had great ioy and said. Sir I see well you are the same knight that it was deliuered unto, therefore now I have great ioy, and I trust that God shall cause you to attaine to much honour & noblenesse. When Arthur said, sir you haue promised to tell mee some tidinges of my knight that should come hether, now I require you tell me if you knowe any thing of him. Sir said the master, I know wel how you promised to come & seek this aduenture which you haue achieved, but in no wise you would suffer him to come with you, and therefore you sent him by the great high

waie throughout Ande the more, so the intent he shuld not see your death no; die with you, and so it is that he is not as yet come, so; in deed he cannot, for he is in a castle called the Brose, and by all likelyhood impossible that euer he should depart thence without death though he were made of yron and stele, for all the help of the world cannot keep him from death, therefore Arthur comfort your selfe, and of a thing that is without recoverie, neuer think theron more. Truly sir said Arthur, except I haue my knight I shal neuer haue comfort, therefore speak to me neuer therof, but I require you how is he so lost or in such ieopardy as you speake of. With a right good wil said the master, but I feare me it will anoy you, for it is a long processe to rehearse. Well said Arthur, as for that I care not, tell on I require you.

How master Steuen shewed Arthur how that Gouvernar his Knight was in the castle of Brose, and how the custome of that Castle was first begunne.

Chap. 47.

**T**hen the master said, sir it is of a troth that the castle of the Brose is a right strong and noble place, and it is the chiefe head of all the countrie, for there is well nere five hundred Gentlemen that hold their land thereby, and they are all subiects to him that is Lord of that place, and about two yeare agoe there was a Lord of this castle, who was called sir Beuelonle Mour, a full good & gentle knight, who was reputed right wise and verie rich, & right soe feared, and wel beloued of all people. Now hard adioyning to this castle within two leagues thereof there is a forrest in the which there is a meruailous great deepe pit, and the entrie there into is foure square, and it is well nere foure speares length broad, and it is so black & stinking, y no creature can abide nere it, & into this abhominable pit ther both repaire a right meruailous & horrible monster, the foulest shaped y euer was seene or heard of, for he is wel eight yers foot long, & his head thre times larger then the head of an ox, and his

eyes bigger then a mans fist, and some of his teeth standing out of his mouth intyre then a fote and a halfe, wher with he will beake both yron & stele, & his armes big & long without anie measure, his nailes or claws longer then a foot, so hard and sharpe, that there is nothing but he will pierce it, and all his bodie as blacke as any coale, & as hard as stele, for there is nothing that can empaire him, and also he is of that strength that hee is able to carrie a waie at once thre knights armed, & he eateth neuer anie other meat but raw flesh of mankind, and he is so light and swift, that an horse cannot run from him, & oftentimes he hath ben assailed with great hostis of men, but all they could neuer doe him anie manner of hurt, neither with sword, speare, nor crossebow, nor anie other weapon, & thus he doth great trouble to all the whole countrie, and so it fortunied that two yere past about S. Laurence tide, this saide Lord sir Beuelonle was coming out of Ande the more from the Emperour, who loued him right wel, & as he had thought to haue gone home to his own castle of the Brose, and twentie of his seruants in his companie, he passed by this forrest wheras this great pit is, & so vnware to him and his Squire did rest them not far from the pit, and suffered his other companie to ride on afoze, & so it fortunied that this soule monster was the same morning issued out of his pit, and as soone as hee espied this Lord Beuelonle he ran on him & so strangled him & bare him into this great pit, and so there he was utterly lost, & when this was knowen there was made for him great sorrow, & this Lord hath a daughter who is named Blanch Floure, who was then of the age of fiftene yere, & when she heard tidings of the death of the Lord her father, she made greafe sorrow, & entered into a little chappell, abiding there fiftene daies making wonderfull sorrow for her father, & euer she praied to God that she might haue some vengeance of this monster, so long thus she praied, that at last on a night she heard a voice that said to her, that y knight that ouercometh the Lord of this castle at the end of two yeares shall fight against this monster, howbeit the voice sheeved not

pp. ii. whe.

whether he should overcome the monster or be overcome himselfe, then the young Pansell reported all this that he heard the horse saie to her brethren and to her uncle, & then they obtained among them that her uncle should abide in the Castle and lyke with all knights that passed by the waie, until the time that he were overcome with a strong knight, and so it was obtained that if the knight of the castle overcome the knight without, then he should lose his horse and harness, and also be led to the Justice, that it should be cried throughout all the countrie, behold the knight that is vanquished, and if the strange knight without overcome him of the castle, then the knight stranger should goe to the castle, and there be received as chiefe Lord thereof, & be served honourable, and then he should keepe the castle & that usage till he were overcome of another knight. Sir it so turned your knight Governar to passe by this castle, & ther did iust against the Lord thereof, and so overcome him and many more since that time that he was saide to keepe the said usage, and so sir he is in this castle, and it passeth not now to come leaven weekes of the full season of two years sith the usage began, and I think verilie there shall come no knight thether betwene this and that by whom he should be overcome, and as sone as the two years be full compleate, then shall he be led to fight with this terrible monster, & I am sure as sone as he cometh to him he is but dead and it wer an hundred such as he is, & sir there is no more then two hundred knights continually lodged about this castle, to the intent that he should not sleake awaie, therefore I repute him but a dead man, for there is no succour can holpe him. What master said Arthur, sith it is thus as you saie, as God helpe me ther is nothing that hold me, but I will go thether & put my bodie in jeopardy for his, for it were a greates shame for me thus to lose my knight, therefore I will remain to morrow betimes for certainly I will abide no longer for all this world, & when the master heard him he knew well there was none in the world let him of his enterprise, so he said to him, I will go with you to the

he reported that he should overcome the monster, & that should take on him such a thing that he should not shewe, and goe there as perill is without remede, it is no hardin esse thus to do, but a full great follie, therefore sir for Gods sake abide. What quoth Arthur, speake more to me thereof, for surely I will goe thether and looke once on that foule monster, though he be the devil of hell. What sir said the master, as God will so be it, but sith you be so to whom it is desired to achieve all the adventures of this countrie of Britolais, whereof this adventure is one of the greatest, the which I praise to God that you may subdue it, therefore take with you this white shield, for there is nothing that can empaire it, & this sword Clarence, for there was never yet a better, & thus sir, since you will needs goe, I trust you may god the sinner, & I praise God send you good lucke & speed, and safe to come againe, and so for that night they went to their rests.

How Arthur when he was departed from the Port Noire for to go to the Lord Governar out of the Castle of the Brusse, for alls for to fight with the monster, he found in a faire meadow the nephew of the Duke of Bygor, accompanied with other knights, who assailed him at right fiercelie, but he defended himselfe so valiantly, that he slew three of them, & the wounded to the Dukes company, & the Duke had him carried away in a horse litter, & so Chap. 48.

Arthur when he was departed from the Port Noire for to go to the Lord Governar out of the Castle of the Brusse, for alls for to fight with the monster, he found in a faire meadow the nephew of the Duke of Bygor, accompanied with other knights, who assailed him at right fiercelie, but he defended himselfe so valiantly, that he slew three of them, & the wounded to the Dukes company, & the Duke had him carried away in a horse litter, & so Chap. 48.

remembryng on his shield was becomen so impaied; and  
also of Clarence his sword which he would not enyris thinge;  
he had great desire to see him poken, to the intent that hee  
might knowe whether they met of that battle or no; also he  
was much to see his good horse still; and as he rode thus  
thinking, hee met suddenly with fouretyne knights all ar-  
med, and foure of them were on horsebacke, & the other ten  
were lighted on foot, and were sitting under an oke tree because  
of the shadow thereof, for the weather was then verie hot, &  
when these foure knights on horsebacke sawe Arthur, one  
of them dismounted himselfe, and without speaking, of any  
word he ran at Arthur and strake him on the sheld with a great  
stroke, and passed forth without breaking of his speare, and  
therewith Arthur, which about him at the last the knight  
had stricken him was ready prepared to have returned againe,  
then Arthur ran at him, & the knight brake his speare, but  
Arthur gaue him such a stroke that he crushed downe both  
horse and man all on a thape suddenly, that with the fall he  
brake one of his legs, and his horse fell on him, then Arthur  
said to him: Sir you be a great coward, thus to strake me without  
defiance, but I thinke you haue more great need of a Carpen-  
ter to make you some shils or crutches: for I thinke you  
cannot rise without a leaning stake. When another of these  
knights came on Arthur, and he was so hostile to the earth  
and his heeles vnderward, and when his other two fellows  
sawe that, they ranne both at once on Arthur, and hit him  
with both their speares at once in the middle of his shield,  
but they remoued him no more then: if they had stricken a-  
gainst a stone, and so they passed by, and the other three  
gaue with their swords in their hands, and stricken stricken  
ly Arthur on all sides, then Arthur began to crye and toke  
in his hand his good sword, Clarence and strake them with  
the first so that hee claued his head downe to the shoulders,  
and when hee fell to the earth hee said to his fellowes that  
were on foot, When Sir Isembart sawe him to be thus  
wounded, hee was verie sorry, and ranne to the wounded  
part, & hee hee took one of his knights name, and hee was his  
cousin

cousin germaine, he snuffed in the nose and bent together his  
teeth, and bended his bowes as though he had ben made,  
and called for his helme and for his horse, and would suffer  
none of his companie to go with him, for he said he wold a-  
lone reuenge the death of his cousin, therewith he mounted  
on his horse and toke a great speare & a mightie, then Ar-  
thur espied wher a great speare stood leaning against a tree,  
and he toke it in his hand and rode against the knight that  
came running at him, and they met so ferrelle that they all  
so shiuered their speares, and so passed forth without any  
hurt in the course, and when Sir Isembart sawe that he had  
not beaten down his contrarie, he went to Arthur & strake  
him on the shield with his sword, but the stroke rebounded  
again, and when the knight saw that he was right sozow-  
full and soze displeased, and then againe with all his might  
he strake Arthur in the middle of his sheld so rudely, that  
his sword brake a sunder in the middle. And when Arthur  
sawe that, he said, Sir knight you haue made of one two, for  
you haue made a short sword of a long, now you shal see how  
I can worke, then Arthur strake him with Clarence his  
good sword upon his helmet so rudely, that the stroke  
did glaunce downe on his arme and did cut a sunder all his  
barnes, & entred into the flesh, so that the stroke bare away  
a great pece of the brawn of his arme, & which stroke was  
so heaue that it descended downe to the crouper of his horse,  
and cut a sunder the arson of the saddle, and also gaue vnto  
his horse a great wound, and therewith both horse and man  
fell to the earth. When the knights seruants ranne to help  
him, but he laye a great while in a trance, and when he re-  
uived he said to Arthur, Sir knight you haue wounded mee  
and slaine my cousin germaine, but sir I promise you faith-  
fully that so soone as I shall be whole againe I shall render  
to you this bountie, for I wil strike off your head by & shol-  
ders where soeuer I meete you, either in Church or in any  
other place, armed or unarmed: well Sir saide Arthur, then  
you haue giuen me respite till I be whole againe, & then by  
the grace of God you will not do so much hurt as you speak

of, the other knight to do him wrong, but he would have  
him with his own hands. When Arthur departed from  
them, and the knights put their lord in a horse litter, and  
carried him to a castle of his own, where he remained till  
he had recovered his health; and Arthur after that he was  
departed from them so long, till he issued out of the for-  
rest, and rode up to a great high hill, and as the descending  
therof, he saw wher his knights all armed came right fierce-  
ly to him with a great spear in his hand, who when  
he came to him said: Sir, are you of the company of the  
fourteen knights that went this way but lately? Have  
certainly slain Arthur, for they did their best to have trou-  
bled me, but I thank God they miss of their purpose, but I  
praise you wherfore ever you ask the question. As God help  
me, said he, because if you were any of them, I would have  
you with mine own hands by your compass any farther if  
I could: and then said, for he is the most shamefull  
knight that liveth, and the falsest traitor that ever was,  
for he and his companye had my brother slain a brother of mine  
this morning by this rivers side, because he would not give  
him a foulken that he bare on his hand; therefore he ran at  
him with his sword in his hand, and hath wounded him  
in fifteen places of his body, being unarmed, and the traitor  
and all his companye are in harness, and therefore I am  
come after him to slay him, and I might, howbeit I thinke  
it could not lie in my power, for he is a knight greatly re-  
nowned: nevertheless I have rather die then my brother  
should be hanged. Sir, said Arthur, I have no thought for  
that matter, nor follow him any farther this day, for sure-  
ly he is in no good part he knowe to fight with you, nor yet with  
any other, for he is right sore wounded, as I saw the knight,  
blessed be God, who kept and preferred him that hath done  
that deed. And the knight returned againe to his  
castle, and the knight that was with him, he was  
of his companye, and he was the knight that was  
with him, and he was the knight that was with him.

pheto to the Duke of Wygour, the most falsed traitor in all the worlde, for he hath murdered by treason the Lord of Argenton falslie without anie cause. Sir quoth Arthur, sith it is he, then his trouble pleaseh me so much the better, & by the grace of God he shall haue moze annoiaunce within short space. When they approached to the place wheras this knyghtes by other late sore wounded. Arthur called Balwdewin to him who was a good Surgion, and commaunded that he should doe his diligence as shortly as might bee to heale that knyght, and Arthur laie there all that night, and the knyght demaunded of him whether he was riding, and he answered and said, to the Castle of the Blouffe. Well sir said the knyght, and you will be ruled by me you shall not come there, for the going thether is verie perillous. As for that I care not said Arthur, for I will goe thether and inst with the knyght that is within. Well sir said the knyght, in the name of God so be it, and sith you will needes goe, I will bring you thether, for I am one of the knyghtes of the same companie that are lodged without, to the intent that the knyght that is within the castle should not steale away. Sir quoth Arthur, know you then the knyght that is within the castle, and what is his name. Merlie sir said he, he is a knyght fraunger, & his name is Gouvernar, a big knyght & a strong, & trowne of colour, and there is no knyght that iusteth with him but he goeth to the ground, and therfore whosoever wil inst with him hath need to be of great power and strenght. Well said Arthur, I will assaie him, and so they went to rest, and in the morning he arose, and the said knyght, who was named Gouernar the Almaine, and they rode forth the next morn to the castle of the Blouffe, and Arthur sette Balwdewin behinde him at the Castle, to take heed to the wounded knyght. Thus Arthur and Gouernar the Almaine rode forth so long together, till on the Wednesday after about nyne they entered into a ferie for to passe which was before the Castle of the Blouffe. And when the knyghts that were without keeping the fentie Tabur, Gouernar then, fellowe, and Arthur with him,

him, they went to their barnes and came vnto them, and made greafe there to gouernar their companion, and they salde to Arthur, Sir knight you must strike this shield, and then with the might that you shall see us out of this castle. Vntill said Arthur in the name of God all this will I do with a right good will. And these knights beheld him well and perceived that he was a goodly knight, and praised him much in their heartes. Therewith Arthur spurred forth his good horse and ran at the shield with his speare, and gaue it such a stroke that he cleue it a sunder in the middell. When Gouernar said to his follovers, certaintie if he giue such strokes to his enimies, there may none endure him. When Gouernar in the castle was soone armed, and issued out, and the damsell was mounted on the walls to behold the battail, and when Gouernar saw Arthur, he knew him not because of his white shield, but Arthur knew him right well, and beheld the countenance of Gouernar, how he stretched himself in his saddle, and pulled his shield, and dressed his speare and made him ready, wherefore Arthur looked him the while, and so they ranne each at other, and met so ruelly that Gouernar brake his speare, but Arthur strake him so sterclie that Gouernars horse foundred and fell vnder him, and so horse and man all went to the earth, then Arthur rose vp and laide his hand on his sword and was coming again to Gouernar, and all that beheld his valiantnesse praised him much, and Gouernar did nothing but was faine to get him on his feete. When all the knights went to him and would haue vnrmed him and led him to the castle, but when Arthur saw that, he could not suffer that he should haue such shame, and said, Sirs it is wronged my reason that you should leade him to the castle, for his horse fell vnder him, and therfore though we sell it not the fault of the horse and not of the knight, for hee hath done his deuour, and also he is my man, for I am his lord, and therfore hee is bound not to withstand his master. And as soone as Gouernar heard his lord speake, he was vnto him with well by his speere, and then

than he put off his helme and ran to him, and Arthur lighted from his horse, and so they embraced and kissed, & made great ioy each to other, and when Jaket sawe his olde master Arthur, he kneeled down and did him great reuerence: and when the other knights saw the great hono<sup>r</sup> that Gouernar and Jaket did to Arthur, & how that he was the<sup>r</sup> Lord & master, they thought that he was some noble man and of great lignage, and therfore they wold not displease him, but let gouernar alone in peace, and brought both Arthur and Gouernar into the castle to the Ladie, and the damsel receiued them with great ioy. Where Arthur remained till it came to thre dayes space befoze the time prescribed that he should go fight with the terrible monster, and all the knights that were without came to Arthur to speak with him, and when they were in his presence, and sawe him so faire and gentle, they loved him with all their heartes, and said among themselves, it is gret pitie to send to his death so gentle and so noble a personage. And Arthur heard them well, but he made as though he had not heard them: finally these knights said to him, sir it is so, that you haue ben a little time here, and you be the last that hath overcome the knight of this castle, and now the terme is come that you must go and fight with the monster, who is not f<sup>r</sup> this castle the distance of two leagues, and therfore it behoueth you to remoue this next day betimes, and wee shall bring you to another castle pertaining to the ladie of this place, the which is nigh to the den wherest the monster maketh his abode, therfore sir make you readie and all your barneis, for we feare greatly you will finde it a leopards adu<sup>r</sup>ture: wel said Arthur I am content to remoue when you wil, and when they heard him say so, they had of him great pitie, so that pliers of them praiely wept. Sirs said Arthur I am here alone, therfore I praye you keepe companie with me this night and let vs make good chere, and to morrow betimes we will remoue. And they granted to him, and tarried there all night.

How Arthur fought with the monster, the most foule  
 and terriblest that ever was seene with mans  
 eyes, and vanquished him by his valiant prowesse  
 and strake off his head, and sent it to the faire Flo-  
 rence. Cap. 49.



Arthur arose in the morning and heard service, and all  
 the other knights with him, which done the meane was  
 answered, and when they had eaten of their repaire, the  
 knights went to their stables and armed them, and so did  
 Arthur and Gouvernar. When the lady brought to Ar-  
 thur a faire swyn, the which was her fathers, and so be-

toke, and girt it about him by his other sword Clarence, &  
 they called him the knight with the two swords. When he  
 toke his leave of the lady and she commended him to god,  
 and when he was departed, she weeping saide: Ah gentle  
 knight, it is great damage to send such a person as you bee  
 to your death. And when Arthur was out of the Castle,  
 there were in his companie five hundred to conduct him to  
 the other Castle, and so long they rode that at last they ar-  
 rived therat, and the same day the monster had taken a but-  
 cher and deuoured him in the presence of them all without  
 the Castle gate, but when the Porter of this Castle sawe  
 all these knights coming, he knewe well they were the  
 knights of the Blosse that brought with them the knight  
 that should fight with the monster, therefore he opened the  
 gates, and then all the people of the Castle ranne to behold  
 Arthur, who was cleane couered with his white shield, and  
 holding his hand vpon the pomell of his sword, hauing a  
 right good and a hardie semblant. Then euery person that  
 behelde him saide each vnto other, Alas, what pitie is it to  
 send such a person to his death: ah gentle knight God haue  
 mercie on thy soule, for thy bodie cannot long indure, and  
 this was the common voyce, and so they conuayed him vp  
 the staires into the hall, and so that night there they rested  
 them, and in the morning they all arose and heard service,  
 and Arthur receiued the holy sacrament of the blessed bo-  
 die of our Lord Iesus Christ, and after service they all as-  
 sembled them into the hall, and there talked together of di-  
 uers matters, and as they were thus communing, they  
 heard the monster roze and bray out for lacke of meat, and  
 was issued out of his den, and made greater noyse than if  
 ten Bulls had brayed altogether: then all they of the towne  
 and castle had great feare, wherefore they closed the felues  
 in their houses, and shut fast their doores & windowes, for  
 they knew well, that the monster rather than he would die  
 for hunger, would come to that Castle and deuoure them  
 all. And as soone as Arthur heard him, he demaunded for  
 his harnais, and Gouvernar did bring it to him with great  
 grieve,

before him, and all the other knights were right for-  
rowfull for his sake; they doubted greatly of him least  
he should be slain: and when he was armed all the people  
in the Castle followed him, and solampne prayers were  
made throughout all that towne and Castle, for to  
keepe and defend their champion. When was Arthur mou-  
ted on his good horse, and a great speare well headed with  
steele in his hand, and the white shield about his necke, and  
Clarence his good sword about him, and also the sword  
that the Ladie of the Bzoffe had given him, and so he iss-  
ued out of the Castle, and they shut fast the gates after him,  
and mounted vp to the battlements of the wals to behold  
the aduenture of Arthur, and so Arthur rode forth till hee  
came to the entrie of the pit, & the monster the same time  
was sitting on the bzinke thereof, and when he espied Ar-  
thur he arose vpon his feete, and beat so together his teeth,  
that it was heard a great way off: & came to Arthur with  
his armes abroad, to the intent that he would haue bound  
him to his pit, but Arthur wisely set his speare before him  
the which was great and bigge, and well headed with fine  
steele, and the monster who feared nothing ranne so rude-  
ly against the speares point, that the speare shruered all to  
pieces, but it did no manner of hurt to the monster, and so  
he approached to Arthur, and thought to haue embraced him  
in his armes; but Arthur put before him his white shield,  
and the monster dashed with his nailes therat thinking to  
haue pearced it through, but in no wise he could empaire y<sup>e</sup>  
shield, for the propertie thereof was such, y<sup>e</sup> nothing shuld  
enter nor empaire it. And when the monster sawe that he  
had done no hurt to the shield he began to rage & fure lyke  
a fiend of hell, and then he took Arthur by the helme with  
his long teeth, y<sup>e</sup> which was as sharpe as steele; & when Arthur  
saw his mouth so wide open, he took the sword that the La-  
die of the Bzoffe gave him, and dashed it into his mouth.  
But when the monster felt the sword in his mouth, he let  
goe his holde of the helme, and take the sword betwene

his teeth, and all to bzake it as though it hadde bene but  
glasse. When Arthur sawe that, he knew well that if Cla-  
rence his good sword did no help him his life was but lost,  
& so he took the good sword in his hand, and then the mon-  
ster took him by the helme with one of his hands, and by  
the wrist with y<sup>e</sup> other hand, and all his nailes pearced his  
helme as lightly as though he hadde felt nothing, and hee  
dashed Arthur so sore with the other hand on the shield, that  
he had nigh fallen with the stroke, but he could not pearce  
the sheelde. When Arthur lift vp Clarence his good sword  
and strake the monster therewith on the head so rudely,  
that the sword entered therein more then a handfull.  
And when the monster felt himselfe wounded, for anger he  
beate his teeth together, and rowled his eyes, the which  
glistered like bzands of fire, and beat together his fists, and  
made a terrible noise.

How the King Emendus sent a Knight named Brise-  
bar, accompanied with a thousand men of warre,  
to the intent that he and his companie should goe  
fight with the monster, and how the said knight a-  
riued at the monsters pitte the same time that Ar-  
thur and the monster were fighting together, and  
there he and all his companie did see how Arthur  
slew the monster without helpe. Chap. 50.



About the time that Arthur shoulde thus fight  
with the monster, the mightie king Emendus  
held open court in the Citie of Sabar, and with  
him ther was the Emperour of Inde the more,  
for this citie was neere adioyning to his Empire, & also he  
was glad to be w<sup>th</sup> king Emendus because of his daughter  
Florence whom he would gladly haue had to his wife, and  
theron he trusted when the yeare were once expired. And  
at this feast were all the other foure Kinges, and the  
twelue

suche pieces of the realm of Babilone, and manie other  
 Carles and Barons, knights and squires, Lanes,  
 and Damfells. Then there came to the king many  
 great complaints of the hurt that the monster of the Bzotte  
 had done in all the countrie, then the king toke counsaile  
 for this matter, and he was advised, and concluded thereon  
 to send a thousand knights armed to fight with the mon-  
 ster. When there was chosen a right balliant knight to bee  
 their capitaine, who was called sir Wandell Wischer, who  
 was one of the knights pertaining to Florence, & he toke  
 with him such knights and men of warre as hee would  
 chose, & so he took his leaue of the faire Florence, and he de-  
 sired him if he could bring it about he should go to his castle  
 of the Wyte Roire, and commende her to her Clarke ma-  
 ster Steuen, and enquire of him whether he haue heard a-  
 ny tidings of that matter that hee went thither for, and  
 commaunded him that he should shew vnto her Clarke, that  
 the Emperour would haue her to his wife by force against  
 her will, and so sir Wischer promised to accomplish her co-  
 maundement if it were possible: then he went from her and  
 toke his leaue of the king and of the Emperour, and of the  
 whole court and departed, and had in his companie a thou-  
 sand armed knights, and they rode forth so long, till at the  
 last they arriued nere the place wher this monster was,  
 the same daie and houre that Arthur was fighting with  
 him, then Wischer and his companie did light downe on  
 foote, and the monster who as then felt himselfe hurt on the  
 head with y<sup>e</sup> gret stroke y<sup>e</sup> Arthur had giuen him as it hath  
 been shewed before, bzayed and roared so loud that he might  
 be heard a great waie off, and when Wischer saw a far off  
 a knight alone fighting with this monster in such perill, he  
 had great pittie, and so had thought to haue set on the mon-  
 ster with all his whole host for to haue holpe Arthur, how-  
 beit he thought hee would be somewhat more of the dealing  
 with the knight, then the monster ranne to a tree that stood  
 by the pit, and tooke it in rubels in his handes, that he tare  
 it by roote and rinde, and therewith stroke at Arthur, who

for feare of the stroke cast before him his white shield, and  
 the stroke did light thereon so rudely, that it rang all the  
 place ouer, the which stroke was so heauie, y<sup>e</sup> Arthur was  
 faine to kneele downe on one of his knees, and therewith  
 the tree bzake asunder in the middes. When the monster for  
 anger was nigh beside himselfe, and did cast at Arthur the  
 trunchon of the Tree so rudely, that it bzake in the ayre  
 as it went, but Arthur doubted the stroke and slept aside,  
 and let it passe, and therewith he drew nigh to the monster,  
 & as the monster lift vp his armes to haue embraced him,  
 Arthur stroke him vnder y<sup>e</sup> one arme with his sword Cla-  
 rence, so that his arme flew cleane into the fildes, then the  
 monster lept forth and with great pye toke Arthur by the  
 head with his long teeth, and with his other hand took him  
 by the shoulder, and tare away all his harnais to the bare  
 flesh, and thought to haue trussed him on his backe & borne  
 him to his pit, but Arthur put his sword Clarence into his  
 belly vp to the hard crosse: and truly it was great need that  
 Arthur had then that good sword, for there was no other in  
 all the world could haue holpen him. And when Arthur had  
 thus put his sword into his bodie, he rusht to the monster  
 so strongly, that he fell to the earth, and in his fall he pulled  
 off Arthurs helme from his head with his long teeth that  
 wer so fastened in the same, that the helme could not be got-  
 ten out of his mouth, for when he felt his death, he toynd  
 his teeth throughout the helme fast together, then Arthur  
 stroke at him againe with his sword, wherewith his soule  
 and horrible heade flew into the fildes. When Arthur sat  
 down for he was right soze wearied, and sir Wischer and  
 all his companie lept on their horses, and praised much Ar-  
 thur for slaying of the monster, saying that he was the best  
 knight of the world: and when Wischer came nigh to Ar-  
 thur he alighted, and when Arthur saw him comming hee  
 put his shield before him, and toke his sword in his hande  
 to defende him if neede required, and yet hee had no helme  
 for it was still in the mouth of the monster, which hee had  
 slaine.

But then Bisebar put off his helme, and right courteously saluted him, and said: Sir, God that created all things, keep and save you gentle Knight as the chiefe floure of all chivalrie, for you alone have atchieved that enterpryse, that we thousande knightes were sent to do. Sir said Arthur saving your pleasure, it is no such dede as that you & such a companie as you speake off shuld neede to enterpryse, nor I have done nothing that ought so greatly to bee praised, for you or anie other knight might as well have done it better or moztlier than I have done, therfore this dede need little to be spoken of, for it is too little to bee accounted of. Well sir said Bisebar, we knowe and see right well what is, for you have deliuered from great perill of death y<sup>e</sup> best part of all this my companie, wherfore I require you that beside this bountie that you have shewed vs in slaying of this monster, it wold please you to shew to me yet another courtlesse. Sir said Arthur, demand of mee what it pleaseth you, and if I can or may do it, I will not faile you. Well sir, then you shal heare what you have graunted me, it is of truth that I am pertaining to the most honourable Quene that nowe liueth, and that is the faire Florence, daughter to the mightie King Emendus, king of Mozolois, & as for me I am the most insufficient knight that he hath of a thousand in his house daily, howbeit sir his noble grace did send me accompanied with these other thousand knightes to the intent that we shuld doe to this monster as you have done alone God be thanked, for you by your prowess have atchieved that thinge that all other have failed of, then this is the end of my desire that it wold please you to go with vs to the court of the noble king Emendus, and so you shal bee our Companion and knight to the noble Florence, and I assure you I will be your true and faithfull companion, for I will neuer haue anie thing, but your part shal be therein.

And when Arthur heard his request, he smiled a little and sayde: Sir I most heartely thanke you, but as now it will not bee, for that it behoeth me to goe vnto the

Port

Port Poire to master Steuen, for I haue promised him so to doe, therefore I praye you bee not discontent, though I cannot at this time accomplish your will, and when Bisebar heard him speake of the Port Poire, he said: Sir haue you bene at the castle of the Port Poire. Yea truelie saide Arthur. When quoth hee, I require you how did you enter into the Castle. Sir I did there so much that thanked bee God ther I entered: and sir were you in the pallaice, or did you lie in the rich bed: yea truelie saide Arthur, there I was and laie in the rich bed, and tarried there two daies & two nights. Well sir said Bisebar, I see well that you haue atchieved all the aduentures of that place, wherfore you be the chiefe and soueraigne knight of all the worlde, & I will ride with you to the port Poire if it please you, for it behoeth me to speak with master Steuen my Ladies Clarke, for I haue to him a message from her noble grace, & I will send home all this people with a nephew of mine, who shal beare with him this monsters head with your helme in his mouth, and he shal present it from you to my Ladie Florence. Sir said Arthur, y<sup>e</sup> Ladie is right excellent & noble, as I haue heard saie, and I am too simple a person to send anie thing to her grace, neither did I euer see her, nor shee knoweth not who I am, and also this present is of too smal reputation, therefore me thinketh it were follie for mee to send it, wherfore sir I require you let it alone. Certainelie quoth Bisebar, that will I not doe, for the present is such, that I am sure it shal be receiued with gladder chere then though you had wonne a great Citie. Well saide Arthur, do as it shal please you best, howbeit I had rather that you wold let it alone. Then Bisebar called to him his nephew & said: Nephew you shal returne to the Court, & humbly commend me to the kings grace, & also you shal beare with you this monsters head, & present it to my Ladie Florence from a knight of hers, whom she neuer sawe, nor hee her, the which knight you maye shew vnto her grace, hath acquitted the Port Poire, & alone atchieued all the aduentures of that place, and also shew her how that I am gone with y<sup>e</sup>

P.ii.

saie

said Knight to the Port Payre, to speake with her Clarke  
master Steuen, for the matter that she commaunded mee  
at my departing. Sir said his neww all this shall be done,  
and so he toke the head and commended them all to God, &  
so departed, and all the other Knightes each of them went  
home to their owne houses. When all the people of the Ca-  
stle set open the gates and issued out and came befoze Ar-  
thur, both Gouvernar and Jofferan the Almaine and all the  
other, and Jofferan made great chere to Brisebar, and all  
the people of the Countrie came thether to see the monster  
and Arthur their champion, and said: Sir Knight, blessed  
bee the time that euer you were bozne, and the mother that  
bare you, for you haue deliuered al this countrie frō death.  
Then all the Prelates of the countrie came thether, and  
receiued Arthur with great triumph, and brought him in-  
to the Church within the Castle, and ther Brisebar, Josse-  
ran, Gouvernar and Jaket did vnarme him. When the ladie  
Blaunch floure came thether from the castle of the bzosse,  
descended downe from her Chariot, and mounted vpon the  
staires into the pallaice, and there she found Arthur vnar-  
med and Brisebar with him, who did behold Arthur mer-  
uailously, for they were all abashed at the great beautie &  
grace that they saw in him: and when they saue this La-  
die comming, they all arose and met her, and Arthur Brise-  
bar & shee satte downe together, & talked of diuers things  
till their meat was redie, & then they went thereto, & were  
richly serued: & the next day the ladie went againe to her  
castle of the bzosse, & in this Castle Arthur soiozned iii. daies  
and then departed and Brisebar with him, & toke leaue of  
all the Knights of that countrie, & so they came to the castle  
of the bzosse, wheras the Ladie Blaunch floure receiued the  
with great honour, and she made great chere to Gouvernar  
& the rest. Where Arthur soiozned foure daies, and then he  
and Brisebar departed, and the Ladie conueyed them a  
great way, and at last taking her leaue she returned to her  
castle of the bzosse.

Then these Knightes rode sooth at the Castle where  
Josse.

Jofferans bzother lay wounded, whom Bawdwin had in-  
cure, and as soone as Bawdwin knew that his Lozde was  
come, he was exceeding ioyful, and ranne and encountered  
Arthur and embraced him for ioy, and that night they wer  
there well serued. Now let vs leaue to speake of Arthur for  
a season, and let vs speake of sir Isembart, nephew to the  
Duke of Bigoz, who was bozne to the Castle of the Roch  
soze wounded by Arthur as you haue heard befoze.

How sir Isembarts cosin ambushed him in a great for-  
rest with a multitude of men of warre, to the intent  
to slae Arthur by treason, and there Arthur did  
such deeds, that in a manner it was incredible, and  
how Gouvernar and Brisebar were taken prisoners  
and led forth to a tower, and there Arthur slew of  
his eninies fise hundred, and mounted into the  
towre, and so rescued the prisoners in the spite of  
all the towne, and wanne the pallaice. Chap. 51.

**I**t is of a truth that Arthur soze wounded sir Isembart  
the duke of Bygozs nephew vnder the castle of the Roch,  
and thether his seruants brought him, and there he laie a  
great season at Surgerie, & so the tidings ran all ouer the  
Countrie, how that the Duke of Bigozs nephew laie soze  
wounded, and how that this was done by a strange knight, &  
at last these words came to the hearing of a Knight of gret  
power, who was called sir Firmont, treasurer to the Bi-  
goz, and he had one of his sholders higher then the other, &  
this sir Firmont was a strong Knight and greatly redoub-  
ted, and he was cosin germain to sir Isembart, and bzother  
to the Knight that was slaine by Arthur, & when he heard  
the death of his bzother, and how that his cosin was soze  
wounded, lying at the castle of the Roch, he was therewith  
soze displeased, & leapt on horseback, accompanied with ten  
other Knightes, & so went to the castle of the Roch to see his  
cosin, who as then could not stir out of his bed, & there they  
did salute each other, then sir Firmont demaunded how he

do, and he answered and said that he was right sore hurt: well cousin said he, I pray you who hath done this deed to you, and also slaine my brother? Sir I cannot tell you, for it is a knight stranger who is gone towarde the Castle of the brosse as it hath ben shewed me, and also it is said that he purposeth to returne againe with Josselan the Almaine the same way that he came, therefore I am right sore displeased that I am not as yet whole, for if I were, I would meete with him againe. Well sir said Firmount take you no thought, for if he come that way againe, he shalbe right well encountred, for sith he hath done me one displeasure, I shall quite him againe with two. Ah good cousin quoth sir Isembart for Gods sake abide till I be whole, for verely he is a knight of great value, it is I as yet that beareth the hurt, therefore I pray you let me be at the acquitall therof. for I feare me least he will doe you moze damage then he hath done to me. You say well said sir Firmount, I will doe as you say: and that he said to appeale his cousin, but incōtēnently after as soone as he might, he priuily sent a varlet to espy which way Arthur returned frō the castle of the brosse, and thus Arthur and Wisebar were with Josselan in his brothers castle, and there they determined that they would not remoue thence till the wednesdaie next after, then the varlet returned againe to sir Firmount, and shewed him where Arthur was, and how that he would depart thence the next wednesday after, and said: now you maye bee reuenged of the iniurie that hath bene done to your brother, and also to your cousin, for the knight that hath done it, on wednesday next betime will passe by the same place where your cousin was hurt and your brother slaine. When sir Firmount heard that he had great ioy, and sent messengers to all the men of warre that belonged to the towne & Castle of the Roch, and all the countrey about, commanding them to be all in harnais readie the wednesday next insuing in the Forrest, at a certaine place as covertly as they might without any noyse, and also he commanded y none shuld be so hardie to shew that matter to sir Isembart his cousin:

cousin: and Arthur all this time was in the Castle with Josselans brother, and there he had right great chere, and Wisebar also, and there they were richly serued and honored, and the wounded knight was as then through whole and was among them, and the next day betimes they hard seruice, and Arthur went to his horse, and with him Wisebar, Josselan and his brother, and Gouvernar, Baldwin and Jaket, and eight other knightes, so that they were in all to the number of fourtene persons, and so they roade forth till they came to the same mountain wheras Arthur met with Josselan, who then saide, Sir, in this place you made me to returne again, when I pursued after sir Isembart, that is troth said Arthur: well sir said Josselan I had thought it had bene you, but that you shewed me how you had wounded him: now I know well he hadde rather dye than be vnreuenged his heart is so fell, and I know well that there is not a berier traitour in all the world, for hee doth all his deeds by false treason, therefore I doubt greatly of him least that he haue falsly laid some wait for your retourne, and so thinke to be reuenged on you, therfore after my opinion we shall take our harnais whatsoeuer fortune. In the name of God said Arthur I agree wel thereto, then they all tooke their harnais, and rode forth faire & softly, till they came to the same place wheras the ambush of their enemies were, and there was sir Firmount & forty other knightes with him on horsebacke, and xliii. on fote, and when they saw Arthur and his companie, they mounted on their horses, and sounded a great horne, and therewith all they came forth into the plaine. When Arthur saw them, he demanded of Josselan what people they were & whether he knew them, or not, & he answered & said, Sir it is sir Firmount and al his power who is cousin germain vnto to the Duke of Wigors newew, and brother to the knight that you slew, and cometh to you for some ill, therfore there is nothing to doe now, but let each of vs doe our indeuour to defend our liues. Well said Wisebar I will doe my part.

And in faith said Gouvernar, and I shall not be behinde, and therewithall the ambush brake out of the wode, and ranne all at once on Arthurs companie, and Wisebar encountred so rudelie with the first, that hee put his speare cleane through his bodie, and he fell downe dead in the place, then he drew out his sword and strake so another, that his head flew into the field. When Gouvernar strake so one with his speare, that he overthrew both horse and man to the earth, and then with his sword he strake so another, that he claue his head to the teeth, and so dashed into the pzeale and laid on with such strokes, that he flew and bare downe all that hee attained vnto, then came Jofferan, and at the first meeting he overthrew two downe to the earth: and when Arthur sawe his companie do so valiantlie he had great ioy, and at last he espied sir Firmont wheras he had beaten downe to the earth sir Wisebar, then he dashed his horse with his spurs, & couched his speare, and strake sir Firmont so rudelie, that he sent both knight and horse flat to the earth right soe as stoned, and so he laie a great space, & at the last his people remounted him againe. When Arthur thrust into the pzeale with his good sword Clarence in his hande, and the first that he encountered he strake him with such strength that he claue him to the shoulders, and from another hee tooke the head, and laide on among his enemies on euerie syde with such force, y hee confounded all y euer he touched, so he cut off armes, legges, handes and heades, and did meruailous deedes, so he made as great a waie before him, as though his enemies had bene vnarmed, so their armour coulde not withstande the weight of his strokes, howbe it hee and his companie were but fourteene in number, and his enemies were welnigh to the number of thre hundred, and also euer they increased in number, so sir Firmont had sent his commaundement to the Castell of the Roch, and to the marches thereabout. And it so tuned that when as sir Firmont was remounted, hee made great lamentation because of his people that he sawe so soze overladen, & therewith he dashed his horse and strake

strake Jofferan so rudely, that hee overthrew him cleane from his horse, and took him prisoner, which when Gouvernar saw he lift up his sword and strake sir Firmont so fiercely on the helme that he cut off cleane a large bande byedth therof, and the stroke descended down on his shield, and claue it asunder in the middes, and from thence the stroke did light on the horse necke, and strake off the horse head cleane from the bodie, and therewith sir Firmont fell downe to the earth, and those that helpe Jofferan did let him goe at large, because they went to helpe their master, who as then was soze handled by Gouvernar, and Wisebar brought to Jofferan another horse y hee had won from a knight, & so quickly Jofferan lept up thereon, and dashed againe into the pzeale, & then sir Firmont was remounted againe on his horse, then he caused a great horne to be sounded, and his people gathered them together, and sortie of them in a flocke ranne all at once on Wisebar, Gouvernar, and Jofferan, and so closed them about and strake them on euerie syde, but when Arthur sawe that, he rushed into the thickest of that pzeale, and brake downe and ouertourned all that euer was before him, and beate downe knightes meruailouslie, so that all fledde before him as Lambes doe from the Wolfe: but then there fell on Arthur seven soze at once, who came from the castle, wherfore Arthur was faine to drawe backe, and coulde not as then succour his knightes that were nere taken, and then sir Firmonts companie killed Gouvernars horse vnder him, but Gouvernar laide on with his sword on all sydes, and maimed and slew many knightes, and Wisebar and Jofferan dyd helpe him full manfullie with all their power, and at the last Gouvernar aduised well a knight who all the daie before hadde done him much trouble, and strake him so rudelie with his sword, that he dashed it cleane through his bodie, and then hee tooke his horse, and mounted thereon in spite of all his enemies, then he rushed againe into the pzeale, and laide on with mightie strokes rounde about him.

And at the last these people on foote slew both Bilewar and Jofferans horses vnderneath them, and lyke valiaunt knightes they leapt on their feet, and by great strength defended themselves, but the pzease was so thicke & so great, and they were ouercharged with the people on foot, and by cleane force taken prisoners, and then they all ranne at Couernar and killed againe his horse vnder him, and there hee valiantlie defended himselfe with his owne handes: and when he sawe himselfe in that case, and his fellowes taken prisoners, he said: Ah gentle Arthur God be thy helpe, and keepe thee from death, for we are downe and overcome: and when Arthur heard that and saw how they were taken, hee laboured to rescue his knightes, and rusht into the pzease, and fiercelie laide on rounde about him on euerie side, and pressed himselfe toward Couernar, but it auailed him nothing: for Couernar, Bisebar, and Jofferan, were taken and lead forth toward the Castle, and when Arthur sawe them led forth, he was right sorrowfull, and he did so much that it was great meruaile to beholde him, for hee brake a sunder the great pzeases, and all that euer he attained vnto went to death, so that the hardiest that was ther, was in great feare to encounter him, but the pzease was so greates that did followe after him, and did cast at him euerie thing that they could get, thinking either to slaine him or else his horse, and they that lead his knightes to the castle warde, were then entered into a narrow causey the which brought them to a great riuer that they must passe ouer by shippe, for there was no bidge, and so they entered into the ship, and hasted them verie fast to enter into the Castle with their prisoners, and when Arthur sawe that he had lost his three knightes, he aduentured himselfe so farre, that there was neuer knight did such an enterpryse before, but hadde no manner of feare, nor doubted anie creature, then hee lyghted from his horse, and by fortune there was another shippe departing from the lande side, and therewith hee ioyned together his feete, and leapt from the shoare into the shippe among all his enimies, and his good sword

drawen

drawen in his hande, and the first that he encountered, hee claue his head to the chinne, and alwaies the shippe sailed toward the Castle, and hee dealt such strokes among them, that for feare many of them leapt into the water and were drowned, & the rememnaunt slaine. And at the last the ship drew so nere to the Castle wall, that they that were within the Castle did cast downe great hookes of yron, and therewith drew the shippe to the shoare, and then they ranne to their harnais, and toke their crossebowes and other weapons of warre. When Arthur leapt out of the shippe, and tooke one of the grapples of yron and did fasten it surely to a ring in the castle wal, to the intent that the shippe should not depart thence, and they of the castle did shoote and cast great stones and barres of yron at him, but alwayes hee couered himselfe with his white sheelde so that he could not be hurt, for such was the vertue of his sheelde, that it could neuer be empaired, and the master of the castle caused the great bell to be sounded, wherewith all the people of the castle were moued and issued out into the field, and flocke round about Arthur, and ther was then so great noise, that it was wonderfull to heare, & Arthur held in his hand Clarence his good sword, so that there was none that approached neere him, but shortly he yielded his life: and all this season there was a greatesorte that kepte Arthurs knightes, and shamefully dealt with them that it was great pittie to see, for some pulled them by the haires, and some by their beards, and some beate them with greates staues, and some cried downe with them, slaine them out of hand: and if sir Frymount had not commaunded the contrarie they had bene all slaine if they had had a thousand liues, for they were sozer chased against them, then wild Boares be when they be hunted: and then when sir Frymont had taken the remnaunt of sir Bisebars knightes, he returned to the Castle and all his people, the which were welnigh to the number of two hundred, and alwaies his people encreased more and more, for they repaired to him from all the towne and countries adioyning about him, and they passed ouer the ri-  
uer

uer, then he commaunded that the knightes that were taken prisoners should be led forth into the great dungeon of the castle, and there be vnarmed, and as he commaunded so it was done, and so Arthur saw how they were led into the Castle, but the pzease was so greate that he could not come at them. Then came sir Prymont and thre scoze with him on horsebacke, and all they set at once vpon Arthur & dast at him with speares, and did shote at him great quarells, and cast many a great stone at his head, and when Arthur sawe that he was so sore handled among them, and perceiued well it was hard for him to escape the greate danger that hee was in, hee thought inwardlye to himselfe that hee would sell his life deere ere he lost it, and therewith he aduanced himselfe & leapt into the middell of the pzease with his good sword Clarence in his hand, & laid round about him as fresh as though he had not fought befoze, & so made way befoze him, and did so valiauntlie that some of the knightes that wer enemies had of them great pittie, and so somewhat withdrew themselves, what for pittie and what for feare, from doing him any hurt, and said each to other. Good God what manner of knight is this, it were great damage that he shuld thus lose his life, and when sir Prymont saw that these knightes forbare Arthur, he was so sorrowfull, that he was nigh enraged out of his minde, and so his knightes desired him for Gods sake that he would haue pittie on Arthur, seeing that he did so noblie that day in deeds of armes, and also considering that there was so many against him, but he said he would in no wise spare him, but sword that he should die or he departed, and therewith hee dast his horse with the spures and thought to haue striken Arthur behinde, but Arthur sawe him comming and watched well his stroke, and let it passe by, and as hee passed by, Arthur strake at him with Clarence his good sword, and the stroke did light betwene the healmie and the necke, so that his head flew cleane into the field, and then his bodie fell downe to the ground. When his knightes and people came and wondered all about him, which when

Arthur

Arthur sawe, how they all tooke heede to the dead bodie, as fast as he might he went vp to the Castle the same waye that he sawe his knightes ledde. And at last he came to a great doze of yron, the which he found open, and hee entered into the Towze, and ther he found them that were vnrming of Wisebar and his fellowes, and then he shut fast the dooze after him that none should enter or issue out, and like a wilde Lion he ranne on them, and with his sword cut them in peeces, as the Wyth doth the grasse, and when Guernar sawe Arthur his master, his heart beganne to reuiue, for hee thought verilie that he had bene slaine, and his hands were fast tied together, and with his teeth and with his cleane strength, hee burst a sunder the binding wherewith he was bound, then hee ranne to one of them that bound him and tooke out of his handes a weapon, and gaue him such a stroke that he disseuered the life and bodie a sunder, and then he ranne to the dooze and kept that none should escape that waie, for they that came to the doze went no moze to their fellowes, and when they sawe how they were dealt withall, and how that their fellowes were slaine, some of them for feare leapt out of the windowes into the water, and some swamme, and some were drowned.

Thus Arthur deliuered the Towze of them all, for there was not one but abode there but hee was slaine, and when hee was thus deliuered from his enemies, hee came to his knightes that were bound fast lyke prisoners, and vnloosed them, and when Arthur sawe Wisebar so fast bound and wapped with cordes, he said: A deere friende you were not wont thus to be nourished, ill hadde come to that purse that hath caused you thus to bee swathed, and without anie moze staying hee vnloosed him, and Baldeuwin and all such other as hadde bene taken prisoners, and then incontinently he closed fast all the dozes of the towze, to the intent that none shoulde enter thereat, and this Towze was exceeding strong, and for the bignesse thereof it was able to keep & sustaine for the space of thre moneths

ten

ten thousand men of war if they were well furnished with victuals, but those noble knightes had not as then within all & towre a pennie worth neither of meate nor drinke, wherefore God be their aide and comfort, and for this present time let vs leave to speake of them, and returne to the Duke of Wygo's nephew, who was sore hurt, lying at his castle of the Roch, as you haue heard before.

How Arthur and his companie were besieged in the Pallace hy the Duke of Bigor, but thanked be God they escaped by the subtil art of master Steuen, Clarke to the faire Florence of Sorolois.  
Chap. 52.

**W**hen the Mayor of the Roch had caused the great common bell of the towne to be rung, the Dukes nephew as he laie in his bedde sicke heard it, and demaunded of a seruaunt of his what it might meane, and his Page thinking to hide it from him saide, sir it is for nothing. Tell not me that tale said hee, for that bell is not rung but it is for some great cause, therefore I charge thee tell me the truth. Well sir quoth he, if you will needs know it, I shall shew you, it is so that sir Armand your cousin caused the knight that wounded you to be watched, insomuch that as now he hath found him, and therefore hee summoned all the people of this towne and countrie about to come to him, to the intent either to take or slaine this said knight and all his companie. Why said sir Hembart, are they then fighting together, and is hee not yet taken? Sir sayde the Page, I cannot tell you: and as they were thus talking, there came to them into the Chamber a knight sore wounded bleeding fast, and saide to the Dukes nephew: Sir it is now worse then euer it was, for sir Armand is slaine, and when sir Hembart heard that, he sat vp in his bed and demaunded of the hurt knight who had done the dede: Sir said he, the same knight that slew his brother, and wounded you. Well good friend and is he not slaine? No sir, said the

The knight, I think verilie he be no man, but rather a fiend of hell, for he doubteth nothing, but he confoundeth all that euer he attaineth vnto, for this daie he hath shed the blood of fise hundred persons, and confounded & slaine more then can well be spoken of or numbred, with the good help of his companie, who are right valiaunt. And sir said Hembart, I am right unhappy if they thus escape me, but I require you tell me where they bee: In good faith sir quoth the knight, they are in yonder great towre, whereas were all the prisoners that wer taken, but when these diuels came thether, there were but few that escaped death, and so they haue swallowed all the prisoners, and haue fast shut themselves within the towre, so that none can come at them. Well then I charge thee go make a crie and raise vp all the men of war and let them besiege the towre round about, and pitch vp my Pavilions and Tents, for surelie I will famish them ere they gette thence. When anone the crie was made throughout all the Towne, and the Dukes nephewes Tent was pitcht vp, and himselfe bozne into it, and then hee sent all about the Countrie and commaunded euerie man that was able to beare harneis, to come to him in all hast possible. And there resorted to him the number of fise hundred or aboue, and so lodged themselves round about the Towre, and then sir Hembart commaunded straightlie that none should bee so hardie as to assaile the Towre, till such time as he were cleane whole of his woundes, and till the Duke of Wygo's his buckle were come to him, for he swore great othes he would slaine Arthur and his companie with his owne handes, and drie them in the Sunne, thus sir Hembart railed on these noble knightes, who were looking out of the windowes of the Towre, and they sawe right well how that people came and lodged round about them in the Towre, and Balwdeuain and Jaket were looking out at another windowe into the Towne-wardes, and there they espied ioyning to the same Towre a right faire mannor, seeming as strong a house as could be devised, closed about with strong high walls, and great gates bound

bound with greate barres of yron, with brasse Bridges  
and Portcullises, and well Bulwarke, and a greate and  
deepe water continually beating vpon the walls, to say  
the truth this place was right strong, and within this house  
they sawe a Chimney right soze smoaking, and also they  
smelled the Kitchin, and felt well the savour of roast and  
fried meate, and so there was in deede, for there was pre-  
pared all the meate that the Dukes nephew and his com-  
panie shoulde haue had, for it was the dungeon that be-  
longed to the Duke of Wygoz. A good Lord quoth Bal-  
dwin, I would I were in yonder kitchin with yonder good  
meate, for then I would eat before my master, for I haue  
great hunger, and I also quoth Jaket, and it was then past  
noone, and these noble knights had eaten no meate of all  
the day before. Then Josteran said, I thanke God I had a  
good Whistion, for I am now all whole, but I would faine  
eate some meate. By my faith and I also quoth Gouvernar:  
Well quoth Baldwin, Sir Gouvernar and if you will come  
hether you may drinke of this smoake as I doe, whereby  
your hunger may bee well asswaged: and then Arthur and  
his companie went thether to beholde from whence the  
smoake came, and when Arthur behelde the faire place so  
strong and richlie builded, and heard beating in the mo-  
ters within the Kitchin, and might heare how the Cookes  
called for Wine and spice, he said to Wisebar: Friend, me  
thinketh these Cookes in yonder Kitchin haue somewhat to  
doe, for they be busie, in faith I will goe and helpe them:  
and when Gouvernar heard him saie so, he said that gladlie  
he woulde tourne the brooch: ah good Lord said Wisebar,  
what a lad of the Kitchin woulde you bee, in faith I thinke  
verilie you woulde some beate downe your master, and they  
all began to laugh. Well quoth Arthur, there is no more  
to saie, but let vs doe all well our partes, for surelie if it bee  
possible thether will I goe and put some salt into the grew-  
ell: Now Sir, you be a verie good Cooke quoth Baldwin:  
and thus they sported each with other. When Arthur ad-  
uised well the floore of the Chamber wherein hee was, and  
espied

espied how that there were boardes underneath the floore:  
then he said to his companie, let vs break vp the pauement  
of this floore, and then we may see well what thing is vn-  
derneath, so then they toke their haultberts and billes, and  
such other weapons as was brought thether by them that  
conuayed the prisoners into that chamber, the which were  
then all slaine and cast out at the windowes, and so they  
dashed their weapons into the pauement of square stone,  
and with great labour brake them vp, and ther they made  
so great an hole, that they might well see all thing y was  
underneath the chamber, but the haute was verie darke,  
and then they called to know whether anie bodie was ther  
or no, but there was none that answered them. At the last  
Arthur espied where there was a chaine of yron fast tied to  
the wall, and the one end came to the floore of the chamber,  
and the other ende was tied to a great Chest in the wall:  
then Arthur toke the chaine in his handes & slipped downe  
thereby till he came to the crest of the wall, and there was  
a window whereby there entered a little light, so that hee  
might well see the bottome of the haute, and then he espied  
that he might breake the wall whercom he stood, and might  
sone come to the earth, then he caused all their harnais to  
bee brought downe to the said crest, and all his companie.  
When they brake downe the stones of the wall, and did cast  
them downe, and euer raised the stones deeper and deeper  
vnder their fete, and went lower and lower, till at the last  
they came downe to y earth without anie hurt or damage,  
then they found a litle doze of yron, which was shut with  
out with foure great barres of yron, which doze opened a-  
gainst the said strong place whereas the meate was a rost-  
ing, then these knightes thought to arme them, and after  
to breake open the doze, and so they didde. For when they  
were all armed, then they toke vp each of them great pie-  
ces of timber that were lying in the baute, and altogether  
they ranne at the doze with such a furious force, that it  
made an exceeding great noise, and as it chaunced, at the  
verie same time the Dukes treasurer was gone to see the

dead corpes of Sir Firmont, the which was laid on a bære to be bozne to the Church to be buried, and with him were gone all the people in the towne saving those that wer lodged about the tower, so that there was not left in the said place anie creature, but onely the Cookes that were in the Kitchin dressing of their meate, noz there was none that was aware how Arthur was breaking vp the doze of the Tower within, and there Arthur and his companie did so much that they brake vp the doze and entred into a garden, then Arthur said to his companie, sirs goe quickly to the gate and draw vp the bridge, and I will go in y meane season into the Kitchin to the Cookes. Well said Baldewin, I am sure my master hath felt the sauoz of the smoke the which he thinketh right good, whereby he hath got him a good appetite. Well saide Arthur, doe as I haue shewed you, and then you shall do wel, and so they went altogether to the gates and did shut them fast, and drew vp the bridges, and then they wer so sure that they doubted no man. And in the meane season Arthur entered into the Kitchin, and began to crie, auant out of this house ye soule ribauld knaues, for you shal all die. And when the Cookes saw Arthur, they knew well it was he that vanquished Sir Firmont, wherewith they were so soze abashed that they fled away and cried out, saying: that the diuell of hell had brought him into that house, but Jofferan and Wisebar were at the doze and receiued them, and gaue them such discipline that it ought not to be controlled, and Gouvernar and Baldwin kept so the gate and turned them agayne, that ther abode not one alieue. When Wisebar and Gouvernar tooke the dead bodie and did cast them out of the windows and battlements of the high wall, & Sir Firmont was lying on a Bære and carried on mens shoulders, and passed then by the wall of the same house, whereas Arthur and his companions were, and as he passed vnder the wal, Arthur and his companie did cast downe the dead bodie on the Bære. And when Sir Isembarts seruants saw that, they knew right wel that the Dukes fortreffe was taken,

and

and so they went and shewed it to their master, wherewith all he was greatly grieued, and commaunded in all y haste to assaile the Pallatce, whereas Arthur and his companie were on the wals, and defended themselves valiantly, that their enemies did little preuaile against them, and Arthur was oftentimes in minde to haue issued out to haue fought with his enemies, but Wisebar would not suffer him, and verely, if it had not bene more for feare of his companie than for himselfe, he would haue set open the gates. And when they without saw that they could not preuaile, they ceased their assault, and withdrew themselves, and Arthur and his companie went and vnarmed them, and Baldewin and Jaket covered the tables, and serued Arthur and his fellows right richly, for there was in that house both wine and victualls sufficient for a whole yeare: and thus right well and at their ease, they remained fiftene daies without feare of their enemies, and without anie greate hurt. Now will we leaue to speake of Arthur and his companie, and shew somewhat of Master Steuen.

Howe Master Steuen by the vertue of his Arte of Nigromancie, deliuered Arthur and his companie from perill and daunger of the Duke of Bigor and his nephew. Chap. 54.

During the time that Arthur and his companie were thus besieged in the Duke of Wygozs fortreffe, master Steuen Clarke to the noble Ladie Flozence of Sozolois, and the Marques were at the Porte Poire, talking together of Arthur and thinking long for him, for it was more then viii. daies, with the promise that hee made of his returne, wherefore they were in great sorow and feare that he was slaine by the soule monster of the Broffe. Well said master Steuen, Sir Marques abide me here till I retourne to you againe, and I will shew you how the case standeth, then the master entered into his Chamber and tooke his booke, and looked so long on them till he knew well all the

D.ii.

estats

estate of Arthur and his companie. Then hee went to the Marques and recounted to him all the estate of Arthur and of his fellows, how they were besieged in the Castle, and how that the Duke of Wigor was with fortie thousand men come to the Castle of the Roche, for to helpe his Nephew, wherefore he said, there is now nothing to do but to studie for their deliuerance, the which he said was harde to doe without his counsaile and aduice. Ah gentle master saide the Marques, when need cometh then is the friend knowne, for Gods sake make hast for their deliuerance. Sir saide hee, you shall keepe this castle, and I will goe to them and doe my indeauour to deliuer them: and so he departed from the Marques and entered into his chamber to peruse his bookes, and did so much that at last he hadde all things that he demaunded, & by his cunning he caused himselfe to be bozne into the same hall where Arthur and his companie were leaning and looking out at the windowes behelbing the Dukes hoast, who was as then come and had lodged himself and all his companie about the pallaice, and by that time sir Isembart was whole, and was able to ride where he would all armed, and so hee came to the Duke his vncle, and recounted to him all his aduenture. Well faire nephew said the Duke, take no thought there, for by the faith that I swe vnto you it shall bee vere bought. And in y meane season master Steuen was come into the pallaice, and stood behinde Arthur or euer he was aware, and laid his hande on his shoulder, wherewith Arthur tourned him about, and when he saw master Steuen he embraced him in his armes, and so did Wisebar, Joffe ran and Gouvernar and all other, and made him right gret chere, and demaunded of him how hee was entered into that place? Well saide the master howe so euer you haue kept and defended the place, yet I haue done so much, that I am now entered. In dede that is true saide Gouvernar. Thus they made great good cheere and passed ioyously all that night, and on the next morning that followed they

they arose betimes and looked out at the windowes, and beheld the Dukes hoast, and then Arthur said how that he would issue out and goe fight with his enemies, but Wisebar would not suffer him: at which time they had thought master Steuen had bene still a bed, for he was not as then come out of his chamber, howbeit he was about to studie for their deliuerance, for as sone as he was out of his bed, he tooke his bookes and made his coniurations, whereby he caused such a tempest of winde and raine to rise, and fall in the Dukes hoast without, that it burst downe tents and ouerthrew pavilions, and cast downe standards, and tare downe lodgings, and haled a sunder ropes, and dast down all to the earth, and with the winde there was blowne by into the aire Streamers, Wanners, and other clothes, so high, that the sight of them was cleane lost. And Arthur and his companie when they perceiued all this without in the hoast, they had great meruaile, for it was a faire and a cleere morning befoze, and when this storme was somewhat ceased, then ther rose out of the ground such a darke mist and so stinking, that scarce one man could see another and this mist hanged ouer all the Dukes hoast and ouer all his Castle and towne, except the fortresse whereas Arthur and his companie were in, wherefore they did close all the windowes, and did light by candles, but this mist endured so long that all they of the Dukes Hoast, & also within his Castle and towne were filled with the saour thereof, and at the last it ceased, and the weather beganne to waie cleere and faire, and then it fortuneth that all such as hadde felt the saour of the soule mist, their heartes began to faile them, and to be so full of cowardise and feare, as though they had beene chased with an hundred thousande men of armes, and oftentimes beheld toward the fortresse where as Arthur and his companie were, alwaye fearing leasse they would haue issued out on them. And as they looked toward the mountaines, they thought they heard ten thousand hornes and trumpets, thinking verely that it had ben true, and to their sights they sawe so much people descende-

ing downe from the mountaines that all the earth was covered with harneised men, then they were in greater feare than they wer befoze, and at the last they thought they saw descende downe from an high hill, the chiefe standerd and banner of the mightie King Emendus, wherein was portrayed a flaming dragon of golde, and on another side they perceived wher came the King of Diquenie, and with him a great multitude of men of warre, and so throughout all the host there arose a great rumoꝝ and a saying, how the mightie King Emendus with all his power was come upon them to rescue his knight sir Wisebar, whom they had besieged with Arthur in the dungeon, and thereby they were so discomfited in their fantasies and imaginations, that both on horsebacke and on foote, they fled all away as fast as they might, and he that could get his saddle did set it on his horse, and some for hast leapt on theyꝝ horses without anie saddle oꝝ brydle, and fled away all dismayed, some into the wodes, and some into the riuers and great marishes, they wist not whether. When Arthur and his companie saw all this, they had great meruaile. In the name of God saide Gouvernar, I thinke they will fly for Celes, behold how some of them baine themselves in the marish. And at the last tidings came vnto the Duke how that his men fled away, and anone he leapt on his horse, for his heart was as soꝛe afraid as anie others, and hee fled away also as fast as he could to saue himselfe: and his seruantes that were within his Castle, ranne all about the house to seeke a place to hide them in, and did close themselves fast within the ground in a low haute of the Castle, and some hid them vnder emptie pipes and other vesselles for feare of espying. And sir Alembarte fled into the great Abbey Church, and mounted vp to the high hautes for to hide him there. And the monks, Runnes, Priests, Clerkes & Chanons ranne to the Churches of the towne, and kneled downe and confessed themselves each to other, knocking themselves on their breasts, with great repentance of their misdoings, thinking verely neuer to die other death.

Then

Then master Steuen issued out of his chamber, and went into the hall whereas Arthur was, and Tolleran said, master for Gods sake come hether and beholde how the Duke and his men do flye away, I thinke they be afraid. In the name of God said the master I thinke they be not at this time well assured of themselves, therefore shortly take your harneis, and let vs goe meete the mightie King Emendus, who is comming to rescue his knight here sir Wisebar. And when Arthur heard that, he and all his companie armed them, and so opened the gates and came to the Dukes tents, whereas they found good and mightie horses, & there each of them tooke a good horse such as liked them best, and there were none to withstand them, for they were all clean fled away, and not one left behind. Then they all mounted on their horses, and issued out of the tentes, and tooke their way vp toward the mountaines, whereas Arthur and his companie thought that they saw all the world of men comming towardes them, hearing hornes and trumpettes sounding, & braying of horses, glistering of helmes, shining of shields, wauering of streamers & banners, & at y last they espied y flaming dragon of gold in the great banner of Sorolois, and also to their sight they saw all the foure Kings with their power comming, so that to their seeming all the earth was conquered with people, and Arthur greatly meruailed of the great noblenesse of the King Emendus, that brought to battaile so great a multitude of people. Sir, as God helpe me said master Steuen, yet here is not all his whole strength, for here is nothing of the power of my Ladie Florence his Daughter, noꝝ anie of the noble countrey of Argenton. Pea verely sir sayde Wisebar, to say the troth I beleue that his maiestie is the most mightiest King that now reigneth oꝝ governeth in all the whole world.

And so they rode forth thus talking, till at the last they met with the soꝛmost companie of king Emendus host, the Generalls and Captaines of which made greate chere

D.iii.

to

to master Steven, to Wisebar & to Tofferan such as knew them. And so they rode forth till they met with the kinges banner and flaming Dragon, the which was borne by the Seneschall of the Ladie Florence, who made great chere to Wisebar: and thus Arthur rode ever forth thinking verely that all this that he saw and heard had bene of a truth, for he deemed litle that all this had ben wrought by master Steven. And thus ever Arthur rode forth the space of two leagues, and still encountered much people, and at the last they met with the noble King Emendus, who made great chere and feast to master Steven, and to Wisebar, and demanded of them how they had done, and howe they came into the prison. Sir & it like your grace said Wisebar, thanked be God wee doe right well, for wee were deliuered out of daunger by the onelie prowesse of this noble Knight that you see here in our companie, who hath done so much in deedes of chivalrie that it cannot bee recounted, & thus as they were talking together, master Steven vndid his inchauntment, and then the King and all his great Host were cleane banished awaie, so that there was in sight no moze creatures but onelie Arthur & his companie, where with they were all soze abashed, and eache of them behelde other, and spake nether a word, thinking how they had dreamed. In the name of god said Arthur, I haue great maruel at this. Marie sir quoth Wisebar I spake right now with the King my souereigne Lord, and now I know not wher he is become. Well sir quoth master Steven, lette vs ride forth, for now you may see well how that we be out of the daunger of our enemies. When Arthur perceiued well that all this was done by the craft of master Steven because of their deliuerance: thus they rode forth till it was none, ever talking of their adventures, and at last against night they descended downe from a great mountaine, and the valley beneath the same was verie obscure and darke, so that they coulde discerne but a verie litle waye into it, and when they were nigh to it, they perceiued where

as

as there issued out thereof foure men on feeble horses, each of them having a burning Torch in their hands, & in their companie an Abbot who was a white Ponke, and foure other Ponkes with him, and they were verie leane & pale, and but feeble horses, and when Arthur sawe them hee rested and saluted them, and the Abbot put off his hoober and saluted Arthur and all his companie, and because he sawe Arthur of so faire a stature, he thought verilie that he was the chiefe of his companie, and then he said to Arthur. Sir, I heard reported but late how that a Knight hath achieved the hard adventures of the Port Paire, if it be so, he is of great valure, and therefore I am in purpose to ride thither, and to complaine to him of the great wrongs that hath bene done to me, for sir as poore as I seme now, yet I was wont to be the most honoured Abbot in all the Countrey of Argenton, and now I am least set by, for my couent is clean destroyed, for it is now welnigh five yeres sith any of gods service was said in my Church, nor there was no light neither of Sun nor Moone that entered into it in al that time, and all our lands and rents are cleane lost, wherefore many of my couent be dead, what with sorow and necessitie, and all this is done vnto vs by the Duke of Wygoys brother, wherefore I praise God and ever shall, that he may die a shamefull death. And how that all this is fortune, I will shew you and it please you to heare me, I haue complained me to euerie noble man that I meete, to the intent to haue some succour of them to get me my right againe, but I can meete with none that will helpe or aide me, therefore I will goe and complaine me to the gentle Knight that hath done so much prowesse at the Port Paire, if it be my fortune to finde him, and I knowe not what you bee, howbeit I complaine me to you as I haue done to many other. By the faith I owe to God, quoth Arthur, I would be right glad to helpe you to your right, and thereto I shall be glad to put to my good will, whereof the Abbot thanked him, and so did all the other Ponkes.

Then master Steven desired them to goe in companie  
D. v. With

with them to the Port Poire, and promised if they would  
so doe, they should speake with the same knight that they  
sought for: and then at the last the Abbot knew well ma-  
ster Steuen, and embraced and kissed him, and made right  
great ioye, saying: Ah gentle master, is the knight that I  
seek for in your companie or no? As God helpe me quoth  
the master, it is the same knight that you haue all this  
while spoken vnto, and hee by his prowesse hath deliuered  
out of prison the noble Marques your owne brother. And  
then the Abbot held vp his handes to heauen, and sayde.  
The high and mightie King of the celestiaall Paradise in-  
create in that noble knight honour and bountie. Then the  
Abbot marked Brisebar and Jolleran, and knew them ve-  
rie well, and made with them greates ioye. And thus they  
rode forth so long, till at the last they arriued at the Port  
Poire, and ther descended from their horses, and mounted  
vp into the Pallais, and when the noble Marques saw Ar-  
thur, he made to him right great chere, and when hee saw  
the Abbot who was his brother, he began to weep for pittie,  
when he remembred the death of the Lord of Argenton his  
other brother, and so each of them embraced other, weeping  
for ioye, and then the Abbot said: I praise God that he may  
die an euill death that hath slaine our brother the gentle  
Lord of Argenton, whereby great hurt and damage is come  
to my Church. And I praise the same said the Marques, for  
thereby is our piece the lady of Argenton disherited wrong-  
fully and without cause, and therewith they wept each to  
other right pittiously, whereat Arthur and his companie  
greatlye grieved, and then Arthur said to them: Lordes bee  
of good comfort, for I promise you I will be at her marry-  
age if I may, and if the Ladie haue then anye neede of helpe  
I shal be ready to aide her to the best of my power. And the  
two brethren thanked him much, and so they vnrmed them  
and were there in great ioy and sport. Now let vs leaue to  
speake of them, and intreate of the messenger that bare the  
head of the monster to the court of king Emendus, and to  
the faire Florence.

How

How the nephew of Brisebar arriued at the court of  
the mightie King Emendus, with the head of the  
Monster, and did salute the king and also the Em-  
perour of Inde, who was still in the Court, atten-  
ding that the King shuld giue him in marriage his  
daughter, the faire Florence, & to her the head of  
the monster was presented from Arthur, & he shewed  
her how that all alone by his noble prowesse, hee  
had slaine the terrible Monster of the Brosse.

Chap. 54.



And it happened that after Brisebars nephew  
was departed from thence where the monster  
was slaine, he rode so long till he arriued at a ci-  
tie named Phelale whereas the king was, and  
the Emperour in his companie, who would in no wise de-  
part till that the king had giuen him the faire Florence to  
be his wife. And also there was in the Court at the same  
time the king of Diquenie, cousin germanes vnto the faire  
Florence. The Court was as then great and sumptuous,  
and the king had as then bene at seruice, and was returned  
into the Pallais and the Emperour with him, & also there  
was Florence accompanied with many Ladies and Dam-  
sells, and the King of Diquenie was there accompanied  
with many other great Lordes and Knightes, talking to-  
gether of a tourney that should be made at Drosene. And  
in the mene season Christeline nephew to Brisebar mount-  
ed vp the staires, & two great men brought after him the  
head of the monster in a Basket, couered ouer with tow-  
ells, & so entered vp into the Pallais, and there euerie bo-  
die made him great chere and feast, and therewith he came  
before the king, and when the king sawe him comming hee  
had great ioy, and demanded how Brisebar did, and whe-  
ther that he had slaine the monster or not. As God helpe  
me quoth sir Christeline, mine vnckle dooth ryght well,  
but as for the slaying of the monster hee is nothings  
guiltie,

guiltie, nor anie of his cōpanie, for onely one noble knight hath slaine the monster, the which knight by his prowesse hath atchieued all the fearefull adventures of the Poete Boyze, he is the most faire knight and the most gracious, that euer I saw with mine eyes. And when he saw the faire Florence sitting by the King her father, he kneeled downe to the earth and said, Right dære Ladie, this same noble knight sendeth to your royall grace for a present the head of the said monster, as to the most high and puissant Ladie of the world now living, and to you he offereth himself to doe all that he may for so noble a Ladie as you be, and truly madame it shall be a great treasure to haue and to re- taine so noble and so valiant a knight as he, for hee is the floure of all chivalrie, & in bountie surmounting all other. When the head was discovered and shewed to the King & to the Emperour, and thether ranne every bodie that was in the Court to behold it, then they took knives & swordes and strake at it, but none could impair it, it was so exceeding hard. Then every man praised much the knight that had slaine the monster, and said how that in all the world there was not his pere, and some said also, that this knight is hee that hath atchieued the adventures of the Poete Boyze, and the King did much praise him, and determined to sende to seeke for him. Sende to seeke for him quoth the King of Ardenne, it were little inough to send a king for him, for it were not meete for a simple knight to goe seeke for such a knight of so high prowesse as hee is of. Well sir sayd Christeline Wissebar, abide with him, and they are gone together to the Poete Boyze, and if he can hee will bring him from thence in his companye hether unto your Court.

Then all the Kinges and Princes that were there present counsayled the King Emendous that hee shoulde not sende anie bodie for him, but abide untill the coming of Wissebar, and Florence arose and sayde unto the King her father, Sir, I praye you, if so be it like your grace, give me leave to departe into my chamber, for this foule head

head troubleth me very sore, behold it, & so shee took her leave of the King and of the Emperour, and as soone as she was in her secret chamber, shee called unto her the King of Ardenne, in whom she faithfullie trusted, and then they fate them downe together, and she sayde unto him: Sir, of greates paine is the knight that hath slaine this terrible monster, and done so manie valiaunt deedes, therefore I praye you can you tell me what he is. By the faith that I owe unto you madame sayde hee, I cannot tell, but let vs send hether for Christeline, to knowe if he can tell vs anie thing of his estate. When incontinentlie he was sent for in all hast, and forthwith Florence caused the Chamber to be avoided of all those that were in it, saving of the King of Ardenne and of the Queene his wife. And when Christeline was come befoze them, then Florence demanded of him what manner of knight hee was that offered his service in such wise unto her: madame said he, as God helpe me I cannot shew your grace, but a more fairer, gracious, & gentler hearted knight, cannot be found in all the world, nor a goodlier & stouter man of armes, nor of higher prowesse. Well friend, sayd the Ladie Florence, tell me what message he hath sent unto me by you. Madame quoth he, he shewed me how that he is your knight, and readie to doe you service at all times: mine said Florence, and there with she sighed, and forthwith there entered into her heart a great and fervent love, insomuch that all other wer quite and cleane put out of her minde, and therewith she stode as one in a studie without speaking of anie worde. And then the Queene of Ardenne demanded of him what armes the knight did beare: madame saide he, a checkered armes and a white shield. Well saide Florence, is this of truth. Yea truly madame said the knight, and also he hath a sword that can helpe no man but himselfe, and hee doth therewith what him list: madame I saie unto you, that above all other knights he is the best that is in the world, & so he is reputed in querie place. When was Florence over come with love more then she was befoze, & thought it was

he that master Steven ben Clarke abode so long for at the port Poire. Then she gave Christeline two hundred pound of land for the tidings that he brought her from the sayde Knight.

How Arthur and master Steven went to the garden pertaining to the pallaice of the Port Noiré, and entered to the rich pavilion where as the Image was holding a chaplet, the which she did set on Arthurs head, in signification how that he should have the faire Florence, whom the Image resembled, for ther was none that should have Florence in marriage, without hee should die an euill death, except it were he that the Image did giue the said Chaplet vnto. Cap. 55.

*I*n the meane time that Christaline Wisebars nephews was at the court with the King Emendus, as you haue heard before, Arthur and his companie were at the Port Poire in great ioy and mirth, and when the Abbot had read seruite, they were all together in the Pallaice, and entered into the garden, & so went talking together, till at last master Steven toke Arthur by the hand and said how that hee would speake with him in counsaile, then they departed together from the other companie, and went talking till they came to the rich pavilion, and entered into it, and stode before the image that held the chaplet in her hands. When the master said, sir this image is right faire, howbeit y figure y it doth represent is ten times fairer, the which is the sayde Florence, daughter to the mightie King Emendus, and when she was first borne, she was brought vp into y mound of aduentures, and there was giuen her this rich pavilion, by the Quene of the Fairies, and they destined on her that no creature should haue her in marriage but onely he that this image should giue the chaplet vnto, that he holdeth in her handes as you maye see, and I hope verilie it shall bee you, because of the greates prowesse that is in you, and I pray to God with all my heart it may be so, now here

is none but you and I, therefore I praye you goe to the Image, and then we shall knowe the troth. Ah master sayde Arthur for gods sake I desire you to pardon me, for so high as is the loue of the noble Ladie Florence, appertaineth not to so simple a person as I am, therefore it were folly to me to goe to the Image, presuming to attaine to so high felicitie. By my faith said the master you shall go, and therefore I pray you so to do, for my heart giueth me good comfort that you shall speede. Well saide Arthur with you will needes haue me goe, I am content, but first you shall goe before me: with a good will saide the master, so that you will promise to follow me if so be I misse, as God help me said Arthur so will I doe. Then the master went and kneeled downe before the Image, but though hee hadde kneeled there ten yeare together, he shuld not haue sped, yet he was right faire, and a good Clarke and gracious, and also sonne to a King: but for all that the Image did nothing to him: and when the master saw that he arose, and caused Arthur to doe as he did, the which he was right loath to doe: but at the last with much paine he kneeled down before the Image, and incontinently the Image turned toward him, & to his seeming blushed as red as scarlet, and faire & softlye did set the chaplet on his head. And the same time that this Image did set the chaplet on his head, the noble ladie Florence was in her chamber talking with Christeline, who told her how the knight that slew the monster had a white shield and a sword that could not bee empaiied. At which time she felt in her hart, the vertue of the propertie of the same Image in the rich pavilion, which represented her similitude, whereby there entred into her heart such a loue, that she lost all her countenance, & blushed twice as much as the Image did before Arthur, and thereby in a manner she fell in a traunce, and lost the vse of her speech. When the Quene of Diquenie saw her in that plight she cried & said, O Iesus saue my Ladie Florence from death or leopordie: and then Christeline tooke her in his armes, and other Ladies came into the chamber, and when they sawe her

her at that point, they took and laid her on her bed, and when none it was noised all about the Court how that the noble Flozence was sicke, wherewith the Court was soze troubled, and the King & the Emperour were right soze when they heard thereof. But when Flozence was come againe to her selfe, the queene of Aquenie demanded of her what she ailed to be in that case so to be in bed, and she aunswere and said, that it was because that she remembred the foule horribleness of the head of the dead monster, wherby her heart failed her. When incontinentlie the King commaunded that the head should be burnt, to the intent that it should no more be seene, and so it was done in all haste: and as for Arthur, he was all this season before the Image with the Chaplet on his head, and hee was then so taken with lone, that there was none in all the world that pleased him, but onely the figure of her that owed the chaplet, and therewith he arose on his feete and the Chaplet on his head, and when the master sawe that he had neuer so great ioye afoze, and said: Sir, God increase in you bountie and noblenesse, for as for honour, you are therewith now greatlie endowed, now I see and knowe well, that you shall be my Lord, therefore I owe to you faith and truth, and from hence forth I will to you doe homage, and holde my land of you. He saide Arthur, suffer not your selfe so to say, for the sonne of a king ought not to holde his land of so simple a knight as I am, howbeit the master did so much, that at the last Arthur received him for his man, and when hee had so received him, the master said: My Lord, I owe unto you faith and truth, and trulie that will I keepe, and from hence forth hardlie doe somewhat after my counsaile, for I shall helpe you to accomplish this enterprize more then any other man living. Master said Arthur, and I will beleue your counsell, and put my selfe onely into your hands, and as God helpe me the lone that is in my heart griueth me soze, and yet I knowe not who it is that I lone. Sir saide the master, take the Chaplet from your head & giue it againe to the Image to keepe, till you aske it another time. Master said Arthur,

with

with a good will, and so he took the chaplet and deliuered it againe to the Image, and then the Image stood still as she did befoze. When the master saide, Sir Byssebar will desire you to goe to the Court with him, but you must denye him for this time, for after my minde you shall first goe to achieve the adventures of the tenebrous or darke tower, & take with you no companie, but onely Bawdewin your squire, and you shall depart to morrow betimes, and I will goe vnto the Court with Byssebar and prouide for euery thing that is available for the contentation of your minde: In the name of God said Arthur, so let it bee. And as they were thus talking together, there came to them the Abbot and the Marques his brother, Couernar, and Jolleran: & Bawdwin and Jaket prepared for their dinner in the palace. And the Abbot said to Arthur, Sir I haue bene here a great while, whercof I thanke you, & also I am euer bound vnto you because you haue deliuered out of prison my brother the Marques, now it is time that I returne againe vnto my dolorous Abbey, which was wont to be the floure of beautie of all that Countrey and now it is the prison of all unhappinesse and misfortune, and hee that hath caused all this, I pray God he may die an euil death, who is Sir Isembarte the false Nephewe to the Duke of Wigor, for by his meanes a wicked inchaunter hath taken away cleane the light of heauen from our Abbey, so that wee liue euer in darknesse, and also he hath taken awaye all our rentes and landes wherewith we are thereby almost famished for hunger, and also he hath by treason slaine my brother the noble Lord of Argenton, and hath disherited my nece his daughter, and hath promised her to a lewd boye who is his Barber, and at this next Pawdeleintide he purposeth that they shall be married together, which will be great pittie, that euer so good and beautifull a Ladie as she is, should be caste away vpon so vile a person, for if she were not my nece, I would saye she were worthe to haue a right good prince, wherfore I complaine mee to God and to all courteous knightes, and specially Sir I humbly require you to helpe

me

me to take vengeance of him, and such as take his parte:  
By the faith that I owe unto the Duke of Britaine saide  
Arthur, I will be there at this next Walbintide, and then  
I shall helpe to aide the Damsell to the best of my power.  
Sir saide Master Stephen, then shall you doe well for you  
speake as a Gentleman should saye. Then saide Bisebar,  
sweete sir let us two goe together to the Courte, and there  
you shall see the noble King of Sorolois and all his Baro-  
nie, the which is right great and noble: and also you shall  
see my Ladie Florence, who will retaine you for one of hir  
knights, and you shall have them in your companie an hun-  
dred knights of great valure, whercof I am the simplest  
and most insufficient of all, and so by you shall the compa-  
nie be honored, and the renown of them doubled throug-  
out the world: and I promise you aboue all other, to keepe  
you true and faithfull companie. And when Arthur hearde  
him say all this, he smiled a little, and said: Were friends  
Bisebar I thanke you heartely for your noble profer, and  
certainly my poore bodie is, and shall be readie to do my La-  
die Florence seruice, for wher so euer I become hir knight  
will I be: but at this time to the Court may I not goe, for  
first I must finish an enterpryse that I haue taken on me if  
God will giue me y grace to accomplish it: and then Joffe-  
ran demaunded of him what enterpryse it was, verely said  
Arthur it is to atchieue the aduentures of the tower tene-  
brous. When Bisebar heard that, he said: for Gods sake  
let that enterpryse alone, for certainly all the power of my  
Lord the King of Sorolois hath, is not sufficient to attain  
to that aduenture, therefore in my minde it were a great  
folly for you to take such a thing in hande, as no man can  
atcheue.

Then master Stephen said, Sir Bisebar, let him alone  
for he hath a good heart, though it bee a great enterpryse,  
yet I trust God shall helpe him, for sith he hath taken it in  
hand, I am sure there is none that can let him of his mind,  
spell saide Bisebar, since he will not be turned, I will goe  
with him, and so will I also said Jofferan.

Well

Well sir said Arthur I thanke you, but surely I will haue  
none with me, but onely Bawdwin my squire. In y name  
of God saide the master to let it be, and sir Bisebar and I  
will goe together to the Court, and you sir Marques, Joffe-  
ran, Gouvernar and Jaket shall abide here still, and keepe  
this Castle, till you haue other newes. You saide well saide  
Arthur, and therewith they went altogether to the Pal-  
laise to dinner, and were richlye serued, and all that daye  
they made great ioy, and at night went to their restes, and  
the next morning betimes they arose and hearde seruice,  
which ended, Arthur mounted on his horse, and so did the  
Abbot and master Steuen and Bisebar, and so toke their  
leau of Gouvernar and the rell, and issued out of the castle,  
riding together the space of foure leagues, and at last they  
came to an entring into forrest, where was a forked waye,  
and there the master and Bisebar toke their leau, & rode  
forth on the right hande, which was the nexte waye to the  
Citie of Cornite, where King Emendus was the same sea-  
son, and the Abbot went the next way to his dolorous Ab-  
bey.

When Arthur tooke his waye on the leftte hande, and  
rode forth all the day, till it was nere night, and so arrived  
at a gentle Squires place, called the manuo: of the plash-  
us, which Squire doubted himselfe greatly, for he had such  
enimies that had mortallye defied him, therefore he sayde to  
Arthur, sir you be hether right heartely welcome, but I be-  
seach you to departe hence speedely for the saving of your  
selfe, for I canne not warrannt you in my house for mine  
enimies are right mightie, and I looke each houre when  
they will assaile me. When said Arthur, care you not for  
that, but and it may please you, I praye you let me haue  
lodging here with you this night, and I assure you if they  
come while I am here, I trust I shall make a good peace  
betwene you and them, either with faire meanes or other-  
wise. Sir saide the Squire, I am content, and god giue you  
grace to doe that you haue sayd.

P.ii.

How

How Arthur slew and discomfited xv. Knights, right mightie and puissant, who were come to assaile his hoast, which was called the Squire of the Plashes.  
Chapter. 56,

**T**hus was Arthur receiued of the Squire, who made him right good chere to his power: and the same time the Squires enemies had there a spie, who returned and shewed to them howe that there was come to the Squires house a strange knight, by seeming right mightie & puissant, and how that he had promised the Squire to helpe him, if he had any neede that night. When they all answered and sayde, that they would not let their enterprise. For one knight, for they were to the number of fiftene, and when it was night, they all leapt on horsebacke and came to the Squires house armed, and right rudely assailed the same, and the Squire and such seruants as he had, defended themselves as well as they could, with crosse-boles, and such other weapons as they hadde within. And when Arthur knew this, he armed him and took his white shield which did cast a great clearenesse by night, and tooke his good sword Clarence in his hand, and when hee was thus armed, he looked out at a window, and demanded of them without what they sought there, and what they would, and they answered how that they sought his head. My head sayd Arthur loe take it here, for heere you may see it, but I will bring it out shortly vnto you. When he desired them within to leaue their shooting and set open the gate, and to let downe the bridge, and according to his desire it was done, and Arthur issued out alone, and ranne at them, and they all at once ranne at him, and Arthur drew out Clarence his good sword, which for the goodnesse was also called Tranch fer, that is to saye, cutter of yron, and strake the first so therewith, that hee clane his heade to the eye, and hee made the heade flye from the seconde, and from the third

this he strake the arme and shoulder cleane from his bodie, and then the remnaunt layd all at once on him, but all they did nothing hurt him. When Arthur dashed forth with his horse, and encountred one of them so, that hee ouerthrew both horse and man into a great ditch, the which was about the place, and there he was drowned. And when a mightie knight who was master of them all and he that first began this warre, saw his people so hardly dealt withal with one knight, hee was right sorrowfull, and therewith dashed at Arthur, and gaue him a great stroke on the shield with a mace of yron full of great prickes of Steele, which he layd on with both his hands, the which stroke rebounded again vntwarde, for it coulde not empaire his shield any thing, and Arthur liste by his sword and strake him on the head, and the stroke was heard a greate waye off, but the stroke didde glide downe to his lefte arme, so that the arme and shoulder and all flew cleane into the fiede, and the sword dashed into the arson of his saddle, and claued it cleane asunder, and did cut asunder the crupper of his horse, and therewith horse and knight and all fel down to the ground, then Arthur laide on among the other both on the left side and on the right side, and made heades, armes, hands, legs, and sette flie clean into the fiede, then the remnaunt began to flye, but it was too late, for there was none but either, he had lost an arme or a leg, and when the squire vnderstood that his guest was thus issued out all alone and fighting with his enemies, hee armed himselfe and ranne out into the field, but there he found nothing to doe, for by that time Arthur as then had made an ende of them all, & was returning homewarde. When the Squire sawe that Arthur had overcome all his enemies, hee thought verelye that hee was of high and noble prowesse, and thanked him much, saying.

Sir you tolde mee troth, when as you sayde that you would make peace betwene mine aduersaries and mee, for now I am among them, and yet they say nothing to mee, and so Arthur and the Squire his hoast entered into

the place, and closed the gates fast after them, and went  
by the bydge, & went to their rests, and in the morning the  
Squire went out to see which of his enemies were slaine, &  
among y other he found his chiefe enimie slaine, wherof he  
had great ioy, and offered himselfe to become Arthurs man  
and would haue gone with him, yet Arthur would not suf-  
fer him, but departed from the squire, and anon y wordes  
were spread abroad in all the countrey, how that a knight  
with a white shield had slaine and overcome xv. knightes,  
the which wordes came to the hearing of master Steuen &  
Briebar. Merely said master Steuen, that same is Arthur  
who hath right great valour in him. Truly saide Briebar  
it is he, I see well that he is a right valiant knight, for hee  
is the best knight in all the world. Thus Arthur rode forth  
till it was thre of the clocke, and there he found betwene  
two mountaines a great villayne huge and mightie, blacke  
and hairie out of all measure, and he bare on his shoulder a  
crooked leauer. And when he saw Arthur he ranne to him,  
and tooke his horse by the bydle rayne, and demaunded of  
him, saying thus: Faire sir, what manner of man be you?  
Friend said Arthur, I am a knight straunger. Pea sir sayd  
the villaine bee you a knight, and what seeke you here in  
these pastures that I haue in my keeping? Good fellow said  
Arthur, I goe vppon mine aduentures, whether God will  
bzing me. Why sir said the villaine, goe you then to seeke  
aduentures, if you be so well hearted that you dare follow  
after me, I shall bzing you vnto a strange aduenture, but  
I thinke you dare not follow me, for I beleue you are one  
of those knightes, that will menace and threaten when  
you stand by the chimney warming of you after supper, &  
in the morning all is forgotten. When that Bawdewin  
heard the villaine say so to his master, hee began to laugh  
at him, and said, well good fellow, lead him whether soeuer  
thou wilt, and I warrant him he will followe thee. Sir  
said the villaine, I speake not to you, as for you I see well  
inough you be not of that force and might, that you canne

drawe

drawe the wine and drinke it, and pay not for your shot or  
you goe, I speake to your master, therefore lette him an-  
swere me, if he dare. Friend saide Arthur, as for Bawde-  
win my Squire he is but a foole, take no heede what soeuer  
he saith, but hardly bzing me whether you will, and I shall  
followe you, as long as my life will last. Pea but sir sayde  
the villaine, if you follow me, when it cometh to the pinch  
then I feare me least you will leaue me and runne awaye  
like a coward. Pay said Arthur I will not forsake you as  
long as I may. Well saide the villaine, then come on your  
waye, and I promise you if there were ten such as you be,  
I shall bzing you thether whereas none of you all shall es-  
cape from death, likewise as I haue caused manie a one to  
do. Then the villaine went forth & Arthur followed him,  
and at the last they entered into a great balleye betwene  
two mountaines, where they found a little lodge whereas  
meate and drinke was solde to traualing men. When the  
villaine said to Arthur, sir knight, it is now god time that  
you gine your horse some repast, for after this, you shall  
finde no moe houses till it bee night, at which time I shall  
bzing you vnto such a lodging as shall not be good for you,  
for there you shall lose your life. When Arthur alighted &  
gaue his horse meate, and did eate and drinke himselfe, and  
the villaine sayd, eate and drinke now with ioye, for I as-  
sure you this shall be the last that euer you shall take.  
When Bawdewin hearde that this villaine alwayes me-  
naced his master with such wordes, hee was greatlye grie-  
ued, and said.

Thou foule choyle, holde thy tongue from threatening  
thus of my master, what thinkest thou to make him aba-  
shed with thy wordes, naye I warrant thee, hee taketh  
little heede thereto, for doe the worst thou canst, he desieth  
thy mallice. When the villaine beganne to rowle his eyen,  
and to bende his browes, and tooke his leauer in both his  
handes, and woulde haue stricken Bawdewin, but Ar-  
thur helde him and said.

P.iii.

Friend

Friend, take no hede what my squire saith, for I tell you hee is but a foole, therefore speake to mee whatsoeuer you will and let him alone. And when the good wife of þe lodge heard him speak so gently to the villaine, and was so loath to displease him, and saw that he was so goodly a creature, she loved him in her heart and praised him much, and bewaunded of him whether he went, Arthur answered and said I follow this good fellow: certainly sir saide the good wife he is no good fellowe, but the most foulest and falsest traitour liuing, therefore gentle sir knight, I haue greates pitie of you, and you are vtterly lost if you goe with him anie further, for this foule villain doth nothing but watch such knights as passe thzough this countrie, to the intent to bring them where he is in purpose to bring you, for fro thence there was neuer any that returned againe without death, therefore gentle knight returne againe, for it were great losse that such a knight as you be should bee thus destroyed. When Baldwin said, sir how sale you your hart, will you returne backe againe, or els will you go south. Friend said Arthur, how should euer any Ladie or damsell employ their loue on me, if it should bee sayde that I haue fled away for the menacing of a foule churlish villaine, as God helpe me, I had rather suffer death. Sir sayd Baldwin, then you thinke on loue I see well, but and it touched me as it doth you, I woulde thinke on no Ladie nor loue in this point, for I woulde loue my owne life better then to trust on their praise or reward. And with these wordes the villaine came to them and said, what noyse is this of cowardise that I heare, sir knight, I see well your heart sayleth you, for you are about to make couenant to retourne againe, therefore I thinke well you will leaue mee when neede is. Friend said Arthur truly I will not forsake you, seeing I haue promised you the contrarie. Well sayde the villaine then arme you shortly, and let vs goe from hence for your last dayes of lyfe shalbe to an ende.

How

Now the great vilaine brought Arthur where he fought with a great and terrible Lion, but finally Arthur slew him, and how after he fought with a greatesse Gyantesse and an horrible Gyant, & by his prowess conquered them both, and after that fought with a great Griffon, and this was the beginning of the aduentures of the Towre Tenebrous, wherein you shall heare many terrible and meruailous things, the which were atchieued by the onelie prowess of the valiaunt Arthur. Chap. 57.



When Arthur had well refreshed himselfe, he armed him and mounted on his horse, & followed the said villaine, till at the last they came into a great valley darke and deepe. When saide the villaine to Arthur, sir knight, now ride on before and you dare, & I will follow you. So then Arthur rode before, and as they rode on their right hand there was hewers of woode, and as soone as they saw Arthur and the villaine, they knew well that he was brought thether by the foule churle, then they cried aloude & said: A gentle knight for Gods sake returne againe, for and you goe anie farther you are but dead. A thou foule villain, we praise to God that thou maist die an euill death, for many a noble man hast thou caused to die. And when Baldwin heard these wordes he said to his master: Lo sir you may remember your loue, you may heare what these people saith, certainly I would not thinke on the fairest creature of all the worlde in this point, and when Arthur hearde Baldwin saie so, hee laughed at him, saying: Friend, by the faith that I owe vnto my Lord and Father, I cannot tell whether I goe, nor what perill there is therein, but what perill so euer I shall finde, I would it were double as much, on the condition that I were in certaintie that shee that I saue neuer loved me so well as I loue her.

And

And

And when the foule villaine heard him saie so, in his heart he praised him much, and knew well thereby that he had a valiant hart, & thus they robe forth so long, till at y last the foule churle cried out and said: Sir Knight, now it will appere what you can doe, for now you shall haue need to defend your selfe. And with that worde Arthur looked on his left hande, and sawe where there was comming to himward a great and mightie Lyon. When Arthur feared his horse least that the Lyon should haue slaine him, therfore he lighted downe to the ground and deliuered his horse vnto Balwdewin, and dressed him towarde the Lion, and when the Lyon perceiued him, he leapt and strake at him with his pawes, thinking to confound him, but Arthur put his shield befoze him and the Lyons stroke dast thereon so soze, that Arthur was astonied with the stroke. When Arthur strake at him with Clarence his good sword as passed by him and stroke off his taile, and when the Lion felt himselfe so hurt, he raised with all his power his bodie against Arthur, and with his sharpe teeth he toke Arthur by the helme and they entered into the buckles of his harneis, but as God would they touched not his flesh, and with his fote hee strake Arthur such a stroke vpon the shield, that and it had not bene the better it had bene clonen to peeces, and with his other fote he tooke Arthur by the right shoulder, but Arthur got fro him, or else he had ben to me asunder, for in the stepping awaie he lost a quarter of his harneis, and therewith Arthur lift by his sword and dast it to the crosse in at the throte of the Lyon, and therewith the Lyon did cast out a great crie and hideous, and so fell downe to the ground dead, and therewith incontinentlie he espied whereas there was comming towarde him a great and mightie Gyauntesse, with a greate fauchon in her hand, which was so well steeled, that there was nothing that it was broken against but it would cutte a sunder, and therewith shee came vnto Arthur, and strake at him right eagerlie, and when Arthur sawe the stroke comming on him, he quicklie cast his shield befoze

befoze him, and this Gyauntesse was terrible angrie for the death of her Lyon, wherefore shee gaue Arthur such a stroke vpon the shoulder, that hee was soze astonied therewith, but as God would the fauchon brake a sunder in two peeces, and his shield was therewith nothing empyred: and when the Gyauntesse sawe that her fauchon was broken, shee list a great speare that was standing by her, and thought to haue striken Arthur therewith vpon the head, but Arthur kept vnder the stroke and closed with her, and then shee tooke Arthur by the head, and pulled off his helme so rudely, that shee burst a sunder all the buckles where with all it was tyed, and with the pull that shee made she kept backward with the helme, and then Arthur with his sword strake her throughtout the belly, and therewith shee fell backwardes, for she was so hasty to reuenge her Lion, that shee came to Arthur all vnarmed, wherein she was but a foole, for a man may soone be too hasty to come to his enimie, and when shee fell shee gaue such a crie, that all the valley rang of the noise, so that a great gyaunt who was her make heard it well, and then he ranne to a great leauer and tooke it in his hand and came running so rudely as though a great multitude of men had come together, he made so great a noise, and by that time Arthur had striken off the head of the Gyauntesse, and rolled it in the midst of the waie, and did put againe his helme vpon his head, and when the Gyaunt sawe that his wife was dead and his Lion also, he fared like a fiend of hel and tooke his leauer and dast at Arthur, thinking to haue striken him downe to the ground, but Arthur kept a side lightlie, and the stroke light on a greate rocke so rudely, that his hands tingled so soze therewith, that he could not otherwise choose, but let the leauer fall from him to the ground, and then hee stouped downe for to haue taken it vp againe, and while that he was stouping downe Arthur tooke Clarence his good sword and gaue vnto him such a stroke, that one of his boistrous armes flew cleane into the fildoe. When the Gyaunt leapt forth and tooke

Arthur

Arthur in his other arme, and if that his white shield hadde not bene, he had bene frusted a sunder, for hee gaue Arthur a great stroke with the stub of his hurt arme: and then Arthur aduised him well, and vnder his arme he dashed Clarence his good sword by to the crosse, and so hee fell downe dead. Then ther came a great Griffon and clasped Arthurs horse all about the bodie, and thought to haue bozne him a waie, and when Arthur sawe his horse hurt, in his heart he was right sorrowfull, and stroke at the Griffon with his sword, and stroke a sunder both his legges, and therewith the Griffon flew awaie with great paine, and both his legs remained still vpon the horse, and the horse bled so fast, that he fell downe dead in the place, wherewith Arthur was sore displeased. Then the villaine came to him, and said in this manner of wise: Sir Knight, in a thing the which cannot be remedied, must needs be suffered in the best wise that a man may, your horse is slaine, take you no care for him, for there be horses inough, you haue slaine the Gyant and the Gyantesse, and also their Lion, and the Griffon, but for all that I promise you, that your end draweth fast onward, & as for this night let vs goe take our rest in the Gyantes house heere by, the which is a strong place, and there wee shall finde great plentie of wines and meats, and there you shall see many faire and bright harnaises, and also there you shall see heads, armes, legges, and fete of much people, the which the Gyant hath taken and brought to that place alive, for the Gyantesse would neuer by her will eat anie other meate but mans flesh, and so they entered into the place, and the same daie the Gyant had taken a knight and brought him dead into the place vpon his owne horse, and as then the horse was yet alive, & when the villaine sawe the horse, he tooke him by the bydle, and brought him to Arthur and said: Sir Knight, your owne horse is dead, therefore I giue you this horse: I thanke you heartellie good fellowe said Arthur. When Baldeuyn did shut fast the gate, and there they did rest them all that night, and on the next morning betimes Arthur rose and armed him, and moun-

ted on his horse that the villaine had ginen him. When the villaine came forth and said, sir knight follow me for now I will goe forth. Goe on before said Arthur, and so he rode after him all the daie till it was nere night, and then at the last they came to a mightie strong tower which pertained to a knight named sir Roger the Scot. Then the villaine said to Arthur, sir knight it is nowe good time to lodge vs here in this castle all this night, therefore let vs enter into this place, but one thing I assure you, the knight that oweth this place is the most shamefull traitour that nowe is liuing, for there is none that entereth into this place, but shamefullie he murdereth the while they be in their beds, he is also cousin germaine to the duke of Wygo, and nephew to sir Firmont, who was of late slaine at the Castle of the Roch by a knight straunger, therefore now let me see what you will doe, whether you will go lodge in this place or no. Well saide Arthur, I see well if I lie without, I shall be the worse lodged, and sith this knight is of that linage that you speake of, he is my mostail enimie, howbeit as yet I cannot complain of him, for he did me neuer anie trespass, therefore I will goe thither to take my lodging: and when the villain heard him saie so, he knew wel how that he was of great courage, and loued him therefore much in his hart, howbeit he said vnto him, sir in Gods name so bee it, let vs goe thither, and if anie ill come to you thereby, I am not to blame, for I haue giuen you warning thereof. Then they entered into the Court of that place, and as soone as sir Roger sawe Arthur he knew him right well, and was certaine how that it was he that had done so much prowesse at the Castle of the Roch, and had slaine sir Firmont, and wounded sir Isembart his cousin, and then his heart began to rise for anger, notwithstanding he made to them greete cheere outwardly, and kissed Arthur, saying: Sir you be heartely welcome into my house, as God helpe me I haue more ioy of your comming then of anie other mannes liuing, but to himselve inwardlie he saide, yet ere it bee midnight I will well haue that head of yours cleane from your shoulders. When

When the villaine came vnto Arthur and tried as howe as he could, God keepe the Word of this place, according to his heartes desire, and these wordes he saide thus: When Arthur said, if his heart be good, well haue we, and if it be otherwise then good God amend it: When Arthur was brought vp into his chamber and ther he did vnderme him, and in the meane tyme Sir Roger came to his Squier, and demaunded how and in what manner hee might best slaye Arthur, for said he, if we make any assault on him, he will slay vs both, for ther is none like him in all þe world, for he did meruailous deedes of armes at the Castle of the Roch. Sir said his Squier, I know certainly that we cannot endure against him: but I shall tell you what we will do, we shall make his bedde this night about in your Towre, and set it ouer the trappe doore of the dungeon, and we will take alwaie all the wordes in the bottome of the bed, and in steepe of the wordes set smal stauies to sustaine vp the clothes, and so when he shall lie downe in the bed, he and the clothes and all shall tumble downe into the dungeon, and then we shall soone cast downe his Squier after him, and slay this foule villaine, and when they be in the pit we will take speares and so slay them, or else let vs heat three or foure cauldrons with hotte scalding water, and cast it downe vppon theyr heads, and so shall we slay them. When Sir Roger heard his Squier saie so, he was well content with him, and said this matter is right well deuised, for as you haue sayde it shall be done, therewith the villaine issued out of the chamber from Arthur with his greate Leauer on his necke, and as soone as hee saw Sir Roger counsailling with his Squier, and other standing together whispering in corners, hee beganne to mistrust them, and sayd, what manner of people bee you, for what matter bee yee thus counsailling together, is it for some marriage, beware that there bee no treason among you, for if there be I shall dyne you downe with my Leauer.

Then Arthur issued out of the chamber, and when Sir Roger sawe him hee tooke him by the hande and sayde:

Sir

Sir it is time that wee wash our handes, for our Supper is ready: As it pleaseth you sayde Arthur, then they washed and sat them downe at the Table, and were ryght well serued, and the villaine was sette downe at another Table behinde Arthur, and they gaue him part of all their meates and drinke that they had, and hee did eate and drinke exceeding much, for they coude not satisfie his appetite. And after Supper Watdewin Arthurs Squier tooke heede to his hoxses, and Arthurs bedde was made in the same place where it was deuised before, and the villaine laide him downe on foure Cushions by the fire in the hall, as hee that had well eate and drinke, and so fell fast on slepe, and snorted right sore, wherefore Sir Roger that was Knight of that place would not so suffer him, but caused him to be couered with a greene Couerlet, and then let him lie: and when it was time for him to goe to bedde, the torches were lighted vp, and the Knight conueyed Arthur to his chamber, and at his taking leaue of Arthur, he offered with his mouth himselfe and all his householde to be at his commaundement, but in his heart inwardlie hee thought to be redie to cause him to lose his life. And when he was departed Arthur went to his bedde, and as he laide him downe, he and the bedde and all fell into the great pit, and the Knight and his sernautes were ready watching at the doore, and when they heard the noise, they entered into the Chamber, and tooke Watdewin and cast him downe to his master, and Arthur receiued him in his armes, because he should not be hurt in the falling downe. When there arose a greate crie and noise throughout all the place, and some bare speares and Barres of yron with all speed possible to cast downe at Arthur, to the intent to slay him in the pit, and euer as they crooke Arthur watched, and did auoide them as diligently as hee might, and thus they continued so long, till at the last by reason of the great noise the villaine awaked and rose out of his slepe.

And

And when hee heard this rumoz hee wist well that Arthur was betraied. When he mounted vp into the chamber with his great leauer in his hand, and he saue that they were about to enforce themselves to slaine Arthur. When he took his leauer and strake so the knight sir Roger in the necke, that he caused his tongue to hang out of his mouth nighs halfe a foote, and therewith he fell downe into the pit to Arthur, and the villaine said to Arthur, sir knight, gnawe wel on that mozell you shall haue moze anone. When he list vp his leauer againe, & strake sir Rogers Squier such a stroke on the head, that his head was diuened in peces to his shoulders, and he fell downe also into the pit after his master. When the villaine said to Baldeuwin, good Squier cut his throate and make him sure: In the name of God said Arthur it shall not neede, for hee hath inough already. Then the villaine dressed him at the redmaunt that lighted Torchies in their hands to giue light, and dashed them down one after another, and some fled awaie and he followed after, and slew them all. When he entered into the kitchen, & there he found the Cooke boiling of a great caudron full of water, the which should haue bene cast downe to Arthur, and he tooke the Cooke in his armes, and cast him into the caudron all boiling, and held him downe with his leauer, saying, thou shalt seeth without salt till thou be inough, and if they seld be hard sodden, I will boile thee on the coales, then he ran to a ladder and bare it to Arthur into the pit, and Arthur and Baldeuwin issued out, and as soone as Arthur was without, he ranne to his sword and demanded if there were anie moze to doe in that place: As God helpe him sir said the villaine I thinke not. When they lighted vp Torchies and descended downe, and founde an olue house full of dead mens bones, such as the traitours of that place had slaine. In the name of God said Arthur to the villaine, you haue holpen me now like a friend: for all your vncertainous words before. Well said the villaine, I will that if you can scape to morrow from the aduenture whether as I shall bring you, which I thinke you cannot doe, then you shall

then you shall performe a gift for me, which I will request of you. Merely said Arthur, if a knight may doe it without reproach, I shall be glad to accomplish it: well saide the villaine, and thereto I accoord. When seeking all about the Castle, they could finde none of might to hurt them, and so for that night they departed to their rests untill the next morning.

How Arthur atchieued the perillous aduentures of the Tower tenebrous, whereby all the inchaunments, which was cause of all that great darkenes ceased. Cap. 58.

**T**he next morning betimes Arthur arose and armed him selfe, and mounted on his horse, and took his way euer following of the villaine, and he rode sooth till it was about thre of the clocke, and then entred into a great Talley, and euer they rode lower and lower: It was then a faire day and the Sunne shined cleere, but by that time they had ridden two leagues and a halfe, they were in much darknesse, so that they had cleane lost the sight both of the Sunne and also of the day, for it was there as darke, as if it had bene about midnight. When the villaine said to Arthur, sir knight can you tell from whence all this darknesse cometh, if you can vnderstande it and make it cleere, then shall you get thereby perpetuall honour: and knowe you for a certaintie, that as yet there was neuer anie that entered anie farther, that returned againe, therefore if your heart faile you enter no farther, for if you doe, you shall die as other haue done before you. Friend said Arthur, how is it that all this darknesse is here in this place: I will tell you no moze said the villaine, but I warne you to be wise, for it standeth you in hand.

And therewith Arthur departed from them and entered into the darknesse, and the villaine and Baldeuwin abode still at the beginning of the darknesse, and so they lost the sight of Arthur, but they might see the shining of his

shield as farre off as one might throwe an arrowe. Thus he rode forth the space of halfe a league, and at the last hee found a river great and deepe, and as black as pitch, and the bankes were so high, that the water might scarce be seene running underneath, and it was so full of Serpents, that none could enter among them without he were slaine, and about his head flew monstrous birdes and diuers Griffons, who were able to beare away an armed knight horse and all, and were in as great a multitude as though they had ben starlings. And Arthur did couer his head with his shield, and the Griffons dashed thereat with their Talents, and annoyed both Arthur and his horse right sore, & euer Arthur flourished about him with his good sword Clarence, and whatsoeuer he touched did him no more hurt. Also there were flies that were as great as nuts, and as blacke as pitch, and they stang both him and his horse full sore, so that the blood issued out after; but and it had not bene for the cleerenesse of his shield, he had bene slaine there and he had a thousand liues, but by y bright shining of the same he might well see round about him, and perceiue wel when any of these things came to him, whereby hee made as good defence as was for him possible, and thus hee rode a long time by the river side, and at the last hee founde a little straight waye which hee must needs passe without hee would haue returned againe, and at the last Arthur went into the straight waye, and anon the vermine that was there ranne to his horse, so that shortly hee was as full of them as though they had bene flies, & they sucked so much blood from the horse, that he began to wane very feeble, & when Arthur saw that his horse would faile him, he hastened him as fast as he might to get out of that straight waye, & with much paine hee gate his horse out thereof but incontinently the horse fel down dead. When Arthur set his feete to the earth as well as hee might, and then there came a knight to him as he was a waye, and hit him on his shield the which he held not fast in his hande, therefore the stroke

did gleitt, and the speare held & brake not, and as the knight passed forth, Arthur tooke him by the raine of the bytles & caught him by the arme and pulled him so rudely that hee made him auoide his horse, and so hee fell downe into the water, and there was drowned and detoured with the vermine that were therein, then Arthur leapt on the same knightes horse & tooke his speare. When another knight cried and sayde, Sir knight beware of me, then Arthur turned to him and encountered him, and the knight brake his speare, but Arthur strake him so rudely, that the speare went cleane through his bodie, and hee fell downe dead: then there rained at him ten other knightes all at once, & they strake him on all sides with great & mightie strokes, but hee tooke his good sword and strake one of them so rudely that he clame him cleane to the shoulders, and then another hee clame from the shoulders downe to the backe bone, and dealt among them such strokes, that hee confounded all that he attained vnto, and by that time he had great neede of such hearbes as master gaue him, & also his white shield and good sword did him there good seruice, for such knightes as he had slaine were chosen men and right puissant, but Arthurs chiuakrie surmounted all other, for there hee did so much with his hands, that hee slew all that euer were against him. When hee spurred forth with his horse he knew not whether, till at the last hee heard the grinding together of two milstones one vpon another as they doe in a mill, whereby all the earth about Arthur did shake, and the cause why these stones went thus about, was for that there stode by them a satyr of byasse, wherein here was an Image sitting vpon a barre of yron made by Inchauntment, who blew from him so greate a winde, that those stones turned thereby so swiftlie, that no creature could passe by them without death.

When Arthur approached to these milstones, but hee felt so terrible a winde, that he was faine to alight downe of his horse, and went on foote as well as hee might,

but

but he saw well that he could not come nere those Stones, without he should die: therefore he went round about the, to see what wayes he might come to them, and at last hee found a little bridge, which was so narrow that one man could not passe by another, and under this bridge ther was so great a pit that the bottome thereof could not be perceiued, and there were also twelue knights that kepte this bridge, fire at the one ende and fire at the other, all armed with crosse-bowes hatchets and maces of stele in their handes. And when the first fire knights saw Arthur, they ranne at him all at once, and gaue him manie great strokes on his shield, but they could not empaire it, then hee tooke his good sword, and strake so the first that he claue his head asunder, and from the second he strake his arme clean from his shoulder, and from the third he bereft his head: & when the other thre saw how their fellows were slaine, & howe that nothing could endure against him they fled towarde the bridge, but Arthur ouer-tooke so the hindermost, that his braine flew cleane into the field, and the second so; he leapt into the pit, and there brake his necke, and the thirde he ouer-tooke on the bridge, and tooke him in his armes & did cast him over the bridge downe into the pit, and ther he dyed miserably. Therewith he hasted him over the bridge, and then the other fire ranne all at once at him, & thought to haue dashed him downe into the pit, but Arthur like a valiant knight leapt in among them and laid on with his sword round about him, in such wise that within a shorte space he departed life and death asunder of fve of them, & then the first kneeled downe before Arthur, and besought him of mercie, and prayed him for Gods sake that he wold not slay him: Take no feare sayde Arthur, for thy life is saued, so that thou wilt tell mee, from whence this greate winde commeth.

Sir saide he it commeth out of yonder great vessell of brasse, that you maye see, for therein is an Image made all of leather, sitting on a great barre of yron made by the craft of inchauntment, but who so coulde ouer-tourne this

this Image; the winde should then cease. Well said Arthur abide me here still and I will see what I can do.

How Arthur beate downe the great Image sitting in the vessell of brasse, and thereby the winde was ceased. Cap. 59.

Then Arthur went forth, and thought to haue gone boldly to this vessell of brasse, but the winde was so bigge, that he was faine to lye on the earth all along, and so to creepe on handes and fate till he came to the vessell, & drew after him his shield, his sword, and a long speare, and dashed therewith the Image so rudely, and with so manie strokes that at the last this foule Image fell by side downe in the vessell, and incontinently the inchauntment ceased and the Stones stode still, for then there was no manner of winde. When Arthur, stode vp on his feete, and came againe to the knight, and demaunded of him what tower it was that he saw stand before him in the dark, for all this season he had no light but by the reason of the shining of his shield. When the knight answered and said, sir, the Duke of B. goz hath a newew who is named sir Alembart, he is lord of this place, and he hath such enuie to all people, that hee caused this tower to be made by a subtile inchaunter, and all this great darkenesse which you haue ben in, the which endureth fve leagues in circuit, in the which compasse, ther was no land tilled nor sowed the space of fve yeares past, and so all such people as were wont to dwell therein, are fled away or famished for hunger, and this inchaunter by his craft also made this riuer y you haue passed, the which neuer man did before this time without death: for ever this darknesse hath continually endured, sauing one daye in the yeare, and that is on few yeres day, the which day, the fire knights that you haue slaine, that were of the best which coulde be found in all this lande, did prouide for vs the sayde daye for all thinges as was needefull for vs to haue, and I and all my compagne who were to the num-

ber of xii. persons, kept alway this passage betwene these millstones, the which turned euer without rest, sauing on Saint Martins day, and then we might passe out to the aforesaid five knights, and fetch in all such thinges as was provided for vs all the whole yeare, and so this tower was besetted round about, what with knightes, and with these millstones, and with winde, and with darkenesse, so that it were in a manner impossible to enter into this Tower without death. Well saide Arthur thewe vnto me what is the cause, and from whence cometh al this darknesse, Syr said hee it cometh out of a great pit that is in this Tower, and there bee great Griffons that descendeth doونه into this pit, and in the bottome thereof there is a great hideous fire, made so by craft y no man can tell how, out of the which there riseth so blacke and thicke a fume & smoke by certaine doores and windowes, wherby the light of the Sunne and of the bright Moone is so quenched, that it is euer darke, which darknesse containeth the circuit of v. leagues compasse as I haue shewed you befoze, wherefoze all this countrey is chaunged and destroyed, and all the people fledde out thereof.

And why said Arthur did he all this crueltie? Certainly said the knight, I shall shewe you: It is of a troth that hereby there is an Abbey of white Monkes, who were wont to be reputed right noble and of great possessions, & most commonly kings and princes when they pass by that place, woulde there rest and harbour them, and there they shoulde be well serued, and it was named the Abbey of the Grace dien, and the Abbot is a right wise man and a noble, for he is brother vnto y noble Lord of Argenton, who was falsly slaine by the treason of this Dukes neww, who soztuned to come to the said Abbey vpon an Easter day in the forenoon, at the same season when the Abbot and all his whole Couent were in solempne procession, and because that the Couent did not at his first coming leaue the seruice of God that they wer in, to haue layed the tables, and to

to haue brought him meate and drinke to haue filled his paunch, therefore he was so displeased, that incontinentlye he leapt on his horse, and was departing and his false Inchaunter with him. And when y Abbot knew that, as soone as hee might, he came to him and desired him to farrie, but in no wise he could make him to chaunge his purpose: but in the most shamefull wise that he could he rebuked them, and called them churles, promising to doe them as greate displeasure as shoulde lye in his power to doe: and so hee hath done as you maye see, for hee hath caused them euer since to liue in greate darkenesse, and also hee hath taken from them all their rents and possessions which they held vnder him or in his rule in al the whole land of Argenton, for in all that circuite of five leagues compasse, the labourers could not labour for their liuing for y lacke they had of light, wherefoze manie of them be famished for hunger, and to saie the truth, in this said Abbey the seruice of God hath not bene ministred this five yeares. Well sayde Arthur, that is great damage, but I praye you tel me how this darknesse may be vndone: Sir said the knight, the inchaunter when he had made this fire was right sore displeased, because that there sprang out of the earth even by this terrible fire a faire Fountaine, whereby he right well knew that this fire shoulde be quenched, if anie knight might attaine to come thereto, and to cast the water thereof into the fire, and then all the darkenesse shoulde cease for euer after.

How Arthur entered into the tower Tenebrous, and how hee there quenched the fire, whereby all the terrible Inchauntments ceased.

Chapter, 60.



After this Arthur saide, friends bring mee to this fozesaid Tower, and hee presently went on befoze, and Arthur folloved after him, and

and so went fast by the great windowes & doores of the tower, the which were of xvi. speares length and square, out of the which there issued so greate aboundaunce of fume, that his bright shield lost cleane his shining, wherefore hee was soze troubled, for then he could see nothing: howbeit they did so much by falling, that at the last they came in to the tower, and there they found the walles pight full of sharpe barres of yron, set as thicke as the picks of an byrds sharpe of the length of halfe a speare, to the intent that no creature shuld approach nere to the walls, so ther was no entrie but at a little wicket, and with much paine the knight did open it, and when that it was opened, there issued out so great abundaunce of smoake, that the darknesse thereby was doubled throughout all the Countrey, so that neither candle nor torch could burne in anie place, neuerthelesse Arthur entred in at the wicket, and lette the knight without, yet the smoke and heate was right greuous to him, soz if there had not bene moze valure in him than in anie other, he had bene there cleane overcome, and alwayes he went downwarde on the staires and sawe nothing, but he felt so many great strokes, that oftentimes he was therby constrained to kneele on his knees, but he could not tell from whence they came, or who did giue them unto him, and euer he flourished about with his sword, but it auailed him nothing, soz he strake he knew not whereat, & finally, he was faine to couer his head with his shielde, soz els he had bene broken to peces, though hee hadde bene of yron, and alwaies thus hee went euer downwarde on the staires, till at last hee came to the bottome, and there hee founde a faire great balwe, where he felte so great a heate that he sweat exceedingly, and thereby hee was nigh overcome: and as he felt about him, he perceiued that hee was nere the fire, and as hee went farther hee found out the fountayne, by reason of the colde aire that he felt, whereof he was right gladd: and so then hee tooke his shielde, and plinged it into the water, and bare as much water therout as hee coude, and did cast it into the fire,

and

and euer he secht moze water, and continuallie did cast it into the fire, and euer as the fire quenched, the darknesse began to diminish, and the moze water he did cast into the fire, the cleerer the light beganne to ware, and in conclusion he did cast so much water that the fire was cleane quenched, then might hee see all about him, then hee perceined on both the sides of the staires how ther stood great images of Masse, holding in their hands masses of Steele, the which had done him much trouble as he went downewarde, but then their power was ended, soz when the fire was quenched the inchauntment was finished, then Arthur when he sawe that all was done he returned by againe the staires, & was right wearie of his trauaile, what with heat and sweating and the great strokes that he had receiued, and so came againe to the little wicket whereas the knight was still abiding, and when hee sawe Arthur whole and sound and alive, he kneeled downe before him and said: Sir you be welcome as he that is chiefe floure of al chivalrie of the world. When Arthur sate him downe vpon the greene grasse to take his breath, and did off his hearme and shield. Thus all the Countrey was cleane deliuered from darknesse, so that euerie bodie might see clærelie about them, wherof the Abbot and all his couent had great ioy, and so they went al and rendered thanks to almightie God in their Church. And then the Abbot said to all his betheren, first let vs goe see him that hath thus deliuered vs from thaldome, if God will giue vs the grace to find him, soz verilie I thinke it be the gentle knight that was at the Port of Poire. Then the Abbot and all his couent issued out of the Abbey with procession, and came to this tower which was not farre from thence, and there they found Arthur sitting on the grounde and the knight by him, and when Arthur sawe them, hee toke to him his shield and hearme, and his speare in his hand, and when the couent with the procession came before him he kneeled downe and praised God, and all the couent kneeled downe before him and would not arise till he was vpon his feete, and then there came to them Balwein

M. b.

and

and with him the villaine who had brought Arthur to all these foresaid adventures, and when Baldeuyn sawe the Procession and all those Monkes, hee thought verily that Arthur had ben dead, then he beganne to lament and make all the sorowe of the world, and said: Alasse unhappie creature as I am, that thus haue lost my Lorde and master, the flower of all chivalrie, alasse death why dost thou not take me, and thus as he made this great sorow, he espied Arthur where he stode, then his heart came to him againe, and the Abbot came to Arthur and said: Right noble and vertuous knight, you be right heartelie welcome, as hee that hath deliuered vs and all this Country out of such torment and imprisonment as we were in a long space, and by the pleasure of God by your meanes the seruice of God from hence forth shall be ministred in our Church, sir I and all my whole couent heartelie desire you to come & take your rest within our Abbey now after your greate trauaile, and Arthur with a right good wil did graunt it them, for he was verie wearie. When Baldeuyn toke his shelde, and the great villaine toke his speare and hearme, and oftentimes saide vnto him, gentle knight, God giue thee ioye & increase thine honour and bountie, for thou hast atchiued that which neuer man could doe before this time, therefore now by the helpe of God and by thy high prowesse, the faire Damsell of Argenton shall be deliuered out of trouble and care, & out of the hands of the Duke of Bygoys nephew, for thou hast promised me to goe wheresoeuer I shall bring thee, therefore now I desire thee for to keep thy promise. Well said Arthur I assure you faithfully that I will not break my promise, sir saide the Abbot, God giue you the grace to bring this Lady out of thy alhome, for I knowe well you haue prowesse sufficient to atchiue that enterprize, though it were a greater matter. What is of truth said the villaine, for it hath bene right well proued, for I haue brought him by all the places whereas anie hard aduenture hath bene, to proue thereby his chivalrie and noble vertue, howbeit the Dukes nephew is greatlie to be redoubted, but for all that, I doubt not

not but that hee shall be well chastised, and therewith they went all to the Abbey, whereas the Abbot made them right great honour and chere, and therefore all the Bells in the Church wer rung continuallie three daies and three nights for great ioy, and so for a little space Arthur and Baldeuyn and the greates villaine sported them there with greates ioy. Now for a time let vs leaue Arthur in this Abbey, and let vs speake of the mightie king Emendus and the fayre Florencia his daughter.

How after that Brisebar and master Steuen were departed from Arthur from the Port Noire, they arrived at Cornice whereas king Emendus was, and in his companie the Emperour of Inde, and his other foure Knightes, holding at that time a greates and sumptuous open Court, and there master Steuen and Brisebar recounted to them in open audience the noble chivalrie of Arthur, & in the meane season there came into the Court a knight all armed, and brought tidings to the king how the adventures of the towre Tenebrous were atchiued by the prowesse of one onelie knight.

Chapter. 61.

When that the mightie king Emendus had holden a great solempne Court at a feast of Easter in a great Citie called Sabarie, the fiftene daie of Easter the Emperour would haue departed, but the king would not suffer him, but intreated him so faire, that he was content to abide, and so they were determined to keepe their Whitsontide at Cornice, which they did, at which time the king kept the most sumptuous and open Court that hee kepte sith hee was king. Thus the Emperour abode still with the king till it was Whitsontide, against the which time the king hadde sent for all the nobles of his Realme to

to be at the said feast at his Citie of Coznite, and when the daie approached, the King and al his noble companie rode to Coznite, and there met with him his noble Daughter the gentle Flozence, accompanied with the Archbishop of Coznite her vnkle, and brother vnto the King her father, and so this Citie was then royally replenished with kings and knights, and when the King was entered he alighted, and mounted vp into the Pallace, and the next daie the Emperour came thether, and the King and Flozence his daughter, and all his whole Baronie did encounter and conuey him to his lodging, the which was in the Abbey of Saint Quintaine, and then the King and Flozence returned againe vnto their Pallace, and the third daie before the feast there came to the Court the King of Aquenie, and the noble King of Portugal, and the king of Walesound, and the king of Sabarie, also thether came the Lord Penellon, Seneschall vnto the faire Flozence, and sir Ancean his nephew, and the Lord Wale, sir Steuen, and sir Miles of Walesound, Lord of Damas, and sir Artaude Lord of Arlate, & sir Porraunt Lord of Fenisse, and sir Oliuer Lord of Sabarie, and also there was sir Wicier Lord of Amazon, and sir Poldin the Scot, and sir Sanxton of Oskelin: and all these were of the retinue of the noble Flozence, and there were so manie other, that a great part of the were faine to be lodged without the Citie. When the Court was so full and plentiful, that there was neuer such a Court before. When the King caused to bee cried, that whosoever would take on him the noble order of Knighthood, he shold be dubbed knight with his owne hands. The next daie the which was the first day of the feast, there began in the Court so much triumph, that there was neuer scene the like in all the Countrie before, and on Whitsundaie after service the king made in his Pallace fiftie new knights, vnto whom he did giue armes, horse, and harness, and Flozence did giue them gownes of skarlet, and mantells of greene furred with ermines, and so all these new knights were standing before the king, who did giue about them their swordes, and right sweetly

Uniling

smiling did giue him the order of Knighthood, and Flozence did lase their mantles about their neckes, and the Emperour did make in his lodging xi. knights, & the other foure kings each of them made thirtie knights, and then the Emperour and the other kings did mount on horsebacke, and then began hornes and trumpets to sound, and tabers and Rebeckes and other instruments to make the sweetest melody of the world, and there assembled together all the Jugglers and tumblers, and resorted to the Pallace, and when they were assembled together at the Court, there were to the number of two hundred and ten new knights, and the king and the Emperour sate downe and the faire Flozence betwene them, & all the other kings were set each of them after their degree, and the iuglers and minstrells began to make ioy and feast, Ladies and Damselfs began to daunce, Lords and knights did iust and tourney, trumpets & clarions and other instruments of musicke began to sound, and all the Citie was hanged with cloth of golde and rich Arras, and as they were in this great ioy, there alighted at the staires sir Bzisebar, and master Steuen was remaining at the castle of Reinarte, but two leagues thence, and there he made the peace betwene the Burgeses of the Towne and the meane people, for they had bene before long at discorde, and when sir Bzisebar was mounted into the Pallace, all the Barons and knights ranne and welcommed him, and made for his comming great ioy and feast, and specially sir Penellon the Seneschall, and sir Ancell, & sir Miles of Walesound, and all other made him such chere, that for the plesure he had great paine to come to the king, and as sone as the king saw him he made great ioy, and toke him by the hand and caused him to sit downe before him. When was all the Court right ioyfull of his comming, for before there were none lacking of all Flozence knights but he and Arthur. When the king said, sir Bzisebar you sent hether to mee the head of the foule great monster the which is slaine thanked be God, but I praye you tell me how he was conquered. Sir said Bzisebar, your grace sent mee thether with a greatesse

compa.

companie, howbeit we did nothing there, for we found ther fighting with the monster the most gentle knight that now liueth, and freest of heart, and the most valiant and redoubted knight that euer was gilt with sword, for he alone strake off the monsters head in my sight, and did there such prowesse of armes that no man canne doe like him. In the name of God quoth the king, it is great valure in one man to bring to death such a foule beast: Sir said Wisebar, you cannot knowe the valure and highe prowesse which is in this knight, for it is he onely that hath atchieued the strange aduentures of the Port Poire, and it is he that with his bodie did meruailes at the Roch, whereas sir Firmont with five hundred more did lie in waite for him, & there he leapt into a shippe full of his enemies, when he perceiued that I and other of my companie were taken prisoners and so led forth to the castle, and there he sustained alone the battaile among all his enemies, the which was all the communitie of the towne of Roch, and all the countrie there about, and there he slew sir Firmont and more then three hundred of his companie, and rescued vs out of prison, and also he rescued the knight of the Plashes from all his enemies, what will you that I shall saie, hee is the flower of all chieualrie, and there is not his peere in the world, and hee had scant uttered these words but that ther came into the palace a knight all armed and dressed him to the king and said Right high and mightie puissant king, I haue brought vnto you good and true tidings, which is how that the strange aduentures of the Tenebrous tower are atchieued, and all the inchauntments cleane vndone, and the great darknesse is now turned to light and brightnesse, and all the knights that kept the towre are all slaine, and the great Lyon and Gyaunt and Gyauntesse are slaine, and the Countrie deliuered from all the hard aduentures that they had long endured. Faine friend saide the king, and who hath done all this deede: Sir that hath one knight alone done, who weareth a white shield, and for a certaine I saue him vnto armed in the Abbey of Grace dieu, and neuer sth God was

bozne

bozne hath there bene scene to faire a creature, so gentle, and so gracious, & when Flozence heard speaking of the white shield, she thought then verilie that it was her shield the which was in her pavilion at the Port Poire, and thought verilie that it was her friend and louer Arthur that bare it of whom shee hearde so much good reported, and thus with her owne thought her heart trembled, and sodainely there by she blushed, howbeit shee made she w thereof, but to her selfe she saide: A sweete friend, when shall I see you, so that I may speak with you at good leasure. When the king saide, in the name of God this knight is right valiaunt, what is the cause sir Wisebar that you brought him not to y court with you, to the intent that we might be acquainted with him, so that he might be our friend and he is. As God helpe me saide y king of Orquenie, it were a great riches to haue such a shield as he is nere vs, and verilie for my part I had rather haue the companie of him then of the richest person now liuing, and sir Wisebar you did right ill your indeavour when you did not so much as bring him to this court. Sir said Wisebar, by the faith that I owe vnto my Lorde the King, I did the best of my power to haue brought him hether, but he aunswered me that he must needes goe first to the Towre Tenebrous, and saide if God did giue him the grace there to escape that aduenture, hee woulde be at this Pawdelaintide at Argence to make battaile against sir Glembart the duke of Wygozs nephew for the faire Ladie of Argentons sake, for he shewed me how that hee had promised to her vnckle the Marques and to master Steuen, that he would doe the best of his power to get againe the faire Ladies heritage, and how that he wold shew vnto the Dukes nephew that falsely and vnruly hee had disherited her, and by treason slaine the Lord of Argenton her father. It is of truth saide the knight, that brought thether the tidings from the Tenebrous tower, I warrant him he shall right well helpe that Ladie in her right: But by the faith that I owe vnto God saide the King of Orquenie, if such a battaile shall bee there, if God will it shall not bee without

without me, for verily I will be there at the same time. Sir said Philip of Aqueney, bryke suffer me I pray you to go with you, for trulie so I will doe, and I also quoth sir Melon, and I will not be behinde saide. Wysebar, if God be pleased, for there we shall see meruailes of this knight, and then in the court there beganne to be a great talke among the knights, and a faithfull promise to goe to the said tourney, and they were of one accord welnigh to the number of five hundred knights, and they promised faithfully in open audience to be at the battaile to aide the said damsell. Then Florence said to the king of Aqueney, faire cousin you shall doe right well to goe thither to helpe this Ladie, and also to acquaint you with this gentle knight, and for Gods sake bryng him hether, and I promise you to loue him dearelie, and to giue him such giftes and land that he shall bee right rich and puissant. Well faire Ladie said the king, I shall do the best of my power.

How the Emperour was afeard lest Florence shuld cast her loue on Arthur, wherefore he demaunded of the King her father to haue her in marriage without a longer delaie, wherewith the king was content, but Florence would not agree thereto, wherewith the King hir father was with her right sore displeased as you shall heare after. Ca. 62.

**W**hen the Emperour had heard the great praise and laud that generallie was giuen to Arthur, and perceiued well how that he had the loue of all the Court, and heard well the good wordes that Florence spake of him, wherby ther strake into his heart a tealousse and a seare iust. Hee should cast her loue on him, therefore he toke king Cinembus by the hand and said: Sir, I would faine speak with you in counsaile, but I praye you let your Daughter bee present, then they both arose and Florence with them, and softlie she smiled vnto the king of Aqueney and said to him in counsaile,

saide God giue grace that of this counsaile good may come, but I feare me the contrary. So then they thre entered into a chamber, and leaned them to wone in a faire windowe, then the Emperour began to speake to the king and saide: Sir, it is of a truth, it is a great season past sith you gaue to me your good will, that I should haue in marriage the faire Ladie Florence your daughter here present, but she hath excused her selfe because of the late departing out of this world of the Quene her mother, for she thought it was not pertaining to her to haue bene married so soone after her decease, it is now so great a season sith, that ther can no blame be reputed to her now to be married, therefore sir now I require you that you will incontinentlie deliuer her to mee according to your promise made to mee befoze this time. In the name of God saide the king, it is but reason & right that I should so doe, & so I will doe, wherefore I wote daughter Florence, you wer bozne in a good houre, when so noble and so high a person as the Emperour is, will haue you in marriage, whereby greates honour and weale shall come to vs all, and to al our countries, let vs incontinently send for my brother the Archbishop, to the intent to ensure you together. Right dære father said Florence, it is yet ouer soone to marrie me, for certainly I am not as yet purposed to be married to him nor to anie other, I thinke first to see two yeares more passed at the least. How so said the king, Damsell will you doe then against my will in the refusing of the Emperour to be your Lord in the wate of marriage: Sir said she, I haue care for no Lord but enelie for God & you, for surelie I will not consent to marriage. You shall said the king, or else you shall right sore displease mee. Sir quoth she, your displeasure should grieue me aboue al other things, but by the faith that I owe to you, I wil not as yet be married. So said the king, then I see well that you will do nothing as I commaund you, therefore you shall do it whether you will or not, & so toke her by the hand to the intent to haue deliuered her to the emperour, & when she saw she was not content, but pulled her hand to her againe, to

the intent that the Emperour shal not touch it, and toke  
the king saue that he was sore displeased and said: I wil  
sell you haue set you against mine accord and assent, & ther-  
fore I promise you that from hence forth of my helpe and  
counsaile you shall haue, wher soeuer you shall be, as  
well as you can, and I shal charge you with it, and  
come no more in my sight and presence, nor wher soeuer I  
be, and when Florence saue her father so sore displeased,  
she said: Where father if you be thus displeased with mee,  
you doe not well therein, but what is your pleasure that I  
shuld take the Emperour, or else to lose your counsaile and  
helpe, and also not to come in your sight, the truth is a sore  
saying of the father to his childe, but what it is so, I humbly  
require your grace of respite the space of a moneth, till such  
time that I may speake with my counsaile in that behalfe.  
Ladie said the Emperour, it is too long a respite, for I will  
depart hence right shortly, so I thinke it be hightime, for  
I haue bene here a long season, and all that hath your loue  
caused, wherefore I would saue ere I depart knowe how  
or in what wise my loue shall be rewarded, I saie not nay,  
but it is good so you to take aduise, and I am content  
that you so do a daie or two. Well said the king, I am con-  
tent that she shall haue respite till to morrow at this same  
houre and no longer. Well said Florence, this counsaile is  
against my heart and wil, that I shoul take a man against  
my heart, being that I am a Quene, and daughter to the  
most puissant king of the world, certainlie this grieueth me  
right sore, therewith she began right piteously to weep and  
to make right great sorrow, and when the king saw her  
wepe, he said to her: Auaunce out of my sight, and let me not  
see you till to morrow againe at this present houre, and then  
and were me whether you wil take him or my god wither,  
with, or els leaue him, I leaue my god wil & fauour for ever.  
Then Florence issued out of the Chamber weeping.  
Then the foure kings kept to her when they saw her weep-  
ping, and left all their sport, and the king of Aragon took  
her by the hand, and demanded of her why she wept so sore.

Dere

Whereupon said she, my Lord my father is right sore displea-  
sed at me, and hath commaunded that I shuld auoid out of  
his presence. When she saw her vnckle the Archbishop and  
said to him, faire vnckle let me go with you to your lodging,  
with a right good will said he, and shame haue he that thus  
causeth you to weepe. Thus all the kings conueied her to  
her vnckles lodging, and so did the most part of all the Ba-  
rons of the Court, and also all the new knightes, and they  
all abode still at Florences court, & when she was thus in  
her lodging, the kings returned againe to the king Emen-  
dus court, but the king of Aragonie & Philip his nephew  
abode still with Florence, and the king of Aragonie deman-  
ded of her why she wept: Cosin said she, my Lord & father  
would marrie me and giue me to the Emperour, and wold  
haue assured vs together without anie counsaile taking ei-  
ther of you, or of anie other of my friends, and as God helpe  
me, I had rather die then to haue the Emperour, for I hate  
nothing so much in all the world as I doe him, for as long  
as I liue I will not haue him, therfore it is but a great fol-  
lie to enforce me thereunto: Faire Ladie and cosin said the  
king, as God helpe me ere he haue you against your will,  
there shall be pearced a thousand healmes. Woe said Philip  
the duke of Sabaria, ere that day come there shall be burnt  
an hundred towne thereof be you sure, therfore faire la-  
die be in peace, & let your heart at rest. Well said the Arch-  
bishop let vs goe to the Court and speake with this Empe-  
rour, so thus they rose and went forth and left Florence, and  
thus they mounted vp into the Pallace, and found the king  
Emendus and the Emperour together, who were as then  
issued out of the chamber. When the Archbishop said to the  
king: Faire brother, I meruaile greatly what counsaile  
you haue had to cause thus to come to your court so manie  
noble men and othen from so far countries, to the intent to  
trouble and displease them by the onely words of this man  
the Emperour here present, who wold haue my Lady Flo-  
rence your daughter in marriage against her wil, but sir I  
assure you while I liue he shal not haue hir against her wil.

R.ii.

As

As God helpe me said Philip the Duke of Sabarie, he had  
 neede to haue brought moze men better then he hath done,  
 if he thinketh to haue her a waite to her displeasure. Why  
 said the Emperour, and who is he that will say me nay: As  
 it you, I would there were none to depart the matter, but  
 you and I to see who should lead her a waite: verilie said the  
 King of Aquenie, it is no equall match a Duke against an  
 Emperour, howbeit as God helpe me if you had her against  
 her will, and none other to meddle in the matter but onelie  
 you, I thinke you should not reioyce her so easilie as you  
 thinke of, and bee you certaine that in that quarrell he will  
 and shall defend against you, and therein doe the best you  
 can with all your power, and begin when you will, for hee  
 doubteth you nothing, nor shall doe, and when the King E-  
 mendus heard them say these words, he was right soze dis-  
 pleased, and said: What is this sirs, are we taken priso-  
 ners: laie you thus in a wait to manace thus in my presen-  
 ce my Lord and friend the Emperour, truly if you continue in  
 this purpose you shall knowe that I am right soze displea-  
 sed with you all. When the Archbishop aunswered him a-  
 gaine right sharply, and so there began much burlie burlie  
 in the Court, and much a doe was there liklie to haue ben,  
 but as fortune was, in the meane season master Steuen  
 was arriued at the pallaice, and entered into the hall, and a  
 leauen knightes with him, and when hee heard this noise  
 and stirre, hee spake aloud, and cried peace for Gods sake,  
 and did so much that he appeased somewhat the noise, and as  
 sone as the king of Walesound sawe master Steuen his  
 sonne, he ranne and embraced and kissed him, & demaunded  
 how he did, and he aunswered and said, sir right well than-  
 ked be God, and then all the other kings did welcome him,  
 and so did king Emendus, and also the Emperour, and de-  
 maunded of him how he had done sith his departing out of  
 the court, & he aunswered and saide right well, then he per-  
 ceived right well how that the King & the Archbishop were  
 soze displeased together, wherfore he said to the king, what  
 chere is with you, this daie is a solempne day, why is your  
 Barons

Barons and Court thus troubled, this daie should be a day  
 of spozte and plaie: Master Steuen saide the king, I can-  
 not be merrie, for your Ladie my daughter Florence hath  
 displeased me, for she will not doe that thing that I woulde  
 haue her doe, wherewith I am nothing content, wherfore  
 I pzaie you assaie and you can reduce her to my minde. Sir  
 said master Steuen, I trust I shall doe so much, that with  
 reason you shall be content, so of this matter they talked a  
 great space.

How Florence when shee knew that master Steuen  
 was come to the Court was right glad, and how  
 that he with his pollicie gate her longer respite,  
 that was till Bartlemew tide next after. Chap. 63.



At this season was the noble Ladie Florence  
 in her chamber, making great sorowe, and say-  
 ing to her selfe: Ah noble Arthur, I waite friend,  
 I neuer saw you and yet I loue you with al my  
 heart, I had thought to haue bene vnmarried till the time  
 of your coming to this Court, but now I see well that I  
 must needs take him that I hate most, I loue you but I  
 cannot haue you: O fortune how art thou turned agaynst  
 me, I hate him that I must haue, I lone him that I must  
 lose, certainly deere loue Arthur, if you loose mee thus you  
 shall haue great damage, for you shall lose her that loneth  
 you truelie. Ah master Steuen why haue I not you here  
 now in my great neede, for if you knew of my sorow I am  
 sure nothing could let you but that you would turne vp so  
 downe this marriage. And as she thus complained pitious-  
 lie, tidings came to her lodging that master Steuen was  
 come to the Court, and as sone as she heard that, her heart  
 began to come again to her, for then she thought verily that  
 she needed to care for nothing, & right hastily sent for him, &  
 as sone as the master knew thereof he said to the king: Sir  
 my lady hath sent for me to come to her grace. So your way  
 said the king. Thus the master departed & the Archbishop  
 R.iii. with

with him, and the king of Aquenie, & his nephew sir Philip Duke of Sabary, & they all arrived together where Florence was, and the other kings abode with the king and the Emperour, and the Barons of the Court and all the new knights were at Florence lodging, right sore displeased because of her displeasure, but they were all gladde when the king of Aqueny and master Steven were come. When the master entered into Florence chamber, and saluted her, but she could not speake one word, but took him by the hand, & caused him to sit down by her side, and when her hart came to her, she said how that he was right welcome, as he whom she desired to haue at that time aboue all the creatures of the world. When the master said to her, is this a faire thing that you make thus for your estate, to bring your selfe in sorrow and all your people, and these gentle knightes in such trouble for your sorrow, who are thus come to your Court to doe you honour, for they haue left the king your father to come to your lodging in this solempne daie, therefore leaue you this sorrow, and make such cheere as appertaineth to a Princesse, reioyce your Court and your people. When Florence answered and saide: A master, my swete friend, I cannot be merrie, for I am greatly grieved at the heart, for my Lord my father hath forbidden me to come in his presence, for a stranger whom he would that I should take in marriage, but God rather giue me death then I will take him, for I hate him with all my heart, and it behooueth me to answer whether I will haue him or no, betwene this and to morrow this time, and I haue greates despite that I should thus be dealt withall for a stranger. Madame saide the master, now be in rest, for sith you haue a daies respite, I shall get you nigh a whole yeares longer delaie, and I trust such fortune may fall, that ere the yeare be runne, you shall not haue him. As deere master said she, I hartely thank you, and promise you that though this Emperour bee neuer so rich or puissant, or full of power, yet I haue no care for all his riches, for I thanke God I am now one of the puissantest Ladies that is liuing, therefore I care not for him

nor all his power: Madame said the master, then I see well that your hart is not set on couetousnes, & I deeme you loue anie but the Emperour whom I knowe you hate, but madame here be two things contrarie to be in one heart, loue and hate, to be make and sell I cannot see how this may be. Ah master said she, haue no meruaile at this, though I saie that my heart is both make and sell, certainly my heart is sell whereas it hateth: Why madame quoth the master, do you then hate. Trulie quoth she yea, & that right sore, this Emperour would haue me against my will, for he shall not haue me by my good will, and if he take me by force, I trust he shall well know that he did neuer so great a follie. Madame saide the master, marriage that is made by force is greatly to be doubted, but when it is made meekely and by the agreement of both parties, then lightly loue continueth euer after betwene them, and when it is contrarie, oftentimes both parties endure many sorowes, but madam now I know against whom your heart is hatefull, I pray you let me know to whome your heart is make and amiable, then she beheld the master and sighed right sore, when the master heard her sigh, he a little smiled, and when she sawe him laugh she was a little ashamed and blushed therewith, and all smiling said: A master you know well enough all this as well as I doe my selfe, for I neuer sawe him as yet that hath shewed me loue, I see right well dailie my hearts enimie, but mine owne deere loue I neuer saw, but I see dailie him that I hate, but I cannot see him that I loue: Master you know what he is better then I doe, therefore I praye you shew me what you knowe of him, for you haue giuen a waie my white shield and good sword Clarence, and I knowe not to what knight, nor whether they be well employed or no. Madame quoth the master, I shall shew you, I will that you knowe that I haue giuen them to the most fayrest and gracious knight that now liueth and freest of heart in all gentleness that can be found in the world, for he is the chiefe and principall flower of bountie in all manner of chivalrie, also hee is the best

Knight that ever was girte with sworde, sith the time of  
Gawaine and Launcelot, and the best approoued knight  
that ever hath bene heard of, who hath set his faithfull hart  
without either fraud or falschood on your loue, and so him  
in my presence your Image hath giuen and set on his head  
your Chaplet. When Florence heart began to tremble, and  
said, Gentle master I doubt me greatly that you giue him  
a greater praise then he is worthy of, for you haue praised  
him greatly. Truly madame said he, all that I haue saide  
in troth, for he is worthy to haue more praise then I haue  
giuen him, Well master said she, is all this of a troth?  
Pea truly Madame said he. By the faith that I owe vnto  
God saide Florence, then I see well hee is worthy to haue  
much honour, and I promise you hee shall not faile thereof  
if God send me life, and he shall not lose his loue, for seeing  
he loueth me, as God helpe me I will loue him againe, for  
reason requireth to loue him that loueth me. When said the  
master, I see well next the king your Father you loue the  
Emperour because he loueth you. When Florence smiled &  
with her hand strake him on the shoulder and saide, master  
wher I am pleased ther I loue, but I care not for him that  
is against my heart: one of these two pleaseeth mee, and  
the other I hate, I praye God that hee maye come speede-  
ly which I loue, and I would he were gone that so much  
annoyeth mee: hee that hath my Chaplet, my shield and  
sworde, hath my loue more then anie other that now  
liueth in the worlde, and the Emperour hath my hatred  
more then anie other mortall creature, I loue him right  
deerely whome I neuer saue, and hate him most cruellie  
whom I see daile.

Wherewith shee made a pause, and blushing somewhat  
with shamesfastnesse she began againe and saide, Master  
Steven, now I haue shewed you all my counsell, as to him  
in whom I trust most, you be my Clarke and my seruant,  
you knowe now as much of my counsaile as maye bee,  
therefore I require you keepe it secret, and put your paines  
that

that I may haue him on whom my heart and loue is laide,  
for now you know on whom it is set. The master said,  
madame as God help me you haue right wel set your hart  
on the best and fairest knight of all the worlde, that is the  
gentle knight Arthur: and as they thus talked, there  
came to them the king of Orquenie and Philip his Ne-  
pew, and the Archbishop, and sir Wisebar, her Seneschall,  
and sir Aunsell. When Florence arose against them, and al-  
so to the master, and they had all great ioy of Florence when  
they saue her make better chere then she did before. At the  
last the master said, Lordes I see well howe that the noble  
Court of the mightie king Emendus is all in a trauance  
in a manner halfe a sleepe, for there is neither playe nor ioy  
among them that I can see, whereof the king is greatly to  
bee blamed, for it is greateshame because so manie noble  
men be here at this feast: therefore in my minde it were  
good to take some counsaile to see howe the Court may bee  
delighted againe, lette vs send word to the king how that  
my ladie Florence is readie to giue her aunswere now the  
which she should giue to morrow, and I promise you that  
I wil so aunswere for her, that she shall haue longer respite  
an whole yeare, and I trust so to appease the king and the  
Emperour, that with reason they shall be well content.

When the king of Orquenie said, master I see well howe  
that you haue not as yet forgotten all your olde cunning  
I thinke you will bring them a sleepe with wagging your  
hand. When the Archbishop did laugh, and so they were all  
of one accord, then they sent to the king Duke Philip and  
sir Wisebar, and the king had right greates ioye when hee  
heard their message, and said: truly master Steven I see  
right well, hath giuen her good counsaile, hee is a noble  
Clarke, I praye God send him good aduenture. And so these  
messengers returned againe and said, howe that the king  
was verie well content and ioyfull to heare her answer.  
When Florence prepared her selfe to goe to the Court, and  
the king of Orquenie did accompanie her, and the king  
of Orquenie did meete them by the waye, & the Archbishop  
and

and master Steuen went befoze, then all the knyghtes assembled together being to the number of six hundred, and followed after Flozence with great triumph. Thus Flozence entered into the Pallace, and the Emperour did salute her, and so did all the rest except the King her father: then the Emperour satte downe and Flozence by him, and the King Emendus and the King of Ozqueny befoze him, and euerie other man in his roome: and after silence made master Steuen sayd to the King: Sir, if it like your grace, behold here your daughter that loueth you. Certainly said the King, my daughter I belene well shee is, but for anye loue that she beareth me, I can neither knowe nor see, for behold here my Lord and deere friend the Emperour, who is come personally to desire her in marriage, yet is shee so daintie that she demaundeth counsaile in this case which toucheth her honour and profite, and will not belene mee that am her father, wherewith I am not a little displeased. Then the master arose on his fete, and saide: Right excellent and mightie Prince, my Ladie Flozence, is greatlye greued, for the unkindnesse you haue shewed hir to daye, and now she is come as one sorrowful for your displeasure, intending to do nothing contrarie to your will. And sith it is so that my Lord the Emperour will doe so much honour as to take her in marriage, she humbly thanketh him: yet it is the custome according to the estate of euery person to deale discretely in such a case. Therefore sir, it is not convenient, the Emperour and you being the greatest and puissantest persons now liuing, and my Ladie Flozence the most noble princeesse of all the world, that this solemnitie ought not to be done priuely in a chamber, but in the open presence of all the Barons of both Realmes, to the intent that if God send any issue betwene them, their marriage may be knownen openly to all the people of both Realmes, whereby shal be eschewed all grudge and murmuring, neither is it necessarie this solempne feast of Pentecost, a that royall marriage should be solemnized at one time, for this daye is so principall a feast, that euery Christian man ought

ought to doe nothing els but laude and serue God, and at the day of that noble marriage, let there be here Kings, Dukes, Barons, and other noble knyghts, Ladies and damosells, and let the young and lustie knyghts runne together with their speares and swordes: then shall wee see what knyght is of valure and praise, at the which time shall be brought hether the rich Pavilion of my Ladie Flozence, wherein is the Image of the fairie, holding the rich Chaplet: so that when the Tourney shall be done, then my Lord the Emperour shall goe to the Image, to haue the Chaplet as he that is right rich both of behauior and friends, and the most noble person that shall bee there assembled, and to him the Image will giue the chaplet, as to him that is most worthie, and when he hath it, then hee shall be sure and certaine, that he shall haue my ladye with great god will and entire loue: and thus maye it bee concluded with ioy and triumph.

When the Emperour had well heard the master, and sawe how that he spake no more, he reioiced greatly in his heart and sayd: By the faith that I owe vnto God, the master hath right wisely spoken, and verily with a willing heart I doe accord to his aduice, let this ioyfull day be appointed, and let there be cried a great Justes and Tourney against that time, and let there bee ordained rounde Tables to make feastes, and sir King, the same daye I will tourney against you in loue and fauour. Trulie sayde the King, I am well agreed, and my aduice is to let all this bee done in the Citie of Coznite, but what daye shall this bee on. Sir sayde the master, and if it may please you, my opinion is that at Bartilmeu tide next it is most convenient, for then shall all cozne be auoided quite out of the fieldes, and by that time all things necessarie may be provided for. I am content saide the King, but how saie you my Lord the Emperour. Sir said he, I am verie wel pleased. Then anon this appointment ranne ouer all the pallace in euery mans mouth, and euerie man prayed that God might send the master

maister a right good aduenture for his faire and goodly speaking. Then began againe great feast and ioy, & there came forth Juglers with their false castes, and Dancers with their vaultings, and Damsells with their sportes, and made greater sport and triumph then was before. When the king and the Emperour laughed and made greates ioy together till it was time to set the Tables, then water was brought forth, and Flozence tooke licence of the king her father, and said: Sir I beseech your grace bee not displeased though these new knightes goe with me to my lodging, and re- taine them with me all this daie. Well said the king, I am right well content, goe your waie, and make them as good chere as you can, then Flozence departed and went to her chamber, and the king abode still in the Pallace, and the king of Diquenie, Philip of Sabarie, and the Archbishop, and Wisebar, and welnigh to the number of five hundred Barons and knightes went with Flozence to her lodging, and then the maister said to her: madame how saie ye now, we haue respite long inough, for many things may fall be- twene this and that. Maister said she, you saie right well, but I praie you tell me will not our knight bee here be- twene this and that: madame said he, I see well you haue not as yet forgotte him, it seemeth he is yet in your rememe- brance. Of a truth saide Flozence, I would right gladlie see him, and if God be pleased, if he come to this said turney, I shall doe him honour, and that I praie you let him know: Madame quoth the maister, I shal goe to him and shew him all this matter, and how that you desire him to bee there at that time, and that for your loue there to shewe part of his chivalrie. Well maister said she, you saie right well, and I praie you commend me heartelie vnto him. Thus they deuised that the maister should goe to the Port adire till the time of this turney, and then he should bring with him Flo- rence Daillon with the Eagle of gold, and the image with the chaplet, and that it should be pight in the faire meadowe vnder the walls of the Citie of Cornite. When there was water brought forth, and so they were serued full richlye with

with great sport and triumph. Thus the king kepte open Court yb. daies, and euerie daie once Flozence went to hir fathers court. At the end of yb. daies the king did giue ma- nie rich gifts to these knightes, and Flozence also, insomuch as they all said, that there was neuer a more noble hearted kni-ght. When all these things took their leaue and departed so, vnto the good knightes against the said day. When maister Steuen saide to Flozence, madame now it is time that I depart, so I will go straight to Argence, where I am sure to finde Arthur. Ah said Flozence I haue great doubt of him, for his dukes nephew is full fierce. Madame quod he feare not, for if ther wer more such they could not indure against Arthur: & then he took his leaue and with him went Wi- sebar & Ar. Penelon Flozences marshall, and took their waie to Argence. Now let vs leaue them, and returne we againe to Arthur.



How Arthur was receiued of the faire Ladie Mar-  
garet, the daughter of the Duke of Argence.  
Chapter the first.  
As you heare before, Arthur, crowned at the Ab-  
bey of the grace of God, and the people began fast  
to approach, and soon as the foule villaine came to him  
and said, Well be but swine, for we haue nothing but eat and  
drinke, and I thinke you be wedded to this Abbot, or els I  
thinke you will become a Monk, you haue promised men  
to fulfill my request, if you will doe so, goe, thou art ar-  
med, you, and let him goe to Argence to helpe there the faire La-  
die Margaret of Argenton, and to get againe her right, for  
it is now time. When Arthur heard him say so, he smiled &  
said, with a right good will, and so he armed him and took  
leue of the Abbot and of the Conent, and mounted vpon  
his horse and followed the villaine, and so Arthur did ryde  
sixth day by day, till at the last he descended from a greates  
mountaine, and entered into the fairest meddow that euer  
he saw in his life, and by the side of this aforesaid meddow  
there ranne a faire river, wherein were many ships, some  
vnder saile, and some ready crossed, and some lying at the  
anker, the which river ranne throughout parte of the faire  
Cittie of Argence. And then he met a Page who came then  
from the Cittie, whom Arthur saluted, and demanded from  
whence he came, and he answered how that he came from  
the Cittie of Argence, the most faire Cittie of the two, the  
this time, and is in most sorrow, for I am sure there was  
never towne so sore troubled as it is at this houre. And  
wherefore good friend said Arthur, what said hee, there is no  
good cause why, for the Duke of Wigorn, and his newe be-  
comming to the Cittie, and they haue made a crie through-  
out the Cittie and all about the Countrey that all the noble  
men and others, such as hold their lands of the heire of Ar-  
genton, should be at Champlaine next following at the  
Cittie

Cittie of Argence, to doe their homage to King Isembart the  
Dukes nephew, wherefore I pray God that he may die an  
euen death, and it is but fiftene dayes to the sayd daye, at  
which tyme hee is purposed to wedde the faire Ladie Mar-  
garet to a lechende Barber of his, and so shall she be dishe-  
ritted from her inheritance, and all the noble men and bur-  
gholles of the cite and countrey thereabout are right sore  
distraied, for they know not what counsell to take in this  
case, for lacke of a captaine, and the Ladie hath no frinde  
but an vnckle of hers, who is put in prison by the Dukes  
newe, and there is none can tell where he is become. And  
also this King Isembart hath saide and said y murdered by  
treason her father, this sir is the sorrow that is in the no-  
ble cite of Argence. Well good frinde said Arthur, God  
thanke you, who is yet puissant enough to sende helpe to  
this Ladie, but friend I pray you is this Duke and his ne-  
phew come as yet to the cite. Aea truly sir heis come al-  
ready, and with him much people, for his people are num-  
bred to a thousand persons at the least. What is a great com-  
panie said Arthur, and so they departed and Arthur rode  
forth. When the villaine beganne to crie, hee is come that  
shall giue light: and euer as he rode hee behelde on euerie  
side about him great companies of knights comming and  
going toward the Cittie of Argence, and Arthur saw well  
howe that the lande of Argenton was the most goodlyest  
Countrey that euer he saw, for he perceiued well how that  
it was full of worldly welth, he saw manie noble townes  
and towers, right high and mightie castles, and many faire  
woods and meddowes, and pleasant rivers, and about  
the towne faire houses, and goodly pastures and fields,  
and there he saw manie Ladies and Damoselles sport-  
ing them by the rivers side with batelchons & versabachons  
on their handes, and so he perceiued well that because of  
the good commodities of the countrey the Dukes newe  
would disherite the faire Ladie Margaret, and at last hee  
saw the faire cite of Argence shining against the sunne,  
inuirowed with vngarnished, the walls strongly builded,  
and

Arthur and his knights were in the city of London, and as he sat in the chamber, he was covered with lead, having topped and pointed his armor shining again the sun. And as he sat, he saw a burgess, longings closed with his hand strong walls, barred with great chains of iron, reaching from one side to another. Then Arthur, in his heart, praised much the noble man, and, as he was, both of the city and of the country, and said to himselfe that it might well be called Argent, for it seemed to be of Argent, that is to say silver. Thus Arthur entered into the city, and the villaine went on before him, with his leaver on his neck, bare legged, and him hanging at his back, & ever he went forth a great pace, looking down wards to the earth, and spoke words of nobody that he met; but alwaies cried out aloud, he is come that shall give light, & the burgesses beheld him well, and said how that he was a sole, women and children ran to the windows to beholde him, and when any boy spake to him, he would answer nothing, but alwaies said, he is come that shall give light. Thus Arthur rode forth into the city, and saw there nothing to doe, nor no manner of craft or occupation there, but, no more then if it had bene upon an high fastuall dais, for all the shops were shut and closed, whereof Arthur had great meruaile, and he beheld in every street great companies of knights walking all soberly together, with their hats hanging over their eyes, as though they had not bene well pleased, and some sitting before their owne doores cross legged, leaning on their elbows, making no manner of countenance, but soberly musing, and some of them beheld the villaine, & by his countenance sayings, he is come that shall give light. And in this manner Arthur rode ever till he was fiftie paces from the walls of the city, and there he saw a great company of knights and burgesses about the number of sixty, talking together in counsaile, but it seemed by their chere they had no great joy in their hearts: then the villaine turned himselfe to cry aloud, he is come that shall give light, saying thus, he is come that shall give light.

When these knights beheld the vilaine well, and sawe how Arthur followed him, whereof they had great meruaile, and at the last a knight of that companie called sir Emerie, came to Arthur, and curteously saluted him, saying: Sir, it is mine office in this cite to receive and lodge all gentlemen strangers that resort hether, and here is mine house, therefore I desire you to alight from your horse and enter in: Sir I thanke you saide Arthur, howbeit I must needs goe farther to seeke my lodging: Sir said the knight, by your patience you shall not passe by my house to seeke any other lodging, therefore by the faith that I owe unto God you shall abide with me: yea, but saide the vilaine, I thinke he will not abide, for he hath promised to follow me whether so ever I goe, therefore come on your waie, for I will go before, & in his going forth, he ever cried, he is come that shall give light. When Arthur desired the vilain to tarrie, and at the last he agreed thereunto, & Arthur rode forth to sir Emeries doore and alighted, then the other knights left their counsaile and did salute Arthur, & let them againe right curteously, and they beheld Arthur well, and praised him much in their hearts, for he was both faire and gracious. When sir Emerie took Arthur by the hand and led him into a faire chamber to unarme him, and in the meane season that he was unarming, master Steven, sir Bricbar, and sir Penelon the Seneschall, were come to sir Emeries house to take their lodging, and so took their chamber, and when the master had chaunged his apparell he went down into the hall, and the other two knights with him, and the vilaine knew them right well, and saluted them by their names, and therewithall Bawdelwin came out of the chamber from Arthur, and as soone as he sawe the master and Bricbar, he ranne and curteously did salute them with a ioyfull heart.

When the master demaunded of him whereas Arthur his master was: Sir saide he, in this Chamber here by, and then they all forthwith entered into the Chamber, and as soone as Arthur sawe them, he ranne and embraced

ced the maister, and after Byssebar, and saide. Mine owne good companions of the roch you be right hartelie welcome hether. Also he did salute sir Peuelon the seneschall, who in his hart praised him greatlie. And when sir Emery saw how the maister made so great chere to Arthur, than he thought verilie that he should be some great knight for he knew wel that the maister was a kings sonne. When they sate them downe on a beddes side, and the maister recounted all that had ben in King Emendous court, and how that the emperor desired to haue had Florence in marriage at the same time, and he told him how by his meanes he did let it at that time, and gave lenger respite till Bartilmew tide, at which time there is cited a great Jutte and Tournie, and there he shewed him in his eare the salutation that Florence did send him, and how that she desired him to be there at that time and to shew there part of his prowess, for his sake. When Arthur smiled and embraced the maister many times.

And when they hadde thus talked a good space together, than the maister called to him sir Emery their host, and caused him to sit downe by them, and when they were sate downe, Arthur demaunded of him wherefore the knights and Citizens of that cite were so sad, and he answered and saide, sir we haue all good cause so to be, and than he began to shew him how that in the same house there was a damosel who was daughter to the Lord of that same cite, and of all the land of Argenton, and how that she was the right heire of all that countrey, and how that the Duke of Bigozes newew did falsely murther by treason the Lord his father, and so shewed him all the whole matter as ye haue heard before, and also he shewed him how that the Dukes newew would marrie hir to his Barbour, and how that he had disherited hir of fortie thousand pound of land by yearelie rent, and now hee hath summoned all the gentlemen of the countrie round about, and will that they shall doe homage vnto him, and so it becometh them to haue a falsse murderer to their Lord, and to deny their rightfull heire;

and

and therefore all the noble men of this Countrie and Citie haue bene in counsaile for this matter: but the conclusion of their counsaile was thus, howe that they would make no manner of ressaunce against the Dukes Nephew, but rather suffer their Ladie to be disherited and banished from her owne lande, howbeit right gladlie they would moue warre against him, but they lacked a Captaine, for they thinke verilie that a woman to bee chiefe head in warre should cause it at length to be of little effect. When Arthur saide, I haue heard somewhat of this matter before, but I praise you curteous host is this said Ladie heere in your house: Pea truelie saide hee, heere beneath in a faire Parlour, for shee hath bene euer in my house since the death of her father, for I haue promised neuer to faile her. When master Steuen saide, good host I require you knowe this Ladies pleasure whether shee will be content that we might speake with her: Sir saide hee, with a right good will, then hee went into the Parlour whereas she was the same time going to euening Prayer, and therewith she espyed sir Emery and saide: sir you be welcome, and he saluted her and saide: madame, heere is aboue in one of my chambers a knight the most fairest that is in the world, and master Steuen the king of Sezolois, Clarke and sonne vnto the noble king of Malefount, doth honour this knight, the which knight would faine speake with you, and surelie as farre as I perceiue by him, hee is minded to helpe and succour you in your need, shall I cause him to come speake with you. To come to me friend quoth the Ladie, naie God forbidde, for they that haue neede ought to seeke for helpe, and not to tarrie till it be brought to them, for and they doe, it may fortune to come too late, and as for mee I haue greate neede of him if hee would helpe mee, and hee none of mee, therefore it is great reason that I go vnto him.

When she apparailled her and went forth and entred into the chamber wher as they wer, and as soone as they saw her, they arose & did salute her, requesting her to sit downe,

S.ii.

and

and she seemed to them right fayre, gentle and gracious, & byd salute them one after an other right sweetely.

Then Arthur sayd, faire lady, by howe ye put your selfe to so much payne to come hether to vs, for we would gladly haue come to you. She answered and saide, sir it is reason that I should so doe, for I am a poore distressed ladie, & therefore it is requisite that I goe seke for helpe and succour. Then maister Steuen demanded of hir hir estate, and she recounted to him euery thinge as ye haue hearde here before, and weping saide. Alas I poore desolate creature that I am, that was wont to be kept in great honour with my Lord and Father, who falsly was slaine by this Dukes newe and hath put myne vnckle in prison, and I cannot tell whether he be a liue or dead. Faire lady sayde maister Steuen, for Gods sake be ye of good chere, your vnckle is in good helth and out of prison, by the same token that he is called the markes, and also he hath an old hurt on his browe. And as sone as she heard that, her hart began to reioyce, and she requested of him to know who had deliuered him out of prison. Certainly faire Lady said he, the same knight that sitteth here by you, who hath conquered the strange Castell of the porte Royze. When she heard that, she fell down on hir knees before Arthur and humbly thanked him. Then Arthur toke hir vp and saide, alas faire lady why do you thus, for gods sake set your hart at rest, for truly I offer my seruice to you and the best of my power to help & defend your right, if it be to morrow nexte I shall be readie to sustaine the battaile as long as my life wil last. Then the lady would haue knecled down & humbly thanked him saying: sir I giue to you all my right and inheritance, wher ye haue won it, & mine vnckle shal be your seruant. Alas gentle knight I can say no more, I haue losse my father, wherefore it is great damage that I liue, for I am wery of my lyfe, than she began to weepe and saide. Sir I had rather that you had my right than my mortall enemies.

God ladye said Arthur, if god be pleased I shal deliuer it to you

your owne profit, for truly I will not haue therof the value of a pennie. When sir Emerye heard that this knight had deliuered out of prison the Marques, and how that he had atchieued the adventures of the Port Royze, than he thought verely in his heart that it was he, that had atchieued the adventures of the tenebrous tower, wherwith he kept forth, and knecled downe before Arthur saying. Gentle and noble knight in whom all bountie flourisheth, for Gods sake bring vs out of the tribulation that we bee in, and make light all the hearts of the whole Baronie of Argenton, take this enterprize on you, and all we shall willingly helpe and aide you, I undertake you shall haue xl thousand persons in harneis to giue attendaunce on you, the which are all subiects to my Ladie here present. And sir know you for a certaintie that I haue all these readie, & wil prouide for horses and harneis, golde and silver, sufficient to sustaine your host longer space than a yeare, the which I will put into your hands for the helping of my ladye, and I am here readie the first that will put my bodie & life in icopardie. Madame said Arthur, if all your other knights be such, you haue much good people and kinde. Then he said to sir Emerye, sir I promise you faithfully to helpe this Ladie to the best of my power. When sir Emerye departed from them, and went and assembled together all the other knights of the Citie that were pertaining to the Ladie and said. Lords and masters, I thinke verely that God hath visited vs, for ther is a knight in my house, who hath deliuered out of prison the noble Marques vnckle to my Ladie, also he hath atchieued all the adventures of the Port Royze, as Maister Steuen hath shewed vnto my Ladie, and according to the troth I thinke it be hee that didde such great prowesse in the valley of Walesound, and at the tower tenebrous, and also he hath promised himselfe to be readie at my Ladies commaundement, and to defende her right against the Dukes newe though he be neuer so fel. Certainly said all those knights, we beleue verely that at his traualle is in wast, for this Dukes newe is fierce, and

canst thou not treat as I do? I have not such a Battell in all  
 the world, without it be the knight that hath achieved the  
 adventures that you speak of. Merely said Sir Emerie, I  
 believe the same knight is he and as the least I am sure it  
 is he, that hath conquered the Mount of Joy. When anon  
 these tidings were spread abroad throughout all the Citie,  
 and there came many knights and barons by great companies  
 into Sir Emeries house to see this strange knight, and so  
 they entered into a great hall, and when they were gather-  
 ed together they were to the number of five hundred per-  
 sons, & they desired Sir Emerie to goe and shew this knight  
 stranger that man of the knights of Argence, who would  
 be then to speak with him. When Arthur heard this hee  
 was very ioyfull, and arose, and hee and the master went  
 forth into the hall and brought with them the faire Ladie  
 Margaret, and when Arthur was among them, hee was  
 biggish and mightie and high to behold, with strong armes  
 and well proportioned in every member, and he had on a  
 robe of scarlet, and the colour of his face was of a rose all  
 his, and he was of a higher stature by the head then any  
 man that was there: and when these knights and bar-  
 ons saw him they had great ioy, and thanked God that he  
 had sent him thither at that houre, and they all saide unto  
 him, Sir, you be right heartely welcome into this Citie of  
 Argence, and Arthur rendered salutations againe to them  
 right courteously. When a knight called Sir Robert Ardur  
 who was most puissant of riches and landes of all those  
 knights that were pertaining to the Ladie, stept forth and  
 said: Sir, it is given us to understande howe that you are  
 in mynde to aide and helpe my Ladie, the which is now present,  
 therefore we would faine knowe in this case what you  
 are purposed to doe. Sir quoth Arthur, verely I am in full  
 purpose to repara my bodie and life against this Duke  
 nephew, and to prove how that traiterously he hath done  
 this, and as father and uncle he hath done her wrong.  
 Then Sir Robert saide, God give you grace and power  
 thus to doe, for the Duke nephew is right fierce and wil-  
 fell.

fell, howbeit he is in the wrong and we in the right, there-  
 fore if God be pleased, he may be confounded, and thus he  
 sayd unto you, we be all Gentlemen and Barons per-  
 taining here to my Ladie, and we faithfully promise you both  
 our aide and persons, and also our goods though wee loose  
 our heads in the quarrell, and of this minde both wee &  
 all, can merit be, and we lacke nothing but a Captaine, ther-  
 fore doubt nothing, for if the Duke nephew shal doo any  
 strife, you shall have more than thirte thousand fighting  
 men. Faire Ladie saide the master, you have much noble  
 people. Truly Sir said she that is of a trouth, for they loved  
 right well their Lord that is dead. As they thus talked,  
 there passed by them a great route of horse men, and they  
 went to the windowes, and beheld knights and others in  
 the strete on horse backe, to the number of five hundred  
 persons, and in the first front there was the Duke of Wi-  
 goz and Sir Isembart his nephew, who were riding to meet  
 the king of Brequeney, who as then was coming to the  
 Citie, but his coming was for Arthurs sake, and not for  
 the Dukes, which the Duke knew not, and therefore pur-  
 suayed the kings lodging in the Bishops Pallace, and had  
 pursued for Philip Duke of Sabarie in the Abbey of S.  
 Germaines. And so when he had met the king he welcom-  
 med him into the Citie, and so they rode forth together, &  
 passed by Sir Emeries house. When Wissebar as hee was  
 looking out of a window, espied where there rode by the  
 king of Brequeney, Sir Artande, Sir Rozant, Sir Oliver, and  
 Sir Vicer: and Wissebar as lowde as he coude, cried Ar-  
 thur, Arthur, wherewith the king and all that rode by, lo-  
 ked by toward the window, and there they saw Sir Wi-  
 sebar and Sir Bevelon the Seneschall, and master Stenent  
 and Arthur, who seemed to them to be a man of great va-  
 lore, and anon the king did thinke within his heart how  
 that it shoulde be Arthur. Whereupon hee called to him  
 the Duke of Wigoz and sayde, Sir I pray you goe to your  
 lodging, for I meane to lye at this house.

Then

When the Duke would haue descended with him, but the King and his wife would suffer him, and so the Duke and his newwede parted, as they that knew fullwile why the King and all those knights were come to that Citie. When the King took with him Philip his nephew, and the Archbishop, and sir Anseau, and entered into sir Emeric's house, and caused the gates to be closed after them, and sent at his householde to the Bishop's place, and sir Philip sent his to the Abbey of Saint Germaines. When sir Baishebar & the master and other of theyr companie ranne to the King & embraced him and all his Traine, and Arthur came before the King and saluted him, whom the King took by the hand, and Baishebar tolde him in his eare howe that it was Arthur. When the King said, my deere friend Arthur, you bee right well met here in the land of Argenton, as the Knight that I haue most desired to see and know, for certainly I had not come hether at this time, but onely to speake with you. Sir said Arthur you haue done your pleasure, to frauaile your selfe right soze to come hether to see so simple a person as I am. When the King entred into a little chamber and did visite him, and when hee was readie he came againe into the hall, and there sounde all the Barons and Knights together, and Philip Duke of Sabarie was talking with Arthur. When the King laide his hand on Arthurs shoulder and said, good friend I pray you that from hence forth you will be of my householde and that you will take of my giste, robes, horse, and harnais, and I promise you faithfullly that I will be to you a good friende, and so you & I shall be good companions and friends. Sir said Arthur I thanke you, for truly I am yours in all places and at your commaundement where so ever I am, but and if it please you I haue offered my selfe to my Ladie Florence my seruice & daughter to the mighty King Emericus of Portugal, as the request of sir Baishebar, whom hee hath reported to mee, her Grace hath countenanced accepted of my seruice: seeing then that shee hath so muche in mind, I am very loath to displease her Grace. In the name of God

said

said the king, you saie right well, for I repute her companionie and mine as all one thing, and good friend beholde here sir Philip my nephew Duke of Sabarie, verilie I loue him entirelie, therefore I require you let him and you be companions and friends, and each of you to loue other: Sir said Philip, as God helpe me I promise him from hence forth faithfull loue and amitie, nor I haue nothing but hee shall be Lord thereof in all places, and against al persons, except you mine vnkle, I shall be readie to aide and succour him. Right deere friend quoth Arthur, God reward you, & I am and shall be your Knight against all the worlde except my Ladies grace who hath retained me. All this is but right said the king, and this please me verie wel, then the king took Philip by the hand and said to Arthur: Deere friend here I put into your hand and keeping Duke Philip my nephew, loe here take him to you, and also nephew I put into your hand this Knight in likewise take him to you, the these two knights embraced together, and promised each other faithfull companie, and sir Emeric was glad because that he had lodged in his house such a companie of noble men, that he reioyced in his heart, and all the other Barons of the citie beheld meruailouslie Arthur, & praised him much in their hearts, and then the vilaine who was in the companie with the Ladie, cried as loude as he could, he is come that shal giue light, and the king and all the other did laugh at him right heartlie. When the tables were set vp, and water was brought forth, and the king sat down and Arthur by him, and then the Bishop and Duke Philip, and so they were serued verie richlie, for sir Emeric made them chere with all his heart, and when dinner was done they entered into a faire Garden, and there were together the King and Arthur, the Ladie Margaret and the Archbishop, and other to the number of sixe persons, and all the other companie were without with sir Emeric, and they talked all of Arthur and said how that he had of God many great gifts, for he was both faire and of noble manners, and had atchiued such adventures as were greatlie to bee doubted, howbeit

h.v.

they

they said he had enterprised a great thing to moue warre against the Duke of Burgoy and his nephew: Sirs said, Balisebar doubt nothing of him, for I know wel he hath atchieved oftentimes a greater enterpraise then this is; & as then the King held the Ladie by the hand and said: faire Ladie, beholde here your knight, whome I suppose will doe you good seruice to morrowe. Sir saide the Ladie, I praye God send him good fortune, so they were thus long talking together till it was time to goe to their restes, then euerie man departed, and the King, Arthur, Philip and master Steuen, lodged all together in one chamber, and the Ladie departed into her chamber right ioyfull of her good aduenture that God had sent her, and all that night she slept but little for ioy, but alwaies in her prayers thanking God & beseeching him to aide and succour her champion, and likewise Sir Emorie and all the rest of the citie.

How the next daie the master answered for the Ladie, and Arthur tooke her quarrell in her hand, against the Dukes Nephewe Sir Isembart.  
Chapter 165.

In the morning the King and Arthur arose, and all other Barons and knightes of the Citie, and went and heard diuine seruice, and after seruice they rung the common Bell of the Towne, and thereby assembled all the commonaltie of the Citie together before Sir Emories house, to the intent to keep this knight Arthur, that the Duke nor none of his should doe him hurt or treason, and the same daye there came to Sir Emories house all the Kings power, and all Sir Philips strength, and all other knightes pertaining to King Emendus, who to overcome thether to the battell betwene Arthur and the Dukes nephew. When the king entred into the hall, and ther was Arthur and master Steuen, Sir Philip of Sabarie, Sir Balisebar, Sir Artaude, Sir Dolour, and Sir Micer, & also the Ladie Margaret, and there they desired how they shold be ordered in y<sup>e</sup> iourney. Then the

the Duke of Burgoy sent to Sir Emories house commanding him that he should incontinently bring the Ladie Margaret with him to his court, and also the Duke caused to be cried throughout all the citie, that on paine of death all the nobles of the citie shuld come to the court to do homage to his nephew Sir Isembart, and when the Dukes messengers had shewed the Ladie how she should come to the Court, to the intent to be married: then the master answered & said: Sirs, shew vnto the Duke your Lord how that shortly she shall come to the Court, and ther do euerie thing she ought. Then departed the messengers and went to the Duke & his nephew, and shewed them how that the Lady was not provided of good counsaile, for all the knightes of the Citie were in her companie, and more then five hundred other, & the most part of all the commons of the Citie, and also they shewed how there was a knight with her who would maintain her quarrell, and when the dukes nephew heard that, being overcome with pride, he said: What knight is that, certainly if he meddle anie thing with the matter, I shall hang him by the necke, and therfore he doth but ill to come to be of her counsaile, howbeit there is an olde proverbe y<sup>e</sup> saith, Oftentimes he wanteth of his wil that foolishly thinketh, and so it fared by this dukes nephew, for ere it was night he was in greater ieopardie the this knight was, for he left his life to pledge. When the king & Philip went into the pallace, and the Duke and his nephew did meet them, and so brought them into his Court, and there in the open hall they sate them downe. Then anon after came the Ladie, & Arthur on her one side, and all the other Nobles and Burgees, and commons of the citie did follow them, and thus they were a great companie that entered into the pallace, and when the King sawe her he arose, and so did the Duke, but his nephew of proude heart sate still, and would not rise, wherof he was much blamed of euerie person that sawe him, and when the people were all silent, master Steuen said to the Duke: Sir you thus commanded these this Ladie that she should come to your Court, beholde, here she is,

is to know what in your pleasure and wil. When the Duke  
nephew as he that was full of pride arose on his feet, & sayd  
sir Clarke we haue nothing to doe with you, therefore bee  
you in peace and let vs alone: Sir saide the master, for a  
pore Clarke I am reputed with them y know me, & as for  
that which I haue said, it is for this Lady, and I thinke she  
will auouch my saying, how saie you madame, be you plea-  
sed that I shall speake for you or no: Certainly saide the  
Lady, I will keepe firmly all that euer you haue sayde or  
shall saie, and as to you sir Duke, I require you to doe mee  
right this day, and if you will not, I put both me and al my  
goods and lands into the handes of the king of Ardenne  
of sir Philip his nephew Duke of Sabarie, who are both  
here present: Certainlie faire damsell said the Duke Phi-  
lip, doubt you not that anie bodie shall do you wrong where  
I am present. Well madame said the king, I receiue you  
with a right good will into my handes sith it is your plea-  
sure so to put your selfe. When the Duke of Wygoz sayde:  
Damsell I will doe you right, therefore master speake you  
on and shew what you will in this ladies behalfe: Sir said  
the master, I say how that you and your nephew haue sent  
for my Lady Margaret who is now here present, therefore  
if it please you shew us what is the cause. When the Duke  
nephew sir Isembart said, sir Clarke I will shew you the  
cause, it is so that I am fullie purposed to giue her in mar-  
riage to a Barbour of mine, & also here openlie I craight-  
lie command all the noble men and Burgeses of this Ci-  
tie, & of the land of Argenton, on pain of losing their lands,  
that incontinentlie this day they come and doe homage to  
me as to their chiefe Lord and gouernour, & they that will  
not doe thus, I forbid them their heritages that they hold, &  
not to be so hardie as to enter into them anie more. When  
the master said, sir we perceiue well what good right you  
would doe to this Lady if there were no knight that would  
aunt, were you howbeit I will not spare to speake accord-  
ing to right: Noble Duke it is of truth that all the people  
of the land of Argenton, as well the noble men and Burgeses

yes, as the common people, haue heard and sene, & are well  
assured, that sir Wiceer sometime Lord of the land of Argen-  
ton, was right heire, and this noble Lady Margaret here  
present was lawfullie descended from him, and is heire of  
all the heritage and goods pertaining to her foresaid father,  
and therefore sir as well all the high Barons of this Citie  
and land of Argenton, and Knights and Burgeses, as other  
meane people as well such as be here present, as they that  
be absent, reputeth, taketh, and holdeth her for their natu-  
rall Lady, being lawfull heire of all the land of Argenton:  
furthermore sir I saie that sir Isembart your nephew here  
present, in doeth wrongfullie and without cause to disherit  
this Lady of her heritage, and hath already put out al her  
Officers, and hath set in their stead Officers of his owne,  
therefore we desire you that this Ladies lands may be de-  
liuered againe to her, and that she may be recompenced for  
such wrongs as she hath had, or else let him shew a lawfull  
cause why she should lose her lands. Master Clarke said sir  
Isembart, I will shew you no cause why, but I will keepe  
it whether she wil or no: then said the master, here lacketh  
right, but sir Duke as you bee a righteous Judge, lette vs  
haue iustice: then the Duke said, nephew you must tell the  
cause why you will with-holde her heritage. Well sir said  
he, sith it pleaseth you I will shew the cause: Sir Clarke it  
is so, that the father of this Lady for the great loue that he  
had to me, after that we were once accorded together before  
the duke here mine vnckle, at y last it fortuneth that a grie-  
uous maladie toke him the which cost him his life, and ere  
he died, because of the good companie that I kept him, and  
for the entire loue that he had to me, he gaue me generallie  
all his lands, without reseruing of any thing to himselfe or  
anie of his, and so gaue me his gloue in record of full posses-  
sion thereof, and this Lady is his daughter, whom her own  
father did disherit, and not I, yet her father desired me that  
I would make her a Duane, and giue her thirtie pound of  
yearlie rent to finde her withall, but because that her fa-  
ther loued me so well, and that it is a hard thing to make a  
young

young lusty Damsell, a Puerne, for oftentimes such are as-  
 terward troubled, considering it is harde to resist against  
 nature, therefore in eschewing of such inconueniences, I sup-  
 pose to marrie her, and assigne to her two hundred pound of  
 yerlie rent, and I will that she shall do her homage to me,  
 as to her chiefe Lord: then the master saide vnto the Duke,  
 sir I shall make sufficient ans were in this case, but first we  
 will haue assuraunce of him, whatsoeuer he saide, hee shall  
 moue at this time no strife therefore, and my Ladie here  
 for her part in likewise shall make you assuraunce. Why  
 said sir Nembart, who is it that will bee pledge or meddle  
 for the Ladie. When sir Philip Duke of Sabarie stept forth  
 and saide: I am here present who will bee pledge for this  
 daie, & likewise saide more then five hundred other Barons.  
 Well said the Duke of Beago, I will be pledge for my ne-  
 phew. What is sufficient though said the master, then truly  
 I shall aunswere you, and whereas your nephew saith, this  
 Ladies father had a great sicknesse, I say that your nephew  
 sir Nembart did murder him and al his, falslie by treason,  
 lying in a waite for him by the way vpon a prepaensed ma-  
 lice, without anie occasion giuen on his parte, and further,  
 more, whereas he saith that it is his possession, all the lands  
 of Argenton, not by right, but it is by fraude, for hee kee-  
 peth it falslie without right, and yet sir if he will acknow-  
 ledge himselfe of the murder of this Ladies father, & how  
 that wrongfullie he holdeth her land, in this Ladies name  
 I require you and so doe wee all, that wee maye haue right  
 iudgement on him, & that it may be done to him as it ought  
 to be done to a traitour, murderer, common theefe, or rob-  
 ber, and sir if he denie all this, suffer this Ladie to proue all  
 this to bee of truth by her knight, who is here present by  
 her, and readie to maintaine her quarrell bodie to bodie a-  
 gainst your nephew sir Nembart. And when the resydue  
 of the Ladies and Barons hearde the master speake so  
 boldly, each of them did point at other, and saide, this ma-  
 ster doubteth little the pride of sir Nembart, who when he  
 heard himselfe called to his owne face murderer, theefe,  
 and

and robber, he was so full of anger y he blushed for despite,  
 and closed his fist, and stept forth, and thought to haue stri-  
 ken the master with a knife that hee had in his hande, but  
 the people separated them, and when Arthur sawe that, hee  
 laid his hand on his sword, saying: sir faire and easlie I  
 would counsaile you, for bee you certaine that if you laie a-  
 nie hand on him, all the world shall not saue your life. Then  
 the great vilaine began to crie thre times, hee is come that  
 shall giue light: wherewithall the king of Miquenie laugh-  
 ed at the vilaine. And when Philip of Sabarie sawe Ar-  
 thur moued, he stept forth, & more then five hundred with  
 him of knightes, and inuironed the Ladie and Arthur, rea-  
 die to aide & defend them if need were. When tidings went  
 abroad in the Citie, how that Arthur was likelie to bee  
 slaine in the pallace, wherfore thether came running all the  
 whole communaltie of the Citie, and burst open the Pal-  
 lace gates, and thought to haue slaine both the Duke and  
 his nephew, but the king of Miquenie with much pain ap-  
 peased the people, till at the last a seruauant of the Dukes  
 came to him and said, sir doe you right to these people, or els  
 you are but deap and all yours, for all the commons of this  
 Citie are here without in your Wallace, and hath broken  
 open your gates, therefore deale wisely I would with you,  
 and when the Duke heard that, he doubted himselfe great-  
 lie, and would faine that he had ben in his owne Countrie.  
 Then Arthur saide to him, sir it is of truth all that the ma-  
 ster hath said of your nephew, how that he is a murderer,  
 traitour, theefe, and robber, heere is my gage to proue it  
 true my bodie against his in mortall battaile, for this La-  
 dies sake. When the vilaine began to crie as he did before,  
 and Arthur cast downe before the Duke his gloue, wherby  
 he answered & said: sir knight you speake largely, I knowe  
 not what moueth you so to do, but I praise you refrain your  
 words, if my nephew hath done anie trespasss against this  
 ladie, I am puissant enough to make her such amends, y she  
 shall hold her self content, & I pray you faire damsell put all  
 this matter into my handes, and I promise you I shall so  
 doe,

doe that you shall be well content therewith: Sir saide the  
master, you are a right wise and a sage Prince, and are wel  
worthie to giue counsaile in great matters, if it please you  
to doe as I shall shew you. your nephew did strike off by  
treason this Ladies fathers head, and if you will therfore  
strike off your nephews head, and giue it to this Damsell  
in recompence of her fathers head, then she shall be content,  
or else she shall be defended by her knight, and when sir  
Kembart heard all that, he was so sore chafed with ire, that  
he said, there should neuer be made anie accord in that mat-  
ter, but onelie by the swoorde, and when that I haue van-  
quished this knight, I shall hang him by the necke, and shall  
burne this Clarke and Damsell in a fire, and hee did cast  
downe his gage, being counsailed by his knightes, for they  
beloued verilie that there was not in all the world so good  
a knight as he. When the bilaine cried out, he is come that  
shall giue light. But the master said to the Duke, sir do as  
right requireth, receiue these gages, and so with great pain  
at the last the Duke tooke them vp, and then the battayle  
was concluded to be incontinentlie the same daie. When sir  
Kembart went to arme him, and the Ladie lead Arthur to  
sir Emerics house, and there his knightes did arme him, &  
the master saide to him, for Arthur, beare this daie in this  
mortal battaile your white shield, and he answered and  
said: if God be pleased I will not beare it for feare of one  
knight, nor yet for two such as he is. Thus it was know-  
en throughout all the Citie howe their Ladie was arming  
of her champion at sir Emerics house, and how that the bat-  
taile was agreed to be the same daie, then all the Belles in  
euerie Church began to ring, and all the people of the Citie  
and the countrie besought God to helpe and succour Ar-  
thur, & the Chanons, Priests, and Clarke, in Copes of gold  
and sylke, all bare footed prayed to God for their Ladies  
champion, and all these processions came and met Arthur  
in the streete, who as then was mounted on his horse, and  
Phillip Duke of Sabarie with him, & more then five hun-  
dred other knights in his companie, and when Arthur saw  
these

these processions, and the Bishop mytred, and all bare foo-  
ted, his heart yearned and he wept for pittie, and hee did a-  
light from his horse and kneeled downe, and prayed with  
them. When Arthur and all his companie mounted againe  
on their horses, and thus he was brought into the field, the  
whole Cleargie of all the Citie were on their knees making  
their prayers to God, that he would that daie be helpe and  
succour to their Ladie and her champion. When the King  
of Aquitaine came into the field and commaunded his ne-  
phew sir Phillip Duke of Sabarie to keepe the field, so that  
there should no wrong nor treason bee wrought there that  
daie.

When sir Phillip armed himselfe and tooke in his com-  
pany Bisebar, sir Peuelon, sir Ancean, sir Autaude, & wel-  
nigh to the number of five hundred knightes of the Court  
of Emendus. When the Ladie came to the field with more then  
a thousand of her men with her. When sir Kembart was  
armed, and as he passed by the people euerie man said, goe  
thy waie, we praise God that thou maist die an euill death,  
and when he was in the field where Arthur abode for him,  
the master said to the Duke, sir a mortal battaile ought not  
to be done without an oath. When the Duke caused to be  
brought forth a booke, and Arthur tooke his oath and said,  
by the contents of this holie booke sir Kembart the Duke  
of Bygozs nephew who is here present, murdered, or cau-  
sed to be murdered falselie and without cause the Lorde of  
Argenton father to the Ladie Margaret here present, and  
wrongfullie he would disherit her, and there with hee filled  
the booke, and leapt vpon his horse as lightlie as though  
he hadde bene but in a Jacket, and so let himselfe apart,  
and stretched him on his horse, and all that viewed him  
saide, behold the countenance of yonder knight, see how  
hee doeth himselfe on his horse and plungeth downe his  
shield, and the King and all the other also did well behold  
him, and praised him in their hearts aboue al other knights  
that euer they sawe.

When sir Kembart tooke his oath and saide, that as  
I. God

God should help him, he neuer flew the losse of Argensfort, nor neuer so much as thought it, and then hee would haue killed the booke, but he might not, & in his rising vp hee had such a paine in his head that almost thereby he lost his sight, which caused all the people that saw him to say that he had but an euill countenance, that seemed he was in the toying, than he leapt vp vpon his horse very heauily, & Arthur was ready prepared for him on the other part of the reede. Then the Duke of Wigornie praised Sir Grombert his nephew that he should leade the battaile and said, how that he would make the peace and accord of both sides, but in his wife hee would so doe, but sware that hee would neuer make peace till that he had the head of his enemye from his bodie, & the laide bent that diuers think to doe many things, the hurt whereof lighteth on their owne neckes, and so it fared with him. And whan the duke saw that he could make no peace, he commaunded that they should doe their best: than both the knights set spurs to their horses and made them run with great fury, and strake ech other with great & mightie speares, so that both knights were of great force, and they encountered so rudely that both their speares all to shouered to their flises, and they rushed so together with their bodies and helmes, that they fel downe both to the earth. But Arthur who was the more lustier knight quickly leapt vpon his feete and drew out traunchet his good sword, and all that season Sir Grombert lay still on the earth his feete vppward and his head downeward. And whan Arthur sawe that he lay so breasely, he leapt to him and lift him vp, and layde his shilde vnder his head, and withdrew him selfe a little from him, wherefore hee was greatly praised of the King and of all the other people. And the King saide to his newel, Sir Philip it seemeth well this knight hath a right noble and a gentle heart. Morely saide the duke Philip it can be none other wise but that he must needs descend of a noble blood, for there is in him no whit of villanie. And whan Sir Grombert was reuiued out of his traunce, he start vpon his feete and toke his shilde vnto him, and drew

drew his sword, and running to Arthur hee gaue him a greate stroke on the shilde, and strake awaie a pece of his halberke, and the stroke did slide down to the earth. Then he said to Arthur, you made me right now to sal in a sleepe, but ere it bee night I will make you sleepe so that you shall neuer wake.

Then Arthur answered him and said, Sir you promise verie much, but I cannot tell whether you bee able to performe it, and therewith Arthur strake him on the helme with such force, that hee bare awaie a great pece thereof, so that one of his eares might well be seene, then he cast his sheld before him, and Arthur gaue him such another stroke that hee claued his sheld a sunder in the middell, and the stroke did passe by his arme, so that the blood followed, and with the same stroke the sword entered into the earth nigh a foote, and all the people that sawe that stroke sayde: Good God what knight is yonder, who maye sustaine his strokes, there is no knight like him, and truelie so he was as then the best knight of the world, for he was of that courage, that the more he had to doe the more hardinesse was in him, and when Sir Grombert felt himselfe wounded, hee strake Arthur on the helme, so that it entered till it came to the coise of skelle, and then the stroke did glance downe toward to the left side, and strake awaie as much of the halberke as it touched, but it came not nere his flesh, for certaineke if Sir Grombert had bene a true and faithfull man, hee hadde bene a right good knight, for hee neuer found his match before that time, but then hee hadde to doe with him that abated his great pride, and presentlie Arthur strake him on the helme and claued asunder both helme and coise, and as the sword tourned, it cutte awaie one of his eares cleane from his head, and a greate pece of the brawn of his shoulder, and a parte of his harneis, till it came vnto the bare ribbes, and all those that sawe it saide, Jesus howe many any such strokes bee giuen by any knight now liuing.

And

And when Sir Gilembarte felt him selfe so wounded, he was  
enraged with furie and saide: Sir me thinketh you haue  
founde mee, but by all the saintes in heauen I will reuenge  
it, than he lift vp his sword and strake Arthur on the thigh  
so that he bare away a great peece of his barneys. And  
when Arthur felt the stroke so heuy and puissant, he slepte  
a slepe as he that was bothe stronge and light, and well and  
warely put the stroke by, the which was needefull, for if the  
stroke had light vpon him, by all reason he had bene righte  
fore wounded. And than Arthur began to waxe angrie, and  
toke his sword in his hand with great wrath, and addres-  
sed him toward Sir Gilembart and strake him so rudely that  
he cut away arme and shoulde, and all the flesh of his side  
vnto the bare rybbes, and did cut his legges almost cleane a-  
sonder in the thicke of the thigh, & yet for all that the sword  
entered into the earth halfe a foote, than Sir Gilembart fell  
downe to the earth, and Arthur kept ouer him and thrust  
his sword toward his visage and said, false recreant knight  
without thou wilt make open knowledge of thy default, I  
will thrust my sword into thy head. Than he cryed Arthur  
mercie and saide, gentle knight slepe mee not, but send for  
myne vnckle and the Lady Margaret, and for all the other  
Barons, and than I will shew you all the cause. And when  
they were all come, he sayde: Damosell certainly I slewe  
falsely by treason your father, and wrongfully without a  
cause haue disherited you, wherefore I rende againe to  
you your lande, and crye you mercie in that I haue tres-  
passed to you. Than answered the damosell & said, sir god do  
iudgement to you for his part, for as for mee now haue I  
but right, that you bee in this plight that ye are in. And  
when the Duke heard that, he despyed the Damosell for  
gods sake to pardon him and to saue his life, for he hath lost  
an arme and a legge, and I require you lette that suffice at  
this time. Faire lady said Arthur how say you haue I don  
enough at this time, or els what I do any more, and thus Sir  
Gilembart lay still & cryed for mercie, saying, I yelde me as  
recreant & vanquished like a traitour & murderer.

Then

Then the Duke kneeled downe befoze the Ladie and held  
by his hands and required hir that he might haue his ne-  
nuew in the same plight as he was in. And when the com-  
mon people of the countrie saw the duke desire the ladie to  
pardon his nenuew, they were in great feare lest that she  
would haue granted his request, wherefore a great com-  
pany of them rusht into the pcease till they came where  
Sir Gilembart lay still, and they all at ones laide on him in  
such wyle, that they left no ioynt together with other. And  
when the duke of Wygoz saw that, he was a fraide of him  
selfe, and so toke his horse and fled his way homeward into  
his own countrie as fast as he might. Than King of Ar-  
queny saide. Praise God and this knight hath this day  
done you great honour. And than Sir Philip demaunded of  
Arthur how he did, he answered, right well I thank God.  
Than all the Lordes and knights mounted on their horses,  
but the Ladie and manie other people went vnto the great  
cathedral church of the Citie, and there she and they gaue  
thanks vnto our Lorde Jesus Christ, and within a little  
while after Arthur and Sir Philip and all the other Lordes  
and knights came thether, and the Bishop & all the whole  
Clergie receiued Arthur with solempne procession, and so  
for great ioye all the Welles of the Citie were ronge three  
daies to gether, & all the Burgeses throughout euerie wher  
as Arthur should passe, did hange out of their windowes  
and on their walles, cloth of Golde and of Silke, and riche  
carpets and cushions and coverings of greene, and riche  
aparaile of Ermines lay abroade in euerie windowe, and  
faire Ladies and damosells beholding Arthur their cham-  
pion. And when the ladie had done hir prayers, she issued  
out of the minster. Wher began Juglers and tombles, &  
minstrells to make great ioye and sport. And the King led  
this Ladie on the one side, & Duke Philip on the other syde,  
and so led hir forth to the pallas, and all the other barons  
brought for the Arthur, and as he passed throughout euerie  
strete, the Burgeses, Ladies and damosells for ioye dyd cast  
at him floures of pleasure and sayd, God encrease in you  
M.iii. bountie

bountie and honour. And the great bilaine ratiuer daunt-  
ing before for Joye, and cried euen now darkened is tour-  
ned to light. And when the Kinge had brought the Ladie  
to the pallas he saide, now faire ladie ye be welcom home  
to your owne rightfull heritage. Sir said she, God grant  
you the hie tope of Heauen, and kepe and preserve my good  
Knight that hath deliuered me from mine enemies, and sa-  
ued my land.

When anon after Arthur entred into the pallas and  
the maister and all other Lordes and knightes with him;  
and the Ladie saide to Arthur, gentil knight ye haue deli-  
uered to me my land, the which was utterly losse, by your  
noble promise: wherefore I hold the land I haue of God  
and you. Wherefore I will to you make faithfull homage,  
and take you for my lord, the which acknowledging, I will  
make here openlie before all the nobles present.

Madame saide Arthur, for Gods sake saye ye neuer so to  
mee, for that shall ye not doe. Sir saide shee, ye haue given  
it to mee, and of you I hold it, I am but a woman alone,  
and am in purpose neuer to be married, seeing that my lord  
and father is dead, the which I thanke mine enemies, but  
now they haue such rewardes as they haue deserved, and  
I know well as soon as ye depart out of this countrie, the  
duke of Burgoy will assaile me againe in the reuenging of  
his newwes death, and if he can take away from me that  
he hath given me. Faire Ladie saide Arthur I promise you  
I shall helpe you to keepe your right to the best of my pow-  
er, and when so ever and as often as ye send to me, I shall  
leue all things and come to you wher so ever I shall be. Sir  
saide the lady, God give you a C. M. thanks, but for I swore  
to you by the faith that I haue borne to my lord and father,  
that I will keepe no foote of land of that ye haue given me,  
without I make to you homage therefore. And when the  
king heard that he said to Arthur, he take his homage with  
the will needes doe it, and in likewise counselled him duke  
Philip and master Sauten, and many other, at the last with  
much intreatie Arthur take homage of the lady, and of his  
other

other Barons of the land; When beganne there to be made  
great feasts and ioy, and Sir Emerie, Bzilebar, and Artaud,  
were gouernours of the feast and triumph, and when the  
meat was readie, then Arthur was brought forth, and so there  
washed the King and the Bishop, and the Ladie Margaret  
together, and then Arthur and Duke Philip, and master Ste-  
uen, and other, and euerie man after his degree, and so they  
were all in as great mirth and ioy as could be deuised, the  
which ioy indured but a little season, for all their ioy was  
soone tourned into greate trouble, for all the Court was in  
great displeasure, as you shall heare heereafter.

How the same season while the king of Orquenie &  
all these other noble people wer at dinner in great  
ioy and mirth, there came in a messenger from the  
wounded Knight to Arthur, desiring him to come &  
helpe him, or else hee would threaten him of his  
death, wherewith all the Court was sore troubled,  
and ceased all their ioy for the loue of Arthur, for  
incontinently he departed from the Court & went  
with the messenger, and how all the court feared  
him greatly for that enterprife, forther was not a-  
nie that euer returned from that aduenture. cap. 66



This noble Court was in this foresaide ioye,  
and while that they were at dinner, there ente-  
red into the pallas on horsebacke a Squier, and  
his sword girt about him, with his hat in his  
hand, and when he approached nere to the table wheras the  
King sate, he began to cry as loude as he could, where is the  
Knight that is called Arthur of Britaine, if hee be in this  
Court let him aunswere me, and with those words all the  
Court was in peace, so that euerie man might well heare  
him. And when Arthur heard how that hee demaunded for  
him, he answered and said: Friend if you demaund for Ar-  
thur of Britaine, there bee many folkes which reputeth  
me to be the same, therefore beholde I am here readie, for I  
am the same man that you demaund for, say what you wil.  
So saide the Squier I am sent to you, therefore you shall  
heare

heare what I will saie, for it is of truth how that my master sir Dathobon of Burtebise hath heard tidings of you & of your adventures, and so hath he done of many other that could doe him no good, for this knight is verie sicke in his bodie, for I thinke verilie he is nere his death, therefore hee sendeth to you by mee that incontinently without anie longer delaie you come to him and minister to him health, accompanied onely with your squier, and if you doe not thus, incontinently through your default he shall die, of the which death I heere in his name appeale you before the king and all his noble Court, and then Arthur answered him and saide, friend how is it so that I should giue him health, I am but an euill physician to helpe him that is so sicke as you speak of. Sir come to him and he shall shew you all the manner of his sicknesse. Well said Arthur, thinketh he then that I can giue him any good counsaile. Yea sir said the Squier, if you be of that hardynesse & valure as it is of you reported. Friend said Arthur, suffer me till to morrow, & I shall this daie take my leaue of all these Barons and so followe you: Sir said the Squier, are we now in Britaine, if you will goe, come on your waie straight for I will departe, howbeit I will that you knowe that my saide master appealeth you of his death. In the name of God said the king of Quenie, of an ill death I praise to God that he may die, for he hath caused the death of many a noble knight, and so he will doe now of this knight, and so shall we leese his companie. Cruelly quoth Wifemar, would to God I had his head heere. Then the Squier answered the king and said, sir if I might answer were a king, I would saie that you shoulde not curse my master before me, and as to you sir knight that would haue my masters head, you would not goe and seeke to haue it for your weight of fine gold, you wold faine haue it so it might cost you nothing, but you were neuer so hardie to goe seeke for it, the cause is you durst not, and as to you sir knight Arthur, you cause me to tarrie heere ouer long, either come on your waie or else abide heere still, and so the squier was

going

going his waie. When Arthur slept from the table and he maunded for his harneis, and said that all the world should not cause him to tarrie anie longer, thus Arthur went and armed him and came againe into the hall, and saide, I will depart, and so toke his leaue of the king and of all the whole Baronie, who were right sorrowfull for his departing. Then sir Philip and more then five hundred other knights would haue gone with him, but the messenger would not suffer any creature to depart with him, but only Bawdwin his squier. When master Steuen came to Arthur and said, sir you goe on a great adventure, for your returne is right perillous, but if God giue you that grace to returne, leaue you for nothing but that you come to the turney before Coz nite at Barthelmewtide next comming, for there shall I be and my Ladies Hauilion with me, I will now returne to the Port Poire, and I shall send Gouvernar after you. Certainly master saide Arthur, if God will that I shall escape this adventure, I shall be at the saide turney, wherefore as now I commit you to God, and so mounted on his horse, & toke with him his white sheelde, and Clarence his good sword, the which were verie needfull for him in that tourney, and so he rode forth and Bawdwin his squier with him. When was all the Court sore troubled for his departing, and the king commaunded to take vp the tables, and to trusse all his stuffe, for he said hee would depart incontinently. When the Ladie Margaret hadde thought to haue caused him to tarrie, but she could not in anie wise, and so in the same houre he departed, and all the other Lords and knights, so that there abode no more with the Ladie Margaret but her owne knightes. The master also said that he would goe to the Port Poire, and when all the Court was departed, the master came to the Ladie and said: Madame will you command me any seruice vnto the Marques your vnckle who is at the Port Poire. And the Ladie desired him to tarrie two or thre daies till such time as she had set all her land in some good order, and then she promised to goe with him to the Port Poire to see her vnckle, the which re-

II, v.

quest

most chearfully vnto him: for with all his heart, for he  
 loued her entirly; and had set his whole heart and loue on  
 her, howbeit she knew it not at then; then the Ladie orde-  
 ned her Bailiues, and Priouettes, and other Officers and  
 keepers of her land, by the good aduise and counsaile of the  
 master, and receiued homage of all her people, and there she  
 made sir Gomerie principall governour aboue all other, and  
 when she had ordained all this, then she took her horse and  
 twelue of her knightes with her, and so rode forth with the  
 master to see her vnckle, & as they rode together the master  
 discovered to her at his affection, how that he loued her with  
 perfect and faithfull loue, with the which wordes her heart  
 was so fired, that from that time forthward she loued him en-  
 tirely, and did nothing but after his counsaile, and promi-  
 sed to owe him good will and fauour, and so at the last they  
 arriued on a Saturdaie at the Port Poire. And when they  
 were come thither, there met them Gouvernar and Jaket,  
 and so the master & Gouvernar tooke dawning the Ladie, then  
 Gouvernar and Jaket demaunded how Arthur did, and the  
 master answered and said, how that he was in good health,  
 and that as then hee was newlye departed to the Castell of  
 Hurtebise in the Countrie of the lost Ile, and shewed him  
 how that he desired that he should come after him, whereof  
 Gouvernar was verie glad, and departed the next daie, and  
 when the Ladie sawe Gouvernar so bigge and so goodly a  
 knight, she demaunded of the master what knight he was,  
 and he certified her how that he pertained to Arthur. In the  
 name of God said she, I thinke it right well, for he seemeth  
 to be of high prowesse: verilie madame saide hee, so he is.  
 Then Gouvernar took the Ladie and lead her into the Pal-  
 lace, and the Marques came forth the same time and met  
 them, who knew nothing before of their coming, and as  
 soon as she sawe her vnckle her heart trembled, when she  
 remembered the death of her father, and so she ranne & em-  
 braced him, weeping for ioy & sorrow, for ioy that she sawe  
 him alive, & for sorrow of the remembrance of her father, &  
 when the Marques sawe her and knew well that she was  
 his

his niece, incontinently he remembered the death of her fa-  
 ther his brother, with the which remembrance his heart  
 closed, in such wise, that of a great space he could speake no  
 word, and so late them downe on a bench, and when the la-  
 die could speake, she said, deere vnckle & friend I neuer saw  
 my good father since he departed with you, I praye you tell  
 me whether you haue sene him or no, I desire you answer  
 me being but a poore Orphane. And when her vnckle heard  
 her saie so, he thought his heart did breake for sorrow, and  
 said: Ah my niece and deere loue, both you and I haue lost  
 him, and you are disherited, wee ought therefore greatlie to  
 complaine of our hurt, and sir Isembart I praye to God that  
 thou maist die an euill death, that hast thus brought vs in-  
 to this dolorous misfortune. Sir saide the Ladie, an euill  
 death, he is dead, and so began to tell him all the matter, but  
 she could not her sorrow was so great. Then master Ste-  
 uen came to them & shewed the Marques how that Arthur  
 had conquered sir Isembart in plaine battaile, and had re-  
 uered againe to the Ladie her landes, and how that she had  
 made homage vnto Arthur. When the Marques saide, cer-  
 tainelie faire niece you haue done right well to make him  
 homage, for he hath deliuered vs out of pouertie, and hath  
 made vs rich, and he hath well aduenged you on your mo-  
 rderer, and he hath deliuered mee out of the cruell pri-  
 son that I was in, wherefore if ever I may see him againe I  
 will become his man. Thus they talked together so long,  
 at the last the master made them to forget their sorrow, and  
 to be merrie, and then they went to dinner and were serued  
 right richly, and so all that daye they were together, & thus  
 it was. The Ladie abode a great space at the Port Poire, & euerie  
 daie sported with her, & thus they made great ioy together.

How Gouvernar in searching for Arthur had the honour  
 of a turney that was made, by the Earle of the Ile of  
 Perdu, & there Gouvernar was amorous of the Coun-  
 tesse, & how the Earle charged the Countesse that she  
 should not speake to him, whereof euill came to him,

for the next daie Gouvernar did beate him well in the  
tourney, and laie all night after with the Countesse  
his wife.  
Chap. 67.



**A**s sone as the morning was come, Gouvernar  
toke his leaue of the Ladie and of the master, &  
of the noble Marques, and rode forth on his  
wife and Jaket his squire with him, and hee  
was right richlie besene, and mounted on a good and pul-  
saunt horse, and so rode forth eight daies, and neuer coulde  
heare any tidings of that hee sought for, till at the last he a-  
riued in the land of Inde & moze, betwene & realme of So-  
rolois and the Empire, and there he sawe a great riuer, and  
at a crosse waie he encountered a messenger, who bare a  
sutchin on his breast, and also a booke full of letters, & rode  
a great pace, and this was about Saint Laurence tide.  
Then Gouvernar did salute the seruant, and demaunded of  
him what tidings and of whence he was, and he answered  
and said, sir I am pertaining to the Earle of the Ile Perdu,  
and am riding to the strong Castle to a knight named Sir  
Jaques, to the intent that he should come to him to go with  
him

him to a tourney, for the Emperour of Inde hath summo-  
ned my master the Earle to wait on him to Coznite at this  
Barthelme tide next comming, because of a tourney that  
is taken there betwene him & the mightie Emendus, king  
of Sorolois, and because my Lozde thinketh not to bee vi-  
prouided of good knightes, he hath made to be cried a tour-  
ney on mundaie next comming, to the intent to chuse of the  
best knightes that commeth thether to haue them with  
him to the said great tourney at Coznite, therefore I must  
goe to the said sir Jaques to cause him to be with my saide  
Lozde on munday next comming. Well good friend said Go-  
uernar, goe on your waie, God send you good aduenture.  
So then the seruant departed, then Gouvernar said to Ja-  
ket, I am purposed to goe this said turney, for it may hap-  
pen right well that we may there heare some tidings of my  
Lozde Arthur, and so they rode so long till at the last they a-  
riued at the Ile Perdu, whereas they found many knights  
that were already come, so that all the lodgings were ta-  
ken vp, wherefore he had much a doe to get him a lodging,  
but at the last he met with a good burges, who receiued him  
friendly into his house. And when Gouvernar was changed  
he called to him his host & demanded of him all the manner  
of the Earle, and what manner of man he was, who aun-  
swered and said: sir he is a right valiant man and a hardye  
knight, for there are but few that may compare with him  
in deedes of armes, and he hath to his wife the most fairest  
Ladie that is in all the world, except the king of Soroloys  
daughter, and for her beautie heere resorte many strange  
knightes, both Dukes, Earles, & many other good knightes,  
and because he doth tourney to morrowe, he knoweth well  
that many knightes will be at his house for to see his wife,  
therefore he hath caused the gates of his Castle to be fast  
shut and defended, that whatsoener he be shal not enter: the  
gates were not open since none yesterdaie. So sayde Go-  
uernar, in the name of God I shall assaie to enter, and if I  
can, to see the faire Ladie, then he called to him Jaket, and  
commaunded him to bring forth his horse, for hee saide hee  
would

Would goe and assaile his horse against the next date that he should turne, & so Jakes brought him his horse & mounted thereon, and so rode forth through the streetes of the towne, till he came to the castle gate, the which he found fast shut, & then he bade the Porter open the gate, for he said he would enter into the castle, and then the Porter demanded of him what he had to doe there: Friend said Gouvernar, I would speake with the good ladie of this place. Merily sir saide the Porter, you may not enter in at this place, for my Lorde hath defended the contrarie: for he hath commaunded that whatsoeuer he be that cometh hether, none should enter, wherefore I dare not let you in. Yes I pray you said Gouvernar, and I will giue you whatsoeuer you wil demand of me. Then the Porter opened a little window, and there hee saue that Gouvernar was a right goodlie knight and browne of visage, and saue how that he rode on a meruailous faire horse, then thought he well that he was some noble man, and said vnto him, sir, if you will giue me the horse you ride on I will open you the gate: Open the gate then at once, and I will giue him to you: Sir saide the Porter, will you promise me as you bee a true knight that I shall haue him: Merilie I promise you that you shall haue him as I am a true knight: Sir saide the Porter, I praise you farrie a little while and I will goe in and speake with my Lord: Well said Gouvernar, I praise you high you againe as fast as you may. Then the porter went to the Carle and saide, sir there is at your gate a meruailous faire knight, who hath so great desire to see my Ladie, that he will giue me his horse that he rideth on, the which is well worth by likelphode an hundred pound, on condition that I would open the gate and let him in, therefore sir please it you to shew me your minde in this case. Howbeit saide the Carle, my mind was that none should enter in at this place, & yet I will not that thou shouldest leese the gift that he would giue thee, therefore go thy waie and open the gate, & take thy horse, & then he said to the countesse his wife: Madame your der is a knight that hath giuen a rich gift to speake w<sup>th</sup> you, there,

therefore I charge you as deere as you holde my loue, that when he is come you make to him no maner of semblance, nor speake ante word to him whatsoeuer he say to you, if ye doe otherwise you shall displease me: A sir said the Lady, for Gods sake I aske mercie, sir we know not what knight he is, nor of what valure, & if he haue giuen a rich gift to speake with mee, he shall haue but a small reward for his curtesie if I shall keepe my speech from him, against loue no man can be, and I am a Gentlewoman of a great power, therefore I should greatly trespassse and I should not speake to him if he speake to me. By the faith that I owe vnto God sayde the Carle, if you trespassse against my commaundement I will displease you at the hart. Well said the Ladie, for your loue I am content, but if anie hurt grow therby I pray to God it may fal on you. Then the Porter opened the gate to Gouvernar, and there the Porter toke his horse, and Gouvernar went forth into the pallace a foot, and the Carle & such other knights as were with him, met Gouvernar, and did salute him, and beheld him meruailously, and so he passed forth till he came wher as the countesse was, & went to her and said: Madame, God y<sup>e</sup> soymed all things giue you this day health, ioy, and peace, and blessed be the renoume that runneth of your valure, bountie, and fresh beantie, for now I see wel it is of truth, and moze then is or can be reported. And when the Countesse heard him she answered no maner of word, the which grieved her right soze in her heart, and therewith she cast downe her looke toward the ground, and Gouvernar made counteriance to salute the other Ladies, & so late down among them, and at the last he said to the Countesse: Faire Ladie I am a knight that passeth throughout this country, and it was shewed mee howe that you were in this castle, wherefore I thought I would not passe by without seeing of you, therefore I am come to offer my selfe to be your knight, and to doe all that I may doe for your sake, wherefore madame I require you to shewe mee what is your pleasure, for I am verie desirous to knowe it, and the Countesse spake no worde to him againe, but cast downe her

her looke downe, wherewith she was right soze grieved at heart, and when Gouvernar sawe that she spake no worde, he was right sozrowfull and saide: Madame will you not speake to me, I haue heard renoume of you that you were free and gentle of heart, and of such curtesie, that you coulde beare none hatred or malice in your heart, nor do anie iniurie to anie manner of person, wherfore faire Ladie aunswere me some manner of worde, howbeit for all that shee spake no word againe, and therewith water was brought forth, and all they washed and sate downe to dinner, and the Earle caused Gouvernar to sit nexte to the Ladie, to the intent to doe him the more annoiaunce and shame, and there Gouvernar carned to the Ladie right goodlie with his knife, & oftentimes spake to her, but she wold neuer give him answer againe, wherewith Gouvernar was so soze displeased, he neither did eate nor drinke but a little, for hee sawe well how the Ladie spake to all other, but in no wise shee wold speake to him, and also the Countesse was right soze displeased in her heart because she durst not speake to him, & thus they were in this case till they were taken up from dinner, and then Gouvernar tooke her boldly by the hand and saide, madame I would faine speake a little with you, and so hee led her vnto a faire window, then hee said: I wote Ladie it is for none ill or despite, or for anie trespass that I haue made to you or to anie of yours that you doe to me such discourtesie that you will not speake to mee, you haue the name to be the most free and gentlest of heart of anie Ladie now living, for all bountie and curtesie is said to be in you, therefore I wote Ladie shewe somewhat of your curtesie to mee as in speaking but one word, and faire and gentle Lady do so much honour as now to speake to me, for as God helpe me I am ashamed for ever if you doe not, for it will be sayd to morrow of me how that I am but a foolish knight and outrageous, for by mine outrage it shall be said that I haue lost the hearing of the speech of the most fairest Ladie of the world, madame I require you put from mee this reproch, open to me a little your sweet mouth, wherein is all courtesie,

tesse, and speak to me what word, for madame as God helpe me my hart sitteth in my booke, for I am in feare least that ye be displeased with me for some trespass that I haue don, but for all that she spake no word againe to him, and yet she was as soze grieved in hir hart as he. Gouvernar hope and talked so long to this ladie till at the last two of hir gentilwomen came for hir that she should go into hir chamber & take hir rest. Then Gouvernar at hir departing laide his arme about hir and saide madame I see well I must needs depart from you at this time, I will go to my lodging right soon, and ye shall go and rest you and sleepe and take little care for my great griefe, how be it madame I say vnto you that I will neuer depart from this town till ye haue spoken to mee. And so thus talking he brought hir to hir chambrer doore, and he saw well where there was a waye out of the chamber into a faire orchard. Then he said, madame ye will not speake to mee, but I promise you I will come this same night in yonder orchard & so to your chamber to speake with you, though I die therefore, with I haue taken that enterpryse in my mynde, either I will die or els ye shall speake to mee. And therewith the countesse entred into hir chamber without speaking of any word to him. And then Gouvernar returned to his lodging into y town right soze displeased in his hart. And when Jakes sawe him come on fote, hee demaunded of him where was his horse. And he answered and saide, in faith friende it goeth not well with me. Wha he saide Jakes I thinke ye haue played aways your horse bicause ye would not tourney to morrow with the knights of this countrey, well shamefull knight to morrow when I see other gentil knights tourney. I shall shew them how that ye lye a sleepe in your chamber. Then Gouvernar layde him downe on a bedde all replete with yre, till it was night. And then the said Erle commaunded all his knights that they should depart and go to their restes, bicause they should be trauailed on the next daye, and also he saide to the countesse his wife, madame go this night into your chamber and take your rest,

kercheise and his mantell, and kneeled downe and said: Madame, I pray God giue you good life and good night. And she answered and said: Sir knight, in an ill night and time you be entered into my chamber without my licence, wherefore you be not welcome vnto mee, but for your labour I will cause you to be hanged by the necke, and these wordes she spake faire and easlie because she wold be not be heard, and furthermore she said, sir knight, how durst you bee so bolde to breake my walles and enter into my chamber, by the mother of God you shall die therefore. Then Gouvernar answered and said, right dære and sweete Lady, blame me nothing therefore, for as God help me my heart died in my booke when so high a Lady as you be woulde not speake to me, for as it is said, all goodnesse and gentlenesse is comprised in your person, wherefore faire Ladye now doe with me what it shal please you, sith you haue spoken to me strike off my head and you will, for here it is ready, & so he laid forth his head to the Countesse to haue had her striken it off if she list, and when the Countesse sawe him humble himselfe so meeklie, her heart began to melt, and so toke of him some pittie. A madame said Polwret, this knight hath euill employed his courtesie that he hath done to your Dyotter, as to giue him his good horse for you loue, and now you to speake so rudely, he hath done more bountie and curtesie since hee came hether, then euery dyotter that euer came vnto this place to see you, though they were neuer so noble or greates, it is reason that he maye see that he hath not ill employed his gift that hee hath giuen him for your sake, and also hee hath hazarded his life in this behalfe, it came of great gentleness of heart to giue a male his horse, and of a great valoure of courage to put this his life in aduenture for your sake, full little durst any knight of this countrie haue done thus, who be afraid of euery folly, they lacke in their hearts much courage, I saie not all this onely for his sake, for I neuer sawe him afore this day, but by reason I sawe your bath caused him to doe thus, for if he had not loued you he should not haue done this, therefore madame make him an answere as you please.

therefore that ye did to him this daye & speake to him more curtesie. Polwret said the ladye: I thinke not, I am so full of spite, for he hath displeased me with his coming hither, for it is no thank to him though I were shamed for this dede. Madame said: polwret if ye put him out of your chambere at this time of night he shall be espied of the watchmen, & forsaken and shamed, & you shamed, for euery man that shal knowe thereof will say that ye caused him to come, and the more that knoweth therof the worse it is, for when a thing is done it is convenient to let it passe as easely as may be, and to keepe it secret, for all is little enough. Sir knight kneele ye downe & crye my ladye mercie in that ye be come hither without hir licence. Then gouvernar kneeled downe and said, madame for gods sake forgive me this trespassse. And she beheld him mercifullously, for he was faire and gracious, and he was bare headed, and Polwret strake downe his haire with his hand, for it was somewhat ruffled with the winds, and said: A madame behold and see what manner of knight this is, and who is so hard harted that will not forgive him that putteth him selfe in such aduenture al onely to see a faire noble Ladye, certainly I pardon him in your name, for I am sure madame ye will be content therewith. Then the countesse did smile and saide, alwaies ye will play the foole, but so the toke Gouvernar by the hande and caused him to arise vpon his feete, than Polwret had him sit downe by his ladye, but for courtesie he wold not at the first bidding: then Polwret said, sir knight now ye neede not to take any care for any of y<sup>e</sup> knights of this Castell, for your coming hether, & without ye haue feare of a woman, sit downe by my Ladye and make your owne peace, therewith Gouvernar saie downe and embraced and desyred the ladye that she wold pardon him, & so she did, and than Gouvernar al smiling cast forth many pretie and goodly wordes and euer he found the ladye gentle & sweet of hir answers. Then Polwret said, sister Eglenine my ladye me thinketh is now now & from the earth: not for us, let vs watch in the next chamber, for I thinke she wold saie be a bed, & so they



[illegible]

**As for Sir Thors: Madame saide Polwret, he acquiteth him of his promise. Then Gouvernar helld the earle so short, that he was faine to yeld him whether he would or not: Then all the Carles companie came al at once on Gouvernar, but he was strong and light, & gaue so greate strokes and heauies, that he confounded all that euer he attained vnto, and at the last he vnderlew moze then eight Knightes. & when Isabel had presented his present vnto the Countesse, who thanked him much, then he retourned againe vnto his master, and so he had enough to doe, euer to carrie the horses of them that his master had ouerthrowen, to the Barges who was his masters host. Then Gouvernar marked wel wher there was together a great flocke of Knightes, then Gouvernar thrust amongst them so rudelie, that at his first coming he ouerthrew two Knightes together, and so within a short space he departed these Knightes asunder, and gaue such blowes all about him, that euerie man fled befoze him, and all the Ladies saw him doe meruailes with his hands, and they meruailed how that euer hee coulde endure such paine with his bodie, and then as hee retourned from that companie, he met againe the Earle, who as then was remounted, then Gouvernar dashed into the prease till that hee came straight wheras the Earle was, who as then handled right sharplie a Knight of the part that Gouvernar was off, then Gouvernar dashed him to the Earle, and embraced him by the shoulders, and dashed his horse with the spurs, & ouerthrew both the Earle to the ground, and also the Knight that the Earle fought withall, and there he made the Earle to yeld him againe: and when the Countesse sawe that, she smiled right sweetlie and said: Polwret my friend, yonder Knight hath beaten downe two at once, blessed be his vertue, hee is now well reuenged of the Earle my husbande, who would not suffer me to speake with him. Then the Carles companie set on Gouvernar, but hee defended himselfe verie valiauntlie, but they oppressed him so sore, that his horse enfoundered vnder him, and then Gouvernar himselfe leapt on his feete, and there he aduised the Carles Se-**

ne shall

henshall, who had at that time right force and might, and he  
was well mounted upon a good blacke mazzell horse, then  
Gouernar leapt up to him, and took him about the neck  
with his hands, and pulled him so close, that he made him re-  
arise the saddle whether he would or no, and so set him on the  
ground, then Gouernar took his horse and quickly leapt  
up into the saddle with great eager desire into the paces,  
and gave so mighty strokes, that he made all to shiver before  
him, and by that time the Earle was remounted againe, &  
the third time he came behind Gouernar, and embraced  
him with both his armes, so the intent for to have lifted him  
out of his saddle, but hee could not, for hee remounted him, then  
though he had lifted at a great towe. When Gouernar turn-  
ed him to the Earle and took him by the head and pulled  
him downe to his horse mane, & gave him so many strokes  
that hee all to brused him, where with hee fell downe to the  
earth in such plight, that hee could not remount for all the  
goods of the world, then ther fell on him all the Earles com-  
panie, and by that time the earles Senehall was remoun-  
ted, and so he came to Gouernar, and when hee sawe him in  
such doore of high prowesse, hee praised him much in his hard  
and thought to tourney no more that date against him, but  
said, sir knight be you certaine that as many horses as shall  
you this date, I shall pursue you ever of another. When  
Gouernar hadt into the paces, around about him hee laide  
on their heads and visages, that hee made them blinde lyke  
beasts, and at the last his horse failed him, & then the earles  
Senehall brought him another, & when hee was remoun-  
ted, hee strake as freshly among them as though hee had done  
nothing of all that date before, and then hee did so much by  
his prowesse, that every man gave him place and departed,  
& left him in the field all alone. When the Earle was borne  
into the castle in a horse litter, so hee was soe brused, and  
his Senehall came to Gouernar and desired him to goe to  
the castle, but Gouernar would not, but said what should  
I doe there, I know not what manner of people you be, for  
among you you shal daue to speak to any strange knight.  
Then

When the Senehall told well that he said that by the coun-  
sell, wherefore hee blamed much the Earle in his heart, in  
that hee had commaunded him to doe. So then Gouernar  
remounted to the Burges his hall, who made him right great  
cheere and feasted him the nights and Burgeses of y<sup>e</sup> towne  
came thither to see him, and said one to another, behold here  
the valiant knight Gouernar has wonne that date fifteen  
good horses, and hee that men him, for hee was somewhat we-  
rily of that travell. And when the Earle was in the castle,  
hee commaunded that the gates should be set open, and that  
any man should come in whoe hee would, & then hee was  
winne, and the Countesse his wife came to him & deman-  
ded how hee did, hee answered and said how that hee was  
soe brused, & sir said the, and who hath done that, I am  
right sorry for it. The Countesse said hee, thus arayed mee the  
same knight that yesterday gave his horse to my Porter,  
for hee meant to do you. Sir said the, I beleve it well, for I  
thinke hee was displeased with you, because that you soe had  
the that I should not speake to him, I thinke hee remembred  
that to date, wherefore it is good to beware to whom a man  
doth displeasure. When the Earle came into the hall where  
as all the other knights were, and there they were talking  
and enquiring each of other what knight had done best that  
date, and so they all did give the praise to Gouernar. In the  
name of God said the Earle, hee hath beaten me downe thre  
times this same date, therefore I require you get him hether  
to me, for I shall acquaint me with him, for I wil give him  
the one halfe of my landes, on the condition that hee will a-  
bide and dwell with me. Certainlie sir said his Senehall,  
and on that condition I will give you a thousand pound,  
for according to the truth hee is a right good knight. When  
the Earle commaunded his Senehall to goe for him, and so  
hee did & found him at his toffs house, who made him right  
great cheere and honour. And then the Senehall said, sir the  
Earle heareth desireth you to come and speake with him  
in the castle, and sir for Gods sake abide and dwell with  
him, and hee will give you the one halfe of his landes,  
and

and I shall giue you a thousand pound yeralie; and keep  
you true and faithfull companie, & thus talking they went  
forth together toward the castle, and as soone as the Carle  
saw him, he rose vp on his feete, and did him much honour,  
and the Carle caused Gouernar to sit down by him. When  
these tidings ran anon into the Countesse chamber, how  
that the good knight was come, and the Ladies had greete  
delight to see him: When Dowcet saide, madame I thinke  
this knight pleaseth you right well, therefore let vs go see  
him. Certainlie said the Countesse, with a right good will,  
so then they went into the hall, and the Carle and Gouer-  
nar did rise and beris curtesies saluted the Ladies: When  
the Countesse said to Gouernar, sir you shoulde not salute  
me, for I haue done you more discortesse then euer did La-  
die to anie knight without trespassse: Madame saide he, it  
is no trespassse for so high a Ladie as you are to take her  
pleasure of so simple a knight as I am, When the Carle said,  
sir you haue this daie beaten me from my horse, the which  
neuer as yet knight did before, wherefore I owe unto you  
a great raunsome. Sir saide Gouernar, sauing you grace,  
I am not of such vertue nor of such valure as to doe so high  
chualrie as you speak of: Well sir said the Carle, I know  
well how it is, but sir I require you be of my house, and you  
shall be chiefe Controller thereof, for I will that whatso-  
uer you commaund shall be done. Sir saide Gouernar, I  
humble thank you, howbeit I cannot accomplish your de-  
sire, and the more the Carle desired him, the more he said  
nay. When the Carle said to the Countesse, madame I pray  
you desire him, and so she did, howbeit she was not greatly  
bound to doe so much at her husbands desire, but Gouernar  
wilely excused him and said,

Faire Ladie it cannot bee, for I haue a Lady already,  
who must needs be serued of mee and of other farre better  
knightes then I am. Certainlie sir saide the Seneschall, if  
there be more puissance in him then is in you, he surmount-  
eth then all the knightes of the world. Certainlie sir saide  
Gouernar, he is able to cast fire such as I am into the air.

war. Trulie said the Carle, then doe you well to serue him  
faithfullie, wherefore I will require you no farther, howbeit  
that forgetteth me: When the Countesse was right sore  
displeased because hee would not abide, and supper being  
made readie water was brought forth, and they washed, &  
after late downe, and were well serued, and after supper  
Gouernar took licence of the Carle and the Countesse, and  
of all other knightes, and then torches were lighted vp,  
and the Seneschall conuaied him to his hosts house, and the  
Carle commaunded that his host shoulde take nothing of  
him for his dispeuce, then Gouernar took his leaue, and  
the next morning betimes departed, and commended his  
host to God, and gaue him all the horses that he had wonne  
in the turney, and the Burgeles thanked him heartelie and  
said: In all places wheras Alexander the great conquered  
you may goe without ieopardy, and doe as much as euer he  
did. And so Gouernar entered into his waie, and roade to  
seek his Lord Arthur. Now let vs leaue speaking of Gouer-  
nar and let vs returne to Arthur and to the King of D<sup>q</sup>  
quenie.

How after Arthur was departed from Argenton to  
the castle of Hurtbise to the wounded Knight, who  
had sent for him, in his waie at the last hee found  
at the entering of a faire Forrest three ladies of right  
excellent beautie, of whom the chiefe was called  
Proserpina, Queene of the Fairies, who greatly de-  
sired Arthur of his loue, but in no wise he would a-  
gree thereto, and there he lost his varlet that was  
his guide, wherefore it behoued him to tarry there  
all that night, for it was dark, & he knew not whe-  
ther to go.

Chap. 69.

It happened that when the king of D<sup>q</sup>quenie was depar-  
ted from Argenton, he rode straight into his own coun-  
trie, for to make readie his people to goe at Barthelmew-  
tide to the turney at Coznite, and Duke Philip went to  
Sabaria

Arthur to apparrell his people, and Sir Arueson, Sir Anwen, Sir Artando, and all the other knightes of King Oriens was returned to the Kings Court, and there recounted the high prowesse of Arthur, and how he had sped at Argenton with the Duke of Wygoz's nephew, & how that the wounded knight of the castle of Hurtbise had sent for him, & how that he was gone thither. When the King was sorrie in his heart, for he had great feare of him least that he should neuer retourne againe, for hee knewe well that many good knightes were perished ther, and in especiall Florence was right sorrowfull, for there was none that coulde recomfort her. And Arthur ever rode forth after the Squier, and so rode thre daies together without finding of anie adventure, and the fourth daie he rode till it was none, and then they arrived at a knights place who was vnkille to the squier that was Arthurs guide, and there they were wel received, and so late downe to dinner and were well served, and when Arthur had dined, then they mounted on their horses againe, and rode forth till it was night, and then they entered into a little narowe waie betweene a faire forrest and a greene medow, and rode welnigh the space of halfe a mile, and the Mone began to shine faire & bright, and at the last they came to a waie that they must needs enter into the thicke of the forrest, and at last Arthur espied a faire lake a delectable place, whereas he sawe thre faire Ladies meruailouslie white and of great beautie, but shee that was in the middell was most faire, for she onelie had more beautie then both the other two, and yet they were as faire as could be deuised. And when Arthur had espied them, he set his feet to the earth and lighted from his horse, and ther that was in the middell rold when the other two were by, and there Arthur saluted them right curteouslie, and they him again, and the Squier that brought Arthur thither toke one of the Ladies in counsaile, & when they had talked together a good space they went into the thicke of the wood, they two together alone, & were not sene againe all y night, & the other y was in the middell had to name Josephina, & she toke Arthur &

set

Arthur downe by her & held him by the hand, & behelde him sedesly in the face, & said, sir you be hartelie welcome, and he answered and said: Madame I praise God keep you from all ill. Sir said Josephina, I haue great desire to speake to you, & to knowe her that hath conquered as I haue hearde the Duke of Wygoz's nephew. Madame said Arthur, I wold wilfaine that they were such valoure in me as that I might achieve such a deede. Well said Josephina, I know right well how it is, and also of other of your doodes, and sir you be contented that right greates renowne runneth on you, be it what you be free, chaste, faire, & gracious, & to be a good knight & a true gentleman, and as for beautie I see well how it is. Well madame said Arthur, I praise God amend in me y lacketh of that you speake of. What is wel said quoth y Lady then she laid her hand on his head, and demanded of him what his name was. Madam quoth he, I am called Arthur, Arthur said she, now by the faith that you owe to her that you loue best, & to God, George, haue you any louer yet, I am sure my demand is but follie, for so faire a knight, so young, & so valiaunt in armes as you, cannot bee without a louer, wherfore I am certain you haue one; but I praise you she to me what she is, by the faith that you owe vnto her, and I promise you neuer to accuse you, and therewith she beheld him, and smiled a litle and said: I pray you speake and shew me the plainesse by the truth that you owe to father and mother, if you haue anie aloue. Madam said Arthur, you charge me right sore, therefore verilie I will shew you the truth: Madame so it is that I cannot tell whether that I haue a louer or not, but of one thing be you sure, I am a louer, for I loue entirelie with all my hart: And what is she quoth the Lady, I praye you by the faith that you owe vnto her. As God helpe she said he, I cannot tell you, for I neuer saw the person that I loue. What said the Lady, then you loue and know not who, who hath set you on this follie, wherefore loue you thus? Madam quoth he, I loue because of the great vertue that is in her, for she is a true, gracious, and a gentle lady of hart. Why sir knight, how know you that?

Madame

Madame to hathe shewed me that there is of such conditions. Well quoth the Ladie, what and there haue bene shewed you more then truth in that behalfe. And so then shall doe you right, I demaund of you, think you that all that is said of me and others to be of truth? Certainly madame, some list peradventure to speake sometimes more then they knowe. Well friend Arthur quoth shee, then you be but a foole, by my counsaile leaue such follie, and lose no longer your time without reason, you bee now in your youth, and in your beautie, wherfore you should haue dwell in your loue in your armes, and leaue a loner's life in duert and solace, and when it is time to strike for her sake both with speere and sword, and cast downe these knights to the earth by two at once, and leaue seruing thus of the muse, by else you shall be called no more Arthur, but you shall be called the knight that museth, therfore leaue this loue, but behold here in your companie if there bee any thing that pleases you, chose which you wil, the squier that brought you hither museth not, for hee is with him loue, and hath her all night in his armes, behold here the companie of me, who am right faire and young, gentle and pleasant, holding in my hand great heritage, and I am delighted to a king, and both my father and mother dead, and now I am entered in to my land to keepe my realme which is great and noble, I am also right young, about the age of sixteen yeaeres, and would loue verie well some gentle knight that would help me to keepe my land and realme, and so counsaile me for my weale in all my business, such a one would I loue and keepe, entirly. Arthur you neede not to be deceiued by your loue, louing of the muse, and take me here inuide. And when Arthur heard her, he beheld her look, and with a depe sigh said, A deere Ladie, as God helpe me my heart is set on her, that I shewd you of, with all my faithfull loue and thought, in such wise that I am not master of my selfe, nor mine heart is not mine owne, for it hath forsaken mee for this said Ladie, so that I am nothing Lorde of mine owne heart, nor with all the power that I haue I cannot with-

drow it from hir, for I thinke verely that she hath put my hart into hir hart, therfore I haue good hope that they shal be good companions and faithfull together seing that it wil not come againe to me, and loue his sweet companion, therfore faire ladie blame me not though ye loue me that I doe not accomplish your desire, for as god help me I cannot, for my hart is not mine owne, therfore madame blame me not with my hart hath forsaken me for an other, but as I be saued ye be full gentill and noble, and right happy shall be he that shall attaine to your grace, for your beautie is such that euery person that seeth you will put to their paine to seeke the waies to attaine to your high loue, for by the faith that I owe to my Lord and father, I had rather haue your loue if it might be, than to be king of al France, but by my soule madame, ye may behold here my body without hart, wyne without sauor, a faire bodie without loue auaieth nothing. Well friend Arthur quoth Borselin many there be that findeth faultes and wil seke for no remedie, you lay the blame on your hart, such folke as wil not doe as they be required, can finde fables ynough to finde occasion of excuses. ye haue long mused, and yet ye purpose to muse longer, hardly loue ynough, and loue her that your dreame and fantasie sheweth you, and thereby ye shall haue very much Joy by likely hooode, for your musing will doe you much honour, by the faith that I owe to you, I loue my louer faithfully, and I say it by you behold here Arthur who dremeth & museth, behold here the shadow without the sunne light, behold here the bodie without hart, this is he that loneth and woteth not whom, therfore he is feeded of none, therfore friend Arthur take to you the best counsaile that ye can, and God be with you. Than she rose from him and departed into the Wood and hir company with hir. Than Arthur abode ther alone with Batdwine his squier, for the squier that brought him thither was departed, therfore he wist not whether to goe. Than Batdwine said, Sir as God help me, ye ought to be blamed, and why so good friend saide Arthur. Sir because this gentle noble queene that was right now with you who

is so faire, so swete, and so gracious, that shee would faine haue had your company & lone, and thus you let her depart and would not embrace & kisse sweetly her pleasaunt little mouth, wherefore in my minde you are greatlie to be blamed, for as God helpe me I would not haue done so though I had lost my head in y<sup>e</sup> paine: Oh good friend said Arthur, and what chere then should the swete Florencia haue, and what would she set by me if I should doe as much to another as I would do to her if it pleased her, what would you haue me to make of my mouth a fraine for euery bodie, if she keepe her mouth close for the lone of me, and I then to abandon me to all the world, what honour then were it to me to be common to all the world, what should it then bee said of me, he is a ribade. Well sir said Batwylwin, for all that I coulde neuer haue done so. Thus they mounted on their horses and entered into the woode, and rode they wist not whether so long, till at the last they lost their waie, that they rode they wist not whether, and at the last they came againe to the same Dake from whence they went befoze, and there they tarried all that night, and late on the colde earth in the thicke bushes, and tied their horses to a tree.

How Arthur conquered the castle of Hurtbise, the most strong place of the world, next to the Port Noire, wher was the damsell by whom the wounded knight was hurt, and there Arthur did so much prowesse that the said Knight recouered health. Chap. 70.

**I**n the morning betimes Arthur and Batwylwin arose and shooke their eares to put awaie the feathers from their heire, and so mounted on their horses, and found a little way which brought the out of the Forrest. When Arthur was angrie in his minde because he had lost the squier that was his guide in that manner, for he knew not where to finde the hurt knight, and they rode soorth so long till they entered into a faire meadow, & the they saw on a high motte a faire castle, which was closed with double walles

walles and gates, and at the first gate there was one that watched the passage for all commers, & as soone as he saw Arthur he toke a hozne and blew therein so fiercely that all the valey rung therewith, and with that there issued out of the castel a knight all armed and well mounted, & he made a token to Arthur that he should beware of him. When Arthur toke his shield and flozished with his speare and met so rudely to gether that the knight brake his speare, and Arthur strake him so that his speare went throughout his bodie more than a foote, and so pulled out his speare againe and dyelled him selfe againste an other knight that came rudely at him, and he strake Arthur in such wise that his speare broke in the midst, but Arthur strak him so fiercely y<sup>e</sup> he ouerthrew both hozs and man to the earth stark dead. When there issued out of the castell v. knights, and they all ran on Arthur at once, and Arthur than toke his sword and strake so the first that he cleave his head cleane asonder, & the other did kill his horse vnder him, but than he set his hande on the hozs of him that he had slaine befoze, and so lept into the saddle, and the first that he encountred lost his heade: and when the other saw that they fled away as fast as they might, and Arthur followed them, & in his pursute he slew two of them, and as the fift would haue entred in at the castell gate, Arthur strake of his head cleane from the shoulders. When he entred into the castel, and ther he saw befoze him an other stronge wall, and it was so high that it was meruaile, & it was enuironed all about with a great deepe water that issued out of sondry fountaines, and as he behelde how that he might entre into the place, there came to him y<sup>e</sup> same squier that caused him to come from Argence, and he bid salute him. And when Arthur saw him he knew him right well and demaunded of him the cause why that he left him in the Forrest. As God help me sir, my lady led me soorth and I durst not displease hir. Well saide Arthur, any where is the knight that ye saye hath sent for mee. Sir quoth the squier he is in a chamber in this Castell, where as I thinke you shall neuer see to morowe this tyme,

for Sir you carrie from him ouer long, which is great sinne: Friend said Arthur, I praye you bring mee whereas hee is that I might speake with him. When the Squier brought him to the knight, and Arthur did salute him, & the knight right pittionlie and with a soft voice saide, Sir you be hartely welcome: Sir said Arthur, you haue sent for mee, behold now here I am, therefore declare vnto me your wil. When the knight enforced himselfe to speake, and saide, Sir for gods sake be you not displeased though you be come hether for my sake, for the sicke creature seeketh ever for health, and to the intent that you may bee certaine of my sickness, if you be not displeased I will declare vnto you all my griefe. When the knight vnarmed himselfe, and layde his bodie all naked, and Arthur saw in his backe five great wounds, made with a knife that was poisoned, & ther began at his shoulders, and endured downe to his thighs, and the wounds were soze rankled, and of such largenesse, that hee might well haue laid in euery wound all his arme, & when Arthur sawe that his heart trembled with pittie, & demanded who had giuen him the wounds: certeinlie Sir said the knight, I wil shew you, it is of truth I loued hartly a faire damsell, who is right noble and gentle, and shee is in lyke case, & when I might I did resozt vnto her, and shee is in a chamber aboue in this Castle, & at the last this loue y was betwene vs was knowne by her friends, wherewith they were soze displeased, and so late in a wait on me at a season that I was with her, and as I woulde haue departed, they take me & haue araied me as you see with poisoned knives, that I can haue no health, and the Damsell is kept fast in prison in a chamber here aboue, to the intent that she shuld not come to me to help me, for she can doe me more good then all the creatures of y world, & if I might haue any creature that could finde the meanes to speake with her, she woulde send me such ointments that wold make me whole & sound, & Sir the seven knights y you haue deliuered me of, did kepe the gates, to the intent y no Surgian might come hether to help me, Sir I haue ben foure yere in this toymet that ye see, and

and ther is none in all this place that woulde bring me such things as my ladie and loue woulde sende me, and they will suffer none to speake with hir from me, and therfore I must needs dye. Telle Sir said Arthur and how shoulde any body entre into the castell with the gates be shut. Sir saide the knight there is none that can entre at the gates for they be ouer strong, but Sir in the castell vich there is a litte ship by the which the knights that ye haue slain were wont to enter into the castel, & by the ship there is a litte false gate, whereby ye may entre into the castill if it please you, and so ye may bring from my ladie the oymtent that shal help me. Sir said Arthur: I shal do my power, and than he said to the squier, Friend bring me to the ship and I wil entre into the castell. When the squier brought him to the ship, and Arthur entred into it, and than the ship went for the without any maner of teuching and Arthur was not gone farre from the banke but ther came flying about him more than three thousand quarels of shot out of crossebowes, and Arthur sate in the ship & couered him with his white shield and the quarels did light as thicke thereon as though it had rained, in such wise that all the ship was rased with quarels, and in this maner he approached to the posterne, and whan he came to the entre he found sticking rounde about the gate great long sharp speares with heads of fine stele, than he took his good sword in his hand and layde on these speares as fast as he could, & so did cut them cleane asunder in the middell, and there he did so much that by cleane force he entered in at the posterne, and whan he was within, ther rose such a wynde, that Arthur had much paine to hold him on his feete, and than ther fel so great abundance of raine that he stode to the myd leg in water, the which water ran so fast that he was faine to staie him by his speare, for what for the wynde & swifnesse of the water, he had much paine to stande vpight, and at the last and with great anayle he did so much that he issued out of the straitnesse of the posterne, and than he heard a thing make a great nypse in the castel, and therewith there came on him at once more than

One hundred persons redie to fight against him, & so they assailed him rudely on all partes, and they did cast at him flint-stones, dartes and staves, right greafe plantie, and he gaue againe right greafe strokes and overthrew all that euer he attained vnto, howe be it the pzease was so great that they caused him to kneele downe on his knees, and there quickly he steyt vp againe and dacht in among them, and was right soze chafed, and his strength than began to encrease, and the moze he bande to doe, the moze grew his strength, and so he cut asonder all that euer he attained vnto, and so by cleane force he drew his back to a wall & there rested him. When his enemies ran to crosbowes and to speares, and so charged him with many great strokes. And when he felt himselfe so soze oppressed, he was soze chafed there with, and so he abandoned him selfe among them, and gaue great strokes, soz whom so euer he touched, he clane him to the shoulers, & than they began to flye before him, and he followed them, but he was right soze wepy, for they behinde him did him much paine and trauaile, in this case thus fighting, he was from thre of the clocke till it was noone, and thre times he was driven down on his knees, and yet soz all that, euer he rose againe in the spyte of them all. And as he was thus fighting, at the last he heard the sounde of a great hozne aboue in the castel, and as sone as all those that fought against Arthur heard the blast of the hozne, they all sodainly departed without any word speaking, and so there remained but all onely Arthur, whereof he had great maruaile, than Arthur drew him towarde the castell, and entred into it, and so at the last he entred in to the faire halles, & there found neither man nor woman, and than he serched all about the place, but he could finde no creature. At the last he entred into a faire rich chamber, and there he sawe the moste faire and richest bed that euer was seene, and it was all redie made to lie downe therein, than he approached thereto and laye downe on the side thereof, and his sword in his hand, and than he heard well much people coming and going in the same chamber, and heard

dozes and windowes open & shut, but he coulde see nothing, whereof hee had greafe meruaile, and when hee had sitten a good space on the bedde and well rested him, at the last hee sawe where there came into the Chamber a greafe companie of Ladies and Damselfs, and Knights and Squires, and in the midst among them they sawe where ther was a faire young Quene crowned with golde, in a circote of Ermines, and a mantel of violet like, and she was of right great beautie, and foure Knights lead her, and she was enuironed all about with other faire Ladies. And as sone as he sawe her, hee knewe well that shee was *Mary Magdalene* the Quene, whom he found in the forrest the night before, and then he rose vpon his feet, and the Quene came running to him and embraced him about the necke, & said: Sir you are right heartelie welcome into my house. Faire Ladie quoth Arthur, I praise to God giue you both health and much ioy. Arthur said the Quene, now are you past all iopardie, for now that you be in my companie you be in a suretie, therefore put of your harnais, for you shall be in as great safetie as mine owne proper bodie. Madam quoth Arthur, I thank you, howbeit I haue not as yet atchieued that thing as I came hether for, for heere is beneath in this Castle a sirke Knight who hath sent me hether to a Damself that should giue him health, and I haue promised to giue to him that she would deliuer me for his health, therefore madame I require you, if she be heere in your companie, cause mee to speake with her if it please you, and thereby I shall accomplish my conenant to the Knight. Friend quoth the Ladie, be you no moze dismayd of the Knight, for I promise you he shall haue health for your sake, and that right shortly. When the quene called to her a Ladie, who was called *Argence*, & then she said to Arthur, sir behold here is same Ladie that the knight was hurt for, & it is she that can giue him health, therefore Argence I will that you goe to your Knight, & think on his helth as one lover ought to do of another. Madam quoth Argence, with a good will, & I thank you an hundred times, sth that I haue leaue to go to my lover,

and for you haue sponne thereby of him to be a true & faithfull knight, and of me you shall haue a true seruant, therewith the departed, and Proserpina commaunded that Arthur shoulde bee vnarmed, then there ranne about Arthur knightes and Ladies, and one toke a waie his shield, another his sword, another his helme, and so each of them laid to their hands to helpe him, and when he was vnarmed, he stode in his doublet, & then the Ladies brought him warme water to wash his necke and his face and handes, and then the Ladies did wipe him with faire white kerchiefs. When Baldeuyn came and brought his gowne to put on, but the Quene woulde not suffer that, so she made him to put on a greene kirtell, and a sircofe of skarlet, then the Quene toke her owne mantell from her necke, the which was of purple silke, and put it on Arthur, then hee was so faire and gentle, that one coulde not bee satisfied with beholding of him, for all the ladies then said, how that the knight was a gracious person, great ioy shoulde that Ladie haue that might haue such a lover as hee was. When the Quene toke him by the hand, the which was a verie goodlie sight to beholde, for they were both faire and young, and thus hand in hand they went throughtout her chamber, talking of many things, and when they had thus talked together a great space, the Quene commaunded euery person to depart, and to leaue them alone together, and so they did. And then the Quene taking him by the hand said: Arthur, let vs go sit downe on yonder beds side, and so they did, and by that time the chamber was cleane auoided, sauing onelie of Baldeuyn, who said vnto his master: Sir I thinke it best that I goe and see your harnets, and amende it, for it is greatlie bused, and it can hardlie be tolde whether you shall haue anie neede thereof, yea or no. And when Arthur heard him he knew well what he meant, and therefore he smiled, and so Baldeuyn departed. When the Quene saide to Arthur: mine owne sweete and true loue, I am now well pacified in my heart, now that I haue you in my house, as of him that in all the world I most desire to speake withall, and therewith she

laide one of hir armes about his necke; and with the other hand she did strike downe his haire and said: Arthur you be come to the place whereas you be much loued with a faithfull heart, wherefore you shall be Lord and gouernour ouer all the land that I haue in gouernance, wherefore I will make you my knight and soueraigne lover by the waie of marriage, and first I present my selfe to you and all present, er that I am Ladie ouer, & I assure you that there was neuer man as yet there as you be now, therefore refuse not the honour and profit that I offer you, then she toke a ring from her finger and said, by this gift I put you in full possession of me and all mine, therefore gentle knight I require you receiue it. And when Arthur heard her speake thus and sawe the ring, then he beheld well the Ladie, and sawe the gentlenesse and fairenesse that was in her, & felt her sweete breath, and sawe her smiling countenance, at the last his heart came to him, and remembered Florence, then he coulde not keepe himselfe from weeping, and cast out many a depe sigh, and beheld well Proserpina and saide: Ah gentle and noble ladie, your amorous words pearce my hart, so that I feele my selfe in the greatest perplexitie that euer was any creature, for if I were the most high and noblest King that euer was since Alexander the great, and if I had learned in loue all the daies of my life, and in the end attained to that case that I am now in, I shoulde well thinke my paine and labour right well imploied, and highly rewarded, for if all the things of the world were all in one person, and all their goods and honours, and all the partes thereof were gathered together in one person, and if it pleased you to take him to your seruice, he shoulde well thinke himselfe right highlie and dearelie gouerned, but madame I am but a simple person to be compared to your high estate, therefore you shoulde shewe greatlie your renoume if you shoulde take such a strange knight as I am, wherefore you shoulde be blamed much of your people, therefore madame for Gods sake aduise your selfe better, and let this passe over, & take such a noble person as is meete for your estate and honour.

He quoth the Queene, I marvaile all the worlde for you, for I  
will no other but onlie you, therefore receiue me, for I wil  
it shall be so, and no other wise, and if you will defend your  
opinion by her that you told me of this last night in the for-  
rest, you cannot doe so by reason, for you neuer sawe her,  
nor she you, nor neuer spake with her, therefore there is no  
consent made betwene you and her, but that lawfullie  
you may leaue her and you list, therefore you cannot excuse  
you to fulfil this my desire, without it be so, towardise that  
you haue to enterpryse the gouernance of a Realme. And  
when Arthur had well vnderstande her, hee aunswere and  
said, madams in verie dede I haue tolde you the truth as it  
is, and I would be glad to doe that thing that should please  
you, howbeit of one thing bee you certaine, that I haue set  
my heart there as I haue shewed you, so that I can neuer  
call it againe, you may beholde here my bodie, take it and  
it please you, but my hart remaineth in another place with  
her who hath it in keeping. When there was a Ladie came  
to the Queene and shewed her that her dinner was readye,  
and then she said, Sir Knight, thinke well on this matter, I  
gine you respite till tomorrow, and so shee took Arthur by  
the hand and lead him into the hall, and there he saw so ma-  
ny barres couered, and so great plumes of Ladies, Damisels,  
Knights, and Squires, that he meruailed greatly to beholde  
the noblenesse that he sawe there. When the Queene said a-  
lowde that euery bodie might heare her, Ladies & Ladies,  
beholde this knight who shall bee Lord and captaine of all  
my segniorie. And when they heard that, they cried all with  
one voice, hee is welcome, God keepe him, blessed be the  
houre that euer hee came hether, and they all behelde him  
meruaillonish, and praised much his fresh beautie and gode-  
ly demeanour. When there began great feast and ioy, with  
much honourable triumph, & so they were set to dinner and  
serued right honourable. And after dinner they sported the  
a long season, and at the last the Queene called to her two  
of her Ladies, the fairest of all the companie, and comma-  
nded them that they should lead Arthur a playing, & that they  
should

Should shew to him much chere to cause him to loue one of  
them if they could bring it about, & they answered that they  
would do the best y laie in their power, so they two lead forth  
Arthur into faire chambers and Gardens of pleasure, and  
they did as much to drawe him to loue one of them, as euery  
good woman to drawe any man to loue, for their dealing with  
him was such, that it would haue bene hard for anie other  
creature to haue withstood their occasions, for if a woman  
be minded to cast forth her hookes & lines to take any man,  
therewith, it is verie hard to scape out of their danger for  
in such a case a woman is moze subtil then the diuell, for he  
causeth a woman of such disposition to doe that thing that  
he cannot do himselfe, in like manner this Queene comma-  
nded those Ladies to do that which she could not do her selfe,  
but Arthur for all their pleasaunt occasions would neuer  
bend, for all that they did or said was verie noisome to him,  
for alwaies he had in his heart the remembrance of his faire  
Florence, & in such case he was betwene them till it was  
time to goe to rest. When he was conuaid to his chamber  
with moze then fortye Knights, & a great multitude of to-  
ches against his coming, the Queene also was readye in  
his chamber, and then within a little while after the spices  
and wines were eaten and drunken, then the Queene and  
all other tooke their leaue of Arthur, and departed out of his  
chamber and went to his bed, & ther was burning all night  
before his beds sette foure moztres of waxe, and when euery  
bodie was a bed there came to Arthurs beddes side a faire  
Damsell sent to him from the Queene, and was in a surcote  
of ermines, and ouer that a rich mantel of silke, & so she lea-  
ned downe on the bedde to Arthur, and with her hand she  
stroked downe his head verie sweetlie, and there she made  
him such lowlie countenance, that he might perceiue well  
how she would haue hadde him to haue taken her into his  
bed, and at last Arthur said, faire Labie I am in scarc least  
you will take colde with your farrying so long here, there-  
fore either come to bed or go hence, Sir, or ther, I wil gladly  
lie to you, but first you shall cure me of colde, & no other.

A faire ladye quoth he, that I am I not doe, for I loue and  
her; and so that should I be called my pryncesse. When she  
said the then I will goe my way: you shall well knowe Ar-  
thur; I praye God send you a good aduenture, and so there  
with she departed; and Arthur slept as long as it pleased  
him, till it was faire daie in the morning. When the sunne  
opened the windowes, for Arthur would arise. When the  
dunne entered into the chamber, and Arthur sat in his  
bed putting on of his doublet, and as soon as he was risen  
saue the dunne he incontinently spake vnto Arthur, Sir  
beholde who cometh hether to you, by mine aduise let not  
her escape at this time. When the dunne sat downe by  
Arthur on the bed side, and she badde him to go place  
him for a season: Madaine quoth he, with a right good will,  
I will not long anioie you heere: When the dunne de-  
manded of Arthur how he had taken his rest that night,  
and bad him as then good morrow: and Arthur answered  
and said, madame, God the author of all goodnesse send you  
his loue. Friends said she, I gaue you yesterdaies respite till  
this daie, therefore as you be now desired either to take or  
refuse that I haue offered you, shew me how your mind in  
that behalfe spotteth: Madaine saide he, I can shew you no  
more, nor giue you anie more then I haue done, you maye  
take my knowe the which is heere present, but as for my  
heart I cannot take it from whence it is, I haue en-  
forced my selfe to haue it, but the more I thinke on  
her that hath it, the faster she holdeth it, therefore madaine  
I can doe no more, so trulle you haue borne the body with-  
out the heart.

When the dunne behelde Arthur well, and embraced  
him about the necke, mid smiling saide: Well good friende  
Arthur, from hence forth be in peace, for I haue right  
well assayed your truth, but now I see well your steadfast  
faithfulness, for you be true to your loue, for I see by it you  
loue her faithfully, and certainly you haue good cause so  
to doe, for in like manner she loueth you, for she hath re-  
fused the supplication of many ladies, and you shall see by her

is on no creature of the world but onlie on you, and I am  
she that anone after her natiuitie didde destinie her to you,  
when she was brought vp to vs into the mount Derillous,  
and as for the other two Ladies that wer with you yester-  
daie, the which so soze did tempt you, to haue wonne your  
loue, the which they did but onely to assaie you, one of them  
destinied that the Image in the Hauillion who holdeth the  
chaplet should neuer giue it but to you, & so you to haue both  
the Ladie and the Chaplet, and the other Ladie destinied  
that you should haue the white sheld, and the good inchan-  
ted sword, the which you be in possession of, & the third that  
came to your bed, last she destinied that if anie other person  
would presume to take the faire Flozence, that he shoulde  
die an euill death, and I haue caused you to come into this  
Countrie, for I made you to haue the vision of the Eagle of  
golde that you thought you saue in your sleepe, and there  
you saue a Dragon the which would haue taken her from  
you, the Dragon is signified by the Emperour of Inde, for  
as much as he may he wil hinder you fro hauing her, how-  
beit she shall bee yours at length, but first you shall suffer  
much paine & trouble, but I will shew you what you shall  
doe, keepe well the loue of the King of Ardenie, and of the  
Archbishop of Cornie, for they shal be to you both true and  
steadfast, & speciallie aboue all other loue well master Ste-  
uen, for by his meanes you shall haue her after your warre  
is done, and in your war I wil helpe you with fortie thou-  
sand halberts, it is I that sent for you in the name of the  
hurt knight, that you should come to me, to the intent that  
I might assaie you, and to know of what faithfulness you  
were of, but now Flozence may be in assurance that she is  
beloued of the best knight of the world, and of the most faire  
& steadfast knight that now liueth, therefore now Sir knight  
arise, for it is high time. When the quene departed, and Ar-  
thur apparailled himselfe and went into the hall wheras he  
found the said quene noblie accompanied, and all they rose  
against Arthur, and he verie courteously saluted them, then  
the quene caused him to sit downe by her, and he said: Ma-  
dame

name & to like your grace it is now high time that I take  
forth my journey, and goe thither as I am in minde to doe.  
Certainlie Sir said the queene, I am verie well content that  
you doe so, but first you shall dine. So then Arthur dined  
there with the Queene, and after dinner hee took his leave  
of the queene, and of all the Court, and there was much so-  
row when he departed, for al the Court hoped that he shuld  
haue ben their Lord. When Arthur mounted on his horse, &  
departed out of the castle, and came to the hurt knight and  
demanded of him how he did, and whether he had well ac-  
quited his couenants or not. Merilie Sir quoth the knight,  
I doe right well, and you haue trulle and noble acquitted  
you to me, therefore the Lord I hope will reward you, and  
I am & will rest yours. And thus Arthur commended him  
to God, and the Ladie also that was his loue, and so rode  
forth towards Coznte.

How Arthur when he was departed from the Queene  
Proserpina, it fortun'd him to take his lodging  
with the nephew of Sir Isembart, who tooke Ar-  
thur and locked him fast in a Towre, to the intent  
to haue slaine him by night, but there Arthur did  
so valiantlie that he brake out of the tower, and  
slew the Knight and all his people. Chap. 71.

So it was that when Arthur was departed from Pro-  
serpina, he rode so long till at the last he entered into the  
land of the Duke of Wygo's nephew, and so by aduenture  
he took his lodging with a knight who was nephew to Sir  
Isembart, and he receiued Arthur with greatesoy. When he  
was ready he went into the hall where this knight was.  
Then a knight demanded of Arthur what was his name,  
& he as one that doubted nothing, answered, Sir I am called  
Arthur, & my squire is named Balduwin: then the knight  
knew y it was he that had slaine his vncle Sir Isembart,  
which made him angrie, but he made no shewe thereof, for  
he knew that Arthur was a knight gentle to be doubted,

for he knew well that he was not able to resist against him,  
therefore he thought to slaine him in his bed a sleepe, & in the  
meane time to close him fast in a Towre, and then to send  
for the Duke of Wygo, and all his companie, and there to  
slaine him in the night time. But hee made a faire counte-  
nance to Arthur, and said: Sir I am bound to loue you well  
because you slewe Sir Isembart, for of all men liuing I ha-  
ted him most, for he did me many displeasures, & thus with  
faire wordes he draue of the time with Arthur till it was  
supper time, and then he was right well serued, and after  
supper they went and sported them till it was time to go to  
their rests. When the knight caused Arthurs bedde to bee  
made in a Ardg tower, but it was so well hanged with clo-  
thes of silke and Arras, that Arthur coulde not perceiue the  
walls nor strength thereof: and when Arthur and Baldu-  
win were entered into the towre, incontinently the knight  
shut fast the dore, which was all of yron, and did bar it fast  
with foure great bars of yron, and cried on Arthur & said:  
Sir make you as merrie as you can, for ere you depart out of  
your chamber you shall lose your head, for you may say you  
be unhappie to come hether to your mortall enemies, & when  
Arthur heard that he was verie angrie, and ranne to the  
dore, thinking to haue opened it, but hee coulde not, for it  
was barred without with foure great bars of Steele. Then  
the knight armed him & all his companie, so that they wer  
wel nigh to the number of eighteen persons; and the Queene  
did shine faire and bright in a little windowe behinde one  
of the Carpets. When Balduwin tare down the hangings,  
and then they might see clerlie all about them, for the light  
of the Queene came in at the windowe whereas the priso-  
ners wer wont to be serued. When Arthur armed him and  
took his sword in his hand, and beheld well the windowe  
the which was very strongly barten with yron, and by ad-  
uenture he found in the chamber a great leuer of yron, and  
so he took it in both his hands, as hee that was right soze  
displeased, and did lift vp the leauer as lightlie as though it  
had ben but a sticke, and laid at the bars of yron with such  
strength,

Strength, that he all to burst the bars and stones, and made  
such an hole, that an Ore might wel issue out therat. Then  
the knight and his companie without when they saw that,  
they did cast at him verie rudelie darts, and quarrells shot  
out of the crossbowes. When Arthur took his white shield  
and went to the window, and there received all their shot,  
but they could in no wise hurt him: then Arthur leapt out  
a window, and so descended downe and couered him with  
his shield, when he was downe they ranne all at once vpon  
him, but Arthur gaue such strokes that he smote downe all  
that euer he attained vnto, and Balwdeuwin tooke a barre  
of yron and did help his master to the best of his power, and  
at the last Arthur encountered the knight of the place, and  
gaue him such a stroke, that he claued him to the shoulders  
and so fell downe dead to the earth, and then anone after he  
discomfited all the remnaunt, so he dealt such discipline a-  
mong them, that he cut off armes, handes, legges, & heads,  
and all that euer he attained vnto. When Balwdeuwin ranne  
and hid lift up the drawe bridge, and did close fast the gates,  
to the intent that none should escap, and so they searched all  
about, but they could finde neither man nor woman,  
and then they went to their rests till the next daie,  
and so rode forth on their tourney towards Coynite.

How Gouvernar in searching for Arthur, by aduen-  
ture he passed by the same Castle whereas Arthur  
had slaine the Lord thereof, and there he was assai-  
led by the friends of the said Knight, and there he  
did so valiantly that he slew the most part of them.

Chap. 72.



And when Arthur had wel ridden foure leagues,  
then was it knowen how that the knight was  
slaine, and all that euer were in the place: then  
ther came all the knightes friends, and found  
him dead, wherefo, they were verie sorrowful, and as they  
made

made this shroud, it so fortune that Gouvernar passed by the  
same Castle, and as sone as they that were within sawe  
him, they thought it had bene he that had slaine their Lord  
and friends. When they began to cry all at once, let vs issue  
out, for ponder is he that hath slain our knight, and so they  
ranne all at once at him with great axes & mases of Steele,  
and did put him to much anoyauce. When Gouvernar deli-  
uered his speare to yakot his squier, and set hand to his  
sword, and gaue many greate strokes rounde about him,  
and cutt off handes and legges, and made armes and heades  
to flie into the field, and at the last he did so much that he de-  
liuered himselfe from them all sauing of thre knights, and  
they came with a great run to him, and the first that Go-  
uernar encountred, he strake him so rudelie that he fell to  
the earth, and in his falling burst his neck. When he des-  
sed him to the second, and gaue him such a stroke with his  
sword, that he made both helme and head to flie to y earth:  
When the third strode still without anie moving, and de-  
maunded of Gouvernar of whence he was, and he answered  
red how that he was a straunge knight. And I praye you  
sir said the other knight, where laie you this night passed:  
I laie said Gouvernar, seauen leagues hence with the Ladie  
of Quarfolde: Well sir said the knight, then you be not he  
that laie all night in this castle: Truelie said Gouvernar, it  
was not I, for I neuer sawe this Castle before this time:  
Well sir saide the knight, then I require you to come with  
me a little waie, and I promise you I will bring you again  
into this same place without anie manner hurt or damage  
to you or anie of yours, and all this he did because he wold  
bring him before the dead bodies for to see whether anie of  
them wold bleed again freshly or not, for therby he thought  
surely that he should know whether it were he or not that  
had slaine al those people: and Gouvernar accorded to his de-  
sire, and so they entered into the castle, where they saw the  
dead bodies without anie more blading. And when the  
knight sawe that he said, sir these people did runne against  
you wrongfullie, and so it appeareth by them, for they that  
had

had thought most so to have won. I think hath gotten most  
to it, wherefore if ye may depart whan ye will, for ye shall  
not be let for me, and I pray to god to send you right good  
aduenture. When Governor departed and he followed af-  
ter Arthur.

How that Arthur founde xl. knights who had taken a  
damosell the which they found in a forrest, and they  
would have ravished hir, and there Arthur rescued  
hir and slew al the xl. knights who would have pil-  
led and robbed the ladies castell, and have slaine all of  
whom had bene within. Cap. 73.

Arthur rode so the so long till at the last hee came to a  
great fozesse, and as he would have entered into it, there  
encountred him a faire young damosell right so weeping,  
and his faire yelow haire hanging about his shoulders, and  
he was right sore hurt in the visage, and bled fast, and as  
sone as he saw Arthur armed, his feare began to be dow-  
ble, and than he kneeled downe and helde up his handes,  
and cried him mercie and saide, gentil knight save my life,  
and the honour of my body, and take all that ever I have,  
and he was but in his smock and a thin brate. And when  
Arthur sawe hir, he knew well that she was a fraide, and  
saide: faire loue haue no drede, for I will do nothing to you  
but good. And when she heard that, she was in a furetie  
she late hir downe on the ground, for she was in that case  
for feare, that hir legges would not beare hir, nor could not  
speake of a great season. When Arthur alighted from his  
horse, and right sweetly toke hir in his armes, and sayd my  
glorie sweete damosell be ye now well assured and of good  
heart, and shew me what case ye stande in, and I shall ayde  
you with all my power, rather than helpe to the mayntene  
of my selfe, nor of my reason, of the world, and of the  
bodye. When he had sayd thus, and Arthur toke  
gentill knight to the damosell, for they were  
right faire and goodly, and when she might speake she sayd,

My lord, I am a widow, and gentle heart hath taken from  
me part of my feare, so to be all that season she wept right  
pittifull, and so I will shew you all the case how it  
standeth with me, if it please you to know it, for it is of  
truth I have dwelled heere in this fozesse with an aunt  
of mine a widowe, a good olde Ladie, in a faire greate ma-  
noe of hers, and now there is come into this fozesse so many  
knights who are banished out of their Countrie, & they  
doe nothing but robbe and pill, and they haue in their com-  
panie thirtie horse men and ten foot men, and so they robbe  
ouer all the countrie, so that they leaue no house vnrobbed,  
and this other daie they sent to mine aunt that she  
should send them two hundred pound of money, but mine  
aunt would not, for she wist not why she should so doe, and  
so now they be come and have laid siege round about mine  
aunts place, and there haue continued these fiftene daies,  
and haue made their vowe that they will neuer goe thence  
till they haue wonne the place and burnt it downe to the  
earth, and slaine mine aunt, & so I fled out at a little gate  
to go to a brother of mine, to desire him to get together our  
linage, to come to helpe and deliuer us from these thieues &  
robbers, and as I was going heere by, there met me tenne  
foote men of their companie, who lieth in a waite to haue  
the high waies, and thus they haue araid mee as you see,  
and haue dispoiled me and taken away my palfraie, and so  
would haue ravished me, but as God would they fell at va-  
riaunce among themselves who should haue bene the first  
that should haue defouled mee, and so they fell together and  
gaue each other greates strokes, and in the meane time I  
fledde awaie in greates feare of my life. When Arthur  
sayde, faire Damosell, goe wee two together whereas these  
rihautes be, and I shall doe so much to them either by  
sairenesse or foulnesse, that they shall render to you a-  
gaine your gowne and your palfraie. A sir saide the La-  
die, they are verie euill people, and a greates companie.  
Faie Ladie, care not therfore saide Arthur, God will helpe  
you in your neede.

When the damosell mounted upon Arthur's horse behind  
him, and so rode forth till at the last they came to a place  
where the thieves were: who were sitting for the damosell among  
the bushes. And they saw him on horseback riding behind  
Arthur, they ran all about him to have slain him, but then  
Arthur took his sword and layd it on the forepart of them, that  
with one blow he had slain them all. When the da-  
mosell had right great feare, and so took again his horse and  
his clothing and apparayled him and said to Arthur, my  
pray God keepe you from all evil encounterance: And Ar-  
thur sayde, my love now let us go to your aunt, and let us  
help her as much as we can. And he said she, ye can never have  
victory over them, for they be at least xx. on horseback  
well armed, and there be of them many good knights, ther-  
fore anone they will slea you, the which should be a great  
damage, therefore let us go to my brother and gather toge-  
ther my friends, the which shall be in number at the least  
of xl. persons on horseback, and so then shall ye slea them.  
Then Arthur saide, faire damosell take ye no thought ther-  
fore, for I warrant you as I depart, I shall make them to be  
to us such friends, that from hence forth to your aunt to none  
other they shall doe no great hurt. Well sir saide the ladie  
God give you grace thus to doe, for they be right ill people.  
So thus they rode forth together into the forrest, and the  
same time Gouvernar & Jacket were entred into the same  
forrest to seeke Arthur, for they had heard tidings that he  
was rydden into that forrest before them, and they rode so  
long till at the last they found where as these thieves lay  
dead, and then they thought wel how that Arthur had done  
that deede. Then gouvernar sayd to Jacket, friend I know  
well my lord Arthur hath bene here. And he said, he is a good  
carpenter, for he hath made here a faire sight of ships. Sir  
truly said Jacket, there is in him great dispence, for hee  
queth more than is of him demaunded, for he hath given  
more to this company than they would have had, & all this  
season Arthur rode forth with the damosell, & at the last they  
arrived at the damosell's aunt's place, and the sayd thevish  
than

than had left their siege and were gone after a great com-  
pany of marchants to the intent to rob and slea them, and  
in the meane season Arthur and the damosell came to the  
gate, and she called the Porter. And as soone as he saw him  
he knew him right well, and so set open the gate, and then  
Arthur & the damosell entred into the place. When Arthur  
sayde to the porter, friend let the gate stande still open, for  
your enemies are all gone, so they all that were here were  
my cosins therfore I warrant you be not afeard of them,  
therefore let downe the bridge and so the porter did, so he  
beleued him. When the ladie led him knight into the hall.  
When his aunt came to them and made them right great  
feast, and so unarmed Arthur and made ready the meate, and  
then they sate downe to supper, and as they sate, there en-  
tered into the hall one of the knights of the said theves, and  
so he came straight to the table whereas they did eate, with  
a great staffe in his hand, & without speaking of any word  
he lift by his staffe and strake the ladie betwene the shoul-  
ders, so that he made him to leane downe flat on the table, &  
therewith she made a great crye, and straight way the thef  
toke a great cup of Silver full of wyne and did cast all the  
wyne at Arthur where as he sate, and toke the cup with  
him, and therewithal returned backe again without speak-  
ing of any word, & as he issued out of the hall he met Wat-  
tewin and strake him so rudely that he wist not wel where  
he was. When Arthur saide to the ladie, madame thus to  
be beaten and to lese your goodes is a right great outrage.  
When the knight answered Arthur & said, sir if thou wilt  
amend it come to the crosse way besyde vnder wood & ther  
shall ye finde me. When Arthur slept upon his feete, and  
called for his harnesse, and anone Watwain armed him.  
When the ladie saide, gentle knight in the honour of the  
high God of beaven goe not thither, for they are xxx. on  
horseback well armed, wherfore ye can not endure against  
them all. Madame sayde Arthur speake to mee no more,  
for I will go looke on them, and so mounted on his horse  
and followed the knight to the crosse way, wheras he was

redie abyding for Arthur, and as sone as he sawe Arthur coming he cast downe the cup and toke his speare, and they met together so rudely that the knight brake his spere, but Arthur strake him so that his spear ranne through out his bodie more than a foote, and so fell downe dead. Then Bawdwin said, right now thou strakest me, and now thou art stricken againe, for thy great pride thou hast now an ill reward, but of such deserte, such payement, and so Bawdwin drew out the knights owne sword and strake of ther with the knights hand where with he had stricken the ladie at the table; and so did put the hand into the cup. And the remenaunt of the thecues as they were departing of their pray that they had wonne of the marchaunts, they espyed how one of their felowes was slaine, and therefore incontinent they toke their barnets and ranne at Arthur on all sides, and so gaue him many great strokes, but euer Arthur caste his shelde befoze him, and thercon receiued all their strokes, so that they could in no wise payze his shield in any manner of point, whereof they had right great maruaile. Then Arthur strake one of them so rudely that his head flew cleane into the feeld, and he claue another to the shoulders, and the thirde he claue from the shoulder downe to the wast, and so gaue among them many wonderous strokes: but they were very many, and so some of them ran to crossbowes, and to dartes, and therewith did him much annoyance, but alwaies right valiantly he defended him selfe, and so at the first bront he slew vpon a rit. of them. Then as they were thus fighting together, it fortuned Gouernar to arise on them by the reason of the bruse and noyse that he had heard, and there he saw well how all that company were on one knight whom he sawe defende him selfe right valiantly, and so long he beheld him till at the last he knew well it was his master Arthur, by the reason of his white shield, than he dashed to his horse and came in among them as the Wolfe doth among sheepe, and strake so the first that he encountred, that he ranne him cleane throughout the bodie, and he set his hande on his sword, and strake

so another that his heade fell on Arthurs horse necke. And when Arthur sawe that, he stode and beheld him, and he knew well it was his olde knight Gouernar, whereof he had great ioy, and so rested himselfe to beholde Gouernar how valiauntly he fought with his sword, and ther he sawe how Gouernar did cleave one dolone to the girdle. Then did Arthur smile heartely & said, this master chafteneth right sore his Schollers, for hee teacheth them a harde lesson, by the faith that I owe vnto God I will helpe him.

Sir saide Bawdwin, when neede is then a friende is proued, God giue him good grace and well to doe, and so Arthur rusht into the prease and confounded all that euer he attained vnto. When one of these thecues that was on foot, for he had lost his horse before, ranne at Arthurs horse with his speare, and thrust him cleane throughout the bellic, and so the horse fell downe dead. When Arthur leapt on his fete and his sword in his hand, and dressed him to the theefe that had slaine his horse, and gaue him such a stroke that hee claue him to his shoulders. And when Gouernar sawe Arthur on his fete hee was right sorrowfull, and so dashed into the prease, and encountered a knight so rudely, that neither his hearme nor coise of scale coulde saue him, but hee was clouen to the hard feth and so fell downe dead. Then Bawdwin toke his horse and brought him to Arthur, and quicklie he leapt vp thereon, and besturred him selfe among his enemies, and so betweene him and Gouernar, of thirtie they leste but foure aliue, and they were taken, and in they taking two of them were slaine, and the other two were bound fast, and Bawdwin and Iaket did keepe them.

Then there came to them the Ladie and her neece, and when they sawe their enemies lie dead on the ground, and sawe the noble valure that was in those two knights, these ladies praised the much in their hearts, & ther they saw how Arthur & Gouernar were together making good chere each

to other, and putting of their helmes. Then the Ladie said to Arthur, sir from whence cometh this knight, is he pertaining to you. *Pea truelle madame saide Arthur, hee is a friend who hath verie well holpen mee this daie, wee were not together this greate while. And the Ladie saue well how that he was faire and bigge of stature, and said: Sir, we were happie to come hether at this point, and to you sir knight, you haue atchieued this enterprise of the thæues, I require you let these other two be slaine or else hanged, for of an euill roote springth an euill tree, for they will neuer do good if they escape. And when the thæues hearde that, they were in great feare: saide to Arthur: Gentle knight saue our liues and wee will shewe you where is in the Forrest verie great treasure. Where is that said Arthur? Sir sayd they, we will bring you thether so that we die not: and Arthur answered and said, sirs, as for your life and death lyeth in these Ladies hands to doe what it pleaseth them, but shortly bring vs to this treasure. Then these two thæues went on before, and Baldeuwin toke the cuppe with the knightes hand therein, and did present it to the Lady from Arthur, who thanked him much, and so woulde haue giuen the cup to Baldeuwin, but he would not take it, for he saide he had inough to doe with the carriage of his horse and harness. So Arthur rode so long after these thæues in the forest, till at the last they came into a wilde sauage place in a great valley, and there they found bowes and crossebowes, halberts, healmes, and golones, couerings, and other cloth the which these thæues had robbed all about the Countrie, and also there they found hidden in the ground golde and silver great plentie, and cups and chalices, and other vessels of silver, the which mounted to great value. Then Arthur said to the Ladie, madame cause all this riches to be borne to your place, and render you againe such thinges as hath bene stolne from Churches and other people of the Countrie, as for me none of my companie shall take the worth of a pennie thereof: and the Ladie did as Arthur commaunded her, but she desired Arthur that the two thæues might be*

be slaine, and so they were incontinentlie, then they returned to the Ladies place and went to supper, and they were richlie serued. Then Arthur demaunded of Gouvernar how master Steuen and the Marques did: and hee answered and saide, howe that they did right well, and were in good health, and how that they did commend them vnto him, and in like manner doth the faire Ladie Margaret of Argenton, for shee is come to the Port Noire to see her vncle the Marques, whereof Arthur had great ioy. And when the Ladie of that place heard that, she knew then well that Arthur was the same knight that had deliuered the Marques out of prison, and also had rescued the Ladie Margaret from the hands of the Duke of Bygoys nephew. When she kneeled downe before Arthur and said: sir I humbly thanke you for the aide and succour that you haue done for the Ladie of Argenton, for I am her cosin germaine: and when he saue her kneele downe, he toke her vp, and so made greate ioy together till it was time to goe to their rests, and in the morning Arthur arose and toke his leaue of the Ladie, and rode forth on his waie towards Cornite, for it was as then but fiftene daies to Barthelme tide, when as the greate turney should be betwene the King of Sozolois & the Emperour of Inde. Now will we leaue to speake of Arthur & Gouvernar, and speake of master Steuen.

How master Steuen departed from the Port Noire, to goe to the turney at Cornite, and tooke with him the noble Florence rich paulion, wherein was the chaplet, who resembled in all thinges the Ladie Florence, the most fairest creature that was then in the world.

Chap. 74.



So Arthur rode forth on his waie towards Cornite, master Steuen was at the Port Noire with the Marques, and with the gentle Ladie Margaret of Argenton, and there did sport and plate her as a gentle Damsell ought for to doe, and euerie

p. b.

daie

Daie she made chaplets of roses & other flowers, the which she gave to master Steuen, and she made him also with the needell worke a girdle and a purse of golde and silke. She loved him exceeding well in her heart. When master Steuen knew verie well that the great tourney at Coznye approached, therefore he thought it was time for him to depart thitherward, then he said to the Marques: Sir I desire you to keepe well this Castle of the Port Noire, and to you faire Ladye, I require you keepe you still companie here with the Marques your vnckle till you heare from Arthur, for and I can be shall be here betwene this & Saint Remiges daie: and verie willingly they did graunt him ther to abide. When he toke his leaue of them and toke all his bookes, & the Eagle of gold and the pavilion with the image holding the Chaplet, and so departed, and rode so long till he arrived at Coznye. Then he mounted vp the staires into the Pallace, at the which time the faire Flozence was entered into her owne chamber, and the king at that time was not in the Pallace, but Flozence Knightes were playing at the Tables, and other disports, and the master came in among them sodainelie, and as sone as they sawe him, they ranne to him on all sides, and made to him great feast and chere: and at the last it came to the knowledge of Flozence, howe that he was come, and incontinentlie she came to him, and as sone as he saw her, he pulled of his bonnet & saluted her, and she said, sir you be right heartelie welcome now, for I was in feare lest that you wold not haue come to this turney, therefore it is now time that my Pavillion were pight vp, and forthwith she lead the master into her chamber and toke him a part, and then she demaunded of him how he had done since hee departed from her, and how that Arthur did.

Madame said he, I sawe not Arthur since hee made the battaile at Argence, for as sone as the battaile was ended, and that the King of Orqueny and Duke Phillip and al the whole companie were in great ioy and mirth, there came a messenger to Arthur from the wounded Knight, to the in-

tent

tent that hee shoulde goe to him for to giue him health, and so hee departed the verie same houre, whereof euerie man was so sore troubled that they all departed the same daie. A master said Flozence, then I feare me greatlie of his death. Madame said the master, be you in no doubt, neither take anie care for him, for hee feareth not all the world, for there is not such another Knight in all the worlde againe: Madame I shewed him how that you did commend you vnto him, and how that you desired him as deuelie as he loveth you, that he shoulde not faile for anie thing but bee at this next great turney at Coznye, & he did promise me certainlie that he wold not faile thereof. Ah master saide she, did you not require him faithfullie so to bee: Trulie madame said he, I warraunt you he will not faile. Well master said she, I require you cause me to see and speake with him as shortly as may be.

Madam said he, with a right good will: Well master, then I praie you see that my Pavillion be pight vp in the field incontinentlie, for peradventure if he come now anie thing before the daie, and see no signe nor token in the field that anie tourney shoulde be there, then it might fortune he wold depart againe. Madame (quoth the master) you saie right well, for indeede it is high time. When she sent for sir Prouelon her marshall, and commaunded him that her chiefe Pavillion shoulde be pight vp in the fildes, and from thence forth that all her Knightes shoulde lodge euerie night about her Pavillion, and as she commaunded so it was done. And also the master caused the Pavillion with the image to be pight vp, and many other tents & Pavillions, but the image that held the chaplet in the Pavillion was so goodly and delectable to behold, that no man could be satisfied with looking on her, howbeit the fresh beautie of Flozence was comparable ther to, & so ther were pight vp ten tents & fourtene pavillions, al pertaining to y noble Flozence, beside al other y were pertaining to her noble lords & knights, for she had there at that time out of her realme to the number of xv. C. Knights. Also sir Prouelon caused his tent to be pight vp, who

was

was Seneschall to the gentle Florence, and chiefe of her counsaile next master Steven, & she trusted much in him, for he was a wise man and a good knight, and no euill speaker, and his Pavillion was set next to the forrest, and farthest from the Ladies pavilion, and next to the Ladies tent was sir Anells pavilion, nephew to the Seneschall, who was a verie hardie and a valiant knight, the third Pavillion was pertaining to the Archbisshoppe of Coznte, who was buckle to Florence, and brother to the King of Morogys, father to Florence, the fourth was sir miles of Walesound, the fifth was sir Peter Wisebar, a redoubted knight. When also thether was come sir Rowland of Wigoz, who was one of Florence knightes, but hee was verie envious, and hee was cousin germaines to the Duke of Wygoz, and he caused his Pavillion also to be pight by, the which was right goodlie and fresh to behold, he was not in the Countre when the battaile was betwene Arthur and the Duke of Wygoz's nephew, and when hee knew the discomfiture of his cousin, he was so sorrowfull, that hee did neither eat nor drinke but little the space of thre daies after that he knew therof, and when he had somewhat passed his sorrow, then he made a bowe and promise that if he might see or know the knight that had slaine his cousin sir Isembart, that he would be revenged of him if ever it laie in his power, & he might well be descended of the lineage of the duke of Wygoz, for he was tall and spitefull & proude, and the chiefe cause why he came to the tourney was to the intent to encounter with Arthur if he came thether. So these five pight by their tents round about Florence Pavillion. When vpon a daie Florence issued out of Coznte, and al her chivalrie with her, & so went into her owne Pavillion, and all other Lords and Knights, Ladies and Damsells went each of them into their owne tents and Pavillions, the which were to the number of two thousand, and Florence commaunded that everie person should make as great feast and ioy as they could do, so then there began great feasts and triumph. When knights began to lust and turney to assay themselves, and the Ladies

and

and Damsells did send them chaplets and streamers to set on their healmes and speares, & some companie of knights sported them in the forrest, and some went to the faire river with Sparhawkes and Gersaulkons on their heades, and some beheld the high tourneys and turnings of the Sakers and Gersaulkons, Squiers and seruantes were furbushing and flouing of their masters harnes, and buckeling of heeles and helmes, and knocking on heads & burres on mightie speares, Ladies and Damsells did sing & dance with lustie knightes, and clarkes sung ballads, & knightes and Ladies talked of loue, some embraced, and some kissed, and shewed signes of loue, and such as were sicke or hurt, were shortly made whole. When Florence beheld these lustie Damsells playing and laughing with these fresh young lustie knightes, clapping them on the backs with their white hands, and shewing them great signes of loue, & giuing each to other laces, girdles, gloues, kerchiefs, rings, chaplets, and garlandes of fresh flowers. When Florence cast out a great sigh, and saide to master Steven, sir see you not how these Ladies and Damselles laugh and plaie each of their louer. Ah master and what haue I deserued that I cannot haue my louer to sport me with him as well as they doe with theirs, for I loue with al my whole heart, and yet I know not what he is, for my heart lieth on that I neuer sawe, so thus I am in the Sunne without hauing of anie light, I am in loue without ioy. Ah deere master, what haue I deserued more then anie other. When the master sayde, deere Ladie beee you of god comfort, for the time will come that shall giue you light, the cloud that as yet couereth the light, in good time shall be made bright: A master did you not heartelie commend me vnto him when you went to Argence Wy the faith that I owe to God said the master, I did it madame, in the best wise that I could imagine. Thus the faire Florence and the master, every day from Wednesday to saterdaie talked together of the coming of Arthur, the which saterdaie the Archbisshop said service before Florence, and he & all the whole Baronie that daie dined with the

the

the whole Barony that day dined with the noble Florenee,  
for she had desired them so to do.

How sir Rowland of Bygor appeached Arthur of trea-  
son because he had slaine his cosin at Argence, and  
so defied him at the vtturance; but Arthur at the  
first stroke draue him downe horse and all to the  
earth, and brake one of his armes and two ribbes,  
whereof Florence was right ioyous, and speciallie  
when she sawe her louer Arthur whom shee neuer  
sawe before. And how after sir Rowlands seruants  
assailed Arthur to haue slaine him, but he valiaunt-  
ly defended himselfe and slewe many of them.

Chap. 75.



**A**fter dinner the Archbishophe and master Ste-  
uen, and Sir Rowland, and the other Barons,  
went talking and playing together out of the  
medow, and entered into the Forrest, and at  
the last they came to a faire greene Dake, the which diide  
call a faire shadowe and a greate circuite about it, and the  
grasse was faire and softe, and thicke vnderneath, so there  
they satte them downe and talked together of many things;  
till

till at the last the master demaunded of sir Rowland how  
that he lyked by that Countrie about Cornie, and whe-  
ther it were sayzer then the Countrie of Wygoz. Then sir  
Rowland aunswered that it was not to him, that he wold  
not giue anie answeere in that case. Why said the master,  
and as for me I am as little bound to you as you to mee:  
Well said sir Rowland that maketh no matter, for though  
you be sonne to a king, yet will I not answeere you in that  
matter nor in anie other, take it as you list: Why sir saide  
the master, haue I trespassed anie thing against you. Psea  
that you haue said sir Rowland, and that most grievously,  
for you were at Argence when my cosin sir Isembart was  
slaine, and you kept companie and were chiefe counsaillour  
with the knight that slew him, therefore I beare a grudge  
in mine heart against you, and I promise to God that if I  
may encounter him that did that deed, I will do as much to  
him as he hath done to my cosin: Sir said the master, when  
you meete you may do as you will, but oftentimes it fortu-  
neth that a man cannot attaine to do so much as he wold do,  
nor peradventure hee cannot nor dare not, but as for that  
deede you ought not to be displeased though right was done,  
for God lightly will suffer no wrong, but alwaies hee fur-  
thereth and aideth the right cause howsoever it falleth.  
Well saide sir Rowland, then you saie howe that my cosin  
was in the wrong, but there is none that saith so, but hee  
saith otherwise then truth is, and that will I proue before  
euerie man against you and you will mount on your  
horse, for I saie the matter was not true lie nor equallye  
dealt withall. Sir sayde the master, you laye vnto mee  
greate outrage and villanie, whereas you saie that I did  
in that matter otherwise then well and true lie, whereas  
I saie plainlie you lye falselie in your heade, and certain-  
ly I will neuer be in rest till that I haue set a knight a-  
gainst you to proue it, and if I can it shall bee the same  
knight which made the battaile against your cosin, who  
will cause you to call againe these wordes that you haue  
spoken.

Then

When the matter arose great displeased and wold haue departed and left that companie, but the Archbishop held him againe, and praised him that he wold suffer all that for that time, and at his request he said he woulde so doe. When sir Pernel the Seneschall said to sir Rowland, sir be content with the wordes of the master, for hee is a man of greater dignitie then you be of, for though hee had striken off your head, you haue not so high a friend that durst reuenge your cause, the noble King of Arqenie was at that battaile, and where you saie that the matter was not trulie dealt with, all you speake then vilanie against the King and against Philip Duke of Sabarie his nephew, and against all such as were there, the which saying needeth not there to be rehearsed, for it is a shame to you to suffer such wordes to passe out of your mouth. When soe displeased Wisebar stept forth and saide, sir Rowland you saie that the master did not truelie in the matter when your cousin was slaine, wherein I saie that you saie not trulie, & if you will maintaine the contrarie take your barnels, & I will take mine, and let it be seene who is in the truth, and therewith sir Wisebar was rising to haue departed, but the Bishop held him againe and said, looke whosoever speaketh anie word moze of the matter for that time, for the Bishoppe brought them in another talk, and as they were deuising and talking of one matter and other, Arthur and Gouvernar issued out of the forest, and so entered into the meadowe. And then Arthur beheld the goodlie tents and pavilions that were pight all about the field, and also he sawe the helms and healmes and barnels shining against the sunne, and heard great shouters braie and crie & campe with their feete, the which sight and noise quickened his hart and courage. At the last Gouvernar espied Florence, wherein was the image with the chaplet and shewed it to Arthur. And when he sawe it his heart inwardly rejoiced, for he knew well it was his Ladies pavilion. And by that time the master and all other were entered againe into the faire meadow, and Arthur sat on his horse in a great studie and mused of his adventure.

And

And at the last sir Miles of Walefount espied him & knewe well how that it was Arthur, for he had seene him before at Argenet. When he said to the other knights that were about him, Behold yonder is a knight all armed, who is right faire to beholde, is there anie here that knoweth him, for hee woulde not name him because of sir Rowland. And when master Steuen sawe him, he saide, I knowe him right well, wherefore I trust that the greete winde that was lately blown, will now sone be laid, and of his coming he had great ioy in his heart, insomuch that hee forgate in a manner all his displeasure. Certainlie sir said the Seneschall, he is right faire and gracious to beholde, wherefore I beleeue he is of a great blood, but me thinketh by his resemblance he is a great studie, wherefore so euer it be. By my hode quoth Wisebar, I knowe full well wherfore he studieth. When the master, and the Seneschall, & Wisebar arose, and faire and easilie went to him ward, & saide each to other, howe that they woulde not name him at that time because of sir Rowland, and so they came before Arthur, who was sitt in his studie: And Gouvernar as soone as he sawe the master he alighted from his horse and embraced him, and all the other Barons each after other. And therewithall Arthur left his musing, and as sone as euer he sawe master Steuen and the other knights, hee did alight from his horse, and did salute them all one after another, and so among them there was made right great feast and ioy, & then sir Rowland meruailed much what knight he might be, because he sawe so much cheere and ioy made to him, and that they knew him and he not. Then the Seneschall said to Arthur, sir I will you take my tent and pavilion as your own, & so you & I to keepe company together in this turney. But I am wel content of Arthur, & so incontinently he was unarmed, & all his barnels & horse was sent to the Seneschalls tent, and when Arthur was apparailled, then the master said to him, let us go, and salute you the Archbishop, who is brother to King Chendous, & vncle to the faire lady Florence, & who Arthur heard speak of Florence.

§ 1303

2.

his

his hart trembled for joy, & so he went towards the bishop.  
 And when the bishop saw him, he rose and did salute him,  
 to did Sir Piles and also Sir Rowland of Wygges bein he  
 they knew him not, & to the bishop beheld him all amazed  
 for he seemed to him to be the most faire knight of the world.  
 When Arthur did of his honer and did salute the bishop  
 all other, and in like wise they him again. When the bishop  
 demanded of him what he was. Sir said, Arthur, I am a  
 knight stranger. And as soon as Sir Rowland heard him say  
 so, it ran into his hart that it was a famous knight that he  
 his cousin, & than he demanded of him what was his name.  
 Sir said he, my right name is Arthur. And how can ye your  
 goire go Sir Rowland. Sir said, Arthur, he is named. And  
 when Sir Rowland kneel, he said that it was he that slew  
 his cousin, and so demanded of him from whence he came.  
 Sir go Arthur, I come straight from Argence. Well Sir go  
 Rowland saw you the battail that was done ther between  
 a strange knight, & the duke of Wygges newly. And when  
 the maister heard the demands, he was right ioyous, for  
 than he will well that the wordes that had ben spoken be-  
 fore, should be well reuenged. When Arthur answered Sir  
 Rowland and said, Sir Iohn the battail was done & pat-  
 sed so by. I think said Sir Rowland that it was your selfe  
 that did that battail with Sir Isembart. Sir quod Arthur  
 I would bee right glad to be of such valoure as to conquest  
 in battail such a knight as he was. Certainly quod Sir Row-  
 land I know wel it was you, and therefore I say that false-  
 ly and vntreuly ye did it, and that I will make good in con-  
 tinent my body againste yours. And when the archbishop  
 heard that, he blamed much Sir Rowland for his wordes, &  
 he said him that all the matter might be in rest and peace.  
 But he proudly answered and said, he said that he should not  
 but that he would arme him incontinent. When the maister  
 said to the bishop, may I let him alone for he is the right  
 therefore he hath good cause to be reuenged if he can, for  
 what he hath his enemy present before him. What shall he  
 then do go take to him any farther, and all that he shall be  
 call

out to be the right lord till they were together, for hee will  
 well know that Arthur would reuenge right well his wordes  
 as he had said to him before. When Gouvernar right ioye dis-  
 pleased Sir Rowland said, Sir Rowland, you are to blame our  
 singulour malice thus this knight of falsehille whome  
 you have done thus neuer saw him before nor will not what  
 he is, therefore I say plainly you lie falsely in your head, he  
 is not false nor neuer was to you nor yet to any other, and  
 in that quarrell here is my gage to fight with you my bo-  
 dy against yours. When Arthur blamed Gouvernar for his  
 wordes, and commended him to be in peace, and so hee did  
 follow his pleasure. When Arthur said, Sir Rowland if  
 you late any thing against me, I am here ready to defend  
 me against you. Well Sir said Rowland, of falsehille I ap-  
 peale you in that quarrell, and inke shortly on your horse, and  
 defend it and you dare. Well Sir said Arthur, you saie well,  
 good your wordes, I will not be long from you: Sir, said  
 the maister to Sir Rowland, you have the heart of a noble  
 baron, therefore you doe right well to defend your right,  
 for honour right and truth shall take helpe you, all this  
 he saie but in a mockerie. When Sir Rowland went to  
 arme him, and the Seneschall and the Archbishop, and ma-  
 ster deuen kept still compaigne with Arthur, who inconti-  
 nentlie was armed. When the maister went straight to the  
 noble Florence, and found her in her Lent standing on a  
 station of the like, and as soon as she saw the maister, she be-  
 gan to smile and called him to her. When he said, madame  
 and I like your grace Arthur is come, and as for his com-  
 ming Sir Rowland of Wygges hath appeached him of false-  
 hille for slaying of his cousin of Argence, and so they be both  
 about to arme them, for the battail betwene them shall be  
 incontinent. And when the Ladie heard him speake of Ar-  
 thur, her blood trembled and therewith she blushed as red,  
 and as a rose, and was in her heart right ioyous of his com-  
 ming, and right sore displeased that Sir Rowland  
 should fight with him so soon as his first coming, then  
 shee saide: master I doubt mee least anye vilanie  
 should

Should come to Arthur by fighting with sir Rowland. Madame saide the maister, ye know not as yet the noble valure of Arthur, for I am sure you hee setteth nothinge though he had to do al at ones with such bias as sir Rowland is, therefore madame issue out of your paultion and looke on your lower & behold whether he be faire or not, the archbishop your buckle is with him, and your seneschall, and sir Ancean, and also sir Miles of Palefount, and sir Bysbar, all these are right soze displeased of the felony that sir Rowland hath done to Arthur your knight. A maister said Florence, would to God he were mine, let he go & I praye you shew him vnto me, for I desire much to see him. Then Florence issued out, nobly accompanied with ladies and damosells, to the numbze of C. C. and by that time the tidinges was spread al about the field in euery manns tent, how that sir Rowland was arming of him to fight with a strange knight. And when the archbishops, the other barons saw Florence, they went and encountred hir, and Arthur was in their company, and there they saw eche other, wherewith they were bothe so soze stricken with the dart of loue, that they lost their countenance, howe he it Florence as goodly as she might, maintained hir countenance, and than she laide hir hand on the bishops shoulger, and demaunded of him what knight Arthur was, who aboue all other seemed to be the most gracious and gentill, and he had his helme of his head, and behelde euer Florence, and also hir faire eyes went neuer from him, so she could not kepe hir selfe from beholding of him. Then Bysbar said, madame this same is the knight that brought in my sight the soyle maister of the Bross to his ende, and euer since he hath offered his seruice to be your knight, if it please you so to except him. In the name of God sayde Florence, he is right hartely welcome, and with a right good will I retaine him as my knight. Right deere lady sayde Arthur, I humbly thanke you of the high honour that ye doe me, as to retaine me to be of the company, and number of so many and noble wyse men as your knights be.

And

And with these wordes ther came a messenger to Florence, and shewed hir how that the Kinge of Aquen and duke Philip were coming with v. C. knights in their company, and how that he was within a myle and a halfe. They are right hartely welcome said Florence. And by that time sir Rowland was armed and also Arthur. Then the Warw began to cry, go to gether, bayle, bayle. Then Gouvernar set on Arthurs helm on his head, and Bawwin brought him his horse, and he mounted thereon as lightly as though he had bene vnarmed, than he toke his white shield and did cast it about his neck. And as soone as Florence saw the shield she knew it right well, and saide in hir hart. A deere louer that shield becometh you right wel. I pray to God it may be well employed vpon you. Then he toke a great and a mightie speare, and when he was redy at all points, than he turned his eyes towarde Florence, & his eyes went neuer from him, but beheld him with feruent loue & desire, wherewith Arthur toke such haroinesse that he feared not all the world at that houre. So than he turned & dashed his horse towarde sir Rowland, and he in like wise to him, and they went together as though thunder had fallen from heauen, and all that beheld them saide one to an other, a good lord what a goodly knight is yonder strange knight. And sir Rowland hit Arthur so rudely, that he brake his speare all to sheuers, but Arthur strake him with his spear the which was so long & big so vnicasurably that he sent both knight and horse and all to the earth in a hepe, wherewith sir Rowlands arme brake asonder in the middell, and the horse and saddle fel so soze on him, that it brake two ribbes in his side, and so he lay a great space in a traunce. Wherof Florence had more ioy than euer she had of any thing, and specially when she saw hir loue do so high deedes of prowes. Then sir Rowland had brought thither viii. knights, and when they saw their maister sir Rowlande at that mischiffe they all toke their harnesse and all at once ran and assailed Arthur.

Then Arthur drew his good sword, and strake so the

Z.iii.

first

first that he encountered with, that he clawe him to the chin, and from the second he made his head to lie into the felds, and the third he made to lye over his horse croupe and legs upward. Than every man beheld the high prowess of Arthur and saide each to other, the strokes of this knight are greatly to be doubted. Than Gouvernar toke a great peece of a broken chariot and dast into the pree & danc-powne knights both horse and man to the earth. Than every man said unto other, this knight is not without company, their almes is right hard to indure, I would have none of their pitance, they are great dispencers, for they give more than is of them demanded. And whan Florence saw the outrage of those knightes, she was right sorrowfull, for she had great feare of Arthur. Than she commaunded hir senechal that he should go and departe the battaile, and that those knights should be all taken, and their hands bound fast together in a punishment of their deedes, than hir senechal incontinent mounted on a great courser, and in a riche coat of greene gyrt with a white silken lace, and his hat at his back, with a white warder in his hand. Than he spored forth his horse and caused knights to come out of every Tent, and so they toke the knightes that were fighting with Arthur and Gouvernar, but first of the xiiii. ther was vi. slaine, and divers other sore hurt. Than Florence and the archbishop came to sir Rowland where as he laye still at that time in a traunce halfe a sleepe, and whan he was reuived and saw the bishop and Florence standing beefore him, hee desired that the knight that had insted with him might come and speake with him, and so Wisebar went for him, and whan Arthur was come, sir Rowlande saide to him: Sir ye be welcome, and for Gods sake pardon mee of y<sup>e</sup> outrage y<sup>e</sup> I haue done against you, as to enterpryse to fight against you, wherof now I sore repent me, a fr<sup>e</sup>shens forth I will be your knight and good friend. Sir sayd Arthur, if ye haue any thing trespassed against me, I pardon you w<sup>th</sup> a good hart. Then ther wer brought forth the knightes of sir Rowland, who wer fast bound because they fought against Arthur,

Arthur wout anie defiance beefore. Then said Florence, in the name of God they shal make a large amends: Certainlie madame said sir Rowland, I am content that they make amendes to the knight as hee will himselfe. So be it, saide Florence: Madame said Arthur, I thanke your grace sith that they shall make me amends at mine own laying, therfore then they shall goe quit and fr<sup>e</sup>e, for I pardon them, for they did but like knightes to helpe and aide their Lord and master. And when the Bishop and all other heard him saie so, they saide, this is a fr<sup>e</sup>e hearted and gentle knight. And then the gentle Florence saide to her heart, ah mine owne loue you haue a gentle heart and a fr<sup>e</sup>e, and mine heart is with yours, and euer shall be, and then she said to Arthur: Sir knight you shall goe and vnrarme you with my senechal, who shall holde you companie: Madame said Arthur, as it shall please you I am content. Then Florence went into her Tent and toke her master by the hand and saide: Master you tole me truth of Arthur, for he is faire and gracious, and the best knight of his hands in all the world. Certainlie madame all that is truth, for all noblenesse is in him. Well master said Florence, I loue you entrelie, and also my Lord my father loueth you right well, and you and I haue bene nourished vp together, so you be my man and clarke I woyme of my straight counsaile, therfore you ought to owe me your faith & truth without anie treason or falsenesse, and you ought to helpe and to aide me in all my busynesse. Certainly madame quoth the master, all that you say is of truth, and so shall I doe as long as I liue, for I shall keepe secret your counsaile as long as I liue. Certainly master said she, I haue great affiance in you, therfore it is so, I wil that you shal know the secrets of my hart, therfore I require you keepe it close. It is so I loue Arthur with al my heart, & I wil loue him aboue al other creatures of y<sup>e</sup> world, for here I swore faithfully to you y<sup>e</sup> as long as I liue I wil neuer haue Lord nor spouse but only him. And when y<sup>e</sup> master heard her say so, he had great ioy & saide. Madame, surely you haue god cause thus to be, hee is y<sup>e</sup> floure of all y<sup>e</sup> world,

and I shall helpe you to haue him more then anie other person of the world. But master quoth Florence, there is one thing that I would faine knowe, of what linage he is. Certainly madame he is sonne vnto a mightie duke, for Baldewin his Squier hath shewed me so. What is sufficient, said Florence, and so they left their communication at that time and departed. Then was sir Rowland borne into his Tent and vnarmed, and the Seneschall and sir Baisebar, sir Ansell and sir Miles, lead Arthur to the Seneschalls Tent, and there was he vnarmed, and when he hadde washed his handes and visage, then brought Baldewin him a circote of scarlet furred with Ermines, the which became him right well, he was bigge and high aboue all other, and coloured like the red rose had bene set on the white Lillie. Then he said he would goe and see sir Rowland, wherefore puerie man praised him much, & all the Barons went thither with him, and there he was till it was past none, then hee tooke his leaue of sir Rowland and issued out into the field, and then ther was assembled all the nobles of the field to beholde him, and they all said how that he was the most fairest creature of the world, we thinke he be sonne to a king, would to God the faire Florence were his lady and spouse. And therewith he entered into the Seneschalls tent, and hee and sir Miles plaied together at the chesse, and by that time the King of Orquenie and Duke Philip his nephew were com, and were alighted in the midst of the meadow nere to Florence Tent. And so he and Philip and welnigh xlii. other knightes went straight to Florence Tent, and there they found her playing with master Steuen, & when Florence saue the King her cosin and Duke Philip, she did salute them, and embraced and kissed them, and said how they were welcome, and so they made each other great feast and ioy, and fate dolours, and faire new greene rushes, and talked together of many things. And at the last the king demaunded of the master tidings of Arthur: Sir saide the master, he is not farre hence, he is in the Seneschalls Tent. A madame said the king, do you not see him now, speake with him as

as yet. Yes sir said Florence, I saue him when he did iust against sir Rowland, who hath appealed him of fallenesse because of his cosin the Duke of Bygoys nephew. And I pray you madame said Philip, how went the iusts between them: Sir, there is two ribbes broken in sir Rowlandes side, and one of his armes broken a sunder, for his horse fell on him: In the name of God said the King, he knoweth not as then Arthur, but nowe I thinke hee knoweth some of his strokes, therefore madame speede for the knight and be acquainted with him, for there is no Prince in all the world but that he would be right glad to haue the noble companie of him, and as I vnderstand he hath offered himselfe to be your knight, therefore receiue him and retaine him in such wise y he escape not from you, for you cannot tell what need peradventure you shall haue of him hereafter. Cosin saide Florence, you saie right well, the master shall goe for him, and so he did. Then the King said to Duke Philip his Nephew, a sir where is become the good and faithfull company that you promised to this knight now that you be here, & know that he is so nere and yet you make none other semblance, therefore sir Philip keep footst after the master for to goe to Arthur, and as they issued out of their Tent there entered the Archbishop. Then the king and Florence rose and did set downe the Bishop betwene them.

How that Duke Philip and the master went to fetch Arthur to the King of Orquenie, and to the faire Florence. Chap. 76.

Duke Philip and the master entered into the Seneschalls Tent, and there they found Arthur playing with Sir Miles. And when Arthur saue Duke Philip he went and embraced him and said: sir you be right heartlie welcome. Sir quoth Duke Philip, and you be here also well found. Sir said Arthur, where is the king of Orquenie: Certainly sir he is with my Lady Florence in her Tent, and he desireth you to come to him. In the name of God saide Arthur,

thur, I praye to God send him right good adventure, goe together, and so duke Philip and he went hand in hand talking together, and the master, the Seneschall, sir Miles, sir Ance-  
an and Baisebar, went after the till they came to Florence  
Tent. And when Florence sawe Arthur, her heart began  
to tremble, and sodainlie blushed, but there was none that  
tooke heede thereto, for everie man tooke regard to Arthur.  
And then the king and the Archbischoppe rose and went and  
embraced him, and made him right great ioye, and set him  
downe by them, and then the king demaunded of him how  
he had done sith the time that he sawe him last: and he an-  
swered and said, right well I thanke God and you. When the  
king said to Florence, madame beholde here this knight,  
for as God helpe me I would it had cost mee everie yeare  
twelve thousand pound, on the condition that he were per-  
taining to my house, and to bee my companion, and of this  
I did heartelie require him at Argence, but he then answered  
me, that he hadde offered his service to be your knight,  
therefore I saie there is nothing that can bee, but Ladies  
winne all, madame you have him wherof I am right  
iourous, and it pleaseth mee right well, for if I hadde him he  
should be yours at your commandement, you be a high and  
pulsant Ladie, therefore do him some good, and it shall be to  
your honour: I promise him saide Florence, I shall make  
him a great Lord and a pulsant, and she thought in her hart  
that she would make him as great a Lord as she was a La-  
die. Madame quoth Arthur, I thanke your grace, and there-  
with he stode upon his feete, and he had a gentle body, both  
faire and bigge, and so well proportioned in all his mem-  
bers, that the more that Florence beheld him, the more hee  
pleased her, there was no Ladie there but that they wished  
that he had bene pertaining to their Lords and husbannes,  
and as they were talking thus together, ther came to Flo-  
rence a messenger from her father the king Emendus, and  
he shewed her how that he did heartelie commend him to  
her, and desired her to go hussille to dinner, for he was com-  
ming, and will lodge the same night nere to your Tent.  
When

Then Florence made semblaunce as though shee had bene  
glad of his comming, howbeit shee was not content in her  
heart with his hussie comming, for shee had thought to have  
spoken with Arthur after dinner, and then she repented her  
that she had not spoken with him at good leasure since hee  
came. Then went she to dinner, and the king of Diquenie  
and the Bishop sate downe together, and Florence in the  
middell of the table, and duke Philip and Arthur sat downe  
together, so al the other Barons, and they wer right rich-  
lie served, and by that time the Tents & Pavillions of king  
Emendus were come and pight up not far from Florence  
Tent, then ther came Squiers and Officers by great com-  
panies, and everie man in his owne office did their paine  
to make all things readie against the kinges comming, for  
the king was comming right nere. And when the king of  
Diquenie had dined, he mounted on his horse, & Duke Phi-  
lip, and the Bishop, and Arthur, and all other Barons and  
knightes, and all they did as much honoz to Arthur as they  
could doe. And thus they rode forth till at the last they en-  
countered king Emendus, who had in his companie two  
thousand horses. When the king of Diquenie and the Arch-  
bischop did salute the king, and so rode nere him, & the king  
betweene them both. When Philip and Arthur came toge-  
ther, and Philip did salute the king right sweetly, & so then  
Philip and Arthur rode forth befoze the king, & duke Phi-  
lip held his hand on Arthurs shoulder, and Florence Sene-  
schall, and sir Miles, and sir Baisebar, & sir Ancell, rode ever  
about him, and made to him right great ioy, and at the last  
king Emendus perceived Arthur, and sawe howe all that  
ioy was made because of him, and hee sawe well how that  
he was a right goodly knight. When the king demaunded of  
the Archbischop his brother, & of the king of Diquenie what  
knight he might be that Duke Philip held so much compa-  
nie withall. By my faith sir said the Bishop, he is a right  
gratious knight and a chieualrous of his dedes, and  
there shewed the king howe that hee had iusted with Sir  
Rowlande, and howe that hee overthrewe him horse  
and

and all the earth. When the king of Diquenie said: Sir, it is the same knight that you haue heard so much honour & high prowesse reputed of. Saint marie said the king, I am ashamed that I haue made him no better semblance then I haue done, therefore for Gods sake make him to come to me. When sir Moraus who was Seneschall vnto the king went for him. When Arthur returned and went to the king and did of his bonnet, and then the king of Diquenie put Arthur betwene him and king Emendus. When the king said to him, sye you be right heartfello welcome into this my country, and sye for Gods sake be not discontent though I haue made none other semblance to you ere this time. Sir & it like your grace said Arthur, there is no such cause, but that I am alwaies at your commaundement to the uttermost of my small power. Well Arthur, saide the king, I thinke that is your name, I require you be of our compagnie, and be on our partie at this turney against the Emperour of Inde. Sir said the king of Diquenie, he is already on your side, syth he is retained to my Ladie Florence your daughter, who hath promised to doe much for him. Well said the king, that she accomplisheth not, that shall I fulfill. Thus they were talking together till they came to y<sup>e</sup> kings Tent, and there he alighted from his horse and entered into his Hauilion, the king of Diquenie, the Bishop, Philip, and Arthur followed after the king. When the king commaunded that ther should be a rich Hauilion pight vp ioyning to his, for Arthur to lodge in, for hee would haue him nere to his person as long as the tourney endured. And therewith came Florence to see the king her father. When the king rose and embraced her, and set her downe betwene him and the king of Diquenie, and her father demaunded of her how she did, and she answered and said, sye right wel I thanke your grace, then she saue whereas the Bishoppe held Arthur by the hand, whereof she was right ioyous in her heart. And by that time the king of Mozmall, and the king of Malefount, and the king of Ismaelite, and sye Oliver, and all the other twelue peeres were come into the field.

held, for they were all pertaining to the king Emendus, and so they came wher as he was, then there was greatesoy and feast made, for then the Court was noble and great. When the master made great ioy of the king of Malefount, for he was his father, and he in like case was glad to see his sonne: And all these things hadde in their companie at the least a thousand knightes, and they were all lodged about the medowe, the which lodging endured well the space of two leaguas: Thus the king and Florence, and all other, made together right great ioy and mirth in the kings pavilion: the king of Diquenie held Florence in his armes and said: Faire Ladie, my niece here shall be scene noble chivalrie done within these thre daies for your sake. True he cosin said Florence, here shall be some that I had rather see here: Certainlie madame said the king so goeth the word, some to pleasure and some to annoyance. When he said to the king Emendus, Sir behold in mine armes a rich treasure, be that shall haue her ought to kepe and cherishe her right deerlie. As God helpe mee saide the king, a rich man and a noble man, and a puissant, that haue her, who is the Emperour of Inde the more: And when Arthur heard that, he was so sore displeased in his heart, that hee coulde speake no worde of a greateseason for all the golde of the world, nor though his life had laine in iopardie thereof: Sir said Florence, peradventure the Emperour loueth another better, than me, then hee will let me goe. When master Steuen rose vp among them all, and said to the king, Sir noble and puissant king aboue all other, I require your grace of a little audience here before your grace, and all the twelue peeres of Mozology, and before all other that are here present, for I trust that my saying shall turn you both to profit and to greateshonour. When saide the king, I am content that you speake: Sir said the master, it is of truth that there is no creature that ought to loue anye thing so well as his owne proper flesh and blood, the which euery man should loue and holde right deerlie according to the profit of the soule and sauegard of the bodie, and honour of the





certainly it is for no good that ye draw so nye to the lady.  
 And when the knight saw that the king was so full of  
 joy, and said to her selfe, this knight ought right well to be  
 in the love of a right high & puissant damzell. When the king  
 Emenbus had greates mervaille from whence such strokes  
 should come, and said, sir knight, what sauey you be God  
 increase your honour, for as for hountie & valiantnesse you  
 haue sufficient alcedie. When all & other kings praised him  
 much, and each of them wished that he were pertaining to  
 their householde.  
 Then the king of Denenye ran straight to Arthur  
 and embraced him and sayde: A good friend you have ren-  
 dered to this knight of such service such guerdon, & so toke  
 and leaue him into his tent, and ther he was byrned. The  
 king Emenbus caused the knight, when he was requied to  
 be borne to sir Rowlands tent to beare him companie. And  
 when sir Rowland knew all this how that he had iusted w  
 Arthur, and how he had sped, he had so great joy, that next  
 hand he was ther by all whole of his hurts, and said to the  
 knight, sir you be heartely welcome, for you haue found my  
 prohibition, sir the lecture is that he hath given you to drink  
 is full strong, & I trow there be therein more bitternesse then  
 sweetnesse, therefore freind come on to me and keepe well  
 your clothes as I do mine. When the knight said, sir how is  
 it with me, for as for me, I assure you I am sore displeased,  
 at which wordes all there did laugh, the which saying was  
 told to king Emenbus, wherat hee had great sport. So Ar-  
 thur went to the pavilion that the king had made to bee  
 ordeined for him, and Florence and the Bishop and master  
 Satrien went to her. Went, then he toke the master a part,  
 and said, master how fare you by Arthur, is he not a vertu-  
 ous knight and a valiant above all other, thinke you that  
 hee hath anye love toward me. Yes, my lady madame, I  
 knowe well, more then anye creature living. And then gen-  
 tis master quoth Florence, finde some meanes that hee  
 and I might speake together, for I woulde faine knowe  
 somewhat of his heart by his owne reporte.  
 And when the master, I will doe what I can, and  
 that

and when the knight saw that the king was so full of  
 joy, and said to her selfe, this knight ought right well to be  
 in the love of a right high & puissant damzell. When the king  
 Emenbus had greates mervaille from whence such strokes  
 should come, and said, sir knight, what sauey you be God  
 increase your honour, for as for hountie & valiantnesse you  
 haue sufficient alcedie. When all & other kings praised him  
 much, and each of them wished that he were pertaining to  
 their householde.

Then the king of Denenye ran straight to Arthur  
 and embraced him and sayde: A good friend you have ren-  
 dered to this knight of such service such guerdon, & so toke  
 and leaue him into his tent, and ther he was byrned. The  
 king Emenbus caused the knight, when he was requied to  
 be borne to sir Rowlands tent to beare him companie. And  
 when sir Rowland knew all this how that he had iusted w  
 Arthur, and how he had sped, he had so great joy, that next  
 hand he was ther by all whole of his hurts, and said to the  
 knight, sir you be heartely welcome, for you haue found my  
 prohibition, sir the lecture is that he hath given you to drink  
 is full strong, & I trow there be therein more bitternesse then  
 sweetnesse, therefore freind come on to me and keepe well  
 your clothes as I do mine. When the knight said, sir how is  
 it with me, for as for me, I assure you I am sore displeased,  
 at which wordes all there did laugh, the which saying was  
 told to king Emenbus, wherat hee had great sport. So Ar-  
 thur went to the pavilion that the king had made to bee  
 ordeined for him, and Florence and the Bishop and master  
 Satrien went to her. Went, then he toke the master a part,  
 and said, master how fare you by Arthur, is he not a vertu-  
 ous knight and a valiant above all other, thinke you that  
 hee hath anye love toward me. Yes, my lady madame, I  
 knowe well, more then anye creature living. And then gen-  
 tis master quoth Florence, finde some meanes that hee  
 and I might speake together, for I woulde faine knowe  
 somewhat of his heart by his owne reporte.  
 And when the master, I will doe what I can, and  
 that

that shalbe to morow after supper, and to us for that night  
they departed, & every boie went to rest till the next mor-  
ning that the king and all other were up.

How Florence & Arthur spake together at good sea-  
son at the ende of the forest, and they promised eche  
to loue other, and there the queene Proserpine appe-  
ared to them, & shewed to Florence how that Arthur  
loued hir truely, and how that they should haue eche  
other by the way of marriage; but first they should  
endure great paine and trouble. Cap. 48.

**I**n the next morning the king arose and apparailled him  
selfe to go and meete the Emperour, but Florence would  
not go, nor suffer any of hir company to go; saving all one-  
ly maister Steuen, and that was to the intent to speake  
with Arthur. So thus rode to the king Emendous and al his  
company, and Arthur rode talking with the king of Que-  
ney, and so than the maister came and bid salute them, and  
they him, than the maister said to Arthur in counsel, sir my  
lady Florence doth salute you by mee, as she that would to  
you both honour and profit. A maister said Arthur, I pray  
to God send hir as much honour and welth as I would to  
myne owne person, for truely she is a lady of great  
honour, and I am greatly displeased in my heart, the king  
hath made me to ryde with him, for now I may not se hir  
grace the which greeneth me right soze. Why said the mai-  
ster, would ye than gladly see hir, yea sir no Arthur, glad-  
lier than either father or mother, I yet I am sure they wold  
be glad to see me. When I beleue that I maister that when  
ye see hir yet would ye be gladder to speake with hir. Sir  
truely maister I had neuer so great joy as I should haue,  
if I might come to speake with hir grace, but I see well  
that will not be. When Arthur friend said the maister, loue  
ye wel him to speake with hir. A maister ye haue made co-  
enant with me, for this that I should speake with hir, but  
ye see now ye haue forgotten it, but and ye would doe it I  
would

but and ye would doe it I would be your knight. Well sir  
and I canse you to speake with hir in priuate or it be night,  
will ye than giue me a gift that I shall demaund of you.  
Sine you maister said Arthur, yea truely, and what so euer  
ye demand of me and it be the head of this Emperour that  
is here comming, soz and ye will I shall go strike it of in-  
continent. Certainly sir said the maister it shal not cost you  
so muche, soz my demaund is no more than if I finde the  
meanes that ye shall haue in mariage the noble Florence,  
will ye than againe finde the waies that I may haue the  
faire lady Margaret of Argenton by the way of mariage,  
who is at the port noyze, soz I loue hir with all myne en-  
tier heart. And when Arthur heard that, he was neuer so  
ioyfull befoze, and embraced him with all his heart, and de-  
maunded of him whether he had any comfort of hir or not.  
And he answered that he trusted right well to speede, and  
the rather by his meanes: well maister said Arthur, if she  
be ones agreed to your fear, no man living that should take  
hir from you as long as I am able to ryde or go, but that he  
shall leese his head in the quarell. Sir saide the maister I  
heartely thanke you, and sir I shall tell you what ye shall  
do this night after supper, kepe your selfe in your tent close  
and go not to the court, & than I shall come to you & bryng  
with me the lady Florence, and there ye shall speake with  
hir at good leysure, but than be ye nothing abashed, but  
humbly desire hir loue and fauour in all goodly maner, and  
habandon your self in al points to be hir knight, but though  
that she make it strange and deny you at the first, yet be not  
ashamed therewith and she shall loue you the better, where-  
by ye shall the rather deserue hir grace, soz than she shall  
know that of great hardines and valure of heart it is come  
on you to take in hand so high an enterpryse. Wentil maister  
said Arthur, think on this and I shalbe your knight: wel sir  
saide the maister, I will depart from you as now, because  
none should mistrust our talking. When the maister rode  
sozth into the company of the king of Walesound his father  
and Arthur rode into the company of duke Phillip. And

king Emendus rode forth so long till at the last he encountered the Emperour and there they made great chere eche to other, and so rode together cheke by cheke till they came to their tentes. And than the Emperour was ready to go to service, and so they heard service together. When after service the Emperour being in his tent with king Emendus & all other nobles that were there assembled at that time. Then king Emendus said to him, Sir it hath ben of this time agreed and accorded with all these foure kings, and all these rich peeres of my realme, as well by othe and assurance, as by sealing of certaine charters made and affirmed of the same covenants, that no creature should have my daughter Florence in marriage but all onely that person that the Image who is in Florence pavilion should give unto the Chaplet that she holdeth in hir handes, for so it is decreed, wherefore and it please you when the tourney is done ye shall go to the Image, and I beleue she wil give it you, and yet our othes and assurance kept and upholden. Merely said the Emperour I am well content, thinking surely to have had the chaplet. Well Sir said the king, ye have brought hither much people, and also we have a great company with us, wherefore I feare that if we should tournay together all at once that there should be done much hurte, whereby here after should ensue great hatred and enuy, wherefore me thinketh best that one of your barons take in hand the tourney as to morrow with a thousand knights in his company, and I shall set one of my knightes against him with as many in his company, and so let us doe all foure daies one after another, and I think this is a better way than all to fight at once. Certainly Sir said the Emperour ye say right well, and all this pleaseth me. When next forth the Earle of the pleyperdun, whereas the Emperour had bene with the countesse all night and he desired of the Emperour that he might have the tournay the first day, the which the Emperour did graunt him with a good heart. When came forth the King of Diquenie and he desired of king Emendus to have the Earle the same day, and he had graunt of his request.

And

And the King of Diquenie took Arthur and Governour by their hands, and said, Sirs I retaine you against to morrow to be on my partie, and when the Earle of the Ile of Perdue sawe Governour, he made to him right greete chere. When King Emendus took leaue of the Emperour, and so every man departed into their owne tentes. When the king of Diquenie went about and did chouse out such knightes as he would have, till it was time to goe to dinner. Then was water brought forth, and so every man went to the Court who that would. When the King Emendus and the other foure kings were set at the great table, & Duke Philip and Arthur were set next them, and there they were richly served and made great feast and ioie. And when all the clothes were taken up, then King Emendus and the other four kings sate them downe together on a cloth of silke, & the king of Diquenie took Arthur by the hand, to whome he made right great ioie, and bare to him much honour, and as they thus talked together, there came to them the Archbishop. Then master Steven stode before the King & said, Sir, my Ladie Florence your Daughter hath sent me unto you, for she hath heard saie howe that the king of Diquenie hath taken on him the tourney as to morrow against the Earle of the Ile of Perdue, & Sir because she knoweth well how that the Emperour hath manie good knightes, therefore Sir if it please you she wold leape on her palfrey as to morrowe, and come and see the tourney and plate of these good knightes. In the name of God said the King of Male, found, my Ladie shall do right well in her so doing, & I am sure the King will give her licence. Sir verilie with a right good will, said the King, sith it please you, but I doubt mee much that the great heate will annoie her, and also the great prease of horses and knightes will trouble her. Well Sir said the master, of that she shall be taken good heed of, and Sir my Ladie desireth also that Arthur her newe retained knight might tourney against them to morrowe without, for she will see him tourney, and she will send to see of his route her Seneſhall, Sir Bylebar, Sir Ansell, and

As.iii.

Sir

for Spiles of Walesound, and so she will knowe to morrowe what all these knightes will doe. It pleaseth me right well saide the king: And when Arthur heard that he had great ioy and said, I am all at the commaundement of my Lady, and I thanke her grace that it hath pleased her to retaine me for one of her knightes, for in dede so I am and will be evermore. Well said y<sup>e</sup> master, sith it is so that Arthur shal be to morrowe in my Ladies rout, it will bee good that hee goe and spozt him with them to be acquainted with them, and to talke and commune together, for by keeping of companie together much loue is attained. In the name of God said the king of Bruckenie, all this is but well said, go your waie with him and acquaint him with these other noble knightes, and he thought in himselfe that Florence would gladielie see him, and that he perceived wel sith the time that shee caused him to sit downe by her, for then hee perceived somewhat her lowlie countenance to him ward, and also King Emendus was content that he shoulde goe, howbeit the master made no great hast because that none shoulde mistrust him. When the king of Bruckenie said to Arthur, Sir take your leaue of the king & other, and so he did. When the master went straight to the Seneschalles Tent, who made him right great chere, & when all the other knightes knew that he was there, they made to him great signes of loue, & desired him that he woulde not depart out of their companie, and so he promised them to doe. When the master went to the faire Florence and saide, madame, Arthur is come to your Seneschalles Tent, the king hath sent him thither to spozt him, and her heart leapt for ioy and said: Ah master, & when shall I then see him? Madame said the master, hee is as now in the companie of your noble Barons, who dooth greatlie feast him, and as yet to cause him to come from the in my minde it were not well done, but madame go to your supper to night somewhat betimes, & then send for your Barons, and command them to make them readie against the morning to turney in the companie of Arthur, & then when they be departed from you, in the meane season that they be

about

about theyr businesse, you shall goe plaie you in the entrie of this Forrest among the faire greene Dakes, and thether shall I bring him to you. You say right well said Florence, so be it, then she commaunded to hasten her supper, and so went thereto betimes: And Arthur all that season was with the Seneschall, and all the other knightes, who for the loue of him made great ioy and feast till Supper was past. When master Steven said to Florence, madame I wil goe to your knightes to cause them to come to you, & then shortly lie looke that you deliuer them, and then goe you thether as I haue shewed you, and in the meane time I shal keep companie with Arthur. Goe your waie dere friend saide Florence, and cause them to come to me, for I thinke verie long till I haue deliuered them. When the master departed from her and went to the Seneschalles Tent, and there found as then all the Barons washing of their handes, & talking of wities, and laughing at Sir Bisebar because hee saide hee loved better to be striken then to strike another, for he saide it greatlie annoyed him the dishonour or mischiefe of another, for he was of the opinion that he could not be striken without his wife were ill, for hee saide that if illnesse were once mounted by into the hart of a woman, it wer hard to withdrawe her from her enterpryse, and if his wife did ill, the shame thereof is to her and to her linage, and not to him, for he shoulde be angrie and displeased with her ill dedes or vilanie. And when they sawe the master they ranne to him on all parties, and plaied with him right sweetly. When the Seneschall demaunded of him what tidings. And hee answered and said, Lordes, my Ladie Florence woulde faine speake with you incontinentlie, therefore goe your wayes shortly to her but for Gods sake tarrie not long with her, for she is a little displeased in her head, goe your waies and I will keepe companie with Arthur in the meane season, he and I will goe walke together. When all these Lordes and knightes apparailled them and went to Florence. And then she commaunded them that they shoulde make all thinges readie against the next daie for the tourney, and that they

shoulde

should keepe company with Arthur as their chief captain  
that day. When the Senechal said, madame then I will be  
full for vs to returne to our lodgings to make all things  
readie. In Gods name said Florence, goe on your wayes,  
and so they departed, and in the meane season master Ste-  
uen lead Arthur to the woode: And when Florence had be-  
lieuered all her knights, she called to her the Queene of De-  
quenie, in whom she trusted aboue all other, and two other  
Damsells, and said to them: Faire Ladies, let vs goe a lit-  
tle into yonder woode to sport vs, for I haue a little paine  
in my head. Madame said the Queene of Dequenie, let vs  
goe, and so they two went towards the Castle taking toge-  
ther, and the other two Damselles came after, and at the  
last they came vnder the shadow of the faire greene oakes,  
and there they sate them downe, and the master and Arthur  
were in the Forrest not far from them, and at the last Flo-  
rence and the Queene perceiued them. Then the Queene  
said, madame I see yonder the master and another knight  
with him, but I wot not who he is: And Florence answere-  
d and said, madame that is truth, I am gladd that I see  
them, for I haue a little to speake with the master, therefore  
madame rest you here a little while and I will goe and  
speake with him: Madame said the Queene, by your licence  
I must also depart, and go speake with the Countesse of the  
Fle Berdue, who is come to this tourney, therefore I will  
goe to her, and then the master maye come to you: In Gods  
name said Florence, so be it. Then the Queene departed,  
and the master and Arthur came to Florence, and so sate  
them downe together. When the master saide, madame be-  
holde here your knight and true lover: Master saide Flo-  
rence, he is right heartlie welcome, for his comming plea-  
seth me right well: Madame said Arthur, God giue you as  
much honour and ioy as I would to the person that I loue  
best of all the world. Madame quoth the master, as God help  
me I am certaine that he would you more honour then a-  
nie person liuing, for you haue his heart and faithfull loue,  
more then anie creature of the world, and madame to proue  
that

that this is true, enquire of him the truth, and he is so gen-  
tle and meeke that he cannot hide his minde from you, and  
madame I praye you be not displeased, for I must needs go  
speake with my Ladie the queene of Dequenie, and so he a-  
rose and went his waie and left Florence and Arthur to-  
gether. When Florence demaunded of Arthur of whence he  
was; and he answered and said, madame and it like your  
grace, I am of the Realme of Fraunce: and of what linage  
be you come said Florence, I require you tell me the truth.  
Madame said he, as God helpe mee you bee so high a person  
that I ought not to hide anie thing from your grace, madame  
know you for truth that I am the onelie sonne of the Duke  
of Britaine. What is noble inough said Florence, but by  
the faith that you owe to me, who is the person of the world  
that you loue best, I would haue her loue and acquaintance,  
is she in your Countrie or else where, shew me the truth &  
hide nothing from me I require you, and what thee is that  
you would be most ioyous to haue her loue, name her to me  
by the faith that you owe to al the Sacraments of the church.  
Madame said Arthur, I require your grace to pardon me,  
for he may be such a person that if I should name her, you  
would peraduenture thinke in me great follie, for she may  
be such a one that shee will not set her heart in so lowe a  
place, nor yet I thinke scant will heare mee, therefore it is  
better to me to be still then to speak follie. Trulie said Flo-  
rence, that is had in the heart is had in the mouth & speech,  
therefore shew me whether you loue anie Ladie or Dam-  
sell in all the world or not: Madame, trulie I loue one as  
faithfullie as heart of man can thinke. Pea said Florence,  
but doth she knowe that you loue her: as God helpe mee  
saie. Why, spake you neuer to her of the matter. No trulie  
madam said Arthur, and how is it that you loue her & neuer  
shewed her thereof, in that it shuld come to me that you lo-  
ued her not, for it is much paine for the mouth to keep close  
the secret wil of the hart, for lightlie the desire of the hart putteth  
forth the word of the mouth, as the wind putteth away smoke,  
how shuld she know you loue her, & it be not shewed her,  
and

and if we looke you without speaking each of you to other, what toy shall there be betwene you, if your hearts know not the wills each of other, as much unliker two Thonells in a ditch and no man to work with them, as to persons to lous together, and none of them to speake together, therefore Arthur shew me surely if he that you loue would give you audience, shuld it anie thing touch you on the quicke or not. Madame I shall tell you the truth as God helpe, speaking with her that I loue should gentlie recomfort me, for the salutation that you sent me this last day by the maister was more ioyfull vnto me then to haue had all the world's treasure. Why doe you set so much by this message, or why doe you loue it so much. Madame for the loue of you that did send it to me. Arthur, then mee thinketh you haue loue to me. Madame, as God helpe me that is truth, more then to anie other person of the worlde. Well Arthur by the faith that you owe vnto your Baptisme, is there no loue in you that surmounteth this loue that you haue to me, shew me the verie truth. Madame, by the faith that I owe vnto God neither to father nor mother nor to anie other person of the worlde. And would you saide Florence, be glad and I loued you againe. Ah deere Ladie, I haue neuer had nor cannot haue so great ioy. Well said Florence, it is but folie that you haue set your heart on me, for if I loued again you shuld be the worse for it, if it were knowne, for you may see heere this Emperour who doth greatly inlooe him to haue me, and he is a greates man both of behauiour and of friendes, and also my Lozde and father and all these other foure kings, will all runne on you to haue you, therefore Arthur aduise you well, for when one beginneth a matter, it is great wisdom to regarde and beholde what ende it will come vnto, and the ende of this enterpryse is but your death.

Madame said Arthur, for all that if I knewe it would please your grace I would care for nothing else, for I would neither doubt Emperour nor king if I had this noble accord, for if there were anie that would make anie business in

in that case, I would shewe him ere this yeare went out, more then an hundred thousand bright sheldes out of Fraunce, nor they should not haue so strong a castle or Citie but that I would bring it downe to the hard earth. Why said Florence, for to haue me would you or durst you then begin warre against so many noble and high, rich & mighty persons as be here, haue you so good a heart or hardynesse. Madame, yea trulie, by the faith that I owe vnto you, and it were against all the world. Friend Arthur said Florence, I cannot see the manner how you might haue mee, but your thought in this matter may be to your damage, or peradventure death maye happellie come to you shortly, therefore good friend withdraue your loue, and do you wisely, and because such a man as you be hath thought to loue so high a person as I am, I wil make to you amends for your good will, therefore I will give to you the Port Poire, the which you haue atchiued, with twentie thousand pound of yerelie land, and leaue you this follie as in lousing of me, for you shall finde inough beside. Why madame will you then give me land and goods, to the intent that I should leaue lousing of your grace, certainlie madame I will none of your lands. I loue you with all my heart, and will neuer take it from you, I care not for your riches, whereas I should lose your loue, for I thanke God I am rich inough, for as God helpe if I might haue your loue, I would desire no more wealth in all the worlde. Well Arthur saide Florence, is this then surelie your minde: Prea madame trulie without any faiming: Well good friend Arthur sayd Florence, then be of good heart, for by the faith that I owe vnto you, you be in the waie to haue that you desire for, if you be of a good and faithfull heart to me ward, I promise you to be in like case with you, whatsoeuer fall thereof, therefore be you hardie and couragious, and shew you selfe so to morow in this tourney, that euerie man maye haue cause to doubt you. Madame said Arthur, the Lozde that formed all the world send your abundaunt grace both bountie and bafure, for now that I haue your loue I am rich inough, for

I desire no more of God, and I shall use to be taken while  
my life endureth. I will mine owne true love sake. I re-  
rence, I will tell you what you shall see, I will that you shall  
be to me, as I am in the journey, in the company of the King  
of Braganza, who is my cousin German, and I will that  
from hence forth he be your companion, and that you love  
him, and that I shall desire him ever to increase your honour,  
in as much as he may, and I shall send unto you, to give you  
attendance my Senechal and other of my knights, and  
they shall be of your route, and there I desire you, doe such  
deedes of armes, that it may sound to your honour, and to  
the rest and peace of my hart, so, my heart shall be repayed  
and nourished with the good renowme of your high prowe-  
esse, I may not long talke with you at this time, nor so of-  
ten as my heart would, but alwaies send me your will and  
minde by master Steuen, and I shall send mine againe un-  
to you, keep secret this matter howsoever you doe, for else  
much harme or evil might peradventure happen to fall to  
us by false enuie, be you alwaies true, and I shall doe my  
endeuour to bring you to hono: And as they were thus tal-  
king together, there issued out of the Forrest Prosperina,  
Duene of the Fairies, and of the Castle of Hurtbise, where  
as Arthur had bene with the wounded knight, & she did  
dolone by Arthur, and both the louers knew nothing there-  
of till she was set, and as soon as Arthur saw her he knew  
her right well, and did salute her, and she him againe, and  
Florence also, & she said to Arthur: Friend, now haue you  
that your heart so long desired for, therefore now be in peace  
and ioy, and loue your louer with true and faithfull heart.  
Fair daughter Florence, I sawe not you, but I was in  
your bed, and there I made knowledge to you of this man,  
beholde here Arthur your true louer, who faithfullie and  
with good heart loueth you, therefore faire Daughter loue  
him againe, so I do bestow him to you in your natiuitie  
in the mount of adventures, and at the same time I bestow  
vied also that you shoulde in all thinges resemble me.  
Then Arthur behelde them both one after another, and so  
percei-

perceined well that they were like in all things, for ther was  
no creature though he were neuer so craftie, that if he be-  
held well at length them both, coulde not discerne the one  
from the other, they resembled so nere together. When she  
saide to Florence, behold here your louer, and I will beare  
witness that he is at this time the most truest louer that li-  
ueth, so I haue right wel proued him, and then she recoun-  
ted to Florence how that she had desired his loue in the for-  
rest, and also caused him to come vnto the Castle of Hurt-  
bise, and there did as much as she could to entice his minde  
to cause him to loue her, & also how she made other to tempt  
him, and how all that would not auaille, for alwaies he was  
in one firme point, whereat Florence right sweetlye did  
smile. When Prosperina saide to Arthur, friend you shall  
haue her in marriage, but first you must suffer great pain,  
and faire Florence, because that the Emperour and the  
King your father be great together, therefore your father  
will be right sore displeased with you, in such wise that if  
he might haue you at that time, hee woulde put you both to  
death, but for all that be not abashed, for I shall make the  
peace betwene you right well, ther is so great loue betwene  
him and the Emperour, but I promise you ere all be done,  
I shall cause as great hate to be betwene them, inso much y  
each of them shall desire other to the death, wherefore lue you  
in rest and peace, and loue each other faithfullie, and I shall  
thinke right well on euerie thing that shall bee behouable  
for you in this matter, and so thus I bequeath you both to  
God so this time. So then the Duene Prosperina arose  
and went her waie so dauntlie, that none of them wist not  
wher that she was become, wherof they greatly meruailed.  
When Florence made a token to master Steuen that  
hee shoulde come to them, and when hee was come, shee  
saide.

Master beholde Arthur here, I deliuer him to you, and  
loke you take good heede to him, and shewe to my cousin the  
King of Braganza that I send him to him, and saie that I  
desire him to procure to doe him as much honour to  
morrow

and now as he can doe for my sake, and god so detourge  
Arthur, thinke you to morrow how that you are a louer to  
a faire gentle Damsell, and to a right noble Ladie and a  
rich, give you giftes largelie to this noble Knight both bar-  
neis and horse, the which shall make you to be beloued of  
euerie bodie, for I beleue the time will come that we shall  
haue need of friends, ther is no worse thing then largelie  
to giue, for thereby oftentimes all ill will is appeased, & ma-  
ster I charge you to deliuer to him whatsoeuer he wil haue,  
Arthur now goe on your waie and lodge in the Tent that  
the king my father hath ordained for you, and take you  
be free and large and giue with god hart, and so as for this  
time adieu mine owne deere louer, & so for a remembrance  
kissed him, and then she departed and went to the Queene  
of Diquenie. And Arthur and the master went to the Se-  
neshalls Tent, and there they encountered Gouvernar and  
Balwedin. When within a while Arthur took leaue of  
the Seneshall, and of all the other that were there, & so de-  
parted and went to the Kings Tent, and by the waie he  
met with the king of Diquenie, who issued out of the king  
of Malesounds tent, who was father vnto master Steuen, &  
when he sawe Arthur and master Steuen together, hee did  
salute them and made to them right great chere and ioye,  
and so they went talking together til they came to his tent.  
Then the master took him a parte and saide, sir my Ladye  
Florence trusteth much in you, and loueth you entirelie:  
Wherefore sir she hath sent you here Arthur her owne  
Knight, and putteth him into your handes, and she desireth  
you that all the honour and aide that you can doe, that you  
will shew it to him to morrowe in the turney for her sake,  
And when the king heard that he had right great foie, and  
saide to Arthur, sir by the faith that I owe vnto the king, I  
promise you that I will beare to him faithful companie and  
true loue, for the loue of my Ladie and of you, so thus they  
were so long together till it was time to goe to their rests,  
and so then euerie man returned into their owne Tentes  
and lodgings. And the master deliuered to Gouvernar six  
horses

horses for Arthur, so the intent that he should giue them a-  
waie the next daie.

How that Arthur had the honour of the tourney the  
first daie, the which was made for the faire Flo-  
rence, betweene the King Emendus and the Empe-  
tour, who would haue had Florence to his wife, on  
the which daie Arthur got him selfe great praise a-  
mong all the Baronie, insomuch that euerie Knight  
was glad to be in his companie, whereof the fayre  
Florence was right ioyous, for she loued him a-  
boue all other. Chap. 79.

At the next morning all the thinges and other arose, and  
I heard seruice, and such as would tooke a sop in wine,  
and then euerie man armed him. When Gouvernar and  
Balwedin by the commaundement of Arthur did giue  
and departe manie horses and much barneis to sundrie  
Knights whereas they sawe want and neede, the which  
Knights thanked Arthur heartelie, and promised to giue  
him their helpe and succour at all times and against euerie  
man, whereby it appeareth that there is nothing but by  
large giftes it is made soft and make. When the tidings of  
Arthurs curtesye was spread abroad in euerie Tent, and  
there it was said how that there was not in all the world  
so free a Knight as Arthur was. And these wordes came to  
the audience of the faire Florence, whereat her heart didde  
laugh and therewithall she mounted on a palfraie, and the  
Queene of Diquenie, and the Archbishop in her companie,  
who shewed her how that Arthur had a great renowm, and  
counsailed her to loue him well. And thus was King E-  
mendus mounted on his horse, and all his Baronie to be-  
holde the tourney, and Arthur was readie armed in the  
place whereas the turney should be, & so then there came to  
him the king of Diqueny with his banner displayed, & moe  
then two hundred in his companie, & when he came to Ar-  
thur, he said in open audience, for your noble valure & high  
Ab. p. 10. welle

promised to fight with him, and I believe verily that in all this tourney there shall be no knight like unto you, therefore sir I offre to you my body and all my companie, to be this day vnder your gouernance. And when Florence heard that, she smiled for ioy, and then ther came to him all such knights as he had giuen to befoze both horse and harness, and they all thanked him right welly and said, sir we will be of your counth this day, for we make of you our captain in this tourney, and as they looked down into the valley they saw where ther came Florence senet that with his banner displayed, and with him sir Borsat, sir Ansel, & sir Gyles of Walefounde, with them iii. C. knights, who were all pertaining to the faire Florence, & they all came to Arthur, and took him for their chiefe captain. And when Arthur saw the great honour that was done to him, he had so great ioye, that his hardinesse increased thereby more than the one halfe, & so darbe to his horse and rode forth and did salute the king Emendous who biled his one hand in the lap of his daughter Florence, than the king did salute him againe and saide, sir I require you help to aide this daye our knights, if ye may. Pea good Arthur saide Florence, and shew so forth your selfe, that it may be knowne how ye be a knight pertaining to a gentil damosel. Madame doubt ye not but I will do my deuoir, for my will therto is good. When Arthur returned & went againe to the king of Drenqueny, and he was so faire and goodly to behold in harness, that every man had their eye vpon him and saide. This knight is the soveraine of bounte & beautie of all the chivalrie of the world. When there came to the field the Cris of the Flo Perdue, & with him a 30. & 50. knights all with banners & streamers displayed, waivering in the winde with great noise of trumpets, tabours and buccines, & then there was mounted on their horses to behold the tourney, the emperor and kinge Jonas, and the duke of Wigor, who as then was late come out of his owne countrie. When barons began to crye, knights do your best, go to gether, haile, haile, then began the tourney, and knights went

went together in great routs, and laid on each upon others, and Arthur rusht forth his horse, so rudelie as though the earth had trembled, and strake so the first that he encountered withall in the midst of the breast so rudelie, that hee ouerthrew knight and horse all together of a heape.

When Florence said to the king her father, of yonder knight that is fallen I hope we shall haue peace of him all this daye, certainelie faire daughter saide the king, that is true, for that stroke came from the hands of a good knight. When Arthur encountered an other, and tooke him by the shoulders & drew him so rudelie to him ward, & he cast him downe in the midst of the place, then he tooke his sword the which Florence had sent him, for hee would not drawe out Clarence his good sword, to the intent that he would not maine 22 daie anie knight by his will that daie, but he gave with that sword such strokes, that he brought a sleep whosoeuer he touched, so that they were faine to tumble to the earth whether they would or not, and there he didde so much at that hunt, that he beate downe fiftene knightes, then euerie man that saw him said, this knight is no earth lie man, but we think rather he be a seed of hell, who thinketh he be nothing pertaining to God, for hee confoundeth all that euer he attaineth vnto, so euerie man was abashed at his prowesse and vertue. Then the king of Drenqueny alwaies followed Arthur with his eien, and by the reason of the noble prowesse that he sawe in him, hee took in him greater hardinesse then euer hee did befoze, and therewith he rusht into a great flocke of knights that were of the emperours partie, and laide on round about him, for hee was a right noble knight, then all these knightes and diuerse other ranne rounde about him, for they knewe well if they might take him prisoner it would be greate honour vnto them, and also they thought they should haue a great raunsome for him, but alwaies he defended himselfe right nobly, but at length it auailed him not, for the prease was so greate, and some took him by the necke, and some by the shoulders, and so would haue vniuersed him.

And when sir Baudouin the seneschal, sir Bisebat, sir Anket, and sir Wykes saw the king of Digne in that case, they dashed all together into the press to helpe him, and ther they did right nobly, how be it the seneschal was braten doونه, for his horse foundered vnder him, and so there they would haue taken him prisoner. When Gouvernar saw that, and he dressed him to that part wheras the seneschal was taken, and Gouvernar held in both his hands a great leuer, wherewith he layde on among those knights, with so mightie & heauy strokes, that he sloughed whome so euer he touched, and there he did so much that by his force he caused the seneschal to remount againe on his horse, and in the meane season the king of Digne was holden right short, so that his horse foundered and fell vnder him, how be it after that he defended him selfe right valiantly. And when Arthur who as than had discomfited a great company of knights, saw the king in that distresse, he rushed forth into the press and encountered with the sonne of the Erle of the Ile perdue, and took him with both his hands about his shoulders and did cast him doونه on other two knights that were on foote, so that one of them fell flat to the earth, and than he rose againe & beheld the knight that was fallen on him, and saide, mary sir ill haue he that did cast you vpon me. And when Arthur had overthowen this knight, he took his horse by the reins and brought him to the king and byd light of his owne horse to help the king to mount thereon in the spite of all his enemies, and than by great force and hardines, did leape vp againe on his owne horse. And all this saw well Florence and the Archbishop, and all the other kings, and praised greatly that dede. He is the best knight of the world, said the king Emendus. Sir that is true said the Bishop.

And when Arthur had remounted the king of Digne againe, he saide, sir put your selfe no more this daye into so great a presse of your enemies, but sir and it please you hardy follow me.

When Arthur put himselfe in to the same presse that was before

before on the king, and they were as than all rested on Gouvernar and on sir Bisebat, who as than had great neede of help, & ther Arthur layde on round about him by such force that he beate doونه knights and horses to the plain earth, for he strake none but that he went to the earth, and so ther Arthur did so much that he ouercame al that route, & when he was passed them, he saw where three knights had beate doونه sir Wykes of balefound. When Arthur dressed him so to the first that he ouerthrew to the earth, and take his horse & deliuered it to sir Wykes & caused him to mount thereon. When Arthur strake so the second knight, that his horse bare him all about in a traunce, for he wist not where he was. And Gouvernar with his leuer strake so that the third he fell flat to the earth, and when he releued he fledde away as fast as he might, for he durst no longer abyde for all the citie of Paris, and the other knight that was bozne on his horse all in a traunce came before wher as the king Emendus and Florence was, wher at the king and she did laugh. And when the knight remued he saide all on his.

The knight is an ill carpenter, for he maketh many cypes, & from al the fiends of hel hath sent him hither, shame haue he. I wene he is a burgonion. When the kinge laughed at the wordes and saide, there is none can abide him, for his strokes are right valiant. That is true sir said the bishop. When Arthur saw where there was a great companie of knights wel to the number of two hundred in a route, and among them was the Erle of the Ile perdue, and he had taken more than xl of Florence knights, and vnhorsed them and was leading of them forth as prisoners. And when Arthur saw that he was right sorrowful, and so by great randon he dashed in among them, & ther did such dedes of arms, that all that beheld him wondred at his valiauntnes, for it seemed that he was but newly come to the tourney, he claue asunder shieldes, and vnbared helmes, and brast asunder gythes and beate doونه knights together on heapes, and Gouvernar with his leuer dealt strokes right rudely, wherewith he brought knights a sleepe, so that some of them

wyst not which way to tourne them. When came to him the king of orqueny, Bysebar, the seneschal, sir Pyles, and sir Ansel and many other knyghtes, and so by that time there was hoysed againe a rith of the knyghts that were befoze taken prisoners, and there they delt so with their enemies that the Erle of the Ile perdue was soze displeased, and he and a rith in his company ranne al at ones at Arthur, and there by force they slew his horse vnder him, wherewith he was right soze displeased, and than stept by on his feete and gaue so many great stroakes and heauy that he cast every man to the earth, who so euer he met withall, and than he repented him that he had not bozne with him that daye Clarence his good sward, how be it he gaue such strokes that none durst apzoch to him, but every man fled from him. And whan Gouvernar saw Arthur a fote in that great pzele he aduised wel the Erle of the Ile perdue newew, who was right well mounted on a good horse, and so toke him with his one hand by the neck and pulled him down on his horse mane and gaue him a right great stroke with his leuer betwene his shoulders, and as he thus held him, Arthur came and toke him by the leg and tumbled him ouer his horse out of the saddle, and threiw him to the earth, & so toke his horse and did mount thereon. And whan the Erle saw his newew on the erth, he spurred his horse to come to his rescue. And than Arthur embraced him so at his coming, and spurred so his horse, that he drew him cles beside his saddell, and in the spite of al his enemies he toke him prisoner & caused him to yeelde to king Emendus, and so was put into the keeping of the faire florence, and than she caused him to be vnharmed, for he was right weary and was very bote & soze chafed.

And than Arthur dasyt into the pzele, and there dyd what he list him selfe, for he beat downe knyghtes and swan horses, and the Emperour saw wel how that he all one ly discomfited his knyghtes, the which grieved him right soze, and also the duke of Wygoz was right soze displeased in his minde, because he saw Arthur doe all that day so nobly,

bly, and at the last he knew well how that was he that had slaine his nephew at the Citie of Argence, wherefoze hee woulde faine haue runne on him to haue slaine him, but he doubted much the King of Orquenie.

When hee sayde to the Emperour, Sir the Earle of the Ile perdue is taken prisoner, and all your knyghts cleane discomfited, except you put thereto some other manner of remedie, and all the shame that is done to vs, is done by yonder knyght with the white sheelde, and by the other knyght with the great leauer, and verilie it is he that slew my nephew sir Alembart at Argence, and soze wounded my cousin sir Rowland, and also hee hath slaine my cousin sir Frymont my treasurer, and so he hath done me right great damage, and I know well he is a right faire knyght and a young, and of his handes such as you may see, and this I saie because of your loue florence, whome you shall haue, but his prowesse and goodnesse maye peraduenture cause her to loue him, for the heart of a woman is some tounes and chaunged, this knyght hath done you right greate damage, and is likelie to do you moze without you take right good haede, and put thereto right god counsaile. Wherefoze sir I require you let mee haue the tourney to morow, and I shall so handle him that I promise you hee shall not be here againe the third daie.

Well sir saide the Emperour, I graunt you your desire. Sir saide the Duke, I thanke you, and so they lefte their talking as at that time. And Arthur all that season layde on round about him as freshlie as though he hadde but newlie begunne the tourney, and the King of Orquenie behelde him meruailouslie, and spake neuer a worde, and when hee had long beholden him, hee toke at his high prowesse such hardinesse, that hee abandoned himselfe into the pzele, and laide on freelye with his sword.

When the tourney was moze greate and moze thicker then it was of all the daie befoze, and so there Gouvernar brake his leauer, then he laid hand on his sword, & did  
Wb.iiii. there

wyst not which way to tourne them. Then came to him the king of Orqueny, Bysebar, the seneschal, Sir Pyles, and Sir Ansel and many other knyghtes, and so by that time there was hoysed againe a crye of the knyghts that were before taken prisoners, and there they delt so with their enemies that the Erle of the Ile perdue was soze displeased, and he and a xviii. in his company ranne al at ones at Arthur, and there by force they slew his horse vnder him, wherewith he was right soze displeased, and than stept by on his feete and gaue so many great stroakes and heauy that he cast euery man to the earth, who so euer he met withall, and than he repented him that he had not bozne with him that daye Clarence his good sward, how be it he gaue such strokes that none durst aprouch to him, but euery man fled from him. And whan Gouvernar saw Arthur a fote in that great preele he aduised wel the Erle of the Ile perdue newe, who was right well mounted on a good horse, and so toke him with his one hand by the neck and pulled him down on his horse mane and gaue him a right great stroke with his leuer betwene his shoulders, and as he thus held him, Arthur came and toke him by the leg and tumbled him ouer his horse out of the saddle, and threw him to the earth, & so toke his horse and did mount thereon. And whan the Erle saw his newe on the earth, he spurred his horse to come to his rescue. And than Arthur embraced him so at his comming, and spurred so his horse, that he drew him cleue beside his saddell, and in the spite of al his enemies he toke him prisoner & caused him to recorde to king Emendus, and so was put into the keeping of the faire Flozence, and than she caused him to be vnharmed, for he was right weary and was very hote & soze chafed.

And than Arthur dasyt into the preele, and there was what he list him selfe, for he beat downe knyghtes and wan horses, and the Emperour saw wel how that he all one, & discomfited his knyghtes, the which grieved him right soze, and also the duke of Wygg was right soze displeased in his minde, because he saw Arthur doe all that day so nobly,

bly, and at the last he knew well how that was he that had slaine his nephew at the Citie of Argence, wherfore hee would be faine haue runne on him to haue slaine him, but he doubted much the King of Orqueny.

Then hee sayde to the Emperour, Sir the Earle of the Ile perdue is taken prisoner, and all your knyghts cleane discomfited, except you put thereto some other manner of remedie, and all the shame that is done to vs, is done by yonder knight with the white sheelde, and by the other knight with the great leauer, and verilie it is he that slew my nephew Sir Hembart at Argence, and soze wounded my cosin Sir Rowland, and also hee hath slaine my cosin Sir Hyemont my treasurer, and so he hath done me right great damage, and I know well he is a right faire knight and a young, and of his bandes such as you may see, and this I saie because of your lone Flozence, whome you shall haue, but his prowesse and goodnesse maye peraduenture cause her to loue him, for the heart of a woman is sone tournd and chaunged, this knight hath done you right greate damage, and is likelie to do you moze without you take right good haede, and put thereto right good counsaile. Wherfore I require you let mee haue the tourney to morrow, and I shall so handle him that I promise you hee shall not be here againe the third daie.

Well Sir saide the Emperour, I graunt you your desire. Sir saide the Duke, I thanke you, and so they lefte their talking as at that time. And Arthur all that season layde on round about him as freshlie as though he hadde but newlie begunne the tourney, and the King of Orqueny behelde him meruailouslie, and spake neuer a worde, and when hee had long beholden him, hee toke at his high prowesse such hardinesse, that hee abandoned himselfe into the preele, and laide on freelye with his sword.

When the tourney was moze greafe and moze thicke then it was of all the daie before, and so there Gouvernar brake his Leauer, then he laid hand on his sword, & did  
there,

therewith as much as anie good knight ought or might do. And so at last Arthur and the King of Diqueny did so much that they unhorsed all the Carles companie and were set on fote soe beaten, insomuch that they had much paine to stand on their fete. When Arthur stood in the field with his sword in his hande, saying: Lordes if there be anie more that will come, let them please forth, I am ready to aunswere them, and so at last the King of Diqueny and he returned from the field. When the King of Emendus encountered them and embraced them all armed as they wer, and speciallie Arthur, and thanked him much of the paine that he had suffered that daie, for sir all orelie by your prowesse this daie the Emperours people are discomfited. And as they were thus talking together, there came to them a knight from the Duke of Bigo, who said to the King Emendus, Sir the Duke of Bygo demaundeth of you the turney to morowe. When hept forth the king of Bygmal and sayd, sir may it please you to suffer mee to haue to morowe tourney against the Duke of Bygo? Sir it pleaseth me right well saide the King Emendus, therefore I desire you doe your part, for we haue the honour this daie, therefore doe your diligence that we may haue it to morow also. Sir said he, doubt not, I will doe my true endeavour: When he toke Arthur by the hand and said: Gentle knight the flour of all chivalrie, I desire you as hartlie as I can, doe so much to morowe as you may win, a King for ever more, as that it would please you to be the part of your high prowesse to morowe in aiding of my quarrell, and in the defence of the noble honour of my Lord the King here present. Yea sir saide the King Emendus, and thereto I will desire you for by your high prowesse wee haue the honour this daie, therefore it should grieue us greatly and we should lose it to morow. When Arthur said, sir in a right good will I shall doe my endeavour. And when Florence heard that, she was not content in her minde, for she thought that Arthur had bene soe weary of that dayes journey, and thought that it should greatly annoy him, if hee journeyed the next daie,

daie, and so she thought she would let that journey if she might, then she commended the King her Father to God as at that time, then she toke with her into her tent the Archbishop, and diuers other of her Barons, and King Emendus caused Arthur to be brought into his Tent with all his whole Baronie, and all the Emperours knights spake of nothing but of Arthurs prowesse, for they saide that there was not againe in all the worlde so good a knight as hee was, beholding and considering all his deedes, and how that he had borne himselfe in this journey, and the Emperour said that he would rather resemble to him then to haue such another Empire as his own was, and the brute of Arthurs renoume spread farre abroade, till at last it came to the hearing of sir Rowland, and then hee saide, I thanke God that such a knight hath iusted against me, for my honour is the more. When the King Emendus came into his owne Tent, and then caused Arthur to come to him, and there were all the other Kings who did much honour to Arthur, and there were diuerse that said to the King of Solors, Sir beholde here this knight full of bountie, and worthe to haue great honour, and all that they said by Arthur, who as then was right hot. When the king commaunded two Squiers to stand with a towell and blowe winde in his face, and thus Arthur stood before the king, and he was goodlie for to behold, for he was straight, long, and bigge, and aboue all other right gracious of his wordes, for euery man had great respect at his lowly and goodlie wordes. When the king commaunded that there should be brought to Arthur a mantell to cast on him, to the intent he should take no colde, and the king of Diqueny did put it about him, the which became him right well, and then there came to them Gouvernar, to whom there was made right great feast and joy, ther came thither the Earle of the Ile of Perdue, whome Arthur had taken prisoner in the journey, and in his companie thirtie knights, to pledge him of his raunsome, and the king made him right great chere, and sir Rowland and the Emperours Senechall, who had iusted before with Arthur, by that time

were healed of their hurtes, and were come also into the Kings tent to sport them and to beate tilles of the tourney. And when the Earle of the Ile Berne sawe them he had great ioy, and demanded of them how they did. And they answered and said how that they had bene soze hurt, but they were well amended. When the Earle said to the King: Sir it is of truth that I was taken in your turney, therefore sir I am come to you to be deliuered of my ransom, therfore may it please you to shew your pleasure, and I am readie to accomplish your commandement. Certainly he sir said the King, it lieth not in mee, so; that matter lieth in the pleasure of Arthur, who is here present, who took you prisoner in the field: Sir said Arthur, saving your grace that is not so, so; the turney is yours, and I am but as one of your Knightes and of my Ladies your daughter, therefore sir it were no reason that I should saie or do any thing whereas your grace is present. In the name of God sayde the King, we will that you shall speake your minde, and it shall please vs right well all that ener you will saie or doe: When the King of Malefount said, sir you shall doe thus, so; it is reason that you do as my Lord the King will haue you. Well sir said Arthur, in the name of God, and so stood upon his feete, and saide to the King: Sir and it like your grace, with it is your pleasure that I shall speake, I saie that this Earle here being present shal keep you companie this dinner time, and after dinner to sport & to playe him with you as long as it shall please him, and when it will please him to returne to the Emperour, that hee and all his companie goe franke and free, and I will desire him to take of my gift this sword, the which I thinke be good and sure, the which Gouvernar had brought to him before from master Steuen, by the commandement of Florenez, to the intent that hee should giue it to the Earle, and indeede there was not a better sword in all the Emperours hoast, and there Arthur desired the Earle for his loue to take it for a remembrance and also desired him to take a horse of his gifte, in recompence of the horse that he had taken from him in the feld.

And

And when the King heard Arthur haue these words, he had greates ioye and loued him with all his heart because of his gentlenesse. When the Earle answered and saide, Gentle Knight of heart, I haue riches sufficient, and am able to be set in a right greates ransom, though it were twentie or thirtie Duckets, and also I haue swords and horses sufficient, howbeit the high prowesse that is in you & the greates gentlenesse of your heart, prouoketh me to receiue all your curtesie, and verilie I take all your offer of you on the condition that you will from hence forth take my aide and succour in all your businesse against all personnes, except my Lord the Emperour. When Arthur all smiling thanked him much. When the king embraced the Earle for the loue of Arthur, then was water brought forth and the king washed and the Earle, and so dined together, and made good chere, and were right richlye serued, and after dinner they sported together till it was time for the king to go to his rest. When the Earle took leaue of the king, & so commended him to God. And Arthur conuained him a greates space, and did giue to the Earles Knightes many good horses and palfrayes, whereof they thanked him right greatly, and at the last Arthur took his leaue of him, and so departed, and then the Earle went straight to the Emperours Tent, whereas he found him accompanied with the Duke of Wygo, and many other noble Knightes, and there the Earle made great praising of Arthur before the Emperour and shewed how of his gentlenesse hee had suffered him to goe quit, and how that he had giuen him many great gifts, and also to his Knightes. Verilie said the Emperour, there is not such a knight in all the worlde, neither of beautie nor of prowesse, so; he is the soueraigne knight of al other, so; I see none like him of prowesse, I wold I had giuen the best citie that I haue, on the condition that hee were retained as my knight: and when the Duke of Wygo heard the emperour praise so much Arthur, he was in his mind right soze displeased, & said to the earle, sir you make here a great pleating of a flying vagabond, so; no man knoweth what

he

he is, nor from whence he cometh, and you make of him  
here such noise, that no man taketh heed of anie thing els,  
I cannot tell you what he hath given you, certainelie it is  
no honour for you to take anie giftes of a man fugitive,  
that is fled or bannished out of his owne Countre, but sir,  
I will you know certainlie that whatsoeuer giftes he hath  
giuen you, to morrowe shall I giue you his head from his  
shoulders, therefore I holde him wise in that he hath depar-  
ted of his treasure in his life daies to you and to your com-  
panie, for I warrant him he shall neuer do so againe. Well  
sir saide the Carle, threaten him faire and easilie that hee  
know it not, for and he doe I feare me least that he will die  
away, and then you cannot giue me his head, and say where-  
as you saie that no man knoweth what he is, I assure you  
he is a right noble wise knight, and it maketh no matter  
to a noble knight whersoever he becometh, for his boun-  
tie will shew right well his estate, and whereas you saie  
that he is a vagabond, and is fled out of his owne Countre,  
say it had bene better to your nephew that he had fled into  
England ere that he met with him at Argence, for there  
he lost his life, and there you fled awaie without bidding of  
anie farewell, he needeth not to haue anie care though you  
saie thus of him, for an ill conue empaieth neuer the ho-  
nour of a noble wise man, and I assure you I will shewe  
him these vilanous wordes that you saie of him, and if any  
ill come to you thereby take it in good word. Then the  
Duke began to waxe angrie, and so the matter wold have  
ben worse and y<sup>e</sup> Emperour had not ben, for he caused them  
to be departed, and to be in peace, Now let us leaue to speak  
of them, and returne to Florence.

How that Florence fained her selfe to be sicke, so the  
intent that Arthur should not tourney the next  
daie, for she was in feare that Arthur had beene  
wearie, because of the trauaile that he had indured  
the first daie of the tourney, and how that the Em-

perour

perour when he knew that he went to see her, and  
so did her father king Emendus, and all the other  
Kings, Dukes, Earles, and Barons, and all the whole  
chivalrie. Chap. 80,

**W**hen that Florence was departed from the  
king her father, and entered into her Tent,  
then she drew her into her secret chamber, and  
called to her master Steuen and saide: My  
sweet master, I am right sore displeased in my  
heart because that the king my father hath desired my  
loue Arthur to tourney againe to morrowe in the compa-  
nie of the king of Portugal, for I see well he doth not con-  
sider the trauaile that he hath endured this daie, for if he wer  
made of Steele he cannot endure thus euery daie to trauell,  
alasse if anie euill or dishonour should come to him I should  
die for sorrowe, I see well they that thus desire him to goe  
forth againe to morrowe loue but little his health, where-  
fore I will finde some meanes to put off the tourney for to  
morrowe, to the intent that he shall bee the more fresh the  
next daie after, therefore I will send word to the king my  
father how that I am sicke in my bed, desiring him that as  
to morrowe the tourney may be deferred till the next daie,  
but master I desire you let Arthur haue knowledge of the  
truth, for else I feare me he would be sorrowful for my dis-  
ease. Madamsaide the master, you speake wiselie, and I  
will tell why, first, thereby Arthur shall well rest him, and  
secondlie it is so that hee is as nowe greatlie praised of his  
cortise, and is taken as chiefe companion with the king  
your father and with all the other kings and Barons, and  
as I vnderstand he is greatly in the grace of the Emperour  
and of all his knights, for all his whole assemblie loueth  
him, and as sone as the Emperour heareth of your disease,  
he will come and see you, accompanied with all the nobles  
of his companie, and when the king your father heareth of  
his comming to you, I doubt not but that he and all his  
other four kings, with all the noble men of their compa-  
nie,

nie will in like wise come to see you, so then thenely here  
shall be assembled all the whole chivalrie, and so then at  
some houre convenient while they bee all here, it shall be  
well done to assure the vertue of the Chaplet, and so see to  
whom the image will give it to. Alasse master I loue this  
Knight, and I would not so any thing that another should  
haue it, and I feare me least the Image will give it to some  
other person. Then the master all smiling sayd, madame  
what peradventure and the Image give mee the Chaplet,  
would you be content, and as he spake he smil'd to a faire  
rose that he hold in his hande. Master quoth Florencia, you  
please me right well, and I loue you faithfully, and also I  
doe Arthur. Madame saide the master, then sit I please  
you and that you loue me and Arthur also, then it maketh  
no matter whether that I or he haue the Chaplet, with that  
your loue is on vs both. Yea, but master saide Florencia, in  
my loue there is a difference. And what is that difference,  
I praise you madame shewe me the truth: Cruelle master  
that rose that you holde in your hand right well both signi-  
fie it. This rose madame, said the master, and I praise you  
how: Hearken master to me and I shall shewe you, it is so  
I see in that Rose thre manner of thinges; first the closure  
without, the which keepeth from hurting the bud till it bee  
a full rose so end abroad, and when it is spread, then the  
leaves be faire and red, and in the midst of that rose ther  
are little graines, resembling to golde; and out of this Rose  
there may be felt such odour and smell, that it pearceth thro-  
roughout the nose, then to the heart, so the heart will re-  
ioyce with the good smell thereof. In the name of God sayd  
the master, all this that I say is true, but madame what  
doth this signifie? Master said Florencia, I shall shewe you,  
the closure without the which keepeth the budde from hur-  
ting till it be spread abroad, signifieth you, who hath kept  
me till this day without empairing, for it is now time  
that the Rose shew abroad, that is to saie, to marrie me, &  
to keep my land, as pertaieth to the daughter of a king, &  
these leaves of the rose that be so faire and red, signifieth your  
truth

truth and faithfulness, for I haue found euer in you great  
truth and bounty toward me, and also to my father and to  
all the whole realme, & master in this role there be graines  
like vnto golde, the which is the preciousst mettall of all  
the world, and that is signified by the great & excellent lear-  
ning that is in you, the which is more precious then golde,  
for thereby you haue alwaies kept and defended me in all  
needs, and master by these thre points I loue you. But the  
fourth thing that is in this role, is the sweete saour ther-  
of, the which pearceth all the whole bodie euen to the heart,  
so in the fragrant odour therof both the bodie and the hart  
is reioiced, and certainly master this fourth loue that com-  
meth thus of the rose, is mine owne loue Arthur, who is y  
chefe Rose, & aboue all other most faire, and aboue al other  
knights most valiant, as the Rose is chiefe of all flowers.  
Madame said the master, I see well you haue had a good & a  
fage master, and I see wel how that you loue me well with-  
out, but you loue Arthur inwardlie, and by my soule you  
cannot doe better, for you can haue none better then he is,  
and knowe you for certaine that none shall haue you but  
onely he. Gentle master said Florencia, helpe me therto, for  
all my trust is in you. Madam, as I vnderstand he is come  
into the Seneschalls tent. Well master said Florencia, then  
go your waie to him & shew him that I will that he come  
and see me, and bring with him the Seneschall & such other  
compantie as he will, & then shall I see by their countenance  
if they be content though I make Arthur a little good & low-  
lie semblance, for oftentimes the will of the hart sheweth it  
selfe fairelie outward, for it is hard to know another mans  
will, without there be made to him some manner of sem-  
blance, wherby he shall haue occasio. to offer somewhat of his  
will. Madame said the master, I see well it is a subtil thing  
of a womans wit when they list themselves, then y master  
rose & went to the Seneschalls tent, at which time Bzisebar  
said, here lacketh now none in this copantie but y master, &  
with y word he entered in at y doore, & the sir Spiles said, sir,  
Iube one spekerh of y wolfe lightly he saith his taile, & so they  
welcom

welcomed the matter, and caused him to sitte downe by Arthur. When the matter said to Arthur, or howe have you done in this tourney, howe cometh to you the knightes of this Countre, be they not as valiaunt as the knightes of Fraunce. Certainlie matter saide Arthur, they be as valiant, or rather more hardie, for there is none that I haue seene but that they ought right well to be receiued into the high order of chivalrie. Sir said the matter, you may not depart from hence vntill you see my Ladie Florencia, for if you doe she will not be content. Matter said Arthur, in the name of God I would be right glad to see her, but I knowe not her pleasure in that behalfe, let vs goe and see her all together, and so they arose & went all together with Arthur, and the matter went in before to Florencia, and saide: Madame beholde here is Arthur, who is come to see you. He is right welcome saide Florencia, and so she arose against him, and the Duene of Aquene took Arthur by the hand and set him downe by her, and she demanded of him howe that he did with the tourney. And he answered her howe that he did right well. By the good Lord saide Florencia, in the tourney you suffered much paine and trauaile, and right well there you did, wherfore your louer if you haue anye, ought to loue you the better, and this she saide all smiling, and laide her hand vpon his head. Madame as God helpe me saide Arthur, I haue not as much loue as I would haue. In good faith saide the Duene of Aquene, if thee were right high and noble she should be right well employed on you. Pertruelie saide Wissebar, I would he were beloved as well as I would according to my will, and when Florencia hearde that she smiled and saide, or Wissebar by the faith that you bide on the high order of chivalrie, and to Saint George, what is your will in that case. Madame saide he, I will not knowe not that for an adventure it shall displease you. Nay by my faith saide Florencia, I will not be displeased whateuer you saie, therefore knowe mee your minde, also I commaund you so to doe. Madame saide he, with it is your pleasure I shall knowe you, I would that you loued him in such

wise that he were your lord and husband, for a more sweeter, courtesier, nor a better knight can ye not haue againe in all the world, for a more gentill gracious company could not be found againe, as should be of you twaine. Well Wissebar saide Florencia, and say ye this with good heart. Pertruelie madame, by all the saints of Paradiſe. Well fir Wesselhaile saide Florencia, and what should be your minde. Madame saide he, I pray to God I neuer go out of this place but I would it were so on the condition that it cost mee as much as I am worth. When she demanded the same of all other, and they all with one voyce saide the same. Well fir saide she beholde wel whether ye haue willed your profit in this or not, for ye all knowe well howe that this emperour demandeth me of the king my father, and would haue me to his wife, and therefore if it were so that an other took me he would haue great despite and moue against him warre, whereby should ensue that all ye should be put to paine and trouble, and in perill of your liues, for ye be all my men, wherfore ye ought to defend me against all mine enemies. Madame saide Wissebar, by my soule I care not for that against whom so euer it be, and it be not against my lord your father, for if Arthur might be euer among vs, we neede not to care for all the world, nor any manner of paine that I should suffer for his sake, should neuer greeue mee. Well than saide Florencia I see wel that ye would suffre paine and perill of your hoble on the condition that I should haue him to my husband, and than she demanded so of all other knights if they would in likewise. And they answered yes all with one voyce. And thus should I be sure of this, saide Florencia. Madame saide they all, we faithfully assure you by the faith of our bodies and leasing of our lands & goods. When Florencia saide to Arthur, or ye haue here many good friends. Madame saide he, I thanke them and god rewarde them, and I shall deserue it to them when I may. By my faith saide the matter, I beleue you wel, for ye haue a large & a piteous heart, & sotherwith Florencia brake their wordes of that matter, & fell in communication of other matters,

till it was time to depart. When Arthur took his leave of Florence and of all other, and master Steuen comforted him forth and said to him in his eare, be not troubled in your minde though as to morrow you shew that my Lady Florence is somewhat diseased, for she will live till such a time as you shall know right well. He saith. Well quoth Arthur, I am and ever shall be content with that noble pleasure, and so then the master took his leave of Arthur, and returned againe to Florence, and Arthur went straight to the king of Armes tent, and then they both went together to the king Emendus house, where there was a rising from sleep, and so they three sat down together and talked of many things till it was time to go to their supper, where as they were richly served, and after supper they spouted them together till it was time to go to their rest. Then the king departed and all other for that night.

How the tourney the next daie was deferred because of Florence sicknesse. Chap. 8.

**S**o the next morning betimes the master rose and leapt on his horse, and so in greates hast rode straight to the kings tent, and there he did alight, and so went straight to the kings bedchamber. And when the king saw him there to eat he demanded what tidings. Certainly said he, my Lady Florence hath ben this night right sore sick, and is as yet right sore taken with the colick in her body, therefore for the desireth your grace that the tourney may be this daie deferred till to morrow, by which time the sickness to be somewhat better, which the will command me to tell you. He said, I will send for the gentlewoman with the colick, and I should be right sorry if she should so soon to die, as God forbid, without any cure of her body, for I will never have wife, nor I have no more children, wherefore then the king of Armes should without help of his righte necke, which would be a great shame to his realm, and think he would be a great shame to his realm, and so he

the turner. Sir said the master, with Gods leave she shall a men to morrow, but in good faith it were time that she were wel married. Well master said the king, I shall think thereof right shortly. In the name of God sir quoth the master, it is time that I returne to my Lady, but sir for Gods sake defer the turner till the next daie, because of Florence sickness. Then the Emperour sent a knight of his to Florence to know what malady she had, but Florence had commanded that if any bodie came from the Emperour, he should not be suffered to enter into her tent, so thereby the knight could not be suffered to enter, and so returned againe to the Emperour, and shewed him how that nobody could enter into her tent to speak with her, then the emperour said, wel I will go see her my selfe, then all the kings, dukes, earles, and barons that were in the companie mounted on their horses, and rode forth with the Emperour. And when the king Emendus heard that the Emperour was riding to Florence his daughter, then he mounted on his horse and all his kings and knights with him, and when they were all met and assembled together, there was so much people as though all the world had ben there, and at last a messenger came to master Steuen and said, Sir the Emperour and the king, and all other noble men that be in this field are comming to see my Lady Florence. Then the master went and did shew that to her, then she commanded that there should be made ready a rich bed before her pavilion, right before the face of the image with the chaplet, and the image was properly beset with a kirtle of purple satten, and a gowne of greene sarcenet, and upon the bed there was a rich quilt wrought with cotton, covered with fendall stitched with threads of golde, and flocked of white silke, and over all a rich furro of Ermines, this bed was right rich, and Florence laid hir downe in hir bed in a light kirtell of changeable violet tarte, she somwhat blushing on a red coulour, and she had a kerche of white silke on her head all loose buttoned, wherefore there might be easily seen under the kerche her faire throte as purple, and her faire golden heere lying about her necke,

and her faire face was in a meane, neither too long nor too round, freschlie coloured like the Rose on the Millst, and on her there was cast a mantell of greene Silke, and shee did cast out her armes thereon, so that her white hands and her long fingers were stretched abroade on the mantell, and the Queene of Orquenie sat by her, who saide to the master, sir make your selfe now as though you were displeased because that my Ladie is sicke. That is well said quoth the master, and so shall I doe, therewith hee rusht together his hat and made semblaunce as though hee had beene angry, whereat the Queene and Flozence didde smile right sweetlie. By that time the Emperour and all the Kinges and knightes were come, then the Emperour went on the one side of the bedde, and the king her father on the other side, and so satte them downe on the sides of the bedde, and all the other Lordes and knightes stood round about the bedde. When there came also the king of Orquenie and Arthur with him, and they leaned them downe on the beddes side. When the Emperour did salute Flozence, and she said how that hee was welcome. When the king her father demaunded of her how she did, and laide his hand on her head. When she beheld her father and saide, sir I haue bene this night and all the morning ill at ease, but thanked be God I doe now better then I did. God be thanked saide the king: When the king of Orquenie who was right pryncie to her counsaile, saide: Madame thinke not long, for with Gods helpe you shall soone be whole: And then she beheld him and smiled a little and said, sir I would be glad thereof, and so thus they talked together of one thing and other a great space. And Flozence said how that their companie did her much good.

How the Image in the Pavillion did set her Chaplet on Arthurs head in the presence of the Emperour & of ten other kings, & of all the whole assembly, wherewith the Emperour was right sorrowfull because he thought to have had Flozence in marriage, but he failed of his purpose, for the

Image tooke no regard neither to the Emperour, nor to anie other there, but onelie to Arthur, to whom freelic shee did giue her chaplet. Cap. 82



And when the master sawe his time and knew how that all the whole Baronie were there assembled, he rose vp on his seate and said in open audience: Mine olde deere and redoubted Ladie Flozence, our Lord God hath done you this daie greate grace and honour, for I beleue verillie that neuer before this time there were so manie noble men assembled together as be now here present for to see a Ladie that is diseased, for madame you may see here about your bed an Emperour, ten Kinges, Dukes and Carles more then fiftie, and all the whole Baronie of the Empire of Inde the more, and also of ten other Kingdomes, wherfore madame you ought to be right ioyous and more at ease in your heart, for they all loue you and are glad to please you, and also as I order, stand my Lord the king your father hath great will if God be pleased to prouide for you a right high and noble marriage, and I thinke that if it please you now his maite may be well satisfied, for I beleue hee shall neuer see againe in one daie so many noble men assembled together as here be now present, wherfore now he may fulfil his pleasure, and according to my minde it were time that you were married. When Flozence satte her vp in her bedde, and a Ladie did cast a mantell about her necke, and saide: Master it is of truth how that the king my father here present hath had a great season good will to marrie me, inso much that hee is now welnigh at the point thereof if it be his pleasure, but it is so that my Lord the king my father by seeming taketh no heed to accomplish such destinies as were destinied of mee at my nativitie, and because peraduenture that all you my Lordes that be here present at this time knoweth not what it is that was destinied on me, therefore I shall shew it here in open audience. It is of truth that my Ladie my mother whom God assailed when I was bozne, sent me by the king

of Diquenie and mine vncle the Archbischoppe, and by the Quene of Diqueny who are here present, to the mount of adventures, and there it was destined on me by the Quene of the Fairies, that no creature shuld haue me to his wife, but onelie he to whom the image in my pavilion shuld giue the Chaplet that shes holdeth in her handes, and if that any other should take me he should die an euill death therefore, and to this couenant did seale and sweare y king my father and all his other Kings and twelue peeres of his Realme, & so on that point take me who so will, if he list to put himself in the aduventure, if he haue not the Chaplet, therfore let the King my father doe as it pleaseh him, I praye to God he do so that it may be for the best. When the Archbischop arose & said to y King, sir it is true all that euer my neere hath said, for I was present and both saue and heard al this that he hath said, for as God help me if I were a man of the world, and so that I might haue her to my wife, I would not presume to haue her for all the world, except I had first y chaplet. When the King of Walefount rose and saide, according to my minde it were best that all the whole chinalrie the which be here assembled goe all to the Image, and first let my Lord the emperor begin, for he is most worthiest both of noblenesse, behauiour, and riches, where it should seme that he is worthiest to haue the chaplet, and if he faile thereof, then let all other assaie euerie man after other, till it be giuen to one or to other. In the name of God said the King of Diquenie you saie right, and so let it bee done. And the Emperour said he was well agreed thereto: When Florence said, I cannot tell who shal haue it, but God giue me him in marriage, so that my heart may be in rest, peace, & ioy, and so he may loue mee, and I him. When it was agreed on all parts that whosoener had the Chaplet should haue the Ladie without anye repelling of that couenant, & thereto Florence consented. And when it was thus agreed on all parts, then there was said before the fete of the Image foure rich cushions of silke & gold, & then it was ordeined that the King of Diquenie & Duke Philip of Sabarie shuld keepe y place, &

to see that none shuld haue anye wrong there that daie, & also it was ordeined that Arthur and Gouvernar should take heede and marke well to whom the Image should giue her Chaplet vnto. When the Emperour saide, faire Ladie, will you be glad and I haue the Chaplet: Sir said Florence, by the reason of hauing therof you shall be more neere my hart whosoener shall haue it, and the more ioy shall I haue, & the better shall he please me. Merille saide the Emperour, then will we go and assaie, and therewith he rose, and the Duke of Wigor, and the Earle of the Ile Verdue led him straight to the Image, and ther he kneeled still on his knees from the morning till it was nere euen long time, but hee was as nere as he was at the beginning, and at the last he rose full of enuie & shame, & soze displeased in his heart, but he made at that time no semblaunce. When after him went thether Kings, Dukes, Earles, Barons, & knights, each after other, all such as were to marry, but nothing they obtained, so that there were no more to assaie but such as kept the place, and then Duke Philip of Sabarie went to y image, for he was to marrie, but he sped as his fellows did before. When the King commanded that Arthur and Gouvernar should go and assaie: When Arthur answered and said, a gentle King here hath bene this daie many noble kings and other Princes y haue failed, wherefore then should I presume to assy to attaine to that they haue all failed, I thinke it were but a folie for me to assaie. Well said the King, but I will that you go and assaie according as the couenant is made. Yea truly quoth the Emperour, we will that you shall go: Sir quoth the King of Diquenie, you must needs fulfill the Kings pleasure & the Emperours: Well sir said Arthur, I am content with it is their pleasure, and then he commanded Gouvernar to goe before, and so he did, but no comfort he had there, then Arthur rose and went to the Image, and as soone as he was on his knees, the Image beganne to take colour as fresh and as quicke as though he had bene alieue, and sayre and sweetlie she turned her selfe toward Arthur and did set the chaplet on his head in y sight of all the assemble, wher-

With the Emperour was right sore displeased. And when the Duke of Wygoz sawe that, he was sore troubled in his minde, so he hated Arthur to the death, insomuch that in a great furie he kept to Arthur and take the Chaplet from his head, and all that while Arthur was on his knees. And when Gouvernar sawe how that he take away the Chaplet from his master & set it on his owne head, his blond began to tremble for anger, and kept forth to the Duke and laid his hands on the Chaplet, in such wise that he rashe it cleane from his head, and a great deale of his haire therewith, & so deliuered the chaplet to Florence, and shee took it and set it on her owne head, and so then there was none that durst touch it. And when the Duke of Wygoz saw how that Gouvernar had taken from him the chaplet & part of his haire therewith, he luf by his fist & strake Gouvernar a great blow on the cheek and did hurt him right ill, and caused him to blæde sore at the mouth & at the nose. And when duke Philip of Sabarie sawe Gouvernar hurt and bleeding, he drew out his sword and strake the duke of Wygoz in the middest of his brest, in such wise that the point of his sword appeared a fote behinde at his backe, and therewith the duke fell downe starke dead to the earth: and when the Emperour sawe his dukes dead, he cried on his knights to arme them and to take Duke Philip. When the Emperours knights assailed him on all parts, and he defended him right valiantlie. When the king of Aqueney kept forth when he saw his nephew in that case, and drew his sword & laid on among them right fiercely. When Arthur dasht into the prease with Clarence his good sword in his hande, and he laide on and gaue such strokes that he beate downe knights by greates heapes, When euery man ranne to their harness on both partes: When Florence said to the Seneschall, what do you stand and looke on, and see Arthur in perill of his life, you ought to sustaine his quarrell. And when her Seneschall hearde her saye so, he kept out into the field, and cryed out as loud as he coude, to harness Sirs incontinentlie and helpe to aide and succour Arthur.

When

When kept forth Wysebar and sir Miles, & wel to the nombe of 500. And when the king Emendus sawe the matter began to kindle so sharply, he toke his horse and rusht into the prease with great paine, and what with fairenes and foulenesse together he departed them, & commaunded that none should be so hardy to strike one stroke more as at that time. When the Emperour came to the king and said, sir king ye haue begiled vs, and slaine our duke and many of our knights, therefore sir be in certaine, that as long as I liue warre shall not faile you till the houre that I haue the head of the king of Aqueney and of Philip his newew, and of this knight Arthur. Sir Emperour said Arthur, oftentimes a man faileth of that he desireth, nor I know not him that will strike of our heads as long as I haue in my company clarence my good sword. Yea, yea sir Emperour saide the king of Aqueney, be not halfe so hastie, for ye haue our heades first there will many leese theirs, and one thing I assure you, that if it were not for the displeasure of my lord the king I should go se you in your own countrey betwene this & Ester, with such a company of people, that it should be hard for you to number them, for ye shall finde them that little doubteth you. When the king Emendus commaunded him to be in pæce, and toke the Emperour by the hande and saide, sir be ye not displeased, ye and I wil go apart & agree right wel together. I am content saide the Emperour. When they auoyded from them euery man. When the king saide, sir ye know that it was agreed both by you and by me, and by all other, that who so euer should haue y<sup>e</sup> Chaplet should haue no wrong, but should enioy it peaceably, therefore your duke did amisse to take it from Arthurs head. Sir saide the Emperour though my duke did wrong yet I was sufficient enough to make amends for this trespassse, though that Gouvernar had not taken it from his head and pulled away his here there-with, and yet worse what neede duke Philip to kee him therfore. In the name of God said the king, duke Philip hath but his office, for he was one of the keepers of the felde, to see that none should haue wronge, and your duke

Cc.v.

strake

Arake Colerhar on the face, therefore he has his desert.  
Why sir saide the Emperour, though he Arake the knight  
yet was it horrible that duke Philip should slea him, and  
the King of Diquenoy to slea many other of my knights.  
Sir said the king, though the King of Diquenoy was moued  
he coulde not chuse, for he was put in such a way that he  
made amends, for the death of your Duke that his newe  
Nephew, but your knightes came on him to slay him in  
my presence, therefore blame not the king though he re-  
ceiued his newe, for a gentilmans hart ought not to faile  
his knightes in time of neede, and specially his own newe.  
In the name of God sd the Emperour, he hath slaine my  
duke, and he is a duke, therefore I will that he dye for the  
cause, and than it is duke for duke. Arake saide the king  
this were hard to doe, for if ye begin any noise or trouble  
I haue great feare that it will turne to your owne hurt, for  
it wil be ouermuch for you to acheue to that ye wold haue,  
but sir I se wel ye be right sore displeased, but sir oftentimes  
dead men maketh peas, and by marriage many things are  
appeased, sir I shal put to my paine how that ye shal haue  
for all this Florence my daughter to bee your wife, on the  
condicion that al ill wills & heart brennings may be quen-  
ched on all parts and every thing pardoned: And when the  
Emperour heard that, he smiled a litle and saide, verely sir  
for the loue of Florence, I wold forgive and pardon a right  
great trespassse. Sir said the king, I will go speak with my  
lordes and come againe to you incontinent, then the king  
departed from him and called to him vnto the king and the  
archbishop and diuers other knights and said, for as much  
as the Emperour is right sore displeased, with a say the word he  
hath right good cause why, and I haue founde no other agre-  
ment in him but either he will haue the Philips head, or  
ells he will chuse our right shortly with a great host, or  
ells without he haue: I shende my daughter, this is the a-  
mendes that he will haue for the death of his duke, therefore  
gentle King and Lordes, shende your mindes in that be-  
half. Sir said the King of Diquenoy, to the Emperour and  
ad.

opnise that it is good to eschew all perills that may happen  
to come both to the bodie & to the soule, and to our behavi-  
our & friends, for a thing of little cost you see well how that  
the Emperour is the most chiefe christian Prince of the  
world, and right puissant both of behaviour and of friends,  
therefore sir be you not abashed to giue him Florence your  
daughter, for thereby shall you winne many great friends,  
therefore sir it were better for you to giue her to him then  
this knight Arthur, of who we know nothing, but that he  
is a knight, right good, faire and beautifull. And in verie  
deede so he is sir, quoth the King of Diquenoy, all this same  
is mine opinion, and mine also said the King of Ismaelite.  
In the name of God said the king of Diquenoy, against that  
I haue agreed ones vnto, and set thereto my seale, shall I  
neuer be contrarie, for I will neuer breake mine oath, nor  
I will neuer loue the Emperour. For I also said the Arch-  
bishop, by the faith that I owe vnto you, I shall bee of that  
accord that the Emperour should haue Florence.

Then the king Emendus & in the name of the other three  
kings aunswered and said. Well sirs that I am King ouer  
you all shall agree you in this matter well enough, you shal  
see right well what I shal doe in this matter. Then the  
King of Diquenoy and the Archbischoppe departed from the  
counsaile not content in their mindes. And when the King  
Emendus sawe that the King of Diquenoy and the Archbi-  
shop his brother were departed from him, he went straight  
to the Emperour and his three kings with him and saide,  
Sir we shall be your friends and well willers, and you al-  
so to yours, and are content to fulfill our will, so that you  
will in like manner doe to vs. First we sir will y you par-  
don & forgive the King of Diquenoy & duke Philip his newe  
& to all other, all manner of ill will that you haue to the, for  
all manner of deede done by them or any of theirs, & on this  
condicion I & these iii kings give you Florence my daugh-  
ter in marriage, & I put you in possessio of her by this gloue,  
and so drew it off his hand & gaue it to the Emperour, & he re-  
ceiued it with great ioy, & thanked the heartely, & pardoned  
all

# The Historie of Arthur

all the ill will that he had to hate Doria, and so there they took each other by the hand and went talking together to their Tent.

How that Proserpina Queene of the Fairies who resembled to Florence, laide her downe in Florence sleepe, and sent her to the Port Noire with the Archbishoppe and all her Knights. Chap. 83.



When the King of Diquenie and the Archbishop were departed from the King Emendous, and sawe how that the King hadde graunted Florence his daughter to the emperor, they went straight to Florence, whereas they found Arthur, Duke Philip, and Gouvernar, and they were all still armed, to the intent to defende them if anye neede were. When the King of Diquenie caused them to be unarmed, and took Arthur by the hand and said: Sir as long as I live and have anye lande I shall not faile you, but I shall aide you to die in the quarrell to defende your right. Sir said Arthur, God that formed all thinges preserve you and reward your gentleness. Soe we quoth the King and speake with Florence, and so they went to her, and as then shee was still sitting on her bed all a fraide of the bruit and fray that was there, and the Queene of Diquenie fate weeping for feare of the King her husband. When there fate downe the King, the Archbishop, Arthur, and Gouvernar, and also there was the matter and Duke Philip. When the King said to Florence, madame be in peace and rest, and doubt you of nothing, but it is so, my Lord the King your father hath given you to the Emperor, and hath put him in possession of you by the glorie of his hande, and all the other things are of his accord, but the Archbishoppe your uncle and I are departed from them because we will not consent thereto in anye wise, therefore madame maye it please you now to shew us your mind whether you be content to have him to your husband or not, for if it please you it becometh

# Of little Britaine.

199

us to be content, and if it please you not to have him, here I offer my selfe to you that ere hee have you against your will, I shall rather adventure to loose my head from the shoulders, and I shall put in scarpardie to save the Emperour in defending of this Gentleman Arthur in his right, if you be so content. And when Florence heard him say so, she began right soze to weep, and when she might speake she said, ah gentle King now I see wel I have no more friends but you, and such other as be heere present, alas I am of that estate that I ought of right to have many more, but when my father and mine owne men faile mee, alas to whom shall I complaine, alas unkinde father will you give me him whom I hate mortallie, and take from him that I love faithfullie, and therewith her heart was so oppressed with bitter sorowe, that shee fell on so soze a weeping that it was great pittie to beholde her, and when she might somewhat speake she said, certainly I had rather die then to have the Emperour, and as God helpe mee you be all my friendes, and so I will retaine you as long as the world serveth me, the which yet somewhat comforted me, wherefore I will no longer hide my heart from you, and so she turned her selfe toward Arthur and saide, beholde here him who hath my Chaplet, my destinie is on him, wherefore I will have none other but him, for him I love and will do. And when the King of Diquenie heard her saie so, hee had great joy and said, madame we be all your owne men and friends, and of your counsaile, and would alwaies your honour and profit, and as God helpe me you cannot doe better then to set your heart on this noble knight Arthur, for better, more wise, and more goodlier then he is cannot be found, and thus it pleaseth you, as for my part I am of the same accord, and to him I offer now my selfe here present, now let all other speake everie man for himselfe. When the Archbishop said, faire Ladie you are my niece and I am your uncle, in good faith I am agreed to your pleasure, and I promise him faith and trooth, and to give him against all persons. And I also promise the same said Duke Philip.

When

When the matter rose and fairs, midwintre I am your clerk  
and alwaies I trust I haue comforted you to your honoz  
and profit, and I allow you in this matter, and am faithfully  
agreed thereto, but I counsaile you let my lord heare the  
archbishop ensue you both to gether hand to hand. When  
they all answered with one voice, the matter saith right  
well, and all we be agreed thereto. When the Bishop took  
Arthur by the hand and the Ladies hand also, and they did  
ensure them together with words of matrimonie, wherof  
eche of them had great ioye. When that Florence and Ar-  
thur were thus ensured to gether, the King of Diqueney  
saide, As now hath we furthered war with the King and  
with the Emperour, so as soon as they know of this mat-  
ter, they will be right sore displeased with vs all, therefore  
now let vs see by what meanes either by warre or force, or  
how this matter may be brought to passe. And as they thus  
talked together, suddenly there faine of the bed by Florence  
Dioscorus queen of the faire. And when they beheld hir  
they had wonder of hir sodaine coming, and they coulde  
not well know hir from Florence. They resembled so nere  
together, but that Dioscorus said to the King, Arise demand  
a studie how ye may bying about this matter, I shall shew  
you, I am she that did bestirre on Florence & the shild hane  
Arthur, therefore I shall shew hir how she shall be, there-  
fore Florence faire daughter, stande incontinent. Coner-  
nar and Byschop to your Castle of this toure, and let all  
your tents & pavilions and such other abillmentes of war  
as ye haue there, be conuayed in all hast to the port noyze  
garnish that castle richly & surely in such wise, that ye may  
be able to sustaine the beset of any host both so that they  
be not agayne upon right great war, for the King Em-  
perour your father will be to ill content with you and with Ar-  
thur, that if he might haue you both in that sure, he would  
cause you both to dye a shameful death, for he hath now so  
great love to the Emperour, that they be as one, but for  
that there is no noble to great love betwene them, but I  
shall cause here after a great war betwene them, so that  
eche

eche of them shall be desirous to dye other, wherfore faire  
daughter Florence rise out of your bedde appareile your  
selfe, and doo on the masters gown and his hat, and mount  
on your horse and take the queene of Diqueney with you  
and also the Archbishop your uncle and Duke Philip, and al  
your other knights, and ride you straight to the port noyze,  
and the King of Diqueney here present, and the master,  
and Arthur shall abide here still with mee, for I will be  
here still in your bedde in the stead of you, for ye knowe  
well there is no creature can know the one of vs from the  
other. Doe ye your waies, and let me alone with the rem-  
nant of the matter. And as he said the master, for Goddes  
sake thinke well on the honour of my Ladie Florence, and  
wee shall blesse you well. When Florence departed her  
knights alunder, and did sende them one after another all  
to Argence, and commaunded them there to abide for her,  
so they all departed and within foure daies they arrived at  
Argence, and there they founde the faire Lady Margaret  
of Argenton who was come the daye before from the port  
noyze and she receiued them with ioyfull cheere and there  
they shewed her how they were come thither to abide the  
coming of their Ladie Florence, and when she hearde  
that, she was right ioyfull, and caused all her house to be  
apparailled right richly to the intent to receiue the Ladie  
Florence right honorably, and sent for many of the gentle-  
men of her countrey to giue attendance on her. When Co-  
uernar and Byschop departed from Florence and went to  
the clere toure and conuayed all her stuffe to the port noyze  
both treasure and abillmentes of war, and vittails suffici-  
ent to garnish the house withall for the space of vii. yeare,  
and they had xxii. chariots continually carrying scaven  
whekes together of such stuffe as pertained to Florence,  
and to the furnishing of the place, so that it had of euery  
thing sufficient for the space of vii. yeare.  
How that the lady Margaret of Argenton with al her whole  
harony went and mette Florence, and receiued her into  
Argen. with right great feast and ioy.

And the thirde day after that Florence knightes were departed from her, then she and the Duke of Brequene and the Archbishop departed, and went first to the Citie of Wancopone, the which pertained to the Bishop, and there he commaunded all his people to be ready on a daies warning in their best apparell for the warre, and in likewise did Gouvernat in the Realme of Blatinch Towre, so then Florence departed from Wancopone and went straight to Argence. And as soon as the Ladie Spargaret had knowledge that she was two daies journey from Argence, she mounted on her horse and she bandaged in her company, and went and encountered the Lady Florentine of Bozolois, and when she met her she did right humble salute her and said: Madam, you be right heartely welcome into this Countrie, and madame beholds me here who is and shall be your humble vassall at commandement. Certainlie faire Spargaret said Florence, I take you and will doe for my special friend and faithful lover. Then the Ladie Spargaret went to the Bishop and to Duke Philip, and right wellic she did salute them, and then she demanded of Florence howe it was with Arthur. And she answered and said: Faire Ladie Spargaret he is abiding in the Court with the King of Brequene and with master Breton. And I pray you madame hold both he & the little child the right well. When an I glad said the Ladie Spargaret for Arthur is my Lord and chiefe father, for he hath rendered to me againe my lande, whereof I was disherited by the nephewes of the Duke of Begos. Well said Florence, there he is for that, for you be as now well reuenged both of the brother and of the nephew. A madame said she, blessed be that hath brought that about, and thus they rode forth on their waye, and they encountered Sir Miles and Sir Artaiide, & other so other knights pertaining to Florence, and all other knightes of that Countrie came thither by greates flockes, and when they were nere to the Citie of Argence, then there issued out of all the honest Burgeses of the Citie, riding on good horses,

and faire Faulcons and Sparhawkes on their fittes, and they were well to the number of fittie wel arrayed all in one faine halfe Scarlet and halfe greene, with tabours and trumpets before them. When the Bishoppe sawe well how that the Citie of Argence was right noble and goodlie, for he saw the bright Sunne glimmering on the faire Churches and high Steeples, couered all with faire Lead, and also he sawe the rich banners and streamers pight out of windowes of the faire houses, and the battlementes were pight full of sheldes, basiliets, healmes, and speares, to the intent to shew the strength of the Citie, and the streets were hangd with clothes of golde and of silke, and with redde Sendall, changeable with greene, and all the bells of the towne solempnly blowing, so that it was great ioy to see and behold the noblenesse of that Citie. In this manner Florence entered into the Citie, hauing in her companie aboue fiftie hundred knightes, and the Burgeses of the Citie mounted up into their windowes to beholde Florence, who was led betwene the Bishop and Duke Philip, and thus they rode till they came to the pallace, and ther descended & so mounted up into the hall, then Florence entred into her chamber and appailed her, and by that time her dinner was ready and the Tables readie couered, then Florence and the Archbishop and all other late them downe to dinner, and were right richly serued, and so there Florence sojourned the space of eight daies. Now let vs leade Florence at Argence and returne to the Emperour and to King Cinendus, and to Proserpina, who was laide in Florence bed in the stead of her.

How Proserpina was assured to the Emperour in the stead of Florence, & how the king banished out of his Countrie the King of Brequene, and also the king of Valesound & master Steuc & Arthur, ca. 85

And it was that when Florence was departed from the court of King Cinendus her father, that he had giuen her to the

Emperour, than eche of them went into their owne tents to dinner, and the king of Aqueneys who was abiden still in Florence tent with Doroferine quene of the fairy, who remembred to here Florence, that the quene could not be knowne from the other, and ther he and Arthur dined with hir, and after diner the emperour came to king Emendous & said, Sir ye have giuen me Florence your daughter, & I know well how that the king of Aqueneys & Arthur he still with hir in his tent, and they haue bene alwaies contrary to me, wherfore I doubt me least they tounne Florence minde from me ward, therfore sir I pray you let he go and fiance hir this night, and let he be married to morow. Sir said the king, I am content, & I promise you that all such who so ever they be that be contrary against your minde, shall incontinent forsake my company, than the emperour and the king, & the other three kinges went straight to Florence tent, and as sone as they were entred the king of Aqueneys & the master and Arthur rose and welcomed them, than the king sate him down on the one side of the bed and the emperour on the other side, than the king said to Doroferine wening to him it had bene his daughter Florence, saide daughter it beho- ueth you to be fanced this night to this Emperour, and to morow ye shall be wedded with great ioye. Well sir saide Doroferine, with it is your pleasure I am content, let it be done incontinent, than the king demaunded for the archbishop his brother, to consent to eniure them together. Sir said the master he is gone to paragonne for a while, that he hath to do ther and take Phillip also. And wher is Florence seneshall and all other knights. Sir surely they be al gone with him. In the name of God sir saide the emperour, the archbishop hath bene alwaies contrary to me but that I should haue Florence, therefore sir neuer trust me but that he is gone to doe some maner of treason, to the intent that I should not haue hir. I than sent for the master & sayd, Sir Emperour ye say not wisely, to call the archbishop traitor, or to say that he seeketh to worke any treason againste you, it is to late for that, for he had neuer as yet any na-

ble man of Bordeaux that euer did any treason againste you or againste any other man liuing, and though that he be not of the accord of this marriage he doth but right, for sauing the honour of my Lord the king here present, all that he of that accord are lost woyn, and haue broken their promises and couenaunts, and doth againste their owne scales, and as for me as long as I liue shall I neuer accord thereto. So matter said the king, will you not then accord thereto, but holde all the other lost woyn, by the faith that I owe vnto God, if you were not the sonne of a king I wold make you well to knowe how you haue spoken foolishlye here in my presence, but thus much I saie vnto you, I charge you incontinent that you auoide this pavillion, and I defend you the coming againe to my sight, and discharge you out of Florence counsaile. Well sir said the master, with I see then that I must needs leane your Court and coming before you, & banished me from the counsaile of my Ladie, for this Emperour heere present, wherfore let him be certain that as long as I liue he shall neuer put riug on my Ladie Florence finger nor wed her for all the power that hee hath or can haue. When the king was soe displeased and rose and had thought to haue striken the master, but the king of Bohennall and the king of Israelite did holde him, and therewith the master went out of the pavillion. And when the king of Walesound saue his sonne cast out of the court, and how the king wold haue striken him, hee rose vp and said to the king: Sir for the eschewing of all ill and trouble before this time, I was agreed that this Emperour shoulde haue your daughter, wherin now I confesse me that I was lost woyn, and did therein contrarie to mine owne scale and promise, the which consentment now beere I openlie reuoke and denie, for as God helpe me I will be no longer lost woyn, therefore I saie to this Emperour that he take her not, for if he doe, let him be certain that there is and shall be in the Realme of Walesound a king who is not his friend, but he is and shall be his mortall enemie. And when the emperour heard him speake in that manner, he was

right soze displeased, so he lough and belough him right wel  
before and said, Sir King either consent to this marriage, or  
ells forsake the presence of me, and shortly answere this pa-  
uilion. Well Sir than I will depart, and I pray you, I  
will no more desire to come into your sight, I say no more  
but God gide grace ye do wel, and therewith he went out of  
the pansion and went to his sones master Streuen. Then  
the king of ozqueny rose up and said to the king, Sir I have  
great meruaile where ye have taken this counsaile to en-  
strange your selfe from your friends and counsillers, be-  
relye Sir ye be in an ill minde in this case, and all for this em-  
perour, who shall neuer doe you so much good, but by the  
faith that I owe to my ladye Florence, if he were not here  
in your presence, I should take his head from his shoulders, &  
let him take god here that after that he is married that he  
cary hir not a myle out of this place but I shal be ther redie  
to encountre him, not to his pleasure, what saide the king  
doe ye menace and threat here before me, shortly I charge  
you answere this pansion, & beware that I see you no more  
in my sight, and in the despite of you all the emperour shall  
haue Florence my daughter. Well Sir said the king of Oz-  
queny sith ye have banished me out of your courte and of  
your presence, I assure you I am able right well to with-  
stande your malice, but Sir I counsaile you conuete this  
Emperour surely whan he departeth into his owne coun-  
trie, least that he be not encountred with all to his displea-  
sure, than the king of Ozqueny took Arthur by the hand &  
saide, Sir come ye on with me and leaue this courte, soz no  
noble man ought to abide here. Sir said Arthur, I will go  
with you with a right good will, than they departed out of  
the pansion, and there they found the king of walesound &  
master Streuen, and to them he said, now Sirs we be all ba-  
nished out of the court of King Emperour, God now be our  
help, than they troged by their rentes and lent their people  
euerle man home to his own countrie, & so than they moued  
upon their horses and so departed, and then had they for-  
ben a feage and a batte, but the king of walesound

halfe, but that the king of walesound was in a todaine Ru-  
die. When the king of Ozqueny demaunded of him what  
he alled to God, by godd he I muse in what manner we  
may do annoyauce to this emperour who wold haue our  
lady against her owne will and ours, the which soze grie-  
ueth me. Well Sir said the king of ozqueny care not soz that  
matter, soz I ensure you he shall not wed her this yere. Sir  
sayd he it can be none other wise, soz the emperour and the  
king his father will now lead hir to Coznit and there fiance  
her against her will. Well Sir said the king of ozqueny feare  
ye not that, soz be ye in certaine that as soz Florence she is  
already at the citie of Argence where as she abideth soz vs.  
Why said the king of walesound and who is it than that  
lieth at Florence bed in the steepe of her and is so like her.  
I shal shew you quoth the king of ozqueny, herd you neuer  
speaking of the quene of the ladies of the sayz that be in  
the mount perillous whereas Florence was conuayed as  
sone as she was borne. Yes mary quoth the other king I  
haue heard thereof diuers times. Well Sir than so much I  
say to you that she y lieth in my ladies bedde is Proserpine  
quene of the sayz, and she did besteny her at her natiuitie  
that she should be like in all things to her, and so she is as  
ye may se, wherof ye shall know full well by to morow  
this time that there was neuer Emperour and king so abu-  
sed and abashed as they shalbe. In the name of god said the  
king of walesound I neuer heard speaking of this matter  
before, but let vs hast vs and so speak with my lady Flo-  
rence at Argence, and there let vs aduise further what shal  
be done in this matter. By ye say right well and so let vs  
doe, soz I am sure we shall haue great warre. Than they  
sente two Squiers before them to Florence to giue her  
knowledge how that they would be with her the wednes-  
daye nexte after in y morning. And whan Florence knew  
that, she had right great ioy, and caused incontinent the  
places to be apparellled where as they should lodge, & than  
the archbishop and duke Philip rose & went & encountred  
them, & when they were met together they made great ioy

each of other, and Duke Phillip embraced Arthur, and the Bishop was with the King, and so entered into the citie, and all the Burghes and communalitie of the citie made great feast of Arthur, for he seemed to them so gracious and so faire that they all said: A good Lord what a noble couple should it be betwene our Lady Florence and this noble knight Arthur, wold to god he had wedded her. Then they all alighted at the pallace, and there Florence met them & embraced every king each after other, and in likewise did the sayre lady Margaret. Then Florence came to Arthur and said mine owne sweete lover ye be right hartely wel come. Mine owne deere Ladye god encrease in you noble bountie and honour. And than the ladye Margaret ran to master Etenen, and each of them right sweetly embraced other, than they all went to their chambers and apparelled them, and than they went to dinner and were served right richly, then all these kings and Florence and the lady Margaret departed and went to the port noyse and commaunded all their people to drawe them thitherward as shortly as they could, and so they rode forth, and on a tuesday betimes they arrived at the port noyse than Florence went up to her pallace where as she had never ben before, & than she thanked Arthur in that he had sodeine the enchauntements & the aduencures of that place, and Gouvernar & Biscobar had apparailled that place in every thing that was be honourable, and thus they were in great ioye and triumph the space of eight daies, & then these kings and Florence went into a faire chamber to counsaile, and the Bishop, and Arthur, Duke Phillip, and the master were with them, and then they recounted to Florence how that they wer departed out of the court in great displeasure, and how that the King Emendus had banished them all out of his presence, and also we know well as some as he hath knowledge that you be here and we with you, we shall have sharpe & great warre made unto us, wherefore it is convenient that we should walke what shal be done in this matter. Then the master rose & said, Lords if you think it to be good that shal you

you mine aduice, and they all answered & said, master saie on what you will it shal please us right well to giue you audience. Then the master said, madame you be the proper & right heire of Sorolois, & our proper Ladye, & we all your men, the discord that is betwene my Lord your father and us, modestly properlie by the reason of you, and not for anie trespass that ever we did him, therefore madame it is reason that you take vpon you this quarrell and businesse, and take your hart to you and be not too soft in this matter, for when my Lord & King your father shall be come hether with all his power to assige you as I am sure he will do, he shal not haue so hardie a knight in at his companie but he shal be asured to stirre his sword about him to come against your companie, for you be a great Queene and a puissant, therefore send for your people, and let duke Phillip do in like case, and my Margaret also, & when all your people be assembled together, whosoever then will be so hardie to assaile you, let him be sharplie answered and defended, & madame behold here Arthur to whome this matter toucheth right nere, who is faithfully yours & you his, therefore me thinke it wer reason that he were chiefe captain of this matter, and let him maintaine this war fiercelie and vertuously, and the King of Drenie and the King of Wales send my father, let them returne into their own realmes, for peradventure the King Emendus wil send for them againe, and will repent him in that he hath banished them out of his sight, and if they fall into accord with him againe, then shal they doe much good for us in this matter with the king, for then they shal shew him his follie in that he would marrie my Ladye Florence his daughter against her will, and how that he hath great wrong to make war against Arthur, but sir Arthur according to mine aduice be you of good hart, & if they will needs make warre against you, doe to this Emperor as much damage as ever you can. Then the King of Wales said, faire sonne veritie you haue well and wisely saide, I am agreed thereto, let it be done as you haue said.

As God help me said the Bishop, I am agreed with the same saying, & to the same they were all agreed. Then the King of Walesound said to Arthur, Sir we bee all established that you haue the whole conduct of this matter, therefore do your indeauour, and here wee giue you the charge of my Ladie Florence, and the Bishop her buckle shall abide with you and Duke Philip also, and with him master Stephen my sonne, and if you haue anie need send vs word, and we shall not faile my Ladie at no time, and if wee happen to fall at anie accord with the King, then shall we blame him for his follie, and as for vs and our people, we faithfully promise you that if anie wrong be done against you, we shall bee euer ready to reuenge it to the best of our powers. That shall not be failed, saide the King of Denemarie. Sirs I thanke you said Florence, so then they established Arthur chiefe captaine of the matter, and so the two Kings departed out of the counsaile, and toke leaue of Florence and Arthur, and of all other, and returned into theyr owne Countries. Now let vs leaue to speake of them and returne to the Emperour and King Emendous, howe that they were amazed at the Church doore, when they hadde thought to haue married Florence.

How that Proserpine Queene of the fairie, was ledde to the Church to haue bene wedded to the Emperour weening that it had bene Florence, but when the Bishop had thought to haue put the wedding ring on her finger, suddenly she vanished away, so that none wist whether she became, and so then they stood all abashed, as though the cloudes had fallen from heauen. Cap. 26.

So it was that when the King of Walesound and the King of Denemarie was departed from King Emendous in great displeasure, howbeit the King as then when hee sawe that they wer gone he repented him of his folly, howbeit he made

no manner of semblance for the loue of the Emperour, but said to him, Sir let vs goe to the Citie of Coznite, and ther shall yee affiance Florence, and to morowe be married to her: Sir with a right good wil said the Emperour. Then Proserpina was apparailled & lead forth to Coznite, where there was reide the Bishop of Pancopone, and as sone as they were come to the Citie, then incontinently the Emperour was assured to Proserpina in the stode of Florence, and so there was great feast and ioy all that night till euerie man went to their rests, and in the morning they arose, and Proserpina was apparailled right richlie, and so the King of Porrmall and the King of Ismaelite did leade her to Church, and as sone as she came to the Church doore, there was ready the Bishoppe of Pancopone, in his Pontificalibus, and there did aske the Wanes betweene them, and so proceeded forth in the wordes of Patrimonic. And when the Bishoppe thought to haue set the wedding Ring on her finger, sodainlie shee vanished awaie, so that none knewe where shee was become, where with the Kinges, Dukes, Carles, and all other, were as greatlie abashed as though they had tumbled out of the Cloudes, then the Bishop blessed himselfe and so did euerie man rounde about him, and they saide, this is a wondrous case, I thinke wee bee enchanted, howbeit neuer thelesse they heard out the Seruice with great deuotion, praying to God to keepe them from the illusions of the fiend of hell. And when the seruice was done they returned to the Pallace, and all that daie they were soze troubled in their heartes, and so thre daies after they searched continuallie all about the Citie for Florence, and on the fourth daie there came a knight to the Pallace, and did salute King Emendous and the Emperour, and said, Sir I see well you be soze troubled because of Florence, but I can shew you tidings right well where she is, surely Sir she departed from Argence the wednes daie next after Michaelsmas daie, and in her company more then fiftene hundred knights, and Sir with her is the Archbishoppe your brother, and Duke Philip of Sabarie, and are as nowe at

the castel of the portnoye, and he hath caused the place to be fortified with Artillarie, with all manner of vitado sufficient to stand a siege for the space of six yeares, and Florent hath sent all about for men of war, and Duke Whilip hath also sent into his owne countrie for all his power, and so for all the power of Argenteuil there all ready with horse, also there is with him Arthur and Gouvernar, maister of the men, and sir Wisebar, and at his whole chivalry. When friends said the king, is all this true. Then sir, as God help me, for I have seen all this with myne eye. Of the king of Orquenie & of the king of Walesound can ye them me any word, saide the king. Sir I can shew you certayne word of them, for I encountred them but late as they were ridinge into their owne countries. As God help me saide the king, I repent me that I spake to them so solithly this last day, but I did it in a great displeasure. In the name of God sir sayde the emperor, if ye have done them any trespassse ye may right well make them amends, and in your so doing ye shal doe right well. Therely sir saide the king, and so will I doe, but what counsaile & remedie shal we make for this knight Arthur, who hath thus taken away Florent my daughter but by my crowne if I may take them, they shall both suffer a shameful death, nor as long as I lyue I shall never cease till I haue them, and than shall the death be my daughter be mured up in a stone wall, and the false ribaud Arthur hanged by the necke, but I vnderstand they haue furnished the portnoye for the space of six yeares, and also they puruay them of people as much as they may. Sir of the knight that brought the tidings, that is of Irenoth. What he saide the emperor, I shall shew you what we shall doe, ye shal send for all your power, and so shal I doe for mine, and so let us besiege the castell of the portnoye, I thought that it were made of yron & steele, yet that it not endure against our strength. As God help me sir saide the king, the castell doubtles is of stone, but I doubt not let us besiege the castell round about, till we haue famished them, for other wise shal we neuer haue the place, the more let us send for our people till

till we haue sufficient. You saie right well quoth the Emperor, I will goe and retourne into mine owne Countrie, and you shall find mee and I lye at the Port Noire within fiftene daies of Easter next comming. And there shall you finde mee also saide the king. Then the Emperor commanded to trusse all his huffs, and so tooke leaue of the king and departed into Inde, and as sone as the Emperor was departed, then the king said to the king of Portmall, Sir goe you home into your owne countrie and summon up all your men of warre, and meete with mee at the Port Noire the fiftene daie after Easter, and I praye you speake with the king of Walesound, and make the peace betwene him and me, and desire him to be at Argence the saide daie with all his power to goe with mee to the Port Noire, and shew him that I shall make to him a large amends for that I haue done to him, in like wise he sayd to the king of Ismalite that he should speake with the king of Orquenie, and so they promised to doe, and departed and went each them into their owne Countries, and then they sent all about for their people, and shewed the other two kinges their message that they hadde from the king Emendus, and how that the king desired them to be at Argence the fiftene daie after Easter. And they answered how that they would not faile to be ther at the day, and so each of the apparailled themselves and all their people in as haste wise as they could. And the Emperor and the king Emendus also made them ready in all haste to go to the Port Noire, and at the Emperours commandement there came with him the king Godifer and the king Jorras, and the king Comodos, and all their whole power.

How Arthur sent Gouvernar to his cosin Hector Duke of Orgoule, desiring him to come & helpe to succour him against the Emperor of Inde, & against the king Emendus, who would besiege him in the castle of the Port Noire.

Chap. 87.

And it was that when the King of Aquitaine and the King of Malefound were departed from Arthur, out of the Port Poire, as you have heard here before, then within a little space after there came to Arthur a spie straight from Cornute, and there he recounted to Arthur all the dealing of the Emperour and of King Clemeus, and howe that they summoned together great people to come to besiege them at the Port Poire. And when Arthur heard that, he said to Duke Philip: Well sir, then there is no more to do, but let euerie man doe the best he can, wherefore it is time that you send to Sabarie to your Schenhal, that he bring hether to you all your chivalrie now at this Easter, and you my Ladie Florence, send forth your letter to your Realme of Blaunche Towre, and let my Ladie Margaret send to Argence, and I shall send to Orgoule to my cousin Hector. Why then saide Florence, haue you then a coun in these parts? Pea madame, by the faith y I owe to your grace, so if I might haue him once by my side, I doubt but little the mallice of this Emperour. Then she made her Letters and sent sir Penelon to the clere Towre, and so departed. And when he was there arriued, anon he found sir Berdicas who was chiefe gouernour of all that Realme of clere Towre, and to him he deliuered Florence Letters, and incontinently on the sight of the Letters, he summoned together all the noble men of the cite and all the whole realme, and when they were assembled together they were to the number of thirtie thousand men of warre, and so they put themselves straight into the waye to go to their Ladie Florence to the Port Poire. And also the Ladie Margaret sent sir Miles vnto Argence to sir Emerie, who brought with him twelue thousand. And Duke Philip sent sir Sebastian into Sabarie to gentle Clemenson his marshall, who brought with him thirtie thousand. And Gouernar went to the Citie of Orgoule to the noble Duke Hector, cousin to Arthur, and then it was shewen him howe the Duke was at Bzule with the Countesse of Bzule, who as then was a

little

little diseased, and Gouernar rode so long that on a Saturday betimes he arriued ther, then he mounted by the staires and entered into the hall, and there he found Hector sitting by the Countesse his mother in lawe, eating together of a dish of fish, and as soon as Hector sawe Gouernar he rose & embraced him, and his heart reioiced for gladnesse when he sawe people of his owne Countrie, and then he demanded tidings of his cousin Arthur, and Gouernar aunswere and said, sir he heartely commendeth him to you, & desireth you to come to helpe to succour him against his enemies. And I praye you what he they said Hector, that he his enemies, for as long as I live whatsoever they be, though they be neuer so great or puissant, but I shall make them to tremble and quake if they will abide and looke me in the face. When the Countesse said, faire son, I wold you shuld not spare to help to succour our friend and louer the noble Arthur. When the Dutchesse of Orgoule the faire Ladie Alice embraced Gouernar, and demanded of him how Arthur did: faire Ladie said he, he heartely commendeth him to you. When hee said to Hector, sir haue you for it is neede. Then Hector called to him sir Octobon his Schenhal, and commaunded him that he shuld send into all the countrie of the Carlepine of Bzule that all that might heare barneis, that in all the hast they shuld come to him to the cite of Bzule, and in like wise he sent into all the Dutchie of Orgoule to sir Clarembault, that he shuld assemble all his host, and in al hast to come to him to the cite of Bzule, and when all his people were assembled together, then Hector toke leaue of Countesse his mother in lawe, and of the faire Ladie Alice his wife, who desired Gouernar to recommend her to the gentle Arthur. So they departed from Bzule, and entered into the waye toward the Port Poire, and so long they rode till at the last they were within two leagues of the Port Poire, and then they entered into a great deepe valley.

How

How Hector as he went toward the Port Noire to  
rescue Arthur, he encountered one of the kings that  
was coming toward the Emperour, & had in his  
company well to the number of eightene thou-  
sand men of warre, the which Duke Hector slew  
and all his people, so that there was none that  
ever escaped saving two, and so they fled awaie,  
and there Hector got a great boorie & much trea-  
sure, and great abundance of victuals, the which  
was all brought into the Port Noire.

Chapter 38.

Thus as Hector & his people were entered into this great  
valley, they perceived wher they came toward them  
about the number of eightene thousand men of warre.  
When Hector demanded of Gouvernar if that hee knewe  
them. And he aunswere and said, Sir may in god saith, but  
I doubt mee lest they be of our enemies. Then Hector  
made all his host to be armed, and when they were armed,  
Gouvernar pressed forth, and demanded one of them from  
whence they were. And one of them aunswere and said,  
friend it is Godfrey who is coming toward the Emperour,  
to helpe him to lay siege to the Port Noire to the intent  
to take it, and to take a knight that is therein. Who hath sa-  
ken away Florentine, who is taking Coligny, the which  
Ladie would have been wedded to my lord the Empe-  
rour, but that she is now that is in a castle of such part  
with that knight, but he shall be a marvellous death, what  
saide Gouvernar, then then doest thou see, and yet thou  
callest mee friend, but I shall that in thy labour, thou shalt  
defend thy selfe, then Gouvernar drew his sword and  
strake so the knight betwene the shoulders and the  
wreke, that hee claued him adowne to the waist, and then  
Gouver-

Gouvernar saide, I thinke I haue assured this knight to  
be on our part, for I thinke he will abide here still in this  
place.

Then saide Hector, I see well that betwene Go-  
uernar and this knight there was but little friendshipp,  
then Hector saide where King Godfrey did dress himselfe  
to come on Gouvernar as fast as hee might, but Hector met  
him first and strake the king so rudely that he overthrew  
him wide in the open felde, then Hector tourned him with  
his sword in his hand to haue striken off his head, but his  
people succoured him and ranne on Hector on all sides, but  
Hector strake among them that he brake the great pzease,  
then Gouvernar dashed into the thickest of the pzease with-  
out sparing of any bodie, for hee cut off armes, legges, and  
heades, great plentie. When Sir Clarembault entered in-  
to the pzease, and sir Wthes in like wise: then there beganne  
such a fraie that it was pittie to beholde, then King Godfrey  
was remounted againe, and Hector laide on round about  
him, and he went so much forward that he was closed in a-  
mong his enemies, howbeit he gaue among them so greates  
strokes, that all that ever he attained vnto went to the  
death, but his enemies did cast at him knives and daggers,  
so that at the last thereby they slewe his horse vnder him,  
then he leapt on his feete with his sword in his hand, but  
his enemies oppressed him greatly. Therewith Gouvernar  
came to him all in a great rage, and he was also at his com-  
ming so beset with his enemies, that his horse was slaine  
vnder him, and then Hector and Gouvernar were in that  
case that it was harde for them to escape, till at the last sir  
Clarembault and all his rout came to them, and so then  
there beganne so great a battaile that it was wonderfull to  
beholde, and then Hector and Gouvernar did so valiauntlie  
that each of them gave him a new horse, and so in the spite  
of all their enemies they were againe remounted, and then  
they dashed into the pzease and gaue so mightie strokes, that  
they remounted, that ever they attained vnto, then King  
Godfrey

## The Historie of Arthur

Godifer came on them with so great a p'cease, & they were  
by all and so by Godifer and so by others out of the p'cease,  
and closed them so rounde about, and gaue them so manie  
great strokes that they flew their horses vnder them, & then  
they defended them as balliant knights ought to doe, and  
oftentimes they falled by the sword to helpe to rescue them,  
but the p'cease was so great & thicke that Hector in no wise  
could get to them, and yetther hee was murthered with his  
handes, for he all to fringed sheldes, and unbarr'd helmes,  
and cut downe knights, but Gouvernar and Sir Wishes were  
so ouerladen that they were both taken prisoners and led  
out of the battaile. When Gouvernar saide, A deere master  
Arthur, to God I you commend, he that all things formed  
keepe and saue thy noble bonie. But when Hector knew  
that they were taken prisoners, hee was so sore displeased,  
that he almost enraged so, so row, & so abandoned himselfe  
among his enemies, & gaue so great & horrible strokes, that  
cheris man fled before him, for he strake none but they lost  
their liues, & else sore wounded. And in y meane tyme Go-  
uernar & Sir Wishes were led forth toward p'empour, who  
was coming after, and as they were thus led forth, they  
met with Sir Wissebar and Clemenson, Seneschal to Duke  
Phillip of Babbie, and Wissebar kneeled Gouvernar as soone  
as he saw him, then Wissebar cried and said, saint Marie  
saue Arthur the good knight, for y he well that Gouvernar  
is taken therefore gentle knight helpe to succour these two  
knights who are pertaining to the gentle Arthur, then  
all his companie forstrecte in them, and within a litle  
while they were all gone, and helow in small p'cease, and  
then Gouvernar and Wishes were mounted againe and  
they went on their way. Sir Wishes saide vnto Sir  
saue as you can for you shall haue here before in a greete  
valley the noble Hector, with to Arthur, fighting with King  
Godifer, who hath had a great companie, wherefore  
I haue the greete and noble Wishes, who hath too  
much in hand, and so he saide. By my hand, saide Sir  
Clemenson, ponder I see them, Wissebar followe me, then  
they

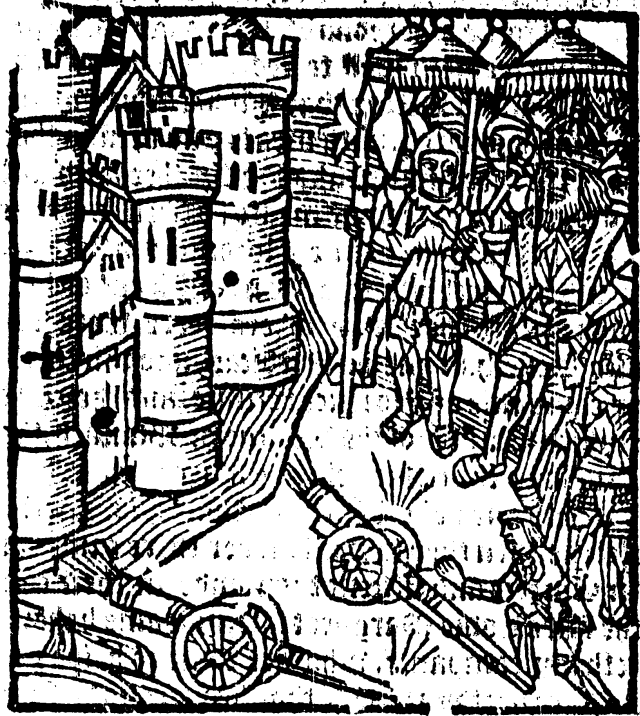
## Of little Britaine.

209

they all together in a front went together as fast as they  
might, and they were all weligh to the number of twentie  
thousand fighting men, then Clemenson dashed in o y p'cease  
with his sword in his hand, then he strake the first that he  
encountered in such wise that he made his head to flie from  
his shoulders, and so Wissebar met so with another that he  
clade his head to his teeth, and they didde so much at their  
comming, that they two beat downe and slew more then xx  
knights. And when Hector saue that, he saide, what  
knights be these or from whence are they come. When Go-  
uernar who the same time came into the p'cease, and wred  
Hector and saide, Sir I trust that I haue done so much that  
you shall haue noble succour, and when Hector saue Go-  
uernar, his heart reioyced and saide, friend helpe to succour  
ponder two knights, for they are worthe to haue helpe.  
When by that time al the whole companie of twentie thou-  
sand was come into the p'cease, and ther they slew knights  
great plentie, so that King Godifers companie were nigh  
dismitted. And when the king saue that, hee was so sore  
displeased that he was almost dead for anger, then he dashed  
his spurs to his horse, and gaue Hector such a stroke that  
he strake awaie of his sheld and harnais a greete quarter,  
but as God would that stroke did not enter into the flesh, &  
Hector strake the king so rudelie on the healne, that hee  
clade his head downe to the shoulders, and therewith he fel  
downe to the earth strake dead, and when his people saue  
that, they turned and fled awaie, but Clemenson and Wisse-  
bar followed in the chase, so that of eigheten thousand they  
left alive but two persons. Then Hector and Gouvernar  
came to Clemenson, and Wissebar, and each of them saluted  
other, & Hector thanked them of their good succour. Then  
they went all to the chariots and carts that King Godifer  
had brought thether, wherein they found greete plentie of  
golde and silver, and store of victualles, the which Hector  
caused to be conuayed to the Port Poir. When Gouvernar  
saue to Wishes, for y will goe before to my Lord Ar-  
thur and so on of your comming, and come you after  
Ce. faire

saire and easlie. Well saide Hector, goe your waie in the name of God, and so he departed & went to the port Noire, and mounted vp into the pallasce, and there he founde Arthur, Florence and the Bisshoppe, and master Stenen and Duke Philip. And when Arthur and Duke Philip saue Gouvernar, they saue well by his barneis that he had bene at some battaile. Then Arthur demanded of him what tidings: Sir said he, right well thanked be God, Sir behelpe yonder commeth your cousin Hector, and all his host, who hath discomfited and slaine the King Godifer, and of eigh- teene thousand that he brought with him there is left alieue but two persons, with y which King we met in a faire bat- tle, and he was comming towarde the Emperour to haue holpen him to haue destroyed you, in the which fraie I was taken prisoner, and also the Countesse of Brules Seneschal Sir Othes, but thanked be God and Duke Philip, for his Seneschall the gentle Clemenson, and Sir Baisebar did res- cove and deliuer vs, so now the King Godifer is slaine and all his companie, and Hector bringeth with him great plea- tie of golde and silver, and victualls, the which he wanne in this battaile. I knowe well it mounteth to the number of two hundred Chariots and Cartes. A good Lord said Ar- thur, the victualls is more welcome then Golde or Silver. When by that time Hector, Clemenson, and Baisebar aligh- ted at the port Noire, and lodged at their host about in the Castle, then Arthur ranne and embraced Hector all armed as he was and said, colyn you be right heartlie welcome to the helping of the noble Florence heere present. Trulie said Florence, blessed bee the neighbour that is ready to helpe at neede, but Arthur how is it that you haue hadde such a kinsman so nere vs, and would neuer shew it to me. Ma- dame quoth Arthur, I bid for none ill intent, so then Hector was lead into a chamber to be vnarmed, and Duke Phi- lip rescued Clemenson and Baisebar, and Sir Othes with great ioy, and when Hector was vnarmed then he went into the pallasce, and Florence beheld him and looked him wonderfullie, for she saue well that he was bigge and well

well made, then she saide to Arthur, Sir this Gentleman seemeth well to be of a redoubted lignage, Sir quoth the Bisshoppe, hee seemeth well to bee of the balure of a noble man. Pea Sir quoth Hector that I warraunt you if I were at a table saire covered, with meate and drinke thereon. As God helpe mee saide Duke Philip, hee saith well, for it were now time to eate some meate. Then Squiers set vp tables, and in the meane time Florence and Arthur, Duke Philip and the Archbisshoppe, went and leant out at a win- dowe, and at last they saue where there were comming Florence Seneschall and Sir Verdicas, and thirtie thousand in their companie of Florence retinue, and they all followe- ed the white Banner of the Realme of Blaunch, then Flo- rence said to Arthur, Sir behold yonder commeth our folke that shal help our neighbour. Paddme quoth Arthur, they be welcome, then they saw also wher there came Sir Piles and Sir Emerie and fiftene thousande in their companie, then the faire Ladie Margaret said, madame behold yonder commeth my companie, who are come to helpe you at all times. Margaret my loue, I thanke you quoth Florence of your good aide, and God giue mee grace so long to liue that I may deserue it unto you. And when Hector saw so many standards and firemers comming, hee saide, as God helpe me if this were the Emperour, to this comming I woulde then haue trust to see him, and by the good Lord I shal see him as shortly as I can. So then these knightes diide a- light and mounted vp into the pallasce, and Gouvernar and Baisebar appointed euery man his lodging, & these knightes were receiued with great ioy, and they went to dinner and were serued right richly with all maner of dainties. How the Emperour of Inde and the King Emendus, ac- companied with eight kings, and well to the number of three hundred thousand men of warre laide siege about the castle of the Port Noire, whereas Florence and Arthur were, wherof ill turned to the emperour, for there he lost three of his kinges, and an hundred thousand of his men.



**A**fter dinner when the tables were taken away, then Florence and the Bishop and Arthur went together and leaned out at a window, and Duke Philip and the master and Hector leaned out at another window, then they saw whereas the King of Portugal and the King of Armenia with all their powers take their lodging and light their field about the castle, and the King of Cyprus was at Argente, and the King of Wales and the King of Aquitaine, and when they were come to him, then the King of Cyprus made his own peace with them, and made them a large amends in that he hadde before banished them his court, and said how that he did it but in bad, and then repented him of his doeing, and when they were thus accorded, then they all together set forth in their walk toward the great abbey, and the King went before, and the King with the great dragon of Beowulf came in

in the reward with all his host, so that all the country was over spread with people. Now I see well saide Arthur, that we shall have warre, but by the faith that I owe unto god, if I may once medle with them, they shall not all retourne againe. By the good Lord said Hector, they lodge very nye vs, and yet they be not our friends. Than of themperours company there came king Jotias, and after him ther came King Clamados, and than after came themperour himself, and he was right sorrowfull when he knewe of the death of king Godifer and of his company, and how that all the treasure and vitaille was taken into the port noyze, and so the Emperour was lodged on the left side of the castell. Than Florence said to the bishop, sir how say ye is not ponder people sufficient to take a lady prisoner. Certainly madame god Arthur it is of trouth they are greatly to be doubted. Sir said Hector let vs go to them and giue them their welcom. Merely saide the maister now shall be seene who is a noble man, verely I am sonne to a king, therfore ought I by reason to loue deedes of chivalry and to beare harneis, therfore bicause of this matter I wold faine be made a knight, and than I would gladly sir Hector go in your company to bydde ponder galants wel come, for I would be loth that he should go and I to tary behinde. And when the bishop herd the maister say that he would be made a knight he had therat great laughter and sport and said, maister by the good lord it is much better to be in a chambze with ladies and damasells, than to be yonder without and to abide the breaking of sharp speares, and it is hard to finde a clarke to be a good knight. Wel sir said the maister all that maketh no matter, for I trust to do so well, that I shall bring in one day in to this place two of these kings prisoners, than they all that heard him began to laugh, so al that day they sported them at the maisters words, till it was time to go to rest, and than euery man went to bed and toke their restes til the next morning, and in the morning all these lords arose betimes and assembled them together in the middell of the palais, than Hector said to Arthur, cousin yonder people without hath good lyffe

to sleepe, for there is none to wake them, by the good Lord, me thinketh we were verie slow, let vs goe to them and see how they doe. In the name of God quoth Sir Clemenſon, ſo let it be, for we doe not our inducours to abide ſo long, therefore let vs iſſue out and deale valiantlie with them. In the name of God quoth Arthur, euerie man to harneis, and ſo euerie man went to arme them. Florence was not at that appointiment, but when ſhe knew thereof ſhe came to them and ſaid, Sirs what meane you to doe, this matter muſt be done wiſelie, for you know not preciſelie as yet for what cauſe this great aſſemblye become about this caſtle, per aduenture they be come to doe honour to our marriage betwene Arthur & me, for I cannot beleue that the King my father be come on me in harneis, wherefore in my minde it wer not beſt to aſſaile them firſt, but if they aſſaile vs, then let vs defend our ſelues in the beſt wiſe we can, ſir marques you are a noble man to goe on my meſſage to the King my father, wherefore I praye you go to him and humblye commend me to his grace, and ſaie that I require him to ſend me word of his miſde, and why that he is come hether in this manner of wiſe at this time, I praye you marke well theſe wordes that I haue ſaid to you, a wiſe man neuer ſpoken anie teaching, but and you ſee that hee will needes keepe ſtill his forward mind to me warde, then I will that you ſaie to his ſoure Kings & to all his chivalrie how that I ſend them word that they be al my men and ſubjects, wherefore if there be anie of them ſo hardie to drawe anie ſword againſt me or anie of mine, tel them that by the faith that I owe to my Ladie Glentaine my deere mother, whoſe ſoule I truſt liueth with the Lord, that I ſhall cauſe them to be hanged by the neckes, though that they neuer ſo noble or gentle, and after that I wil you enquire why this Emperour is come into my realme, and if you ſee that he be come for our ill, and that he woulde haue battaile, ſhewe him preciſely that he ſhall haue battaile right ſharp & ſtrong to morrow betimes without longer delay. In the name of God ſaid Duke Phillip, I ſee wel we haue a good head of our honſe, may

name you follow right well the noble ſteps of your linage. Well madame ſaid the marques, I truſt I ſhall ſo fulfil your meſſage that you ſhal be content, and ſo he took his leaue of Florence and of all the whole Baronie, & rode forth till he came before the King Emendus, at which time he was accompanied with his ſoure Kings, and alſo ther was the Emperour and all his Kings, & other Dukes, Carles, Barons, and Knights, there was alſo the King Jonas, & King Clameſdos, and diuerſe other noble men pertaining to the Emperour. When the gentle marques entered into the ſame place and did ſalute the King and all his companie, and ſaid, Sir I am come to you from my Ladie Florence your Daughter, the moſt noble & gentleſt Lady living, who right dearly commendeth her vnto your grace, as to her owne deere father, & ſir ſhe is greatly abaſhed of this greate companie in harneis, that you haue brought hether at this time, for ſir it is a great abaſhment to a noble gentle maiden to ſee ſo manie helmes and ſhields ſhining againſt the Sun, wherefore ſir ſhe requireth you to know your pleaſure and minde. When the King with a fierce looke ſaid, Sir Knight I will not receiue her ſalutation, for I loue her not at my heart, but I hope to do her damage both of body and of goods. Sir ſaid the marques, and for what cauſe? certainlie ſaid the King, ſhee hath done me ſhame & deſpite, for ſhe hath gone away from me with a ſtraunge knight, and ſhe is come to hide her ſelf in this caſtle, and there ſolightly ſhe keepeth companie with this ſtraunge knight, the which is a ſhame to her for euermore, and alſo ſhe hath done me deſpite, for I had giuen her to this Emperour to haue ben his wiſe, and ſhe will not ſo to my will, and therefore becauſe of the ſhame & the hath done me & doth yet like a falſe ſtrumpet, I ſhall put her into a perpetuall priſon, to the intent that ſhe ſhall do me neuer more ſhame, and I ſhall hang the ribaude knight by the necke that cauſed her thus to do, for the deſpite that ſhe hath done to me I ſhall doe her another, for I will neuer depart hence til I haue brought this caſtle downe to the hard earth. When the noble marques answered & ſaid, ſir as touching

the same that you laie against my Ladie for comming in  
to this castle I shall annul were you, Sir my Ladie is of  
great noblenesse and honour, and a Quene called by the  
right of her mother, wherefore it is right that sometime she  
goe and see her owne Countrie, and to take her pleasure of  
her owne, and sir in that she departed without your licence,  
was for feare and doubt of this Emperour to whom you  
would haue given her against her will and heart, for she  
doubted least that he would haue had her against her will,  
and therefore by his learning made you to be abused  
at the Church doore, for she came not hether so simple,  
that she ought to be blamed, for she brought with her Duke  
Philip and the Archbishoppe, and well five hundred other  
Knights in her companie, and sir the Bishop is her vnicle  
and your brother, wherefore he would be as loth that she  
should doe anie other wise then well as your selfe would be,  
but that needeth not to be feared, for she is of such wisdom  
that she can rule her selfe well enough, for there is not a wi-  
ser Ladie againe in all the world, and sir also Duke Philip  
hath bene alwaies with her, and therefore such people as  
be daily with her can report her dealing, and so cannot you  
that know nothing therof, and yet there is none that spea-  
keth anie villanie of her but you, the which thing sir mee  
thinketh you ought not to doe, and sir indeede ponder good  
Knight Arthur is with her, and though it be so that she hath  
retained him to be her seruant, I thinke therein she hath  
done wisely, and so haue not you done in letting him depart  
out of your Court, for he is the flower of all the chivalrie of  
the world, and she by wisdom hath retained him, for when  
he went out of your court he left not his fellow behind him,  
and sir if she haue a good knight retained vnto hir, she is not  
such a Ladie but that she is of such abilitie y she may right  
well guerdon him for his seruice, for she is not come to this  
Castle in the despite of you, nor yet for the loue of him that  
you so sore despise, but sir she did it because you would giue  
her to such a man as she neuer loved nor cannot loue, nor  
will not loue as long as she liueth, without it be by force,  
and

and sir she is not so poore a Ladie but that and you would  
giue her neuer so rich a man against her will, yet you may  
be sure that there should neuer good life be long betwene  
them, and because that this Emperour would haue her and  
she loueth him not, therefore she is come to that most strong  
castell that she hath, whereas she careth neither for him nor  
yet for anie other that would doe her anie displeasure, ther-  
fore sir take heed what you doe, for you know well that you  
would haue her to doe cleane contrarie to that was desti-  
ned to her in the mount Perillous at her natiuitie, and sir  
a thing predestinate is harde to bee broken, but sir I will  
show you what you shall do from hence forth, leaue meddling  
anie farther in this matter, for of one thing I make a war-  
rant, that there is in her companie and host a great num-  
ber of the best Knights of the world, sir leaue this mat-  
ter and deale like a true King, and agree to the promise that  
you were before accorded vnto, and that was whosoeuer  
should haue the Chaplet of the image, should in likewise re-  
ioyce my Ladie Florence your daughter, and to this you haue  
written your hand and set to your seale, and in like manner  
hath done all your four Kings here present, and all the  
twelve peeres of your realme, now sir you do against your  
owne seale and couenant that you made like a King thus  
to send for your people in harnais to assemble against a wo-  
man, the father against the daughter it is vnnatural and a  
great shame, it is no deed of a King to do against his own co-  
uenant and promise, for for Gods sake forbeare for doing of  
anie hurt against your owne child for anie singular loue y  
you haue to this Emperour. Certainly said the King, I wil  
not forbeare my mind, for all the treasure of the world shal  
not cause me but the Knight shall be hanged by the necke, &  
she put into perpetuall prison. Well sir said the Marques,  
then begin when you wil, and do y best you can, peradventure  
all will not be as you would haue it, but neuertheles to you  
four Kings, and to all the xi peeres, and to all other Knights  
that be here present, I say vnto you all, my Lady Florence  
sendeth you word by me that she meruaileth greatly y you  
be

be come hether in harnes to war against her, considering  
you be all her subiects, and she is your right lady & mistres,  
therfore Lords take god heed what you do, for she straight-  
ly chargeth you that you no2 any of yours draw no sword  
no2 weapon against her no2 anie of hers, for & you doe, she  
promiseth by the faith that she oweth to my lady Eglentine  
her dere mother that was, that ther is none of what degree  
so euer he be of, but that she will cause him to be hanged by  
the necke like a false traitour, wherefore sirs by my counsel  
take heed what you do. Then the king of Diquenie said to  
the king Emendus, Sir you cause vs to haue great maruel  
in that you haue summoned vs to come hither against our  
naturall Ladie, and to do against our promises, writings,  
& seales, sir it is of truth I am your man and I ought to go  
with you whether so euer you will haue me in any iust qua-  
rell, but reason no2 right wil not that I shuld make war a-  
gainst our right Ladie, whose subiects and men we be and  
must be, for she is and shall be our Lady by iust inheritance,  
but by the faith that I owe to God and to my crowne of the  
realme of Diquenie, neither I no2 anie of mine shal moue  
any war against her, & of the same accord were all y<sup>e</sup> four  
kings & ril. pères, for each of them said that they would ne-  
uer beare harnes against their owne ladie, no2 do against  
their own promises made before. Then the king Emendus  
said, Lords I cannot tell what you will doe, but I promise  
you all that I will neuer depart out of this place till I haue  
destroyed this castle, and all the knights that be therein han-  
ged by the necks. And they all answered him & said, sir do as  
it pleaseth you, and we shall giue you the looking on, but we  
will not helpe thereto no2 anie of ours. Then the marques  
saide to the Emperour, Sir my Ladie would faine knowe  
why you be thus entered into her Realme with such num-  
ber of men of warre. Certainlie Sir said the Emperour, I  
come hether to seeke her as for mine owne, for she is gi-  
uen to me by her father, and because that she denieth my  
will therfore, I am come hether to haue her whether she  
will or no, and I will doe worse to her then I would do to a  
false

false traitour, and I shall hang by the necke that rybaude  
knight that kepeth hir at his pleasure, and duke Philip of  
Sabary also who doth sustaine hir in hir solish mynde. And  
whan the king of Diqueney heard the Emperour menase and  
threate and say so of his newe duke Philip, he saide, ye sir  
Emperour faire and easely, for or ye can bring that about,  
ye shal haue no cap no2 hat to put on your head, for though  
that she be giuen to you, yet she is not deliuered to you, ye  
may wel muse on hir deliuerance, but I ensure you ye get  
hir not so lightly as ye wene, & sir as for the knight whome  
ye doe menase to hang by the neck, sir it were a great sinne  
so to doe, for his nourishing cost him more than so, but sir  
take to morow some appintment betwene him and you to  
doe some deedes of armes together, or els take part of his  
men, and so shall he do of his, and than and ye can take him  
binde him fast, and than hang him by the neck, & then shall  
ye be cleane out of suspicion betwene Florence and him,  
for than ye may be sure he shall trespassse you no moze, sir  
loue hath brought you hither, but ye no2 all your knightes  
are nothing worth without ye doe some deedes to be pray-  
sed, sir mount on your horse to morow, for loue gouerneth  
you, my lady is so faire, & she would gladly giue some faire  
strok with your sword for hir loue, for alway god knightes  
getteth grace among faire ladies, therfore sir to morow  
wyn hir amorous grace with some deepe of chivalry, for  
in good faith ye haue it not. Wel qd the Emperour, get me the  
knight that sporteth him so with hir. He sir qd the marques  
he will not so lightly be got, for sir he is within & ye be with  
out in the raine, and he is in the shadow abiding in the sight  
of this faire lady, the which is a great shame to you, there-  
fore put him out of this castell and get your selfe in, but sir  
how sape ye, shall this assembly be made to morow or not.  
By my faith saide the Emperour, I shall make him assemble  
to morow of iiii. thousand, & also of xviii. M. men of armes.  
Sir said the marques, will ye promise this faithfully. He a-  
trustly saide the Emperour.  
And I promise faithfully for y<sup>e</sup> other partie, said y<sup>e</sup> marques,  
that

## The Historie of Arthur

that you shall be received, and then he spake as loud as he could and said, Lords and friends, such as be subjects to my Ladie Florence, that on paine of your lives you moue not nor make any war against my Ladie Florence, nor against any of hers, & then he said to the Emperour, Sir for Gods sake begin the battaile betimes because of the heat. When the King Clamedos said to the Marques, is this lady Florence so faire as it is said? A sir Marques, thinks you nothing on her, for your emperour doth inough for you both. Well friend said the King, I heare saie she hath with her a swete little rose, white, tender, & yong, who is called Floret. Sir said the Marques, in dede ther is such a one with my lady, & I assure you she is right swete, & maketh oftentimes for me & such other knightes of my companie goodly chaplets, and sir as yet to my knowledge she hath no lone nor paramour, & Sir I thinke you haue a iolly wanton etc. therfore sir come and see her to morrow, for she shall be on the walls of the castle, and I will shew her vnto you if I can meet with you. Sir when you haue seen her, set your fate together and assay if you can leape by to her, take on you to morrow this enterprise for the Emperour, with a good will said he, and said to the Emperour, Sir I require you let me haue the battaile to morrow. Well quod the Emperour, sith you will needs I am content, & so he took his gloue in pledge, & the King thanked him, and the Marques departed, & went to the Castle & recounted to Florence & to Arthur worde for word as you haue heard before, then they answered that they had of him a right good messenger, & graunted him the battaile the next day with thirtie thousand against the king Clamedos.

How Philip Duke of Sabarie & master Steuen come to the King of Valefound were made Knightes, and of the discomfort that Arthur made on the Emperour. Chap. 9

And when Duke Philip of Sabarie heard how that they should haue a battell the next day in the morning, he said to the lady Florence, madam I require you let me be made knight, for

## Of little Britaine.

25

for I may not be in the place where as so many noble men be, without I were a knight. By the faith that I owe to God said Florence, with a right good will. Then master Steuen slept forth and saide, madame my lord the archbishop here present reputeth me but as one more meeter to beat furies than knights, but madame by the faith that I owe to God, I would faine be made a knight, and therof I require your grace, and than every body began to laugh. Well sir quod he, laugh not therat, for I tist not, I will be made a knight and I may, than he went to the lady Margaret of Argenton and saide to hir in hir eare, mine stoneware Lady will it not please you that I be made a knight, I beseech you giue me leape to be one, and she answered him faire and softly in counsaile and said, yes ywis swete lone, I would be glad thereof, than he rose from hir and sayde adlowe, my lady Margaret of Argenton how say ye shall I be made a knight. Certainly friend quod she, I would be glad thereof, on the condicion that ye will take armour & horse and other necessaries of my gift. Madame saide he, I thank you, and I shall be glad to follow your pleasure with the licence of my lady Florence. Certainly quod Florence I am content therewith. And when all the other Lords & knights saw the master meened good faith, they were right glad thereof, and so went as far that night to their restes, and in the morning for duke Philip Florence prepared horse and harnesse and all other furniture, and faire Lady Margaret ordeined in likewise for master Steuen, than the archbishop ministered the service, and Arthur did gird on the masters sword, and Hector did on duke Philips, than Arthur and Clemonson led forth the master betweene them, and Hector and Berdicas led forth duke Philip, and so they offered to the bishop, and he did giue them the neck stokes of knighthood, according to the v sage that was than in that countrey, than Arthur and Hector armed them, and than caused a great hoare to be blowen, & by the blowing thereof every knight went to their harnesse, and than they take their leaues of Florence, and than Arthur said to the Marques,

## The Historie of Arthur

ques and so Sir Clarendall and to Sir Dthes, Sir I pray you go and fortifie the gates of this castel with iiii. C. paues, and so they did, and than they issued out of the castel in good ordinance. And Arthur ordeined their battaile right strong & marvellous, for the first battaile ther was him self, Sir Wisebar: Sir Clemenson, & in their company vii. C. hatwerts and they were commanded to kepe their right way vnder the mountaine, then followed after them Hector and Gouvernar and Florence Beneshall, with foure thousande with them, and the maister and Duke Philippe, and Sir Verdicas went about the mountaine, to the intent to close round about the Emperour: and they had with them eight thousand. Than the Emperour on his part called to him King Clamados and said, Sir go arme you and your men, and go make assault to the castell of the port Pryze, and if ye fortune to encounter the Knight Arthur, loke that ye take him and bring him alive to mee, for I will make him be hanged so high and so nere to the castell, that Florence may see him every daye when she will. Sir god the king, doubt ye not it shal be don, but it is an olde said sawe, he that reckneth without hisse hoast must reckon twise, and so did he, for he failed of his enterprise, than the king caused to be blownen a great trumpe, and than every man ran to his harnesse, and the king Clamados ordeined iiii. battalles, and therle of thyle Verdne did leade the first battaile, and the duke of Calton with him, and they had in their company x. C. men: and the second battell was led by the duke of Calace, and he had with him x. C. men, and the king Clamados himselfe led forth the third battaile & other x. C. with him, and so they went forth with banners displayed, and toke the right way toward the castel, the which way Arthur was comming toward the felde, and so they went forth so long till at laste the duke of Calton and the erle of the yle perdue who led the first battaile encountred Arthur and Clemenson and Wisebar and their company, than Clemenson desired of Arthur to haue the first course with his speare, and Arthur did graunt him, than he dashed

## Of little Britaine.

his spures to his horse sydes and ran at the Duke of Calton who came against him, and they met so rudely that Clemenson strake so the duke that his speare went cleane thoroughout his bodie, and so the duke fell downe to the earth. A Jesu saide Arthur, what aide is this at the first meeting, our enemies hath by this dede great losse and discomfort. And when the Earle of the yle Verdne saw the duke slain, there arose in his hoast a great and terrible crye, & they ran all at once on Clemenson, but he like a valiaunt knight defended himselfe with his sword, and gaue right greafe & puissant strokes among them, then there was none could hold Wisebar, but he rusht into the pcese, and the first that he encountred withall he beate downe to the earth, and the second did neuer crye after. Then Arthur and his company came into the pcese, and there beat downe and slew knightes by great heaps, and Arthur with his good sword Clarence plunged in among his enemies, and beate downe knightes and hozes in such wise that all fled before him, as they would haue fledde from the death, for there was none that abode him but he receiued death at his handes, & Clemenson stode still and beheld him and had great wonder at his dedes, and as he stode looking on him he encountred so a knight, that he claued him to the teeth, then Clemenson toke of his dedes great hardinesse on him and dashed into the thickest of the pcese, and Sir Wisebar followed him so farre that they were enclosed round about w<sup>th</sup> ther enemies, & the pcese was so great that their hozes wer slain vnder them, and so by great force they were taken prisoners, and lead forth out of the felde toward the Emperour, but as fortune would Hector met them, and as soone as he saw them he spurred his horse with his spures, and strake so the first that he claued him to the chin, and from the second he toke a waie his shoulders, then Gouvernar toke his sword in his hand and did helpe Hector to discomfort them that led alwaie the prisoners, and in the spite of them all they were remounted and returned againe to the hoast, and Hector toured his horse and strake in the pcese so rudely with

## The Historie of Arthur

with the first that he met he strake off his head, and ere he ceased he slew ten each after other, and at last Hector, Clemonson, Wissebar, and Gouvernar met together, and betwene them they did such deedes among the Emperours people, that all fled betwene them, then the Carle of Calace came into the field with ten thousand men in his company, and then the battaille beganne to bee so terrible that ther was many slaine & hurt of both parties, and when Arthur saw so many of the Emperours people assembled together against his men, he dasyt to his horse with Clarence in his hand, & strake so rudely in the preele, that he cut off heads, legges, armes, and hands, and unbarred healmes, and confounded and beate downe all that euer he touched, and at last hee encountered the Carle of the Ile Berdrie, but hee thought he would not slaine him but he strake him with the pommell of his good sword on high on the hearme so rudely, that he was so astonied with the stroke that he wist not where he was, and so all in a traunce hee fell on his horse necke, and in the releyning he strake at Hector, who as then had broken part of the preele, to the intent to followe Arthur, but Hector gaue him such a stroke that he auoided the saddle and fell downe to the earth, then Wissebar and Gouvernar toke him, and so he was sent into the castle to Florence like a prisoner. And when the Duke of Calace sawe that he had lost him, he was right sorrowfull, and in great rage dasyt into the preele, and met with sir Ansel, and gaue him such a stroke that his sword went cleane throughout his bodie, but yet as God would hee was not wounded to the death, but he fell downe to the earth in a great traunce. When Gouvernar toke and conuiered him out of the preele, and sent him to the Castle. And when Florence sawe her knight sir Ansel so sore wounded shee was right sorrowfull, and caused her Surgeons to search his woundes, and when Arthur sawe the stroke that the Duke of Calace had giuen sir Ansel, he was right sorrowfull, so he thought verrilie that he had bene dead, therewith hee touched his horse and encountered the Duke with great malice, and gaue him

## Of little Britaine.

217

him with a stroke that he claue him to the shoulder. And when his people sawe that he was slaine and that they had as then no captaine, they were greatly abashed and turned them to flee, but Arthur and Hector chased them till at last they met with the king Clamebos, and ten thousand in his company, and so they all dasyt together, & then there began a terrible battaille, but the kings company was so great, that Arthur and his company had much to doe to defende their liues, till at last master Steuen and Duke Philip and sir Verdicas wer come round about the mountaine, so that they were at the backes of their enemies, so that king Clamebos toke no heed therof till they were on them vnawares, and as soone as master Steuen sawe the kings host he blew such a blast that there arose a mist in the kings host that they were so abashed therewith, that they had thought to haue fled way, but then Duke Philip & the master rusht into the preele, & each of them beat downe him with whom they encountered, and there the master did meruayles in armes, and at last Gouvernar sawe him and said to sir Clemonson, by the good Lorde sir, master Steuen by sewing hath giuen vp his minde to be a Priest, for I thinke he will neuer see settee, behold he ponder how valiantlie he fighteth, so there he sawe him give right greate and ballaunt strokes, what shall I saie more, so much did Arthur there and his compaignie, that the king Clamebos and all his wer slaine dishonoured and fled auaile as fast as he might to the Emperours Court, and recounted to him all the losse that he had in that battaille, and shewed him how that the Duke of Calace and the Duke of Calace were both slaine, and the Carle of the Ile Berdrie taken prisoner, and all his compaignie slaine, also, verilie sir there was neuer sene such a knight as Arthur is, & he hath in his company of the most ballaunt knightes of the worlde. And when the Emperour heard all this he was so sorrowfull and full of displeasure, that he was nere enraged of his wit, then he caused Hornes and Trumpets to be blown, to the intent to cause his people to arme them, and so the Emperour himselfe

himselfe armed him, and also did King Jonas and fifteen thousand in their companie. And when Arthur heard that he said to his neeces, Sirs thanked he God it is right well happened to us in the beginning of this war, and our people this date hath taken paine, wherefore they bee wearie, therefore in my minde it were best we haue our selues againe into our castle, & let us see what this Emperour will doe to us, whereto euery man was agreed and so they withdrew them and mounted vpon into the Castell, & entered in to the pallasce. When Florence demaunted of Arthurs howe he did. And he aunswered and says, deere Ladie thanked be God right well. And in likewise did the faire Ladie Margaret to master Stephen, then the Earle of the Ile. Berceus came to Arthurs, who receiued him right sweetly and said, Sir be of good cheere and be not dismayde, for you shall haue here but a good prison, and the Earle thanked him right sweetly.

How the Emperour spake with the Queene Proserpina, thinking to him that it had bene the faire Ladie Florence, but he was deceiued, for she did set a great discord betweene him & the king Emendus, as you shall heare after.

Chap. 91.

**W**hen the Emperour and his companie were ready apparailled they leapt on their horses & followed after Arthur with fiftie thousand in his companie, & when he came neere to the castle, he beheld the situation thereof a great feason, and at the last he saw the Queene Proserpina and a damsell with her issuing out of the Castell, and hee thought verily that it hadde bene the Ladie Florence that hadde fled out of the castle, and with that sight he cleane forgane his displeasure, and all the losse that he had in the battaile before, and so he dight to his horse and thirtie persons with him, and when he had overtaken her & seene her perfectli in the face, he saide to himselfe, verily this same is Florence, and

and so then he forgot all manner of other thinges and layde his handes on the raine of his horse and sayde, faire damosell whether are ye going to fast this way. Certainly sir said she, it hath bene shewed me that ye and the king my father are right sore displeased with me, but sir it greueth me more your displeasure than my fathers, wherfore sir I thinke to go to an abbey here by, and there to be made a nonne, for your displeasure all onely. Damosell said the Emperour, if it please you we two shall be soone agreed. Sir saide she, I thanke you, but how shall that be, will ye haue me to your wife, & I you to my husband. Yea truly said the Emperour. Sir said she, I am content therewith, but how shall I doe for the king my father will see me if he may haue me vnder his rule, & sir by the faith that I owe vnto our Lord my body was neuer defouled with yonder knight Arthurs, nor yet with any other. Wel faire lady saide the Emperour, and if that be of truth, I ensure you your father shall doe you no hurt but my part shall be therein. Sir saide she may I trust on this, for it sore soroweth me that euer I did any displeasure to you. Yea truly said the Emperour, thinke not the contrary therefore now be in peace, and so the Emperour toke him with him into his tent, and cleped and kissed him often times, that at the last it came to the hearing of King Emendus how that the Emperour had a great battell with them of the castle, and how that he had lost all his people that he had sent thither, that he armed him & well to the number of xxx. thousand and came to the Emperours tent to comfort him of his losse, than it was shewed to the Emperour how that the king was coming toward him. Yea halbe welcome said the Emperour. Sir saide Proserpine, I am now vnder your keeping, for gods sake let my father doe me no villany. Be not afrayde for I warrant you saide the Emperour. When the king entered into the Banition, and as soone as he sawe Proserpine, he thought verily it hadde bene Florence his daughter and sayde, what thou strumpet arte thou now here,arest thou he so bold as to come in my sight where is that rhaue knight Arthurs that hath kept thee thus long, is

ff. ii.

he



Then the king of Miqueny said, Sir say vnto your Emperour that if he come he shall finde that we will speake with him not to his pleasure, and I assure you if he come not he shall be sought wheresoever he be, to the intent to haue his head brought into this Countre, therefore shew him that if he will come and bring himselfe into this Realme he shall ease vs of much paine. When the Duke departed and the king Emendus abode still in great melancholie. When the king of Malesound said to him, Sir here is begonne a great businesse, and many inconueniences are like to followe thereby, therefore sir it shall be needfull for you to puruey for people, and for the best knights that you can get, for the Emperour is a puissant Prince, and hath many friends, gentle king suffer your selfe to be counsailed both to your profit and honour, Sir for Gods sake leaue this abussion thus so laie siege to your daughter, and do no more against your owne promise and agreement, nor arise no more against your daughters destinie, for there is no profit canne come to you thereby, but many euill inconueniences may ensue thereby, and hath done already as it hath appeared by the Duke of Wygoz, for hee hath receiued death, and Sir you were in great displeasure with the King of Miquenie, and with me, and bannished vs out of your Court, also Sir you were in great abussion at Coynte at the Church doore, when you went to haue married Florence to the Emperour, & now you be fallen with him at great mortall warre, and Sir this Emperour hath lost a King and two Dukes & all their people slaine, and all this is done because you bee obstinate against Florence destinie, therefore now sir doe you the best, appease your selfe and make peace with your daughter, and with the good knight Arthur, and desire him to aide you against this emperour, for one thing I say, that he hath in his companie many of the best knights of all the world, and if if you may haue them you neede not to feare the Emperour nor yet all the world. Sir I counsaile you thus to do: yea said the king, and would you haue him to do thus, how should I then haue any honour or fame in this world,

world, with the shamefullie hath forsaken me, and is gone away with this strange knight. Well sir quoth the king of Malesound, your daughter I assure you right sagelie leuaueth her selfe as she that nothing will do against her destiny, and because you would haue constrained her to haue married against her will, therefore shee is come into this strong Castle for to withstand the Emperour, Sir she hath with her your owne brother the Archbishop, and her cousin Duke Phillip of Sabarie, and five hundred of her knights, and for there is none of all these that for all the good in the world they would not suffer any inconueniences between her & this knight Arthur, but for she feareth that this Emperour would doe her damage, therefore she hath retained him and such other as be of his companie, because that hee is the most best knight of all the world now liuing, where in for she hath don wiselie, for you may see how at all points they haue displeased this Emperour, and slaine of his men, Sir your daughter is your owne, & this Emperour is now your mortall enimie, but for your loue ought for to bee on your daughter, & beare you fiercelie against your enemies, and not against her whom you should loue. When the king said, sir by the good Lord I am at this present time so ouercome with displeasure, that I cannot as now receiue your words in good part, I shall aduise me to night, & to morrow I shall answeare you. Sir you say well said the king & his peeres. When the king was vnarmed and all other in likewise, then the tables were spread & euery man sat downe & made good cheere, and so passed forth the time with y<sup>e</sup> king till it was time to go to rest.

How that after the Emperour was thus departed in displeasure, and had defied the king with mortall warre the next Easter following, by the subrill art of Steuen all the Kings host was brought euery man fast a sleepe, and in the meane time the master & five other Knights with him bare the king Emendus fast a sleepe as he laie, bed and all vp into the pallace of the castle of the Port Noire,

**T**Hus the King Emendus and his Lordes were in their Tents right sore troubled & abashed of the debate that was risen betwene the King and the Emperour for the Ioue of Bolerpina, as you haue heard here before, all that season Arthur and his companie were in the Castell laughing, and hauing good game of the beginning of the occasion of the strife betwene the King and the Emperour, and so all that daie they were in great feast and ioye till it was time to goe to their restes, and so euery man went thereto saue the master, and he was in his doublet because that the weather was somewhat hot, and in his companie there was Philip, Bisebar, Gouvernar, Hector, Clemenson, and Berdicas, and they played and sported them together till it was verie late, then Gouvernar said to the master, Sir yonder in the Skie you see many Starres, but I praeie you holue can you knowe by them what shoulde fall after. Sir saide the master, the science thereof is right pleasaunt and goodly. I praeie you master said Hector loke now vp into the Heauen and beholde the Planets, and loke and you can perceiue a nie thing that shoulde aduantage or else be hurtfull to vs, and so for their pleasure the master looked vp and beheld the heauen a great space, and at last he said, Lordes and friends, and you beheld the Planets and could consider them as wel as I doe, you shoulde cleerelie perceiue that we be at the end of our warre, for we shall haue shortly peace, & as I thinke verilie we shall haue Arthur to our Lord and master. Sweet master said Duke Philip, and I praeie you how shall all this come to passe. Verilie Sir I see well by the course of the Starres many meruailes, for the Planet that as now runneth, who hath the gouernance ouer the King Emendus is now in that point, that if wee might haue the King we shoulde lightlie haue peace with him, and I knowe well by the Planet that he is as now laide in his bed in his Chamber, and is fast asleep, and all his host, and I knowe such a charme that if I do cast it, neither he nor any of his shall awake till it be to morrowe faire daye, therefore let us goe out

out into the field and bring hether the King, and then shall we haue our peace sone made. In the name of God sayde Bisebar, shame haue he that saileth so to doe. Let vs goe straight waie said Gouvernar, then they all apparailled them and went out of the castell as priuie as they coulde, and desired the marques to keepe the gates open til they returned, and when they approached nere to the Tents, then the master blew such a blast that there arose a great storme and a thicke mist, so that they lost cleane the sight of the Tentes, and therewith euery man that was waking in the field felt fast a sleepe, then the master and his companie went to the Kings tent, and there they found him in his royall bed fast asleep, and great lights of waie burning before him, and so among them they took the whole beede and the King lying in it, and bare it faire and softlie vp to the Castle, and diide set downe the bed in the great hall of the Pallace, and so set foure torches of waie burning before him, and so they did let him lie still. Then the master saide, I will retourne againe to the Tents and awake the King my father & shew him how that we haue the King within the Castell with vs, And so he went to his Fathers Tent and vnbidde his inchantment, and then he was brought vnto his fathers beddes side, and then hee late him downe faire and softlie, and abode till the King his father awaked by himselfe, and then the master sayde, My father be yon a sleepe. Pape saide the King, who be you that speaketh to me thus earlie. Sir I am Steuen your sonne, by Saint Marie said the king, who hath brought you hether, get you hence, for and King Emendus may take you, there is no golde nor silver that shall saue you from the death. Sir said the master, the King is as now more in my daunger then I am in his, for Sir hee is in the Castle fast asleep. A sleepe in the Castle saide the King, how can that bee, howe is hee come thether, or howe shoulde he be a sleepe among his enemies: Sir truelie we haue this night boyned him to the castle in his beede fast asleep, for Sir by the subtil art of Pigromancie I brought him and all his host fast asleep, therefore Sir I am come to

to you for to haue your counsaile to what we shall doe with him, either to take him or to take him alive. I shall him sapiently king, I charge you take that you touch him not to his hurt, but honour you him as much as you maye & abide you here a little space, and I will arise. I and goe speake with the king of Dyquenie, and as soon as hee was readie they went both together to the king of Dyquenie, who was as then fast asleep in his bed; then they awaked him and recounted to him all the matter. When the king of Walesound said, Sir for Gods sake helpe to make the peace among vs. When the king sayd, Sirs I thinke it were best to goe and awake all the other kings and twelue peeres, and let them come hether, and so they were incontinently sent for, & they came thether straight waies, & as soon as they were come and heard all the cause how it was. When the king of Walesound said, Sirs let vs euerie man set to our hands to make the peace, for as now we are nere at the point, let vs goe all to the castle, & saie to the king how that all we were boyned in like wise as he was by into the Castle whiles that we were asleep, and then when he seeth and heareth that we all be taken prisoners, and that he hath none now in all his host that is able to maintaine his warre, he will the sooner be conuerted & broken from his purpose. And they all answered and said, Sir you be right aduised in the matter, we be all content thus to doe; then they all departed so priuely that none of the host espied them, and went by into the castle, and so ther they went to their beds, and laie still it was in the morning, then in the morning betimes the master & Hector went to Arthur and awaked him and said, Sir you haue here in your companie the king Emendus and all the other foure kings and the twelue peeres. And wher are they said Arthur: Here within this faire chamber said Hector. A gentle master said Arthur, blessed bee the houre that euer you were boyned, for now I trust we shall haue peace, let vs goe cause Florence and the Archbishop to arise, and so they did, and when they were by and readie and heard these tidings, they were right ioyfull, then the Archbishop sayd,

And let vs goe and cause to arise the king of Walesound, & the king of Dyquenie, and the king of Ismaelite, and the king of Moymall, and all the twelue peeres, and then let vs take counsaile together, and see what shall be done farther in this matter, and Duke Philip went for them, and as soon as they were come they saluted Arthur and Florence. When the Archbishop said, Sirs now there is no more to do but let euerie man take their harnais, then Arthur, Duke Philip, Hector, and Gouvernar armed them, and two hundred other knights in their companie, then the Bishoppe said, Sirs now shall the king Emendus doubt when hee seeth you, and the sooner he will agree to make peace with you. When the king of Walesound saide, Faire Ladye Florence you shall goe to the king your Fathers bedde and awake him. Alasse said Florence, shall I goe to him and hee hate me deadly, I feare mee he will slay mee. Madame quoth the king of Moymall, there is not so harde a hearted man but y<sup>e</sup> a woman wil mollifie him, for ther was neuer so great wrath but a woman may appease it, therfore inaband goe your waie to him, for I warraunt you you shall make your peace your selfe. Well quoth Florence I shall goe to him, God be my helpe, then shee departed and went softly into the chamber wheras the king her father laie, then shee opened the windowes and put out the lightes of waie, and went faire and softly to the kings beds side, and when shee sawe that hee slept fast, shee laie her downe by him on the beddes side.

How king Emendus when that he awaked forgave all his ill will to Florence his daughtes, and did put all governing of his realme into her hands. Cap. 23.

Thus as Florence laie on her fathers beddes side a good space, at last the king felt one sitting on his beddes side, therewith hee awaked and opened his eyes, and behelde the greates windowes open before him, whiche were fairely glazed, and

and the Sunne shining all about the chamber the light was right right, the king marvelled greatly what he was, and was sore afraid and blessed him oftentimes and said, O God bless thee where art thou? what art thou? what art thou that sittest on my beds feete. Sir said she I am your daughter Florence, and when the king perceived that it was she, he said, who hath brought thee in this place whereas I am, for thou hast shame thy selfe with a false knight. A sir said Florence, for Gods sake save you so no more, for by the holie Baptisme that I received at the Font faine and on the dampnation of my soule my bodie was neuer by him nor by anie other impaired in word nor in deede. Certainlie said the king, foole as thou art, I beleeve thee not, why hast thou else bene so much in his company without doing of anie other thing, for loke whereas the heart is, there is the bodie abandoned, for the bodie enclineth to the heart. Why sayde Florence, it needeth not alwaies to accomplish all the will of the hart, but such as are honourable and good. When said the king, what honour is this for you thus to holde your selfe in prison prisonelie hidde with a strange knight, and to leave such a noble marriage as I would have given to you. Sir said she, if it please you I shall shew you, as to that I have left you and come hether, it is of truth I sawe well you were of the minde to have given me in marriage to this Emperour, the which tricke was against my minde, for I hate him to the death, inso much that I would it had cost me the one halfe of my landes, so that I had his head from his shoulders, so that I should not offend God, and sir in this greates hatred if I should have taken him my heart should never have bene in peace till I had caused him peradventure to have lost his life, and thereby should I have bene reputed a false murderer, and damned my soule perpetuallie, and to you this should have bene a greates shame and a reproch, for I am sure if I should have died in the quarrell I should have saide grace to the place that would have brought mee his head, for I am in feare I should have put my soule in jeopardy

to have gone to the dwell of hell, as finding in some manner of waies to have shortned his mortall life, and so in this I should have become cruell, and lost my womans heart, Sir I assure you this was will and intention, and Sir to eschew all the perills and inconueniences I am come hether, for I knowe well that if I had tarried with you, you would have caused me to have had him against my will, therefore I durst not discover my courage unto you, but I showed my minde to your brother the noble Archbishoppe, who is mine uncle and father in God, and confessor, hee hath all this season taken hede to mee both coming and going, in chamber and out of chamber, therefore enquire of him and of Duke Philip of Spabarie and of all my other barons and knightes, Ladies and Damselfs, whether then I have dishonestly ordered my selfe or not, and sir, as for the knight that you speak of, I have none otherwise done with him but as my destiny hath given me, and sir thus hath bene my dealing, therefore sir for Gods sake have pittie on me your owne humble child, you be my Lorde and father, and I am your daughter, you are left unto me in the steede of my mother, who I am sure and she had lived would have endured great trouble rather then I should have ben married against my will and destiny, and sir sith you are left me in the steede of my mother, for Gods sake then leave your fatherlie hart and take a motherlie heart unto you. Sir accomplish my desire and let neuer this emperour have me, I love you and doubt you as I ought to do my deere father, wherefore Sir open your heart and take pittie on your child, and therewith she began risulke to wepe, so that greates plentie of silver dropes fell downe ouer her breasts. And when the king saw her and heard her speake so humbly, his heart could no longer endure in that rigor, but it beganne to melt and saye: Well daughter Florence appease your selfe and wepe no more, I shall speake with my counsaile, where is Cyprian my chamberlaine cause him to come to me, for I will ryle. Sir quoth the king without in the field in your tent. Iesus and the king, and when my father brought me into this place.

Certainlie sir we brought you better right soles for fear  
of waking of you, and in like wise so be at your four things  
and twelve peeres, for they knew nothing thereof till they a-  
waked this morning. Merilie quoth the King, this was  
wonderfullie well slept of us all, give me my doublet and I  
will rise, then Florence gave it him and laced his sleeves,  
and took a kerchiefe and did cast it about his shoulders, and  
took a combe and right softlie did combe his head, & which  
right well pleased the King, and so she made him readie at  
all points and issued out of the chamber and led Florence by  
the hand, who made somewhat semblaunce to be so rowful,  
and when they were entered into this pallece the King saw  
all his other four things and twelve peeres, then he smiled  
a little and said, Lo, des the Ladie of this place hath made  
better war then anie of us hath done, for we are now more  
in her daunger then she is in ours. When the King of Por-  
mall said, sir then it is needful for us that we take good heed  
that we displease her not. Well said the King, but were all  
we brought better without knowledge of our people in the  
field, by the faith that I owe to God I have wonder how it  
might be. And therewith they heard a great cry and clamor  
without in the field among his people, and the King mer-  
wailed what it might be. Merilie sir said the King of Por-  
mall, I beleue it be for you and for us, because they knowe  
not wher we are become. For Gods sake said the King send  
word out to them, and shew how that I command them to  
be in peace, and so incontinently ther was a messenger sent  
to them. When the King of Porrmall sayde unto Florence,  
madame I require you departe out of this chamber for a  
season, for we will speake with the King in counsaile, then  
she departed.

When the King of Porrmall sayde, Sir before you came  
so we were speaking of you, and I shall tell you what  
it was, Sir it is of truth that you knowe well the desti-  
nie of Florence your Daughter, that whosoever take her  
in marriage, without lesse hee to whom she is as-  
signed unto, shall not escape without death, as it appeareth  
plaine.

Plaine by this Emperour, for I beleue verilie that if he  
enforce himselfe anie farther to have her, it will cost him  
his life, and Sir you did see how that the Image did give  
her Chaplet unto this Knight Arthur, who is above all  
other most chiefe in chivalrie, and Sir you didde see and  
I weare to keepe the appointment that was made, and in  
like manner did we all your Kinges and Peeres, therefore  
Sir it is our minde and counsaile that you accomplish your  
promise, whereto you have set your writing and greate  
Seale, and Sir doe you so that you maye have the accorde  
and good will of this Knight Arthur, the which shall bee  
right needfull for you for the sustaining of your warre, and  
Sir all we be of this accorde. Why sir saide the King, and  
will you have me to give my Daughter and heire unto a  
strange knight, and we knowe nothing of his gentlenesse  
or parentage, for he may be of such linage that it should bee  
great villanie to me and to all my Realme to give her un-  
to him, and also you that counsaile mee thereto shoulde bee  
greatlie blamed.

When the King of Walesound sayde, Sir a man  
ought not to demaund for good will whereas it grow-  
eth, nor a wise valiant man from whence he cometh, we  
see and know well the high surmounting brautic of his bo-  
die, for sir in all our Realme there is not a goodlier man at  
all pointes, and also we may see his great gentlenesse howe  
that he giueth all about unto knightes horses and harness,  
robes, and golde and silver great plentie, and he is endu-  
ed above all other with this noble vertue of Liberalitie,  
and sir the sweetnesse and grace that is in him cannot be  
recounted, and the redoubted chivalrie that is in him is in-  
comparable, sir if there were nothing else in him it were  
sufficient inough for him to attaine thereby unto greate  
excellencie and noble dignitie, howbeit sir send for his cousin  
Pedro, who is heere within this place, and also for Coner-  
nar who is a right sage knight, and let us take their pro-  
mise to tell us the truth where Arthur was borne, and  
of

## The Historie of Arthur

of what lineage he is come, for peradventure we shall know  
know by them then by himselfe, for I am sure he will not  
praise himselfe, for I never sawe so good a knight and so lit-  
tle adventure. Then they said all with one voice, Sir this  
king saith well, then they sent for Hector and Governar.  
When the king Emendous sawe Hector, who was bigge and  
great, and well furnished in all his members, and holding  
his hand on the pummell of his sword and looked fiercelie.  
Then the king said, this knight is to be redoubted, I was  
not what he is. Then they answered and said, Sir the em-  
perours people knoweth right wel to whom he belongeth,  
Sir Iurelie Arthur and he calleth each other cousins. Then  
the king called them to him and said, Lordes we haue sent  
to speak with you, you be both faire persons and haue right  
greate semblaunce to be wise, and so we beleue verilie  
that you be, yet neuertheless we will haue your promise  
that you shall shew vs the truth of that thing that we will  
demand of you, and that for loue or promise, losse or win-  
ning to you or to any other that you haue, shall shewe no-  
thing to vs but the truth of our demand. Certainlie Sir  
we faithfullie promise you to shew you any thing that we  
can doe, so that it turne to no villanie to us nor to our Lord  
and master. Hector said, Sir the king I praye you who is your  
Lord and master? As God helpe me, Sir Arthur is our Lord.  
And what holde you of him said the king. Merilie Sir saide  
Hector, a Dutchie and an Earledome, I holde of him. That  
is a great thing said the king, and you Sir Governar what  
hold you of him. As God helpe me Sir all that ever I haue in  
this world. Then he is a great man said the king. Yes Sir  
Iurle said Hector, that he is. And of whome was he borne  
said the king, of what countrie, and of what lineage.  
Touching that you shal pardon vs, for that wil we not shew  
you without his licence, then Arthur was sent for, and as  
sone as the king sawe him all his displeasure passed away,  
then the king desired him so heartelie, that at the last he  
gave licence to Hector and to Governar to shewe the king  
what he was.

Then

## Of little Britaine.

225

Then Hector said, Sir by the assurance and promise that I  
haue made to you I shall shewe you the truth now that he  
hath giuen licence, Sir this knight Arthur is the onelie  
sonne to my Lord the noble Duke Britaine, and nephew  
to the Earle of Blois, and of the lineage of the duke of Lan-  
caster in England. By my promise sayd Governar, all that  
Hector hath saide is truth. In the name of God sayde the  
king, then he is of a sufficient gentle lignage, how saie you  
my things and piers. As God helpe me sayd the king of  
Poymall, Sir all we will counsaile you that you deliuer to  
him the honour that God hath predestinate for him, that is  
to saie, let him haue my Ladie Flozence your Daughter,  
and vnto this we be all agreed, how saie you my Lords  
doe I saie well or not. And they all answered with one  
voice, that they were all of the same accorde. And then the  
Archbishoppe was sent for, who was soone agreed to this  
purpose. Then the king saide, Lordes and friendes you  
will that I shall doe this as you be all accorded vnto, wher-  
with I am content, and if good happen to come thereof it  
shall please me right well, and it bee otherwise, the blame  
shall be to you, for you cause me thus to doe. And they all  
answered and saide that they were content to beare the  
burthen thereof. Then the Bishop said, Sir refuse not thus  
to do, for he hath ben assured to her ever since the time that  
the chaplet was giuen at Comite. What said the king, since  
it is so farre forth gone, I will then make no longer delate  
in the matter, then he called Arthur to him & sent for Flo-  
rence, and said, daughter Flozence I haue bene in commu-  
nication before this time with the Emperour to haue mar-  
ried you to him, who as at this daie I hate aboue all men  
liuing, for as now I would not that I had done so for this  
casse full of gold and silver, but now my things and piers  
of this Realme doth counsaile me to giue you in marriage  
to this knight Arthur, and if it please you I am content  
therewith, therefore shewe mee your pleasure.

Knight deere father said Flozence, he is nearer to my hart  
then ever was the Emperour, Sir I wil not refuse him, but

Ag.

am

am ready to fulfil your pleasure. When the king took a ring from his finger and sayd to Arthur, I give you Florence my daughter, and put you in full possession of hit by this ring, & of all the honour that pertaineth to hir to have during my lyfe, on the condicion that I will be king still as long as I live, and you to be king after my death, and from hence forth I put the keeping of all my realme into your handes, and I will sit still in peace now in myn old daies, and ye shall have the payne and travaile if neede requireth, and God be your guyde in all your workes. When Arthur kneled downe and took the ring. When all the other foure kinges took him up and did him honour and reverence, as to their Lord and soveraine, and Arthur took the faire lady Florence in his armes & kissed hir right sweetly, the which he never dyd till the same tyme, and that he swore on al the saints before the king, to put him out of suspect, wherof the king had great love, & so was cleane out of all doubt when that Arthur was put in possession of the Ladye Florence. Then ther began great feast and ioye, and than they went to dinner & were served right richly, and than it was published throughout all the hoast, both within the castell and without how that Arthur was ensured to the faire Ladye Florence, and accorded with the king, than in all the hoast there was made great feast and triumph for ioy, and every man sayde to other now haue we a noble and a good Lord, now let the Emperour do what he lyst, and blessed be the mother that bare this noble knight Arthur, and God save al them that ever hath given counsaile in this matter, then they al dyd send unto the king, and requyzed him that their new lord might come into the hoast to the entent that they might see him, and when the king heard their request, it pleased him right well, and commaunded that Arthur shold be apparayled in royall vestures, than Arthur was arrayed as it appertained to a Lord of such a great hoast, he had on a cote of Scarlet, and a surcoat of greene farsenet furred with menyvare, and over that a garment of silke rayed with Gold, and a longe mantell of Violet satus, and his

seemed to be as faire as an Angell descended from heauen. When the king stode before him and held in his hand Florence his daughter, who did right sweetly behold him, and the foure kinges and twelue peeres stode and beheld him, he was high and bigge, and surmounting all other in stature. When the king caused him to mount on a faire Palfraie. And when the Ladye Margaret sawe him, she sayde to Florence: Madame beholde what a manerlie man God hath sent you, he hath done moze honour for you then for any creature in all the world. When the foure kinges and twelue Peeres, and Hector, Gouvernar, Duke Philip and the master, and moze then five hundred other knightes mounted on their horses & conuaid Arthur into the hoast, and Clarence his good sword was bozne all naked before him, signifying that he was chiefe champion of al y realme. When the king caused to be cried throughout all the hoast, how that he had committed to Arthur the cure and charge of his Realme, and charged everie person that they shoulde obey him as their proper king and soueraign Lord. And as he rode throughout the hoast and passed by, everie man said welcome our new Lord, God increase thine honour, and so everie man made great ioy to beholde him. And thus the king sojourned at the Port Paire eight daies in great feast and ioye.

How Arthur demanded licence of King Emendus, father to his Ladye Florence to depart into Britaine to see the Duke of Britaine his Father, and the Dutchesse his mother, the which licence they gaue him with much paine, and Florence was in great sorrowe for his departing.

Chap. 95.



At the end of eight daies the king made to be cried that the hoast shold depart every man homeward, & commaunded them to be redie at a daies warning, & gave the gold & siluer great plentie. When Arthur came to the king & sayd, sir it is of truth that

Ec. ii.

when

When I departed out of myne owne countrey I promised to my lord my father and to my Lady my mother that if I liued I would be with them againe at the ende of .v. yeaeres at the farthest, the which shall be now at this halentide, and I know well that if I breake my promise with them, they shall neuer haue ioy, and I am sure they will beleue no manner of messenger though he be neuer so true. Therefore sir by your licence I will depart and go see them, and returne againe in as short space as is to me possible. As sir said the king take good hede what your desire is, for one thing I promise you I will neuer put on my spurs for any kinde of businesse that may hap to fall to my realme and yours, for the charge thereof is now in your handes, therefore sir doe as shall be for your honour. Sir saide Arthur as long as I liue there shall nede no feare to be had, and certainly I will tary as litle space as I may, for as God help me I would I had bene there and here againe, sir here is the king of Dageney whom I shall leaue in my stead to do every thing in myne absence that shall be nedeful to the realme. Sir I will take with me my cousin Hector, duke Philip, master Steven and sir Busebar, sir said the king take with you, whom it shall please you with you will needes goe, depart when you wil, in the name of God, who be your guyde and safeguard, and take your leaue of Florence or ye depart, then Arthur went into Florence chamber, whome he found weping, for it was shewed hir how that he wold go into his owne countrey, he was set on hir beds side, & the lady Margaret helde before hir a herchiefe to wipe with all hir eye, then Arthur embraced hir and said, mine owne dere lady wepe no more, for as God help me it greuethe my hart right soze, to see you doe thus, mine owne sweete Ladye for Gods sake be content. Ah dere heart saide Florence, now that you haue me & that I am giuen vnto you, & now you will leaue me, alas it is but a litle season that you haue helde company with me, wherefore I am right sorrowfull. Ah right dere and sweete Lady sayde Arthur, as God send me ioye and safeguard of you, there can not be to mee so great sorrow

as to leaue your noble company, therefore sweete gentle hart thinke not that I will leaue of, for sake you on whom all my hart and faithfull loue is set and fixed, and by whome I haue all my welth and honour, for I promise you as faithfully as euer any louer can promise his Lady, that as soon as I can I will returne againe to you, for I shall think till that season be come as long or longer than ye shall doe, and madame I doe it not but for the loue that I owe vnto my lord my father and mother, for I feare me that they should be in sorrow for my sake, wherefore mine owne good lady & deere heart, giue me licence to depart as for this time. Certainly dere loue, goe Florence, I can not endure to displese you, and I see well how ye be minded to go, wherefore in gods name go on when ye will, & returne againe as shortly as you can, and I require you bring hither with you my lord your father and mother, to the intent that he may see me who is and shall be his daughter. Madame saide Arthur with a right good will if I can bring him thereto, and therewith he cleped and kissed hir, the which was the second time that euer he kissed hir, then Arthur required the faire lady Margaret that she should not depart out of his ladies company. And therewith the archbishop came to them, and Arthur desired him that he would comfort & counsaile his lady Florence in his absence, and so he departed and took leue of the king and of all other, and so entred into his journey, & took with him Hector, duke Philip, the master, Gouvernar, and Busebar, and other knights, than Hector sent before them a messenger to his citty of Dagonc where as Arthur was richly receued of the countes and of the faire Lady Alys and of all the barons of that countrey, & there Arthur taried foure dayes, making great ioye, and on the fift day Arthur and his company departed and Hector with him, & so entred into their way, making great ioye as yong people should doe, for they were glad of their newe Lord Arthur, who was so sweete, yong and curteous, and of great power, and thus they rode forth so merrily singing, and the master was in a robe of sarcenet violet, & a mantel of red sendal,

and his hat in his hand because the weather was very hot, so it was in the moneth of August, and the merrie morning was faire and fresh because of the sweet dew, the larks birds did sing merrie, and the weather was faire and cleere, and this master was young, having a lustie hart and full of new loue, then he beganne merrie to sing, saying, this sweet paine of loue stayeth mine heart, and all is for you mine owne Ladie. And when Arthur heard him sing, and considered well the dittie of his song, he then perceiued well how that his heart was set on loue, the which pleased him right well, and caused him to remember his Ladie Florence, and then he said to the master, Sir did euer anie loue cause you to wake one night. Of a truth Sir saide he, that I first thought on my Ladie I was neuer so fast asleep, but that I thought my spirit and hert was with her. Sir said Wysebar, then though you sing I blame you not, for I am sure you thought on her. By the faith that I owe to God master said Duke Philip, what was the thing that gaue you occasion to loue your Ladie best for. What sayd the master, will you then confesse me, be you a Priest, I see wel you will plead with me, I must defend my selfe, I praise you good master yet shew vnto me. Well Sir saide the master, I shall shew it you. I loue her because shee is gracious and gentle of heart, for her grace and gentle hert hath retained me into her seruice, insonmuch that I quite all the world for her, for as God helpe mee I haue found in hir grace, gentlenesse, and swetnesse. Well master said Philip, yet for all this you knowe not whether that she loueth you, or beareth to you anie faith or truth. Pas true lie Sir saide the master, I knowe well shee beareth to mee both faith and loue. Well master, I praise you tell mee whether had you leaue to haue the loue of her without truth, or else truth without loue, for a woman cannot well loue mee and you and euerie bodie, and doe for you and for mee and for other, for in that point there lacketh truth when that one retheth not on him that offendeth thereby, and if shee reth on him, then her loue is not general, and euer shee loueth you

you without truth, or else shee is true without loue. What saide the master, thus without truth is nothing worth, for truth is the vpholder of loue, or faithfull loue is formed of truth, and what profite should it be for me if she were neuer so true and loued me not, the one cannot bee without the other, what should it auaille me to go sake for her truth and she loue me not, for loue is the drawer, and truth is the vpholder, for truth is the verie ende of loue, and therewith he began to sing, faith and truth is in my dere Ladie, and so they all did laugh at him and made greatesse feast and ioye.

How Arthur in the waie as he went to Britaine he arrived in a faire medowe that was ioyning to the towne of Lyons sur le Rone, and there hee found the King of Malogore, accompanied with diuerse Earles and other Barons, and they had there cried a great tourney, and there Arthur and his company were friendlie receiued, and had great cheere both of the king and of all other Lords & knights. Chap. 95.

In this manner as you haue heard before Arthur and his company rode forth till they came within foure miles of Lyons, and then they sent Baldeuine in before to take by their lodging, and as he approached nere to the towne of Lyons he sawe the faire medowe the which was betwene Vienna and Lyons right full of tents and pavilions, and swarming full of knights and horses, and at last Baldeuine espied the pavilion of his old Lord & master the young King of Malogore, who did put him to Arthur, & there was the Earle of Forrest and the Earle of Peuers, and the Earle of Foys and the Marshall of Myrpoys, and the Lord of Beaulieu and the dolphin of Viennne, and a great number of other people, for they hadde holden a great turney & daie before, and the same daie the king had al these noble men at

dinner with him in his Pavilion, and in the next daye they  
 should depart, and when that Baldeuwin sawe the Pavilion  
 of his olde Lord the young king of Malagoe, he dressed  
 himself the next waie thither, and without the Pavilion  
 doo so made the Lord de la Lounde, and with him ten other  
 knightes, and all they behelde Baldeuwin as he came com-  
 ming, and each of them said to other, What is he that com-  
 meth so rudely, or from whence commeth he, I cannot tell  
 said ano'her, but it seemeth hee hath batt, and quet Balde-  
 win approached nearer & nearer. And at last sir de la Lounde  
 said, verilie me thinketh it should be Baldeuwin my Lord  
 the kings Squier. Verilie said another and so it is in deed.  
 When Baldeuwin alighted from his horse. And when sir  
 de la Lounde sawe verilie how it was he, as fast as he could  
 he ranne and embraced him and made to him great ioy and  
 feast, and knightes then of all partes of the field beganne to  
 assemble there, till at last tidings came to Alexander the  
 young king how that his olde servant and squier Balde-  
 win was come, then he commaunded that hee should be  
 brought to him, and so he was, and when he was before the  
 king he kneeled down and saluted the king. Then the king  
 said, friend thou art welcome, and how hast thou done sith  
 thy departing. Certainlie sir saide he, right well, for a man  
 cannot be in the companie of such a knight as I have bene  
 withall that can fare amisse. In the name of God saide the  
 king, and how fareth that noble knight Arthur. Sir perily  
 he doth as the best renowned and praised knight of all the  
 wide world, and the most honoured, and most hath done of  
 deedes of valure and of prowesse I being present, and there  
 recounted many of his doings, wherof the king & all other  
 hadde greates meruaile, and mozeouer sir saide, Baldeuwin  
 I saie that hee is at this houre the man of greatest pow-  
 er that I knowe now living, for hee shall be the noble  
 king of Borsolis, for he hath assured the faire Lady  
 Florence, Daughter and heire to the mightie king  
 Gormendous of Borsolis, who hath under his rule four migh-  
 tie kings and twelue yeeres in his Realme, and they be all

as he hath assured their land of him, and so he  
 By my soule saide the king, this is a greates thing that you  
 speake of, a friend wher is he now at this present time, or  
 wher did you leaue him. Sir behold yonder you may see him  
 coming home ward into his owne Countrie. Sir I must  
 goe before into Lyons to take up his lodging. What doe  
 they that come with him quoth the king. Sir ther is with  
 him a noble Clarke who is called master Steuen, and he is  
 sonne to a King, and also the Duke of Sabarie named Sir  
 Philip, and sir Hector Duke of Orgoule, sir Wysebar & Co-  
 tarmar, with other forty knightes of greates valure. In the  
 name of God saide the king, he hath in these parts none  
 other to guard but onlie mine. Then he commaunded all the  
 Castles and strong about him to mount on their horses,  
 and commaunded to bring him his owne horse, for he saide  
 plainlie he would goe meete Arthur on the waie. Sir saide  
 Baldeuwin, you saie right well, and doe noblie to him that  
 honour, for he truely doeth you entrelle, and I assure  
 you he is a man of right greates valure. And when the Lord  
 de la Lounde heard these tidings of Arthur he hadde right  
 great ioy and ranne to the Ladie his wife and to the Ladie  
 Kofflon, and to all the other Ladies and Damselfs, and re-  
 counted to them the coming of Arthur, & reported of his  
 deindeaultie and honour as he had heard Baldeuwin say be-  
 fore, and also he shewed them how that the king and all the  
 whole assemble were taking of their horses to ride to meet  
 with him on the waie. And when these Ladies heard all  
 this they were in great ioy because of his coming. Then  
 the Ladie of Kofflon saide, I am well then that the crow-  
 ning that he doeth you wher we saie him last is well be-  
 folowed and wished whithin us, it is a greates honour to be  
 sith he hath borne him so valuntie euer since, therefore let  
 us also goe and meete with him and bidde him welcome,  
 and doe him all the honour that we canne. In the name of  
 God saide all the other Ladies, and so let it be done, then they  
 apparailled them with roiall besturres, and by that time the  
 king and all his Councill and other companye were thoun-

ted on their horses, and the Ladies and Gentlewomen  
so rode forth together in company. When Arthur was far-  
red his horse so fast as he could, to bring these strangers to  
Arthur. And when Gouverneur came, which was in retourne  
again to fall, he said to Hector, Sir, I have been turneth a-  
gaine, what it meaneth I know not. And when he was  
come againe unto Arthur he said, Sir behold yonder com-  
meth the young King of Palegoz and the Earle of Joye,  
and the earle of Forrest and the Earle of Pauers, the Lord  
of Beauieu, and the Lord de la Lande, the marshall of  
Pyppoys, and the Dolphin of Wienn, and all their Ladies,  
with them, and they are coming to meet with you to wel-  
come you into this country, and more then a thousand hor-  
ses in their companies, and the King will not suffer you that  
have any other lodging but with him. And when Arthur  
heard this he had right great ioye and said, A good Lord I  
thank your grace that you haue giuen me so many honours,  
then he saide to the master and to Duke Philip, Sirs, hold  
you nere me, and so they did; and then he said to them  
Certainlie Sirs you shall see here people of a noble beha-  
uiour and honour, and well ordered, and so they rode forth  
saire and easilie till both parties approached nere together,  
and as soone as Arthur saw the King and his Barons, and  
speciallie the fresh Ladies and Damelles, and all his dis-  
alight from their horses, and in like manner did the King  
and all his companie, and there they mette and embraced  
each other with much great ioye and triumph, and Hector  
and Gouverneur were much made of because of their olde  
acquaintance amongst them. When Arthur went to the La-  
dies, he would not haue suffered them to have alighted from  
their horses, but the Ladie Margery did whether he would  
or not, and she ranne to him and embraced him right sweet-  
lie, what shall I saie more all the whole assembly were in  
great ioye because of the coming of Arthur. And when  
Duke Philip and the master saw the great feast and ho-  
nour that was done to him, both of the King and of all other  
Carles and Barons, knights, and squiers, Ladies and Dams-  
ells,

tells, then in their harts they praised Arthur more, the they  
did before. When Bishar said, this Gentleman is so well  
in no Diphane in his stone Country, he needeth not to care  
for the Emperour if these people will helpe and aide him, a-  
gloze I see well you be well assured, would to God with  
a will that you were now here present that you might  
see this ioy. And this King bett still Arthur by the hand and  
demanded of him what knights the master and Duke  
Philip were. And he answered and said, Sir this is a soue-  
raigne Clarke, a knight, and a Duke, and sonne to a King,  
right noble and puissant, and Sir this other is Duke of Sa-  
batiere, a right noble and valiant knight, then the King  
toke them by the handes and said, Lords you be right hear-  
telie welcome into this Country, and to you Sirs we will  
make feast and ioy, as for Arthur wee care not for, let him  
make himselfe chere and be left. When they mounted on  
their horses and rode forth toward the Tents in the field,  
and the King would haue hadde them to haue ridden befoze  
him, to the intent to doe them the more honour thereby, but  
then the master said, Sir for gods sake pardon vs, for we be  
seruants to my Lord Arthur here present, for we hold of him,  
therefore Sir by your licence we will not ride befoze him.  
Sirs quoth the King, as in that you shal beare him honour,  
therefore by the faith that I owe unto you you shal ride on  
befoze, so then they went forth befoze, and the Carle of Joye,  
rest, and the Carle of Joye, and the Carle of Pauers were  
with Arthur, and Hector and Gouverneur were with the Dol-  
phin of Wienn and the marshall of Pyppoys, and in this  
manner they came to the Kings Tent, and there they wash  
their handes and went to dinner, then the King late downe  
in the high chamber, and commanded Arthur, the master,  
and Duke Philip to sit downe by him, and all other, ac-  
cording to their estates, and there they were right com-  
fortable. When the Ladies sent a present to Arthur of fresh Chap-  
lottes, to the intent that he should give them to his  
Ladies, and then the Ladies did give them to  
the King, and to the master, and to Duke Philip,  
and

# The History of Arthur

and all other Ladies and Knights when they had  
 done, then the King and all the Lords and Knights  
 Ladies and said, Sir, all the world are with you, and  
 Damells send to their companies, and say to you, and to  
 him that they once crowned King of all Britain, that were  
 gathered together at that time, and they all before you, that  
 you will come with them, and to spend some time with them, and  
 so King in your company, to be with them, and so you will best.

So then the King, the master, Duke Philip, and all other  
 Charles and great Barons went together, and there they  
 were received with great love and feast, then these Ladies  
 began to dance and to sing with the Lords and knights.  
 And at the last the King said to a master, Steven, A gentle  
 master why do you not please and sport you among these la-  
 dies and Damells, be they not indifferent faire, gentle, and  
 noble. King said the master by my soule they are gentle, no-  
 ble, and beautifull, but sir with sporting among them I can  
 not be still. The master said the King, what please then wil  
 you sport you withal. The King said Duke Philip, he can  
 bring goodly games if he would be them, for there is not in  
 all the world his match. A gentle master said the King, by  
 the faith that you owe unto Arthur, I require you shew us  
 some of your sports and pastimes. Master quoth Arthur, I  
 pray you be so. And then the master said it pleaseth you I  
 will shew you. Then with his aduise the master caused in the  
 middle of the hall to be a fountaine to appeare,  
 and in the highest thereof there stood a house of Crystall, and  
 out of the top thereof there flowed out streames of  
 sweete and chaste water, and that house stood quaking, see-  
 ming to be quicke, and round about the fountaine there  
 grew many faire green bushes, and faire green hilles co-  
 vered with white flowers, and there were many other  
 faire flowers great plenty, and in every manner of birdes  
 singing merrily, and so all the Ladies and Damelles  
 that were there left their dancing and singing, and all made  
 their hands at that fountaine, and made chaplains of  
 the fountaine, and they saw there great joy, and heard

# Of little Britaine.

ned to the sweete harmonie of the Birdes, and they hadde  
 great meruaile what it might be, or from whence it might  
 come so so dauntie, and all the Lords and Knights were  
 greatly abashed with that sight. When the master caused  
 to be coming into the hall two hundred varlets, dressed  
 all in coates of scarlet, paleed with greene, and two hun-  
 dred Trumpets sounding all at once, then the knights  
 and Ladies beheld what it might meane. And at last they  
 entered into the hall, and after them by seeming there came  
 a clarke right faire and gracious, and he had on a robe of scar-  
 let lined with greene scodall, and his cappe in his hand, and  
 this Clarke had standing by him a fresh greene batherne  
 full of faire blossomes right sweete smelling, and in the high-  
 est of this tree there was one bough that surmounted all  
 the other, whereon there sat a Nightingale, the most faire  
 and gracious of all the world and best singing, then she lift  
 up her head and filled her throat full of winde, the more  
 to tune out her sweete voice, her singing pleased so  
 well all the Ladies, that each of them, wished to haue her in  
 a cage. When the King and Arthur arose and went neere to  
 this Lady, then the Lady marshall put by her hand, to the  
 intent to haue taken the Nightingale, but she could not at-  
 taine thereto, then the Clarke that kept the batherne said:  
 madame and if you will haue my birde, peradventure you  
 shall haue her and if you be such as ought to haue her, for if  
 it be so that you or any other Lady here in this companie  
 did neuer trespass in marriage, neither by thought nor  
 deed, such a one may take her at her owne will, but and if  
 they haue done any fault let them not offer to haue her, for  
 they shall faile of her. And when the King heard this, he laugh-  
 ed a good pace, and said, let us see who will enterprise to haue  
 this collic birde, and then every man was agreed that all  
 the Countesses should assaie each after other, then the Lady  
 marshall thought to haue departed a while priuely, but then  
 the Clarke called to her againe and said, madame you were  
 the first right now that would haue taken my birde, and so  
 shall you be againe now at this time, therefore madame  
 come

## The Historie of Arthur

came forth, and asked what you can doe, then the king called her to assay whether she would or not, and then she put up her hand, but she could not attaine thereto by two cubites of length. And when the Ladie Kosclyn sawe that, then she said, madame this bird teacheth us to speake of our side wo; for now it appeareth if you haue bene alwayes in your prayers or not, once you said wo; to me the which you know not, but now I saie to you such as I be, then the Countesse and great Ladies went one after another but all they failed of their purpose. And at the end the king caused the Ladie Kosclyn to assay, and as soone as she did put up her hand toward the bird, the gentle Pightingale did descend downe and satte vpon her hand, and yet this was not to her very great praise, for she had not bene long married. Then the Carles did laugh at their wines, but yet some of them were not verie well content. Then the master caused suddenly all this to vanish awaye both Clarke and tree, bird and all, then euery man marvelled what this might be, and they thought that they had dreamed all this, and the king smiled at this matter, and went and satte downe together the king and Arthur and the master, & all the other Lords. When the king said, as God helpe mee I would it had cost me the halfe part of my Realme, so that this master were alwayes in my companie, and that he loued me as well as he doth Arthur. He saide Arthur, hee hath right well shewed to me that he loveth mee, for Sir Arth I departed from you I haue had warre with seven kings and an Emperour, and now this Emperour will come againe nowe at this next Easter to make warre with the mightie king of Morolops, for the assistance is made betwene both parties, wherefore I must returne haine as swiftly as I came. Why Sir saide the king, shall you then haue warre the next Easter? Pea surelie Sir, for it is tooke and cryed on both parties. And when shall you wedde this Florence of whome I haue heard so much speaking of? Sir saide Arthur, if God will giue the honour of this warre I shall wedde her incontinently after. By Saint John saide the king,

## Of little Britaine.

232

I would I were at that maner at the date of your wedding. Why Sir saide the Dolphin, and you would so, then goe thether. Why Sir saide the king, if I goe will you goe also. Pea Sir with all my heart, and that I faithfully assure you: Well said the king, keepe your promise, and I assure you that I will go with five hundred men of armes with mee. And without me shall you not goe saide the Earle of Foze. Promise that faithfully quoth the king, and as much saide the Earle of Beuers, and so farre went this matter that the earle of Mount Bellall, and the Earle of Foys, and the Lord of Beapieu, and the marshall of Myrpois promised all together that each of them would goe with two hundred in their companie, and ther appointed againe to meet in the same place in the middes of lent. When Arthur thanked them and said, Sirs I trust at the said day to be here againe with you, and bring with me my deere father and mother, and so then we will departe together. And when these Ladies heard howe that Arthur would bring thether the Dutche his mother, then they all desired of their husbands that they might goe with the Dutche when she were come, and the king was well content therewith, and desired the Carles and Barons that it might be so. And so at the last it was agreed and accorded that they should all go together. Thus was Arthur and his company three daies with the king and with these Carles in greatesseast and joy.

How Arthur & Hector his cosin with all their companie arrived at Bloys, and how the Earle of Bloys father to Hector, & the Countesse his mother, & all the whole Barons of the Realme met them on the waie, and reueined them with great ioy, for they had bene before in great feare that Arthur their nephew and Hector their sonne had bene dead. Chap. 96.

On the fourth day Arthur and his companie toke leave of the king, and of the Carles & Barons, ladies & damiels, and

and took his right hand to vouchsafe the same of Camelot, then Arthur sent Jakes his squire before to Blois to give the Carle knowledge how that Arthur his nephew & Hector his sonne would be with him the Sunday next following, then Jakes departed and mounted first to Willelmus, and there he found the Carle of Blois, who was right sorrowfull in his heart because he could perceive no tidings of Hector his sonne, wherefore he was in great doubt least that he should have bene dead, then Jakes notified by into the hall where as the Carle was, and as soon as he sawe Jakes he arose and embraced him, and demanded of him how Arthur and Hector his sonne did, As God helpe me sir said Jakes, they doe humble salute you by me, and sendeth you worde how that they will bee with you this Sunday next coming, whole and in good health thanked be God, as great Lordes and puissant, for sir I sale unto you how that Hector your sonne is Carle of Wyle and Duke of Aquitaine, and is right rich and puissant. Then Jakes sayd the Carle, and who hath given him this honour. Sir by the mochen of God my Lord Arthur who did conquere it with his sword, as he that is the best knight of all the world. A good Lord sayd the Carle, I humbly thanke your grace, with that my childe is so well provided, then the Carle did send a messenger to all his friends, giving them knowledge how that his sonne was returning homeward, who was right puissant and noble, commaunding them for love to hang the Armes of the towne. And as soon as the Countesse heard of these tidings, she mounted up into her Chariot and came to Willelmus to the meeting of her sonne, and so the Carle and all his companie did meete Arthur & Hector, and their companie at Clerie, and there receiued them with great ioy, then all the noble men of the Countrie came thither to see Arthur and Hector, and so altogether they went to Blois, and there they sojourned eight daies making great feast and ioy.

How

How Arthur arived in Britaine, and how the Duke his father and all his chivalrie met & receiued Arthur with great honour and triumph, and how that the Dutchesse his mother swoned for ioy when she sawe her sonne Arthur, and in like manner did Ichannet his olde loue, whereof the master and Philip had great feare least that Ichannet should draw awaie Arthurs heart from Florence, because of the great loue that they sawe betweene them.

Chap. 97.

**A**t the ende of eight daies Arthur called to him Jakes and said, friend you must goe to my Lord and father, and to my Ladie my mother, and to Ichannet, and salute mee right humble unto them, and shew them how that I will be with them the fifteenth daie after Saint Martine, and shew also to my Lord & father how that there cometh in my companie a kings sonne and a Duke right mightie and puissant, then saide that I desire him to send for part of his friends to keepe them companie when they shall be come to him. Sir saide Jakes I shall doe your message in the best wile, for he was gladd to goe. When Governar saide, Jakes I praie you let me be humble recommended to my Lord and to my Ladie, and to Ichannet. It shall be done sir said Jakes, and so departed, and rode so long till at last he came to Mauntes on a friday at night, and there he demanded tidings of the Duke, and there it was shewed him how that the Duke and the Dutchesse were departed to the Castle of the Forrest, and from thence they should depart to the Abbey of Jannebon, and then they shall come to the Citie of Wrennes, and there to sojourn till it be neere Christmasse, & then to come againe to Mauntes, whereas they will keepe open Court, for he hath summoned all his Barons to be there at Christmasse with him. So then Jakes tarried there all that night at Mauntes, & in the morning he departed and went to Wrennes.

nes, whereas he found the Duke and the Dutchesse, & they were as then looking out at the windowes of the pallace, and ther they talked together of diuerse matters, till at the last the Dutchesse began to wepe, then the Duke demanded of her why she wept so sore. Why sir said she, alas be- hold the great noblenesse of this countrie and the faire so- rest that be therein, and the valure and bountie of the lustie Countrie of Britaine, alas sir who shall kepe and obtain this Countrie after vs, sith that Arthur our deare sonne is dead, and sir we shall neuer haue moze children together, alas sir when I remember all this my heart dieth in my bodie so: so:row. Dead madame saide the Duke, and God will, so: if that were true we shuld haue great neede of com- fort, but yet I haue trust in God that he shall lend vs joy of our child, and to haue shortly some good tidings of him, it is not yet fullie six yeare sith his departing, and withur that tearme his promise was to come againe, wherefore madam, I praye you wepe no more, so: it grieueth me to see you doe thus, and as they were thus talking together, Jakes came into the pallace and entered into the hall, and as sone as the knightes and souldiers sawe Jakes they embraced him and demanded how that Arthur did. And he answered, how that they did right well, & was coming home ward, then Jakes mounted by into the chamber, & there he found the duke and the dutchesse together, and the dutchesse espied him first and ranne to him and said: a my friend how doth Arthur my sonne? Madame he humbly salutedh you & also my Lord here present, and also Jehannet. What Arthur my sonne, friend said the Duke, and where is hee? Sir hee will be here with you by the ende of these six daies. And how doth he said the Duke, sir as the most honoured no- ble knight best moued that is now liuing in this world, so: vnder the heauen there is no knight of his valure and high prowesse, and sir he hath giuen to his cosin an Earldome and a Dutchie right great and noble, he is now twice as rich as the Carlo his father is, And Jakes quoth the Duke, wher hath he gotten this land, & who hath giuen

to him? Madam hee helpe me Arthur did giue it him, and he hath it ballantle with his sword, but sir this deede is nothing to the regard of a thousand deels that he hath done sith he departed. When the duke smiled & ioyned his hands together and lift up his eyes to heauen and thanked God. And the dutchesse wept for joy, and so did Jehannet also. When the duke said, Jakes, & who commeth with my sonne Arthur? Sir then commeth with him a Clarke of great wis- dome, and is chiefe counsaillour with the faire quene Flo- rence, and he is sonne to a king right mightie and puissant, & also there is with him a mightie duke who is called duke Phillip of Sabarie, and diuerse other noble knights to the number of thortie. Why friend Jakes said the duke, is Ar- thur then so much honoured, that the soune of a king and a duke, and so noble a companie commeth with him. Verilie your sonne is in this case that ere this yeare goeth out, hee shall be crowned king of a puissant Realme. A good Lorde said the dutchesse, I render to you grace & thanks sith you haue giuen vs such a childe, of whome is repoyted so much honour. Well quoth the duke, madam mount by into your Chariot and let vs goe to Dauntes and meete him there, so then they departed and went from Viennes and came to Dauntes in an euening late, and Arthur and his company rode so til they came to Samur, and entered into the Abbey of saint Florence, and there he lodged all that night, & was wel receiued and honestlie, and in the morning Arthur sent a messenger to his father, giuing him knowledge how that he woulde bee with him at Dauntes on the sundaie next coming. And when the duke heard that, hee saide to the dutchesse his wife, madam let vs go & meet our sonne & this noble companie that commeth with him, so: I haue greater desire to see him the al y world, & then by y time all y dukes friends, louers, subjects, wer come to him to the number of sixe hundred, then they al together moued on their horses. And Jehannet was in y chaire with the dutchesse, & so they rode south & within iii. leagues thence they met w Arthur & all his company, & as sone as Arthur saw his father he did

might and men of his house, and in lykewise did his father to him, and then they embraced and kissed each other oftentimes. When the duke saide, my sweete friend & dere childe ye be right hartely welcome to me, as heretofore hath bene more desired with me than all the creatures living. I wote sonne how could ye ever have the heart thus to love your mother who hath ben so dolorous for your absence that she hath wept ever since your departing, and as the Duke ended these wordes his mother came to him and embraced & kissed him, but she was so overcome with joy, that she could speake no word of a great season; but so they sat down together, and when she might speake she saide, my sweete and dere childe ye have long holden us in darknesse, for never sith ye departed my hart was in any ioye, but now I wote hart my ioye is increased that I may have you in myne armes, and there with she kissed him and wept right pitiously for ioye, so that Arthur could no longer kepe his heart and even from weeping, the which he did never beforesith he came out of his childehode, nor never after did for no manner of trouble that came to him. And when that duke Philip saw the pitifull and ioyfull meeting betwen the child and the mother and father, and saw how that they wept, for all the golde of the world he could not kepe him selfe but that his eyes were full of drops of water, then came to them Jehanmet and cleped and kissed Arthur right tenderly and sayde, a my louer Arthur ye be hartely welcome unto me, sir ye left me right sorrowful when ye departed last out of this countrey, but my sweete lady your dere mother hath kept me right tenderly for the love of you, and oftentimes we have wept together our fill for the love of you, a mine owne sweete love I understand that god hath given you a better and a more gentiller lady than I am. Sir all this agreeth with me right well, for sir I have right great ioye of your well.

Safe I offer mee to serve you and to love you with a good and faithfull heart, for ye are my lord and I am your daughter, and therewith as one overcome with sorrow, she wept

wept right tenderly & took Arthur in his armes. And when Arthur sawe hir so wepe he could not kepe his eyes from distilling of salte teares for hir sake, for he loved so the damozell that he was soze tempted to have repented him in that he had sinned Florence. And when the maister saw the great love of the father and the mother & their childe, & of Jehanmet, he saide to Philip, sir I doubt me of these people lest they withdraw away from Florence Arthurs hart, and I pray you behold and see how they love him, saw you ever so much honour done to any creature living. Here not good Philip, he hath brought me into this countrey, I warrant you he shal depart againe & returne into ours. When the Duchesse and Arthur rose uppon their feete, then all the noble men of that countrey came about him and made him as great feast and ioye as they could, then the Duke went to the maister and to duke Philip and received them with great honour, and so they all mounted and went to Nantes, and there then all the burgeses of the citie issued out all in one suite and linerie and met with them. And also the bishop of the town and all the whole clergie encountered them and made great ioye and generally so dyd all those of the citie. When the duke made great honour unto duke Philip and unto the maister. And when they were alighted from their horses, then they mounted up into the palays where as they made great feast and ioy the space of xv. dayes, and then every man departed. When Arthur sayde to the duke his father, and present there was the maister, duke Philip and the duchesse, sir Oliver of prync, & divers other barons, there he recounted all his fortune, and howe that he had sinned Florence, & how that the warre was begon & taken betwene him and the Emperour of Inde, and how that all this war was layde on his hand and charge, and therefore he prayed the duke his father that he wold go with him into the countrey of Sopolys, to the intent to help him. When the duke saide, sonne Arthur with a right good will, and I shall bring with me all my strength with banners displayed, and than if we may finde this emperour we shall take him

him what these Wiltons can do. And when þe master heard that, he smiled and embraced the Duke and saide, Sir you haue noble aunf wored without anie counsaile, it seemeth well you are the father and he the sonne, Sir by the faith that we owe vnto God yes, shall keepe you good companie. Then the Duke sent all about for his strength. And in the meane season Arthur lead the master, Duke Philip, sir Bzisebar, and all the other knightes of Dozoloys in all the Townes and Cities of his Countrie, and thus they passed the time till it was neere Lent, and then they resoured againe to Pauntes, whereas they found all their host readie apparailled to depart. Then Arthur toke of them ten thousand after his owne choice, and all the remnaunt he sent home againe to keepe the Countrie in sauegard in the Dukes absence, and they sojourned foure daies at Pauntes, and so departed and tooke the high waie to Lyons, and sir Oliuer, Gouvernar, and Bzisebar had the conueiaunce of the host, and the duke, Arthur, Hector, the master and Philip tooke their waie straight to Paris to take leaue of the king of Fraunce, who receined them with great ioye and honour, for he loued the Duke entirelie, and the king made great cheere to the master and to Duke Philip, the master praised much the noblenesse of Fraunce, thus they were foure daies with the king, and then they departed and the dutchesse with them, and toke their leaue of the king, then the king said to the Duke, sir if you lacke men of war, you shall haue part of my strength, then the Duke thanked him and said, I trust we haue people sufficient, so they departed and rode so long on their iourney till they came to Lyons on a wednes daie in the morning, and there they found Gouvernar, Bzisebar, and sir Oliuer, who hadde made readie for their lodgings, and then the king of Malogoye and all his Carles and Barons were assembled together, and were lodged about Wienn, and when they knewe that Arthur was coming, they mounted on their horses and met with him, and they all made greafe honour to the Duke of Britaine, and the Ladies receiued the Dutchesse right honoura.

honourable, and so they rode sooth together, and then the young King ranne to the master and embraced him in his armes, for he loued him well because of his meruailous cunning, then they came to the Pavillions and there alighted, and the dukes Pavillion was pight vp right richlie, and there they sojourned foure daies in great ioye, and the king desired the master that he wold shew as then some pastime among that companie, then the kinges Squier were afoze him ready to doe seruice. Then the master caused each of them to thinke either without anie head, and each of them beheld other, and were greatly abashed, and had great meruaile where their fellows heades were become, then they looked on the earth whether they were fallen downe to the ground, and therewith they sought each others head all about the house, and the king & all the whole assemblie had right great sport thereat. Then on the fourth daie they all departed and toke their right waie to the Port Poire, Gouvernar, Bzisebar, and sir Oliuer did guide soth the host, and Arthur sent Bawdelwin his Squier before to the port Poire to apparell and garnish the castle, and to drawe thether all this garrisons, this noble companie rode so long til they came but a daies iourney from the Castle of the Port Poire. Now let vs leaue speaking of them for this time, and returne to Florence.

How after that Arthur was departed from king Emenus and Florence to go see his friends, Florence then departed from the Port Noire, & the Queene of Orquenie & the Ladie Margaret of Argenton with her, and went to sport her in her owne Realme and castle of the cleere Tower, whereas the Emperour came & besiged hir, for ere she was ware therof he and his company were layd round about the Towne, and they were to the number of two hundred thousand, what of Emperines and of Sarasins.



It is truth that when arthur was departed from the Port Poire to goe into Fraunce and into Britaine for to see his friends, then Florence and the Queene of Dagenie and the Ladie Margaret, were of accord that they would not go with King Emendus into the Realme of Soroloy, but they were determined to goe to the cleere towre, and there to abide till the returning of Arthur, whereas they might euerie daie priuie talke each vnto other of their loues, so then Florence toke her leaue of the King her father, and so departed, and toke with her the Queene of Dagenie and the ladie Margaret, and fortie other knights with them, and so they traualled till they arriued at the cleere Towre, and there they were in great sport and ioy, but it is oftentimes said, he that hath an ill neighbour hath oftentimes an ill morning, for as sone as Florence was come

come to the cleere Towre, and that it was knowen that she would abide ther a good space, sir Verdicas prouided for all things that was necessarie for the place, then a spie went to the Emperour of Inde and said: Sir, Florence is now at the cleere Towre, and you may now and you will soone haue her, for she is come thither priuie, and but with a small companie. And when the Emperour heard that, he sent incontinentlie for as much people as he coulde get betwene him and Babylon, and he assembled there together as much people that all the Countrey was ouer spread with them, and Florence knew nothing of all this till the time that the Emperour had besieged her round about with more then two hundred thousand men, and when she sawe that she was in that case, she was right sorrowfull & wept pitifully euerie daie more and more, for she sawe well she could not send out for anie succour to anie bodie, there was such watch made all about the place, then she bewailed Arthur and sayde, O Arthur sweete friende, you are ouerlong from this businesse, certainlie if you leaue me you shall leaue your true louer, a deere loue I am yours, & now you know nothing in what mischiefe I am, for now your louer is in great perill, thus Florence made the greatest lamentation of the world, and her people did comfort her in the best wise that they might. Now let vs leaue speaking of Florence, and returne to Arthur.

How Arthur was right sorrowfull because that his horse did stumble vnder him, and how the master shewed him that Florence was besieged by the Emperour in the castle of the cleere Tower, where of Arthur was in great feare and trouble, Cap. 99.

When the Emperour & all his host were with in a league of the Port Poire, Arthur and the Duke his father, and the King, and the master, rose each by other talking of diuerse matters, sodainlie Arthurs horse founed vnder him

Wh. v.

and

and fell grouweling to the earth, but Arthur held him still in the saddle till the horse and he rose both again to gither, and from thence forth Arthur was as great a studie that no man could haue a word of him but with great paine, and in this maner he endured a great season. When the king began to reason with him but he could skant haue any word of him, than the King and duke Phillip called to them the maister and saide, sir what ayleth Arthur for with his horse stumbled he would neuer speke no word by his will, we maruaile what he ayleth. Wel saide the maister go to him and demaund of him the question, than they rode to him, & the king rode on the one side and duke Phillip on the other side and the maister before him, than the maister all laughing began to sing melodiously, and the king and duke Phillip did laugh at him, and Arthur euer rode forth as though he had bene halfe a slepe, and with the sport that they made he lift vp his eyen, and when he sawe them about him making such sport a little he smyled. When the maister sayde to him, sir what chere is with you, what sport make ye to my Lord the king here present who is come hither for your loue, sir now ye be come into your owne Realme and into your owne power, and sir these Lordes haue forsaken their owne countries to come hither with you.

When he answered and saide, gentill maister pardon me, for I know wel ye say but trouth, but sye I ensure you euer syth my horse fell vnder mee my heart hath bene so heauy, that I can in no wyse make any good cheere, I can not tell what it meaneth, I pray to God all be for the best, I doubt me greatly of my Lord the king of Byzoloy, or els of my Lady Florence least that this Emperour hath done to them any tribulation. Sir said duke Phillip doubt not that, for if it were so ye may be sure my lord & I would soone haue sent messengers to you, therefore make good chere and reioyce your barons and such noble men as be come hether for the loue of you, and namely this great host who hath so farre trauayled for your sake.

As there friend duke Phillip saide Arthur, I require you

you make you then good chere and semblaunce, and so then the King and Arthur, the maister, and duke Phillip rode forth together throughout all the host, and comforted their people as well as they might, then they arriued at the Port Poire, and mounted vp into the Pallace, and all the host was lodged without in the field, & all the Ladies and damells that came thether with them meruailously beheld the strength and situation of that place, and reputed in theyr mindes greate noblenesse and valure in Arthur for the atchining and conquering of that place. When the maister did deuise to them all the aduentures that were in that place. When the dutchesse, mother to Arthur had right great ioy. When the maister lead them to the garden to see it, and when they saw the place so faire and so delectable, they wished neuer to depart thence. So then these ladies went and rested them at the Fountaine, and Arthur and the King, Hector, and all the other Earles, and the Lord Beauiou, were all together in companie, but Arthur was still in melancholie. When the maister went into his owne chamber to loke his booke to knowe what was the cause that Arthur was so sad, then anone he perceiued by his booke and cunning what perill that Florence was in, and howe the Emperour had besieged her round about, then incontinentlie he went to Arthur and said, Sir the matter goeth ill to worke, for this Emperour hath besieged Florence in her Castle of Clere tower with a greate number of people, so my Lady is in great perill without some remedie be soone found for her, she weepeth right pittiouslie, and maketh the greatest lamentation of the worlde, she crieth out on Fortune and saith, alas now haue I all lost, I was borne in an unhappie houre, a gentle heart Arthur, God that formed all things of nought kepe and defend you from all euil incombrance and giue you honour, for as for me I am in great danger, Fortune shame haue thou, for thou hast done me many troubles, alas my sweet loue is farre from mee, and mine enemy hath approached neere mee, my loue is absent, and him that I hate is too neere my presence, alas

## The Historie of Arthur

and fell groueling to the earth, but Arthur held him still in the saddle till the horse and he rose both again together, and from thence forth Arthur was in so great a studie that no man could haue a word of him but with great paine, and in this maner he endured a great season. When the king began to reason with him but he could skant haue any word of him, than the king and duke Phillip called to them the maister and saide, sir what ayleth Arthur for with his horse stumbled he would neuer speke no word by his will, we maruaile what he ayleth. Wel saide the maister go to him and demaund of him the question, than they rode to him, & the king rode on the one side and duke Phillip on the other side and the maister before him, than the maister all laughing began to sing melodiously, and the king and duke Phillip did laugh at him, and Arthur euer rode forth as though he had bene halfe a slepe, and with the sport that they made he lift vp his eyes, and when he sawe them about him making such sport a little he smiled. When the maister sayde to him, sir what chere is with you, what sport make ye to my Lord the king here present who is come hither for your loue, sir now ye be come into your owne Realme and into your owne polver, and sir these Lordes haue forsaken their owne countries to come hither with you.

When he answered and saide, gentill maister pardon me, for I know wel ye say but trouth, but for I ensure you euer with my horse fell vnder mee my heart hath bene so heauy, that I can in no wise make any good cheere, I can not tell what it meaneth, I pray to God all be for the best, I doubt me greatly of my Lord the king of Byzoloy, or ells of my Lady Florence least that this Emperour hath done to them any tribulacion. Sir said duke Phillip doubt not that, for if it were so ye may be sure my lord & vnkne would soone haue sent messengers to you, therefore make god chere and reioyce your barons and such noble men as be come hether for the loue of you, and namely this great host who hath so farre trauayled for your sake.

As deere friend duke Phillip saide Arthur, I require you

## Of little Britaine.

238

you make you then god chere and semblaunce, and so then the king and Arthur, the maister, and duke Phillip rode forth together throughout all the host, and comforted their people as well as they might, then they arriued at the Port Poire, and mounted vp into the Wallace, and all the host was lodged without in the field, & all the Ladies and dam-sells that came thether with them meruailouslie beheld the strength and scituation of that place, and reputed in theyr mindes greate noblenesse and valure in Arthur for the achieving and conquering of that place. When the maister deuise to them all the aduentures that were in that place. When the dutchesse, mother to Arthur had right great ioy, and then the maister lead them to the garden to see it, and when they saw the place so faire and so belectable, they wished neuer to depart thence. So then these ladies went and rested them at the Fountaine, and Arthur and the king, Hector, and all the other Earles, and the Lord Beauieu, were all together in companie, but Arthur was still in melancholie. When the maister went into his owne chamber to loke his booke to knowe what was the cause that Arthur was so sad, then anone he perceiued by his booke and cunning what perill that Florence was in, and howe the Emperour had besieged her round about, then incontinentlie he went to Arthur and said, Sir the matter goeth ill to worke, for this Emperour hath besieged Florence in her Castle of Clere tower with a greate number of people, so my Ladie is in great perill without some remedie be soone found for her, she weepeth right pittiouslie, and maketh the greatest lamentation of the worlde, she crieth out on fortune and saith, alas now haue I al lost, I was bozne in an unhappie houre, a gentle heart Arthur, God that formed all things of nought kepe and defend you from all euil incombrance and giue you honour, for as for me I am in great daunger, fortune shame haue thou, for thou hast done me many troubles, alas my sweet loue is farre from mee, and mine enemy hath approached neere mee, my loue is absent, and him that I hate is too neere my presence, alas

alasse mine owne sweete loue Arthur, if I were in your  
armes, then I would thinke my selfe better assured then to  
be in this strong castle, for then would I neither feare king  
nor Emperour, alasse where are my men & my good friends  
that they do not their diligence to study for my deliuerance,  
a King of Miquenic you doe a great trespassse against your  
true and faithfull louer Arthur when that you doe not de-  
liuer me out of daunger, he loneth you aboue all other, and  
now you to be thus false to him, certainlie he would neuer  
haue failed you, but he would haue put his bodie and goods  
in iopardie for your sake, and now thus you to leaue mee  
in this dolour, alasse good King come and deliuer me, and if  
you can render me vnto this gentle knight Arthur who lo-  
ueth you with all his heart. Thus Sir saide the master, I  
knowe well that she doth complaine euerie daie with such  
weeping chere, that I must needs weepe when I thinke on  
her, and the Quene of Miquenic and the Ladie Margaret  
doth comfort her all weeping, for it greueth their hearts to  
see her weepe so soze, and thus sir all thre of them bee in  
great sorrow, I can scarce tell you who is in the greatest.  
Trulie said Arthur it was not for naught that my heart  
was so heauie, now I know well the signification thereof,  
alasse master and doth not king Emendus know what case  
she is in: Pas Sir said the master, he assemblith people on  
all sides of his Realme of Bozoloys, and also all his four  
Kings with all their powers be come to him, and they are  
all readie to drawe thether ward, and they will remoue on  
mundaie next comming, but it will bee fiftene dayes ere  
they come thether, and sir all the kings complaineth great-  
lie that you be out of the Countrie, for they saie that if you  
had bene in the Countrie the Emperour had neuer bene so  
bolde to haue come thether, Sir I doubt me greatly of Flo-  
rence, for she hath not past forty knights with her, where-  
fore I feare me least that she cannot endure to kepe the  
place till the King her father and all his host be come the-  
ther. And when Arthur heard that he was soze displeased,  
and said to the young King of Malogozo: A gentle King, I  
require

require you, I would faine see you thether, or else I shall  
send my horse and my page to see you, and I shall  
be with all this  
host till mundaie, and then let the host followe after mee  
to the cleere tower, and let Duke Phillip and my Senechall  
and the marques haue the guiding of them, and my Lorde  
my father shall abide here still with you, and also my Lady  
my mother, and all these Ladies and damselfs, till such time  
as I send you word, and Sir, I will haue with me the ma-  
ster and Hector, Gouernar and Sir Brisebar. And when  
all the Barons heard him saie that he would go, they coun-  
sailed him to take moze people with him, but he would not,  
and so toke a sop in water and toke leaue of the King and  
of all other, and embraced his father and mother, and com-  
mended to God all the other Ladies and Damselfs, and so he  
departed and his companie with him, and rode forth as fast  
as euer they might, and traualled so long both by daie and  
night till they came to the Emperours host. When Arthur  
said, Lorde we appoche nere to our enemies, I thinke it  
were best that we did put on our harnais, and so there they  
alighted and did put on their harnais.

How Arthur and the master, Hector, Gouernar, and  
sir Brisebar, entered into the cleere tower whereas  
Florence was besieged, and they fine discomfited a  
puiant Sarasin King, who was called the Souldan,  
who was come thether to helpe the Emperour,  
and there were all the Sarasins and Turkes slaine.  
Chap. 100.

When that Arthur and his four fellows were armed  
they mounted on their horses and rode soorth till it  
was about thre of the clocke, then they rode to the bottome  
of a great mountaine, and there they alighted, and Arthur  
alone a horse mounted vp to the highest thereof, and there he  
saw the castle of the cleere tower, whereon there were  
pyracles of bright Christall, and it did shine so against the  
sunne, that no man could clerelic looke against it, and he  
saw

saide the Governour great Kent, and the same day  
all the world was turned upside down, and on the first day  
that people late round about the Castle of Bath in the month  
June, out of the inferno the place, and the same well  
how that on the same day that he was on there lodged a  
great number of Saracins, and then Arthur complained  
viciously for the mischief that he had done to the  
in of that time, and as he then beheld the Castle, he saw  
in the air there came toward the mountaine fortie Saracins  
armed, then Arthur went down to the hall, and to his  
company and said, I praye, I thinke all the world of people  
be in this Countrey, how shall we defende our selves, said  
said, I thinke there is none to be had, but let us mount  
on our horses and goe as thin as a shadow, said there is  
none of us but that he is well worth a knight, well saide  
Arthur, now that shall be done, for yonder cometh fortie  
or more of our enemies to awake us (we sleepe) Let them  
come said Governour, and he took a great speare and dyd  
plunge it in the rest, and therewith the Saracins wed come,  
who sawe well these five knights, and one of them pre-  
sed forth before his fellows, and Governour with his speare  
slew him, and then the master strake so another with such  
vertue, that the speare went cleane through out his bodie,  
then he set his hand upon his sword and laide on among  
his enemies, as a Wolfe doth among Lambs, And when  
was hear sawe him doe such deadlye of armes, he sayde, here  
is a good master he challengeth well his disciples, then was  
sebar strake the first that he encountered with so rebelle,  
that his harnais availed him not a button, for hee was  
pearced to the hart, then Governour and he beat downe Sa-  
racins even as he would himselfe, And when was he  
that he leaped least all the Saracins should have been slaine  
ere he had done any thing against them, then he rush into  
the place and cut off armes, handes, and legges, and  
made head of the into the helpe, and brake downe Saracins  
and horses murthered, And when Arthur saw all this he  
smiled & said, Lords leave me my part, what neede I thinke

to take all, that is no equall parting, than he dast into the  
thickest of the press, and the first he sent to the earth Sara-  
sin and horse, and the second he clane downe to the chinne,  
and ther he gave so puissant strokes, that he confounded all  
that ever he attained unto, and to make short, these five  
knightes did so valiantly that of all these 40 Saracins there  
escaped not one but they were all slaine, Then Arthur said  
Lords let us now devise how we may finde the meanes to  
enter into the castel, it is so closed on all sides that none can  
enter into it but he must passe firste throughout thirtie  
men of war, I suppose this Emperours host endureth five  
legges in breadth, so I cannot see how we should enter, every  
man give his advise and counsaile, for here on this part of  
the castell, that we be on is all over spread with fell Sara-  
sin, said the master suffre a little & I shall give you  
my counsaile how we shall enter into the castel, I shall cause  
us all to looke for the season as black as any pitch, so y we  
shall not be knowen but for Saracins, let us arme us with  
the armour of these dead Saracins, and than let me ryde  
on before, and I shall leade you safely throughout all their  
host, so I can well speake the language, he say well sayde  
Pedro, than they all armed them with harnies of the Sa-  
racins that they had slaine, and than they mounted on their  
horses, and the master rode on before till they came to the  
Saracins tent, and the master had on the harnies of the  
Solodanes seneschal who was slaine before by Arthur, and  
the Saracins that saw him thought verely that it had bene  
the seneschal, and they demaunded of him from whence he  
came, And he answered and saide, friends I go to play me  
all about the felde, and I purpose to go to the castel gates  
to entre in if I may, and to slaye all them that be with in  
the castel, than there were divers that offered them selve to  
have gone with him, but he sayde he would have no more  
company than he had, and sayde, for there is none of you  
that shall go with me, therefore I charge you on payne of  
your lives that ye stir not till he heare me blow my great  
hoorne, and than come as fast as ye can.

Then

When the master and his company came to the castle gate and called the Porter and said: my friends open the gate & let us in and God shall reward you, for we are chivaliers and are soldiers, and I promise you that if you will let us in and the Lady of the place receive our service, then shall she be like a wise Lady. Sirs said the Porter, and you be soldiers you are welcome, for my Lady hath great needs of such, then he let downe the bylger & opened the gate, then these five knights entered, and the Porter left by agayne the bylger and closed the gate agayne after them. When it was knowne Florence that these strange soldiers were entered into the Castle to helpe and to aide her, then she commanded that they should be brought to a chamber and unarmed, and then to be brought to her presence, and when they were unarmed they looked so blacke that her husband was afrayde of them, and some said, God graunte they be not spies, and so they were brought to Florence, and as soon as she sawe them she trembled for feare, and when she sawe that they were all goodly persons and much like of stature, she feared them greatly lest that they had bene spies, and demanded of them of whence they were. And they answered her that they were Marquises borne, but as then they had renounced their bethefe, and were chivaliers in France at Paris, and the King of France was their good father, and then she demanded of them whether they came straight out of France. And they answered yes. When the Lady Florence demanded of them and saide, friends do you ever heare of a knight who is named Arthur, and he is some what the Duke of Britaine. Peatrice the madame saide they were heare well of him, he departed from Paris the same time that we did depart, and he did obbey him greatly to come into this Countie, and hee brought with him the Duke his sister and the Duchesse his mother & with the number of ten thousand other knights ready apparelled for the warre, and as much as it laide to, he becometh greatly a gentle Marquise of this Countie, so whole sake he hath sett many right piteous and many

many a great fight, and madame oftentimes he speaketh and complaineth to a great man of dignitie who is in his company, and also madame as it is saide there is one with him named Master Steven, and another Gouvernar, and the third Hector, and divers other that we have forgotten the names of them. Well Sirs I see well that by such tokens as you report you have taken them, but I pray you doth Arthur thinke so much on the Lady that you speake of. Peatrice the madame saide the master, then the Lady Florence began piteously to wepe, and the Lady Margaret held her by the hand to wipe her eyes therewith, and when Arthur saide her to be saide, right faire Lady wepe no more, for surely we shall never faile you till death have made an end of us. And as they were thus talking to Florence, the Marquise in the field that saw them enter into the castle in that peaceable manner, then they perceived well howe that the Master of them was not the Doulmans Seneschall, and thought verily that they had a great mocke, wherefore they ranne to their armour and armed them, and more then five hundred of them went to the castle and did knocke and beat at the gate. When the watchmen of the castell did crie, Sirs to harness, for part of your enemies are at the gate. When euerie man of the Castle ranne to the windowes to looke what it might be, and when Arthur saide how it was, he commanded his company to arme them, and so they armed them, and so did all that were with in the castle, for Sir Percival caused a great hoize to be blowen, & by the sounding thereof all those of the castle ranne to their harness. When Florence sawe friends for Gods sake issue not out of the Castle, for you be not able to resist against their power, they be so many in number and you so few, but I requyre you defend this castle as well as you may: madame saide Arthur, let you in rest and peace, let us alone hardlie, then he mounted on his horse, and so did his other foure companions, and to the number of forty other knights of the castle, and so he rode to the gate and caused the Porter to let it open.

# The Historie of Arthur

Then Arthur, by great random dash into the pence with his white shield couered all in black, & helme a great bat- chet in both his handes and layde on rounde about him, on those Saracins that he made heads, armes and hounes to fly into the feldes, and beat downe hoyses and Saracins in such wise that it was maruaille to beholde him, and the King and Gouernar on their parties beate downe Saracins by great heapes, and the maister, Willebar, and Sir Borsas did as valiantly, as any good knyghts ought to doe, but none all other Arthur dyd excellently, for he layde on rounde about him, and confounded all that euer he attayned unto, so that euerie man fled from before him, and sayd help that he was a diuel of hell, and none earthly creature, for he shouded the stretes where as he passed, and made great heapes of dead knyghts, so that florence knyghts had great maruaille of him, and also florence and the quene of Aqueney and the lady Margarete blessed them at his depart, and sayde how that he lacked but little of the prowess of Arthur. And at the last Hector was beaten downe, for his horse was slaine vnder him, and so his enemies had thought to haue ledde him away as a prisoner, and therewith Arthur came to- gether, and in that fury he slew more than xij. knyghtes, and remounted Hector againe on his horse in the suite of all his enemies, and than he dasht againe into the pence and beate downe all that euer he attayned unto, and Willebar and the maister dyd right well their partes, but specially Arthur made place before him. And when florence sawe these knyghts do so valiantly, she said unto such knyghts as were about hir, Sir for gods sake and yet you maye see helpe to rescue vnder such knyghtes.

Then the great common belman sounded and euerie man than ran to their armes, and so then were to the number of an hundred and threescore and thre hundred on foot, into the feldes, and greete battels on their heads, with great sheldes and about them, and longe speares in their handes, to the intent to see with them their

# Of little Britaine.

242

slaine hoyses, and so they marcht out of the castle and fello- wship of the Saracins, that within a litle while they were nereall discomforted. And when the soudan sawe his peo- ple so ouerladen and slaine, he caused a great grille borne to be blowen, then euerie man that heard it ran to their bar- racks, so that they were to number of thirtie thousand, & the soudan was a young lustie couragious knyght, and moun- ted on such a horse that there was none like him in all the worlde in goodnesse, for whosoever was mounted on his backe needed not to doubt anie man liuing, for what by force of the horse and of the man, there was none by likeli- hood that might resist against him. When the soudan dasht into his hoste with his sharpe spurs, and he rusht forth as though he hadde flowne in the aire like a birde.

And when Arthur sawe him comming, he desired great- ly to haue that horse, then he toke a great mightie speare and ranke at the soudan and brake his speare by the might of that horse, for the horse was able to haue borne twenmen armed without anie paine, and as Arthur passed forth after his course, the Saracins inclosed him rounde about, then he drew his good sword Clarence, and there he slew his enemies without number, but they charged him with so many strokes, that they slew his horse vnder him, then he leapt on his fecte and did put his white shelde before him, and with Clarence his good sword he did cut downe his enemies as a carpenter doth his chippes out of a great tree, and they did shoot at him with their bowes of Turkey, wherewith they did him much trouble, and more had done and his good white sheld hadde not bene. When florence sawe he was thus beset, she said, Swat helpe come and bestand yonder good knyght from all daun- ger and perill.

And when Arthur beate her boite his hardynesse in- creased, so such was his valour the more that hee was to see the more was his strength, and euer his courage increased, and then he leapt in verie lightlie among

among his enemies and began so to defende a funder the  
great rocks of the Saracins that none approch nere him  
but that he received death for his mede. At the last, Hector  
copped him and saide how that he was on foote wherewith  
he was so displeased that he was in a great rage, then he  
couched his spere & ran at the Saracen who was running  
at Arthur, but Hector strake him so rudely that he persed  
him to the harte and saide fel downe dead: then Hector toke  
his good horse and deliuered him to Arthur. When Arthur  
hadde him he was more gladder of the horse than he woulde  
haue bene of all the treasure in France, then he mounted  
up on him and rush into the thickest of the prele, and there  
he dyd meruailes with his hands, for ther he cut of armes,  
handes and legges, he claued a sonder helmes, & made heaues  
to fye into the fælde, and beate downe knights and horses  
all together in heapes, and than there was none that he en-  
countred withall that escaped from the death, than there  
came vnto him the maister, sir Byssebar, and sir Iherpican,  
& other knights vpon horseback of Florence companye,  
and a three hundred on foote, than they all layde on the Sa-  
racins and bet them downe lyke dogges. When Arthur en-  
countred the Saracins brother and gaue him such a stroke  
with his good sword clearence that he cleaued him downe to  
the saddle.

And when that the Saracins sawe how that the Saracen  
dan and also his brother were dead and slaine, they made  
such roying and sorrow among them that the Emperour as  
he was in his tent might wel here the noyse, and deman-  
ded what it was. And one of the best him how that it was the  
Saracen who was fearfull with them of the castle, and  
there with there came to him a knight who had one of his  
armes cleane stricken of and sayde, sir Emperour the Saracen  
died and his brother was also slaine for sir ther  
he come thus as I thinke of the diuels of hell abanished  
creatures, for they be all slaine and confounded and spe-  
cially there is one among them that maketh waye where  
so euer that he cometh, there is none so hardy y dare abide  
him

him a stroke of his handes but at such before him, therefore  
sir Emperour cal your men to batle by this we shal be al  
slaine.

When the Emperour was sore displeased and sayde,  
what hundred diuels of hell hath brought hither these fyre  
knights, who thus confoundeth all my people, than he cry-  
ed to harnes, and caused hoznes to be slawen in his hoast.  
When euery man ran to their harnes, so that anon there  
were together more than an hundred thousand men, and  
Arthur, Hector, Gouvernar, the maister, Byssebar, & sir Per-  
nican were all be spent with the bloud of the Saracins that  
they had slaine. When the queene of Dequeney who had all  
the day wel aduised Arthur and his trodes saide vnto Flo-  
rence, madame certainly I thinke that yonder knight is Ar-  
thur, for as I deme yonder shelde is your white shield, and  
I thinke he that is by him is Hector, the maister, Gouvernar  
and sir Byssebar. Madame said Florence that can not be,  
for they are as black as any ylike. And as they thus talked  
they saw where as the Emperour was coming, & a hun-  
dred thousand following after him. A lwaite Jesu sayde  
Florence, kepe and defend now yonder knights, for I feere  
me now that they shalbe slayne, and the Emperour came  
thither wards as fast as he might with great noyse of trum-  
pets, shoures of hoznes. And when that the maister hearde  
that he came to Arthur and sayd, sir we haue to lytte num-  
ber of people to abyde yonder Emperour at this tyme, we  
haue done all ready sufficient for one daye, therefore sir let  
us retourne againe to the castel, for our company are right  
sore trespased. He say wel sayde Arthur, cause the retraitte  
to be blowen, and so it was done, that Arthur and his pro-  
ple entered into the castel, and closed the gate after them &  
drew vp the brydge, and they had slayne in that battaile to  
the number of fiftene thousande Saracins, than Arthur  
mounted up into the palays, and Florence met with him,  
and she toke of his helme and thanked him greatly, and all  
his company of the palays and about that they had taken  
that daye, than they looked out at the towne wyes and sawe  
him

# The Historie of Arthur

whereas the Emperour was beholding the dead bodies of the Saracens and of his brother, and of fiftene thousand other Saracens.

Howeysa was taken for a moneth betwene the Emperour and Arthur. Chap. 101.



Arthur and Howeysa were called  
holme to the Emperour. Howeysa  
thinks to come on a ship by health; and  
under the assurance of truce that was  
made

# Of little Britaine.

244

lion betwene my brother's father and you thus to cause  
such number of people to come on her, Sir if there were in  
you either valure or truth, you would not thus haue done,  
first you should haue giuen her warning, and haue made  
your defiance, and haue giuen her a certaine daie of bat-  
taille; and then to haue taken her if you might, this I say  
should haue bene your honour, and not thus to waite her  
in her chamber with all this number of people, and see no-  
thing knowing thereof before. Well saide the Empe-  
rour, whatsoeuer thou art thy tongue is faire filed, wouldst  
to God I hadde that head of thine that looketh so blacke.  
Why Sir saide Arthur, wouldst you then so faine haue my  
head? Ernelle saide the Emperour, on that condition I  
would it hadde cost me one yeares rent of all my landes.  
Then Sir sayde Arthur, then giue this Ladie a certaine daie  
of battaille that she may in the meane season send for her  
people; so that she may aunswere you, and Sir I promise  
you that I will bee there, and then gette my head and you  
canne.

Ernelle saide the Emperour I am content, but what  
assurance shall I haue that you will be there. Sir saide  
Arthur, by the faith that I owe vnto my speciall Ladie.  
Well sayde the Emperour, and I giue her daie for a mo-  
neth, and truce in the meane season, and then the assurance  
was made on both partes: Then Arthur saide holding  
Florence by the hand, Sir Emperour beholde what a ieu-  
ell this is, Sir ought not a man to be right valiant to ob-  
taine such a Ladie, so tender, so swete, and so rubbie of  
colour. When the Emperour was soze displeased and  
saded: What thou prating sole, me thinketh thy visage is  
concealed with blacke Coxdewan, would to God I had  
the in my keeping, Sir sayde Hector all smiling, take no heed  
of his saying for he is but a sole, then the Emperour de-  
parted and went to his tent, then Arthur sayd to Florence,  
madame we haue now truce with the emperour, so that we  
may wel promise for menere the truce break, for the terme  
therof is a moneth. Well Sir quoth Florence I thank you therof  
A.iii. and

and of the pain of it. *But* your company hath taken this  
maie for my sake, but *if* I shall be forced to denie I may. *For*  
dante it is already refused; but madame maye it please  
you to leave the loving of the knight that you saye you love  
so well, and take me to your lover and give me your love,  
and I promise you I shall deliver you from this Emperour,  
for this other knight is now in France in great speed, and  
thinketh but little of you, for he hath many faire Ladies in  
his Countrie at his commandment. *She* said *Florence*,  
his sport and joy is a great pleasure in my heart, for I am  
his both with heart, thought, and body, and never to be  
false to him, for he God helpe me I have rather suffer my  
heart to be stricken off then I should doe or thinke any false-  
nesse to him. *Why* madame love you then him so inward-  
lie and so trulie. *Yea*, as *else* said *she*, I praise to God I ne-  
ver have joy in this world. *What* *then* said *he*, I see well that  
my love cannot prevail. *So* be you sure, said *Florence*,  
therefore be in peace and speake to me no more thereof. *In*  
like manner the master praised the Ladie Margaret, of her  
love, desiring her to love him and to forsake the Clarke. And  
the aunt wored that to die in the paine she would never be  
false to him. *When* *Arthur* saide to the master, let us leave  
these Ladies for we are come too late, for by seeming they  
are assured to others. *Sir* said *Florence*, I knowe not your  
name, but I desire you goe and unname you and then I will  
goe to dinner, for our meate is ready, then they were  
lead into a chamber & unarmed. And then *Basilius* when  
he saw his owne hands so foule and blacke, he abhorred him  
and said, the devil take his blacknesse so that we were rid  
thereof, then he said to the master, *Sir* I requite you with  
waile, his blacknesse, comming from all my companie.  
Then the master laughed & was glad, & said to all his com-  
panie: *What* said *Arthur*, I am well agreed that it should  
be now taken away from his hand for a while. *When* the  
master took a horse and his hand out the wall, and then they  
all were in the street & standing, then *Arthur* took up him a  
childe, and it was the sonne of the Emperour, and he  
whereas

whereas *Florence* carried for them to wash their hands,  
and as soon as she sawe them she knewe well *Arthur* and  
them all, then she ranne to him and embraced and kissed him  
& weellie before them all and saide: *Wine* *of* *my* *Lord*, *care*  
heart, and long, you be right heartelle welcome, as bee for  
whom I have wept many a salt teare, but *sir* I praise you  
who made you so blacke as you were right now. *Madame*  
by the faith that I owe unto you master Steven, and there  
recounted to her all the cause why, then there began greete  
feast and joy throughout all the castle, and also throughout  
all the towne, when it was known how that *Arthur* and  
*Basilius* were come into the Castle, then they were in they  
minde better assured then though the King *Emendus* and  
all his power had bene there, and Ladie *Margaret* made as  
great chere to the master as was to her possible, and so they  
went to dinner and were right richlie served, and after din-  
ner *Arthur* saide to *Gouvernar*, it is needfull for us now to  
prouide for everie thing that is necessarie for us, to the in-  
tent that we be not deceived at the daie of our battaile, ther-  
fore I will that you goe to my Lord the King of *Soroloy*  
and recommend me humble to his grace, & shew him how  
that I am at the Cleere tower, and recount unto him how  
that we have speede, and howe that wee have truse for the  
space of a moneth, and then to the daie sette of battaile be-  
tweene the Emperour and us, also salute from me the King  
of *Diquenie*, and saie how that I desire him to summon a-  
gainst the said *Basilius* all the power of *Soroloy* both on  
horsebacke and on foote, so that they may be heere about the  
end of foure weekes, and I will in the meane time goe unto  
my Lord my father, and to all his companie, and bring him  
hether. And when *Florence* heard that she saide, *Sir* have  
you brought them into these partes. *Yea* truelle madame,  
and with my father there is a noble King of that Countrey:  
and faire foue where be they. *Madame* I sette them at the  
port poire. *What* said *Florence*, I requite you go to them  
and bring them hether, for I would be glad to be acquainted  
with my Lord your father, whose daughter I am, and tru-  
ly  
I. b. King

King so shall continue, but I praye you tell mee howe much  
my Lord your mother, Madam I assure you she is all at  
the Port Boire, accompanied with five or six Countes-  
ses who haue left their diuine Countreies to come hether to  
see you. A deere heart saide Florence, blessed bee the houre  
that ever you were borne in that you haue brought so no-  
ble a companie with you to see me, for now my father King  
Cimendus shall not think that I am ill bestowed on you, for  
I requite you let me see them as hostis as you can, then  
Gouernar toke his leaue and departed toward Malogore.

How the young king of Malogore and the Duke of  
Britaine, with diuerse other Earles and Barons,  
accompanied with a great armie of men of warre,  
arriued at the cleere tower, to the intent to succour  
Florence and Arthur, who were besieged by the  
Emperour, who had nigh enraged out of his wit  
when hee knew that they were come into the Ca-  
stle. Chap. 102.

**I**n the morning betimes Arthur departed from the  
Cleere tower, and toke with him Hector and Eusebar,  
and five other knights of Florence, and the master abode still  
with Florence, thus Arthur rode south three leagues, and  
then he espied the banner of the Duke his father and of all  
his host, for the young king of Malogore halted him as  
much as he might for the feare that he had of Arthur. And  
when Arthur sawe the Banners and Standardes waue-  
ring with the winde, and the helmes and shields shi-  
ning against the sunne, then his heart reioiced, and saide,  
a Gentle France God increase thine honour and noble-  
nesse, and then he approached neere to his father and made  
to him reuerence, and there was greates love at their mee-  
ting, and the Duke demaunded of them how that he had  
speeke.

And

And he recounted to him and to his company all the whole  
matter as it was done, and so they rode south together tyll  
they came into the Emperours host. And all that season  
Florence was leneing out of her battlements of the toure, for  
with hir eye she had conuayed Arthur befoze as far as she  
might, and at the last the queene of Aquiney had espied the  
French host comming, and saue the french banners dis-  
played with the wynde. My Saint Mary sayde she, faire  
Florence what people be yonder that I see comming hither,  
warde, I thinke it be the Emperour. And when Florence  
saue them she was in feare of Arthur and sayde, alas I  
doubt that if they haue encountred with my lous Arthur,  
that they haue slayne him, and therewith shee beganne  
pitiously to wepe.

When it chaunced that a knight who came streight from  
Arthur to the intent to shewe hir how that hee was com-  
ming saide, Madam be ye well assured for yonder people  
that ye see comming they are pertaining to my Lord Ar-  
thur, then she appeased hir selfe, and first she saue the great  
baner of the duke of Britaine, and saw helmes and shields  
flambe against the sonne, also she behelde the goodly compa-  
ny of younge knightes mounted vpon good horses, and she  
heard helmes braye and bete with their saxe, then she pray-  
ed much in hir heart the noble countrey of France, she  
thought it was a better sight of them then it was of the  
armie of war of hir owne countrey, for they were more bet-  
ter hoysed and harneysed a great deale more properly, and  
than they saw comming after that the great baner royal of  
the king of malogre, and her heart reioiced to see the noble  
company that came with him, then she saw the Erle of Ne-  
uers baner and the noble Burgomons right properly be-  
come, then the Duke of Forest and the Dolphin in his com-  
pany, and then came the Erle of Fays, and then the Erle of  
Montbray, then the Lord Beaulieu, and last of all came  
the baner of Appoyons, and all this company were to the  
monner of fifteen thousand knightes, bearing of stout cou-  
rage and chieft for the honour.

Then

## The Historie of Arthure

When Florence sawe, and hee sawe that nothing it for meeth  
wel that you are not hated in your owne country, and you  
bring with you so many noble men of war, and of so greafe  
dignitie. Certainlie madame and Margarete, these people  
will deströie this Emperour and all his host, they seme  
no men but rather Angells of heauen, beholde madame how  
light and quicke they be in their armour, a noble stature of  
fraunce blessed bee thou Art, thy people cometh out of  
thee.

And when their people were lodged, then Arthur coun-  
sed the King and the Duke his father, & all the other earles  
and Barons to mount vp into the Castle. When the King  
saide to Arthur, sir I requyre you to chuse the gentle Flo-  
rence: yea faire soune said the Duke, shewe mee our deere  
daughter that shall be: Sir you shall see her anon. Sayde  
Arthur, then he sent before Duke Phillip to Florence, to the  
intent that she shuld make her selfe fresh against their com-  
ming, and as soone as she sawe Phillip she made to him  
right great ioy, and demaunded of him how he did, & how  
that he liked the Realme of Fraunce. Madame said bee, I  
like it verie well, so I assure you Fraunce is a noble and  
gentle Countie, madame beholde herre cometh the noble  
Duke of Britaine father to Arthur, and with him King Al-  
exander of Malagore, and divers other Carles and Bar-  
ons who are coming hether to see you, and Arthur bestow-  
eth you to apparel your selfe with besturrs of ioy, then she  
went to her chamber and apparelled her selfe according to  
her estate, and as to receive such visitation as were come  
to her, to witte, and the Queene of Aragonie and the faire La-  
die Margarete did helpe her, then these Ladies alighted at  
the porch, and so mounted up into the Pallace, then sum-  
mer rained, it rained and cold, madame doth on your wode  
and see the Duke of Britaine and the King and other earles  
and Barons, and the Duke was the gentlest of all the  
li young and tender, all which having a fulling counte-  
nance, and the most gracious shall the world see out of  
her Castle, and two knights leade her forth, and then other  
knights

## Of little Britaine.

247

knights leade the Queene of Aragonie, and when the young  
King and the Duke of Britaine and other Carles, saw her,  
they meruailed greatly of the excellent beautie that God  
had giuen her. When the King slept sooth and his bonnet  
in his hand and enclined himselfe to her, and right swettlie  
he saluted her, and she answered him and said, Sir you be  
right heartely welcom to this countie, the which is and  
shall be at your noble commaundement, & all other things  
whereof I have any power. When the King did salute all  
the Ladies each after other. When the Duke of Britaine  
came to Florence and saide, my right deere Ladie God in-  
crease your noble honour as vnto the most noble Ladie of  
all the world. When he saide, madame this is the Duke  
of Britaine father to Arthur, wherewith she was right glad  
and embraced him and said, Sir you be right heartely wel-  
come into the land of Florence your daughter, as hee that  
shall be mine owne Lord, into whose hands and protection  
from hence forth I put me and all my Realme of Exolois.  
Then he took Florence by the hand and would not let her  
depart for any person that came to them, then all the other  
Carles and Barons did salute her, and she rendered againe  
to them such salutation that euery man was well content,  
and euery man meruailed greatly of her beauty, and of the  
wile and sage wordes that she had to euery bodie. So then  
the King and the Duke and Florence sate them downe to-  
gether, and the Ladie Margarete take the Carle of Peuers  
and the Carle of Forrest and sate downe with them, and the  
Carle of mount Bechal, and the Dolphin, & the Lord Bea-  
uieu looking out at the window, and behelde the Empe-  
rours great host, and at last Arthur and the master came  
to them.

When the Dolphin saide, sir Arthur as God helpe mee I  
have great desire to knowe what people these be that be  
here with this Emperour, and to see howe they can couch  
their spears. Let us go to them said the Lord Beauieu  
and let us make them knowe howe French men be come he-  
ther. A great shame take he said the Carle of mount Be-  
chal

[illegible]

Certainlie sir they be people of France, who heare tidings  
of a great warre that this Emperour should haue shortly,  
and therefore the he come into this Countrie as souldiers  
retaining vs wholoener will: Souldiers quoth the Sher-  
man, and therewith he lift vp his eye and beheld the host  
ouer all, and ther he saw the goodlie young Squiers vntrus-  
ting of their summers & carriages, and pitching vp of their  
tents and pavilions, and he sawe the goodlie knights raine  
their horses vp and downe in the fields, some lighting and  
some mounting, and there bee sawe the armourers furbush  
their harness, and the lacakes and shewbes flaming against  
the sunne, the banners, standards and streamers waue-  
ring with the winde, then he said to himselfe, by Saint Pa-  
re what people are these, are they mortall men or Angells  
of warrelike, who may enoche against them. Al France an  
honorable Countrie above all other, blessed bee thou that  
nourisheth up such people: Then he saide to the Lord de la  
Beche, Gentilsir will not these people abide and be retay-  
ned with me, I pray the Emperour till this warre be done,  
and he shall give him such wages and fees, that of reason they  
shall be content. Sir saide the Lord de la Beche, if you  
will knowe the certaintie goe and speake with our Lordes  
and masters that are entered into the Castle, to goe speake  
with a Lady, I knowe not what she is, but it is reputed she  
is right gracious and faire. For saint Marie said the Sher-  
man, if I doe, whether I doubt me of them within the castle,  
least they take and kepe me there as prisoner, wherefore I  
will goe first & speake with my Lord the Emperour, then he  
departed & went straight to the Emperours tent, & saide to  
him: Gentle Emperour ther is come out of y noble realme  
of France the most goodlie companie of men of war y ever  
was seene in all this world, & as I hearme they be well to the  
number of 20,000, & one of them shewed me how y they wer  
souldiers, & the capitains are gone into the castle to speak w  
souldiers, & I feare me least y Arthur hath retained them  
on his partie, for he can get much people, therefore sir after  
my counsaile you shall send to them in faire manner, & desire  
you

and then they went to dinner, and all the noble company  
of Fraunce and Britaine were in the Clere tower, wher  
as they dined in greate delight and sport, and were serued  
right richlie, and after dinner they sported them till it was  
about one of the clocke.

How king Jonas all alone came to the castle of the  
clere tower, and there did his message from the  
Emperour of Inde the more. Chap. 103.

Then king Jonas issued out of the Emperours hoast all  
armed, wel and freshlie mounted, and so all alone with  
out anie companie he came to the clere Tower, and vnder  
a faire Olive tree he alighted and mounted vp into the pal  
lace, and ther he found Florence and the King of Malagore  
and the Duke of Britaine sitting together, then the King  
Jonas spake befoze Florence in open audience, so that eu  
rie man might well heare him, and saide: The high soue  
raigne God who all things formed of naught, defend and  
keepe the puissant Emperour of Inde the more, and all his  
friends whersouer they be, here o: else where, first to thee  
Florence ther as thou sittest, I saie from y mightie Empe  
rour that thou goe to him onelie in thy kirtle on thy bare  
feete, with thy haire hanging about thy shoulders, & on thy  
knees cry him humbly mercy of the great outrage that thou  
hast done to him, and I thinke that he will haue mercie on  
thee that thou shalt not die anie cruell death, for if thou wilt  
doethus, I thinke hee will giue thee pardon of thy life, and  
marrie thee to one of the gromes of his kitchen, and if  
thou wilt not doe thus, knowe for certaine that to mor  
rowe next comming this Castell shall bee rased downe to  
the hard earth, and thy selfe burnt in a faire fire, and the  
lurden that is called Arthur hanged vp by the necke.

When Florence beganne to smile and sayde, Sir For as  
shewe vnto your Emperour that befoze this bee perfoz  
med there shall not abide one tooth in his head, but I shall  
cause them to be rased out each after other, and as for  
him.

and so then they went to dinner, and all the noble company  
of Fraunce and Britaine were in the Clere tower, wher  
as they dined in greate delight and sport, and were serued  
right richlie, and after dinner they sported them till it was  
about one of the clocke.

How king Jonas all alone came to the castle of the  
clere tower, and there did his message from the  
Emperour of Inde the more. Chap. 103.

Then king Jonas issued out of the Emperours hoast all  
armed, wel and freshlie mounted, and so all alone with  
out anie companie he came to the clere Tower, and vnder  
a faire Olive tree he alighted and mounted vp into the pal  
lace, and ther he found Florence and the King of Malagore  
and the Duke of Britaine sitting together, then the King  
Jonas spake befoze Florence in open audience, so that eu  
rie man might well heare him, and saide: The high soue  
raigne God who all things formed of naught, defend and  
keepe the puissant Emperour of Inde the more, and all his  
friends whersouer they be, here o: else where, first to thee  
Florence ther as thou sittest, I saie from y mightie Empe  
rour that thou goe to him onelie in thy kirtle on thy bare  
feete, with thy haire hanging about thy shoulders, & on thy  
knees cry him humbly mercy of the great outrage that thou  
hast done to him, and I thinke that he will haue mercie on  
thee that thou shalt not die anie cruell death, for if thou wilt  
doethus, I thinke hee will giue thee pardon of thy life, and  
marrie thee to one of the gromes of his kitchen, and if  
thou wilt not doe thus, knowe for certaine that to mor  
rowe next comming this Castell shall bee rased downe to  
the hard earth, and thy selfe burnt in a faire fire, and the  
lurden that is called Arthur hanged vp by the necke.

When Florence beganne to smile and sayde, Sir For as  
shewe vnto your Emperour that befoze this bee perfoz  
med there shall not abide one tooth in his head, but I shall  
cause them to be rased out each after other, and as for  
him.

coming into my castel against my wil let him knowe wel  
I haue such people about me that shal defend it right well  
against him, so that therof they be desirous. When the Dolphin  
stept forth as he that was full of yre because of the rude  
wordes that king Jonas had spoken of Florence and Ar-  
thur and said to the king, thou soule olde churlish vilaine if  
thou werest not a messenger I would rather cut thyne eye  
out of thyne head with mine owne handes, what art thou  
come hether to speake vilany to so high a lady and princesse  
as Florence is, to saye that she should be giuen to a kechin  
grome in marriage, thou olde scoule saye vnto theine Empe-  
rour that he come to my lady Florence creping on his handes  
and knees, and to take of hir such Iudgement of death as  
she wil assigne him to dye of, and if he wil not so do let him  
flye fast out of this countrie, for as for me nor none of my  
company haue taken no trewse with him, therfore I vtter-  
ly desie him, and first here before thy face thou abusedst folish  
dotarde I desie thee and all thy malice. And when king Jo-  
nas sawe the great perill & daunger that he was in he was  
wrethe for anger out of his wit, and there with he set his hand  
on his sword and than Bisebar stept to him with a great  
leuer in his hande and sayde, sir king faire and softly not so  
hardy in thy head that thou ones sayest, for and thou do thou  
shalt neuer speake word moze with thine Emperour, than  
he held his peace and stode stil, for he sawe wel that if he had  
moued he had bene but dead. When Bisebar sayde, if thou  
hast any moze to say speake and anoyd fast out of this pre-  
sence if thou loue thyne owne lyfe.

When the king Jonas sayde to the king of malogre and  
to the other Lordes, of Fraunce and Britaine, thus it is so  
the high and mightie puissant Emperour hath harde spea-  
king of you how that ye be come hither with much people  
in harnes, for what cause he knoweth not, whether it be  
to be with him or againste him, if it be for him and that ye  
wil come and dwel with him he wil giue you golde and sil-  
uer, rentes and lands and great possessions, and he wil loue  
and honour you, in such wise that of reason ye shall holde  
you

you right well content, and if you bee come to bee against  
him he would knowe it, to the intent that he will take coun-  
saile what he shall doe against you, and in this behalf shew  
me your mindes.

When the king Alexander of Malagore spake first and  
sayde, sir you seeme to be a wise man, I knowe not what  
I should call you, for I knowe not your name, but this I  
saye vnto you, shew vnto your Emperour that he hath too  
little land, and is of too small a power, and hath too little  
store of golde and siluer to retaine to his seruice such peo-  
ple as we be, but if he will dwell with vs and serue vs tru-  
lie, let him come to vs and we shall doe right well for him,  
and if he haue no wife wee shall marrye him to one of our  
Damsells who hath bene long one of our launderys. And  
when king Jonas heard him that he called him a wise man,  
and that he would marrie his Lord the emperour to a leude  
Damsell, he was then so angrie for despite that hee was  
nigh in a great rage, and sayde to king Alexander, sir you  
haue an outrageous heart to call me a wise man, and would  
marrie my Lord to one of your Damselles, and he is the  
most mightie Prince and most honoured that euer bare  
crowne of golde on his head, and moreover you would  
haue him to come and serue you, therefore sir I saye vnto  
you on his behalfe, that he shall be to morrow assembled  
against you with twentie thousand speares in his com-  
panie, therefore beware of him and of his, for in his name  
I desie you and all yours, and sir Dolphin to you I say, be-  
ware that you come not there, for and you do, I promise to  
take that head of yours cleane from your shulders, then he  
went to Bisebar and tooke him by the chin so rudely that  
he made al the teth in his head to dash together, and said, by  
the faith y I owe vnto the emperour of Inde, I shall neuer  
depart out of this countrie till I haue hanged thee by y neck  
before Arthur, and all these French men y be here present.  
And when Bisebar heard himself so rudely handled and so  
churlishly threated, he gnashed his teth together, & stared  
with his eyes as though he had ben mad, & therewith lift vp his  
lauer

lener and gaue king Jonas therewith such a stroke betwene the shoulders that he fel flat to the earth, and Byssebar cutt downe with his knees on his belly, and with a shott knife be cut of a great part of the haire of his herbe, wherewith king Jonas braied and cried out a great pace. And the Duke Philip did laugh thereat and sayde, first beholde what a good barbour Byssebar is, murthereth he both hane very hard, behold how the heires come out rotes and all. When Florence rose and sayd, friend Byssebar arise and let him alone for he is a messenger, therewith Byssebar departed from him, than the king arose and went downe the staires all a stoned, and so mounted in his horse and went to the emperours host, and by that tyme the sonne was farre drawn into the west. And when the Emperour saw king Jonas in that case he demaunded of him who had arayed him in that wyse.

And he answered, sir the French men in the blaunch toure hath thus arayed me, and ther he recounted to the Emperour how that they wold marry him to one of their ladies, and would haue him to serue them. We saide the Emperour are they than of that mynd, than I commaund you that to morow next ye bete downe this castel, and that the barlot Florence be taken and brent and the ribaude Arthur hanged by the neck and al the remnaunt slaine. Than king Jonas said, sir I undertake on paine of my head that al this that ye haue deuised shal be done to morow betimes, and so he went to his tent as for that night. When noble knights in the castel went to counsaile to determine how they shold do the next daye, for they knew wel that there shold be battaile made to them, than maister Steuen said to king Alexander, sir I know wel that this king Jonas that lately departed from vs will make on vs a fierse assaute to morow next, therfore there is no more to do but now let it be sente what French men can doe, and if we holde them rudely at this beginning they shall be the lightlier discomfited hereafter, noz also they will not so lightly againe assemble against vs, therfore lette euery knight shewe forth the best

best that they can do, and blessed be he that now shal do bravely, for me thinketh that it were best that ye send for all your people that lyeth without in the tentes and let them come into the Castell as pryncely as they can without any noise, and conuay all their stuffe with them, for now all this night the Emperours people will sleepe faste, because they think to fight to morow, and when our people be come into this castel let vs all keepe our selues in our harnesse as pryncely as we can, and than we shal let downe the byldges and set open the gates, and so in the morning our enemies shall thinke that we be all fled awaye this night for feare, & then I thinke we shal see this king Jonas and all his company come and entred into this castel, and as soone as they be entred than we may step to the gate and close it fast, and so than they cannot escape vs, noz they that be without shall not help them, for if we should go and issue out and fight in the plaine felde with them all we should haue ouer much to doe, and by likelyhood lese many of our people, for they be in number an hundred against one of vs, and when we shal slaine all them that shalbe entred with in this castel, than let vs set open the gates and let the remnaunt enter who will, and if they will not come to vs we may go when we wil and loke on them in their tentes, and the more that be dead the fewer enemies we shall haue. And when Florence heard the maisters counsaile it pleased hir right wel, and saide how that she wold that they should do as he had deuised. Madame saide king Alexander, your grace not displeased we shal not doe thus, ye be daughter vnto a high & mightie puissant king, and I am also a king, and it were a shame for such people as we be to take our enemies closed in a myghty rage, for rather we shold go seeke them in the campe wher they haue their banners displayed. We say right wel sayde the Emperour, but sir they haue done againste me more vilanie and trespass than this case is, for they be come hither into my countrey and hath enclosed me here in my castel without any reasonable cause, wherfore it is no shame to take vantage of them if we can.

In the name of God, madame, said the Dolphin, you say but  
truth, for it is good policy in war to put advantage on our  
enemies, so that there be no treachery in the case. In person let  
be doo thus as is devised. I am angry with them to save the Duke  
of Britaine, for little thing I desire we may live out on  
them, but I promise you I will be the doer and hee the  
gate, & I shall give them free entrie as many as will come  
without any danger, but at the going out of the towne  
it shall behove them to passe by their shot, for such shall en-  
ter that shall not stand against their going out, then euerie  
knight did laugh at this newe dooer, then Florence em-  
braced him & said, a mille stonethere Lord and father, I ap-  
peareth right well that you be of the seruente of our  
young sonne, and so at the last they agreed all to this man-  
saile. When Wisbeac mounted on his horse and rode forth  
to the French host without the castle, and came to Sir Ho-  
la Laiths who had the guiding of them, and they there toge-  
ther did conuene that same night all their host as close as  
as they could into the castle, so that none of the Emperours  
people espyed them, and they within the castle did rest then  
all that night, til it was nere on the point of the dale light,  
then they heard seruice, and after that ordered all their peo-  
ple, and the Duke of Britaine and all his companie kept  
the gate, and entered into the great vaults and sellers joy-  
ning thereto, and kept himselfe priuie and close without  
any noise, & in the market place of the towne was the Dol-  
phin and in another street the Carle of Hereford and the  
Carle of mount Beiliff, and in another corner the Carle of  
Hereford and the Carle of Hereford, and the young king of Fra-  
lagoes, master of the host, Arthur, Wisbeac, Sir Holand  
accompanied with five hundred other knights kept the  
passage to the palace, and Duke William and his men  
were in the palace with Florence and all the French men  
and all their companie there, and in the morning all the  
chambers, sellers, and vaults, and so kept themselves close  
without any noise making.

And so it was that the Emperour

in the morning when King Jonas saw the daie begin  
to spring, he leapt out of his bed and made to be cryed  
throughout all his host that euerie man should to harness,  
to the intent to make assault to the clere tower, then King  
Jonas assembled there together to the number of fiftene  
thousand persons, then there came to him a knight & sayd,  
Sir, Florence and all the French men are fled awate this  
same night priuie, for the gates of the Castle and towne  
standeth wide open, and the French men hath left behinde  
them much baggage ther as they were lodged without the  
towne. And when King Jonas heard that, hee had neuer so  
great joy before, and said: I knew wel that as soone as they  
knew that I would come against them, they durst not for  
their lines abide any longer, I am angry with nothing  
but that Florence shoulde thus escape vs, then hee caused a  
great horne to be sounded, then there assembled about him  
on horsebacke well to the number of forty thousand, & with  
great noise of Trumpeets, Labours, and Hornes, they rode  
to the Emperours Tent, who was as then risen out of his  
bed, and stode without his Tent, with great plentie of peo-  
ple about him, and as soone as King Jonas sawe him,  
hee alighted and sayde: Sir I am right sore displeased,  
for Florence and all the gallants of Fraunce are this night

pruuelle fledde awaie, I am sure Arthur hath lead them in-  
to his Countrie, but Sir and it please you mount on your  
horse and go ride to the Castle and take the possession ther-  
of, and so that you haue the conquest before King Emendus  
doth come, for when he is come you shall haue a great ad-  
uantage of him, for then he shall be without and faine to  
lodg in the field, and you shall bee at your ease within the  
towne and castle. And when the Emperour heard how that  
Florence was escaped from him, hee was nigh out of his  
minde for displeasure, then he demaunded for his barneys,  
and so armed him and diuerse other with him, so what of  
his companie and of king Jonas, there were to the number  
of fiftie thousand, so the Emperour rode forth with Ban-  
ners displaid, and with great noise of Trumpets, Hornes,  
and Tabours, and came to the first gate of the Castle, then  
there the Emperour sawe the foundation of the great wals  
the which were right high and thicke, and the greafe and  
deepe ditches full of water, and the gates richlie builded,  
mightie, and strong, and the sharpe cutting Hoyt-cullises  
of bright Steele, also he beheld the high and mighty Tow-  
ers pight full of wauering banes, then he praised the castle  
so much in his heart, that he woulde not giue it againe for  
all the golde of the world, and then he saide to King Jonas,  
verilie this Castle pleaseth mee right well, I shall make it  
my chamber, he said trulier then he was ware of, for there  
died he in great mischiese, and was buried in the Castle.  
Sir said Jonas, here you and I will take vp our lodgings,  
and thus oftentimes people speaketh of a thing that they  
knowe but little what the conclusion shall bee, then by ad-  
venture as the Emperour looked in at a window of the chiefe  
tower he had a blush of Florence, for as then hee was past  
the first gate and ward, then he sayd to her, a gentle Husell  
make good cheere, for verilie you haue the Emperour to your  
hoast. And when Florence heard him saie so her hart trem-  
bled for feare and sadnes, I wrote lone Arthur, it is now full  
this daie that you be the chiefe flower of all knights, I wote  
heart beliethe the truth of this Emperour, and by that  
time

time the Emperour with all his fiftie thousand were passed  
the gates and wards, and went come to the chiefe pallaice,  
then the noble and stout Duke of Britaine rusht out of his  
ambush, and lift vp the bridge and closed fast the gates, and  
did put out his standards ouer the wall of the gate into the  
castle ward, and caused to be blown a grillic Hoene, then  
knights leapt on horses and couriers, then Arthur came  
downe out of the chiefe dungeon hall mounted on horse  
backe, well armed, and cried, Britaine Saint Palo, then he  
broched to his horse, and with great randon he dresed him  
to the Emperour, and strake him so rudelie with his spere,  
that he bare downe Emperour horse and all in a heape,  
then Arthur had thought to haue taken him, but he might  
not the prease was so thicke. And when Arthur sawe that  
he was held so short with so great a number, he toke Cla-  
rence his good sword in his hand and did cut downe ther-  
with all that euer he attained vnto. And when King Alex-  
ander and his companie sawe the noble prowesse of Arthur  
they toke on them great hardinesse, then King Alexander  
ranne and encountered King Jonas so rudelie that he flew  
cleane ouer his horse crouper and his legges vpwarde, and  
with his fall he had almost ouerthrowen the Dolphin, who  
laide on with his sword as a man out of his wit, & when  
he sawe King Jonas make a foike with his legs vpwarde,  
he lift vphis sword and strake him betweene the legges  
so rudelie, that his right legge flew cleane into the fiede,  
and sayd, goe thy waie thou dotting soile couer thine arse for  
shame, shame haue thou, and ther this King Jonas was all  
to be troden with horse feete, and the Emperour was so  
bused with his fall, that nigh the chine of his backe was  
broken a sunder, and so was laide vnder a vine tre on his  
shield and could not stirre to helpe himselfe. When all the  
Carles and the Lord Beaurin, Sir de la Rounde, and Wise-  
bar, vash into the prease, and did there such valiantnesse in  
armes, that they did in a manner with their enemies what  
they did themselves, for they were nere hand discomfited  
because of the fault of their Captaines, and so then they had  
thought





be, and as God help me if we were halfe as manye more people as we be here alreddie we could not endure against them, they order their battailes in so goodlie a manner. Hold your peace sir Earle said king Flozipes, & if you be afrard he awaie, for as God help me as some as mundaie is come I shall neither eate nor drinke till I haue againe my brother the Emperour, and put them al to death by the sword, then he sent for all the noble men of the host and chiefe captaines, and toke their faith and trowth to helpe him in his quarrell. When king Alexander and all his companie returned againe to the Castle and alighted at the gate, and there Florence met them and conuained them by in the palace, and then she demanded of them the cause why they returned againe so soon without battaile. As she said the Duke, it is so that king Flozipes hath desired of vs truce till mundaie next comming, the which wee haue graunted him. In the name of God said Florence so be it, so then kerie man unarmed them throughout all the Castle, and after they went and visited the Emperour and kept him company, howbeit he was sore empaired because of the hurt that he had. Now let vs leaue to speake of them, & returne to Gouvernar that was going on message into the Realme of Sorolois to king Emendus.

How Gouvernar went into the Realme of Sorolois, to the intent to giue knowledge to king Emendus how that the Emperour had besieged his daughter Florence in her castle of Cleere tower, desiring him to hast his host to rescue her at that time. Cap. 105



When y Gouvernar was departed from Blaunch tower as you haue heard before afoze, he rode so long till at last hee arrived at the faire Cittie of Walestine, & there he heard tidings of y mighty king Emendus, how that he had knowledge y the Emperour had besieged his daughter in her Castle of Blaunch tower, wherefoze he assembled his hosts together as fast as he might, to the intent to rescue Florence his daughter

daughter, and there it was shewed him how that the chiefe gouvernour of his host was the king of Orquenie, who was put to the way ward with thirtie thousand halberts, & after him the king of Normall with other thirtie thousand, & then the king of Walestine with other thirtie thousand, & then the king of Ismaelite with other thirtie thousand, and then y mighty king Emendus with an hundred thousand in his companie, & then there were of Duke Philips companie fiftene thousand, & of y Ladie Margarets of Argenton's companie fiftene thousand, who were brought by sir Emerie. And when Gouvernar heard these tidings hee was right ioyfull, and so mounted on his horse, and rode so long till he came within a daies iourney of the Cittie of Cornute, then he encountred y king of Orquenes banner with a right noble companie, and so rode forth and passed by all those great routs, at last he spied sir Ansel newe to sir Pernelon, Florence marshall, & each of them embraced other, & so to them ther came sir Rowland of Wygoz, and sir Wiceer of Damason, and sir Artaude, and sir Porice of Frence, and all these were Florence knights, and knew well Gouvernar and made to him great cheere, and at last y king of Orquenie came to them, and he embraced Gouvernar, and to him made right great feast & cheere, then Gouvernar did alight, but the king made him to remount againe, and demanded of him how Arthur did. Sir qd Gouvernar, he is at Blaunch tower, there I left him, and with him Duke Hector, Wicsebar, and master Steuen, sir it is so that the Emperour hath besieged Florence in the Castle, and he hath with him people without number, & he had inclosed y castle round about ere we entered, howbeit we entred by the subtil wit of master Steuen, but sir I am sure there is by this time w Arthur the most noble companie of all the world, for hee hath brought with him out of his countrie the king of Malagoze and foure cayles, and foure barons, & also the mightie duke of Britaine his olde father, and they are well to the number of xv. knights of fraunce of great price and valure, wherefoze I think by this time they haue made some maner of

of skirmish toled their enemies, for they are braver knights  
and couragious; and it is grente meruile if they live thus  
long till. Pea said the king, is Arthur then of that vertue  
and strength that he hath brought with him such people, as  
God helpe mee, I am right ioyfull thereof, now it shall bee  
well known if he be an Orphanie in his owne Countre or  
not. Sir sayd Gouvernar, hee heartelie doth salute you, and  
desireth you to haue your people as fast as you can towarde  
him for the rescuing of Florence. With a right good will  
sayd the king, with Gods grace we shall be ther by wednes-  
deie next comming at night, let vs goe and speake with my  
Lord the king of Bozolois, so they passed forth by the great  
hoasts, and Gouvernar saide, behold I thinke heere bee all  
the world of people, then much people demanded tidings  
of Arthur, and so did all the kinges in their owne proper  
persons, and so at last they approached y great host of king  
Emendus, and passed forth by all the great routes till they  
came to king Emendus, and as soone as he sawe Gouvernar  
his heart reioyced in his booke, and embraced him and de-  
maunded tidings of Arthur: Sir said Gouvernar, I left him  
at the Blaunche tower, and there he recounted to the king  
how that they entered into the Castle, and shewed him how  
that Arthur had brought with him out of his Countre the  
most noble companie of all the world, and also his father  
the Duke of Britaine, and there hee shewed the names of  
them all, both of the king, earles, and Barons, whereof the  
king had great ioye, then the king of Diquenie sayde, Sir  
your daughter is not ill bestowed, I thinke he will defend  
her right well against the emperour. What is true quoth  
the king, but is there any grente companie with these no-  
ble men. Pea Sir saide quoth Gouvernar, for ere I depar-  
ted from them they had discomfited the Doublan and also  
his brother, with thirtie thousand Barons of his compa-  
nie. What is a great thing quoth the king. Sir quoth Go-  
uernar, Arthur desireth your grace to aduance your host  
as fast as you can, and now Sir I will returne againe  
to Blaunche tower, for I thinke long to knowe the state of  
my

my Lord Arthur, and so tooke his leaue. Goe your waie  
friend quoth the king, and salute from mee my Daughter  
Florence and Arthur, and al such as be come with him, and  
thanke them on my behalfe for comming into this Coun-  
tre to the aiding of my daughter. When the Archbisshope  
embraced Gouvernar, and so Gouvernar departed, and hee &  
the king of Diquenie went together to his host. And when  
Sir Anleam of Malefount knew that Gouvernar woude de-  
part againe he said to y king of Diquenie, sir my ladie Flo-  
rence is besieged, wherefore I will by your licence go with  
Gouvernar, and see my Lord mine vnckle who is with Ar-  
thur. When they passed forth Sir Miles and Sir Rowland of Wy-  
goe and Sir Micer, and Sir Artaude, and Sir Mozante,  
and they all demanded licence of the king to goe with Go-  
uernar, and he gaue them all licence, then they tooke theyr  
harnais and mounted on their horses and went sooth on  
their waie, and passed all the hoasts.

How Arthur accompanied with the French men dis-  
comfited king Floripes, brother to the Emperour,  
and slew all them that were in his companie,  
Chap. 106.

It was that the next daie after that the truse was ta-  
ken Arthur rose vp earlie in the morning and entred into  
the pallace, and ther he found the Dolphin and the Lord de  
la Lound, and so each of them did salute other, then y Dol-  
phin sayd, verilie it anoieth me greatlie thus long to be clo-  
sed in a citie, I would gladdie goe and sport me abroad in  
the field, but first let vs goe take our harnais with vs be-  
cause our enemies be so nere vs, and so they all thre didde  
arme them, and Bzisebar also, and mounted on their horses  
and issued out at the gates, & rode downe by a faire valley  
by the river side, till they were wel the space of a mile and a  
half from the citie, then y Dolphin beheld well y pleasant  
riuer & the goodly meadows on both sides, & praised much the  
countre in his mind, then he dashed his spurs into his horse  
and

and galoped downe along by the river side tyl he came to a  
thicke wood, and when he had thought to have returned a-  
gaine, he perceived a knight armed issuing out of the same  
wood mounted on a good horse, and came renning towardes  
him by great randon, and when the dolphin saw him he en-  
countred him with such force that the knight brake his spere  
but the Dolphin strake him so rudely that he put his spere  
through his body, and so the knight fell downe dead. When  
Arthur sayde to his company, I see well the Dolphin is a  
knight of great valure, and had scant finished his wordes  
but that he perceived issuing out of the wood King Clama-  
dos with two hundred in harnesse with him comming a-  
gainst the dolphin with great fiercenesse, and when the dol-  
phin saw that he dasyt to his horse and toke his sword and  
strake so the first that he claued him downe to the teeth, than  
all the remnaunt ran on him at all sides, but then Arthur  
rasyt into the prease, and the first that he encountred he dasyt  
his spere cleane through his body so farre that he wounded  
an other knight that was behynd him nye to the death, then  
he dreynt out his sword and layde on among them that wer  
in hand with the Dolphin, and gaue among them so great  
strokes that he cut of armes, heads, and legges, and beate  
downe knyghtes and claued asunder sheldes and made great  
place afoze him, for none appoched nere him but that he re-  
ceiued death, also the dolphin dyd as nobly as any knight  
could doe, and Arthur beheld him, and vnder his helme dyd  
laugh at his noble valure, then Wysebar and sir de la lounde  
dasyt in to the prease so rudely that eche of them beat downe  
his enemye, than they layde out with their swordes like two  
hynde Lions. And when the King claudius saw his people  
so slayne with till, he was right sorrowfull & replet  
with pte and said if the other french men be like these some  
all the world cannot endure against them but by the faith  
that I owe vnto the Emperour I shall ryd one of them out  
of this mortal pte, and there with he lift up his sword and  
strake Wysebar so rudely that the gentle knight was nye  
stryken downe, so he dyd with the Frenchmen on his  
knees

knees, then there fell on him so many folkes that they dreynt  
him downe to the earth. And when the Lord de la Lounde  
sawe that he began for to crie as fast as might, help Arthur  
for Wysebar is else lost, then the Dolphin espied that and  
rasyt into the thickest of the prease, and hee and sir de la  
Lounde did as much as they could to rescue Wysebar, but it  
availed them not, for there were too many on him, and so he  
was taken prisoner and deliuered to twentie men to keepe,  
and they ledde him forth out of the host right rudely, and  
they vnrmed him and did beate him right ill. And when  
Arthur knew that Wysebar was taken and lead out of the  
field, he was right sorrowfull and soze displeased, then hee  
dasyt into the prease so rudely that he confounded all that  
euer he attained vnto, and claued a sunder sheldes, and vn-  
barred healmes, and vnnailed haultberts, and cut off heads,  
hands, and armes, and threwe downe knyghtes, for none a-  
kode him without death, so that all fled befoze him, and hee  
and the Dolphin and sir de la Lounde held themselves euer  
together in one front. And all this season Wysebar was led  
forth of the field till they came to the foote of a great moun-  
taine, beating and ill intreating of Wysebar their priso-  
ner, but it was not long after till they were displeased and  
sorrowfull, for within a little after they dranke of the same  
cup, for Couernar, sir Ansell, sir Miles, sir Rowland, sir Mi-  
tier, sir Artude, and sir Moxant the same time descended  
downe this same mountaine, for they were comming out  
of the Realme of Scytholoy as you haue heard befoze. And  
when that Couernar sawe those people deale so foule with  
Wysebar, his blood trembled in his bodie for feare of Ar-  
thur, for then he doubted that the Blaunch tower had bene  
taken and destroyed, and his Lord Arthur dead, then hee  
said to sir Rowland, by Saint Marie I doubt me greatly  
of my Lord Arthur, for yonder is some of our company that  
is taken prisoner, therefore gentle knyghtes helpe to  
rescue him whosoener it bee, then Couernar rode forth  
with great randon, and when he appoched nere to them,  
A.ii. be

he knew right wel how that it was Wysebar that was taken prisoner; than he set his hand on his sword and layd on among them lyke a wolfe among a many of shepe and dyd cut downe and slew all befoze him, so within a while all the xx. knyghtes were all slayne, than Gouvernar came to Wysebar and sayde, a friend it semeth well this people dyd neuer mourish you by that thus foule & shamefully haue dealt with you; whereof I am right sorry, and so lased him out of bandes. And when Wysebar sawe him he had right great ioy and sayde, a friend euer at neede a man shall knowe his friend; but for gods sake hast you to help my Lozde Arthur who is at great mischiese here by this riuer side, for as help me God I am moze sorry for him than for my selfe.

And when Gouvernar heard that he galoped forth incontinent and all his company after them, and as sone as they came to their enemies they found the lord de la lound ouerthrowen to the earth and taken prisoner, and was leading forth, and therewith Gouvernar layde on round about him, and his company with him, and they bet downe knyghts on euery side, than Gouvernar toke a horse and deliuered it to sir de la lounde, and in the spite of all his enemies he made him to remount, and then Gouvernar went all about seeking of Arthur, and sir Rowlande with him, and at the last they found him in the thickest of the pree, where as he did maruailes in armes, and the dolphin did help him to the best of his power. And when Gouvernar sawe him he dasyt in among them and frusshed downe all that euer he attained unto, for he was a maruailous good knight and of great vertue, and sir Rowlande and his fellows did help them to their powers, and Gouvernar went befoze dooing great meruailes. And when Arthur sawe him his hart quickened and toke great pittie of the paine and labour that he sawe him take and endure so long, and therewith he layd on moze rudelie than he had done befoze of all the day, for such was his maner the moze he had to doe the moze grew euer his strength and hardnesse.

Then came in sir Wysebar well armed and hoysed,  
for

for he had bene befoze at a good market where as he hadde choise of the best, and he bare downe his enemies befoze him by great hepes. And when king Clamados sawe his people so discomfited he tourned him selfe to fye & said to a knight that was by him, go & hast you to thempours hoast and bring with you iii. C. howbertes to succour me, and so the knyght rode as fast as he might till he came to king Floripes and to king Brandolyn who were seeking all about the hoast for king Clamados, but they could here nothing of him, wherewith they were greatly displeased, and at last the knight messenger came to them and saide to king Floripes, gentil king hast you to succour the noble king Clamados who is yonder by the riuer side, and he and his company are fighting with x. Frenchmen, who I think are out of their mindes, I beleue they be not earthly people, but rather sendes of hell, who are come for to destroy vs all, for I am sure they haue slaine by this time nye two hundred of the best knyghts of king Clamados, and sir king Clamados his selfe is wounded in fye places of his bodie, and without ye hast you the faster he is but either dead or taken. Merely friend saide king Floripes, and how is it they haue not slaine all these French men sith they be but x. persons. Slayne sir said the knight, nay speke not thereof, but sir praye to God to keepe you from mischiese, and that they appoach not to nere you when ye shall inoble with them, for ther is none that appoacheth to the with out death, sir hast you or els ye wil lese your good king Clamados, than king Floripes commaunded a great grisly bozne to be blowen, than at the hoast armed them hastily and mounted on their horses and toke their speres and shields and made so great bruite & noise that duke Philip as he was in the castel herd them, and looked out at a window and saw all the hoast arming them and mounting on their horses.

Then it was shewed him how that Arthur and the Dolphin, sir de la lound, and sir Wysebar were issued out of the castel all armed and were ridden downe by the ryuer side, and when he saw all the people of the hoast drawing the

ther lordes, hee thought well that there was some feale toward, wherefore he feared greatlie Arthur and his companie; then he shuted the great watch house of the Castle so he bleweth the tipples, so that it was heard throughout the towne and Castle; whereby euery man knew well that there was some new twinges, wherefore they armed them and mounted on their horses; then all the Barres, Lordes, and Knights did arme them and mounted on their horses, saving the Duke of Britaine, King Alexander, and the master, who as then were not risen out of their beddes, and all these Lordes and Knights with Banners displayed issued out of the castle, and they were welnigh to y number of fiftene thousand in foure battailes well ranged and in good order, and they rode downe a long by the River side, and Duke Philip rode foremost, till at last he met with the first companie of the Emperours host, and they encountered rudelie together; and so both parties euer increased, so that there was betweene them a greate mortall battaile, and a fierce, the Emperines were foztie thousand, and the other parte were but fiftene thousand, howbeit they slew manie of their enemies, and King Bandalyn was chiefe gouernour of the Emperours host, and in this meane season Arthur and his fellows did so much that they cleane discomfited all King Clamados companie; then King Clamados was right soze displeased and ranne at Arthur, and strake him on the white shield, soz he thought that he would sette little by all his losse so that he might ouer come him, but the stroke rebounded again without doing of anie hurt, soz the shield was too hard soz him to empaire it, and when the king sawe that he was nigh madde soz anger, and therewith gaue Arthur another greate stroke, but it auayled him nothing, then Arthur strake at the king, who was afraid of his stroke, and thought to stoppe a little a while, but it was too late, soz Arthur light so on him, y he cleane his shield cleane a sunder in the midst, and the stroke entered into his shoulder, and strake cleane off the arme from his bodie, and as the sword did glauce downe, it was also cleane away the

the crosse of his legges, and when the king sawe that he was so soze wounded, he turned him and fled away as fast as hee might, and ten other with him, soz there was no more left alive of his two hundred men, and yet they were all maymed and hurt, then King Clamados stode till he came to the remnant of the Emperours host, whereis he founde King Floripes, and there he fell down before him and said, A gentle king why doe you carrie thus long, that you take not vengeance on these French gluttons who haue thus araid thee, wherefore King hast you a succour our people, when King Floripes sawe him in y case hee was right soz, soz full and swore a great oath and said that he would neuer take till he had the heads of them that had thus ill araided him and broken the truse, then he commaunded hoznes and Trumpets to be blown; so that euery man within the host did arme them, and mounted on their horses, & made great noise and hute, so that the Duke of Britaine as hee was in his chamber within the Castle heard well the great noise, & then he demaunded of his seruants what it might be.

Sir said they, verilie it is our company that are fighting without in the field with the Emperours host, soz Sir all the Lordes of this castle are issued out, saving you & King Alexander, whom I think he yet in his bed. By Saint Parris said the Duke, it is not my Banner there among them. No trulle Sir nor none of your men. And quoth the Duke I leaue mine honour this date, get me my barneis, and so hee stilled he armed him, and then he entered into the chamber where the King Alexander was, & recounted to him all this matter, then the king was right soze that he had not gone forth with the host, so then he armed him & all his, & mounted on their horses, and so in good ordinance they issued out with banners displayed, and rush into the battaile to helpe their companie, and when Arthur and his nine fellows had discomfited cleane King Clamados & his company, he thought there had ben no more to do at y time, & so then he demaunded if anie of his companie were hurt and soze wounded.

And they all saide, that blessed be God there was none of them that had anye great hurt, and therewith they heared great noise and dashing together with speares and swords, and heard crying Britaine. Well saide Arthur, I beleue that our companie of the Castle be fighting with the host without, wherefore let vs goe helpe them, and by that time they had ridden a little waie forth, they sawe whereas the battaile was right fierce and cruell. When Wisebar espied whereas King Flozipes came towardes them with an hundred thousand men, and so shewed them to Arthur and sayd: Gentle knight and noble Lorde, and our chiefe soueraigne Lorde, now it is needfull that you shew your noble valure in this iourney, for Sir beholde yonder cometh King Flozipes and all the world of men with him. A noble king Emendus how is it that you come not to succour this noble companie.

Friend said Governar, bee you certaine that you shall haue by him shortly the noble helpe and succour, let vs leane our talking and goe on our enemies, for as God helpe me I shall once goe through them or else I shall lie on the ground in the quarrell, for I doubt not death. Well Sirs saide Arthur, doubt not for all the world as long as I live, but Sirs holde you ever close nere me, for I promise you, you shall see me overthrow so many knightes that it shall be trouble to you to number them, let vs goe on them for we tarrie too long. Sir sayde the Dolphin, doubt you not of vs, for as long as we live we shall neuer faile you, therewith they dacht into the parrase and overthrowe knightes by great heaps, but speciallie Arthur did wonderfullie, for he was there as fresh as though he had done nothing of all the daye before. When we will leane them fighting and returne to master Steuen in the castle, who knew nothing of all this matter.

How master Steuen by his art and cunning caused the Emperours to goe meeting with Arthur, and

and so encountered the king Emendus and all his host.  
Chap. 107.

So it was that when master Steuen had layen in his bed as long as it pleased him, then he arose and went into the hall, and there hee founde Flozence and the Lable Margaret, and then he hadde great meruaile that he saw no bodie else, and demanded of them where all the noble companie were become. And Flozence answered him and saide, A gentle master now is such busines come that we haue great need of your help, for Arthur and all his companie are without fighting with the Emperours host, who are an hundred thousand, & our companie are but eightene thousand, and although our Flozipes is comming on them with an other hundred thousand, wherefore by all likelihoode our people will be destroyed, wherefore gentle master as you be sonne to a king helpe now our noble chivalrie by your learning. And when the master heard these tidings hee went to his chamber and toke his booke, and did so much by his cunning, that he raised a great mist in King Flozipes host, so that each of them could scarce see other, whereby they lost their high waie to come on Arthur and his companie, and toke the straight waie that the King of Drenie and the greates host of the mightie King Emendus was comming, ere they with their hostes were nere together, then the King of Drenies host spied and knew well by their Banners and Standards that they were of their enemies, then they ranne to their harneis and led their hostes, and mounted on them, and the good King of Drenie was cleane armed and well mounted on a greates mightie horse, and rode for most of all his companie, the which was well to the number of thirtie thousand, and next after him came the king of Normat with thirtie thousand. And when they were nere to their enemies, then the King of Drenie ranne against King Wandalin, who brake his speare all to peeces, but the noble King of Drenie strake him so ribellie that he fell over his horse and his legges upward.

upward, so that he was a great space for dead on the earth, but at last he was receiued by his people, then beganne the battaile right cruell and fierce on both partes, and the king of Diquenie and the king of Morzmall did right valiantlie, Now let vs returne to master Stephen, who after that he went out of his chamber and had caused this greafe with to be in the Emperours hoast, he armed him and went downe into the Court of the palace, and there he found ready a great and a mightie black houle, with rebbs even sparkling as fire, the which houle had neuer tasted powder, and was bare on all four sides, for he was neuer shooke, and then the master incontinentlie mounted on him, and as soone as the master was on his back he sodainly handled a waile, for at Florence noz none that wer with her knele in prayer, he was become, and sodainlie he was borne into the hoast, where as Arthur was fighting with his enemies, and as soone as the master was there, he blew such a blast that ther arose such a winde and storme in the Emperours hoast, that they lost thereby halfe their strength and hardnesse, then the master with his sword in his hand dacht into the preele, & gaue many great strokes, but his horse with his feet both before and behinde gaue such strokes, that he ouerthrew whosoever he touched, so that there was none that approached nere him, but that the horse would run on him with open mouth, and devour him, so that euery man fledde a waile before the master, for feare of his horse, the horse would toyne together his tale and leape into the middell of the preele, and there he would lay on with his feete both before and behinde, and bite with his teeth, so that he claue a sunder shields, & hurt a sunder heales, so that none durst abide him, and Arthur and his company when they saw the master and his horse, they laughed at him a great pace, then the four earles and the Barons made place before them, and specially Arthur, above all other did meruailes in armes, and in conclusion they did so much that their enemies fledde before them, and they followed after them, and slawe so many of them that they were all cleane discomfited, for they saw well they

had no succour, and hadde great meruaile where the king Flozipes with his hoast was betome, that he came not to succour them, then Arthur caused a great horn to be blowen and called together his people about king Alexander, and so then tooke counsaile to retourne againe to the Blaunch tower, then they sawe the master comming to them from the high mountaine on his horse braying like the wind, and when he was come to them he said, Sirs quite your selues well, and shew that you be noble men, come out of the gentle Countrie of Fraunce, for it is so that the noble king of Diquenie and the king of Morzmall are beyond yonder mountaine fighting with king Flozipes, and there are but forty thousand against an hundred thousand, wherfore they are soze ouermatched, for Gods sake let vs goe and succour them. And when Arthur heard that he was as fiers of hart as a raging Lyon, and sayd to king Alexander, gentle king let vs goe shortly and helpe these gracious kings, certainly I had rather die then they shoulde suffer anie hurt, one of them is cosin Germaines to the faire Florence. Certainlie friend Arthur said the king, I am content with al my hart, then they called their people together and went forth with good ordinaunce and Banner displayed, and such as were wounded and hurt returned to the Blaunch Tower, and so they rode forth such waie as the master lead them, til at last they came to the battaile, then the master dacht his spurs to his horse and rode into the hoast, then his horse beganne to fight with his feete, and to bite with his teeth, then Arthur and his company did laugh at him, then Arthur, Duke Philip, and Gouvernar dacht into the preele, and the first that Arthur encountered withall he strake him so rudely that he claue him to the shoulders, and from another hee took his head, and so he laide on round about him, and founded all that euer he attained vnto, then the good king Alexander and the noble Duke of Britaine and all other Lords rusht into the preele, then there began a fierce battaile. And when the Dolphin saw the noblenesse of Arthur and his companie, he tooke on him thereby great hardines, then

then he breched his horse with the spurs and dast into the  
prease, and his enemies assailed him on all partes, but he de-  
fended him lyke a good knight, but there were so manie a-  
gainst him that they slew his horse vnder him, then he leapt  
on his feete and slew and brane downe many knights with  
his sword, but at last for all that ever he could doe he was  
taken prisoner, and when Gouvernar saw that he dast into  
the prease, and the first that he encountered he claued him to  
the teeth, and from another he strake off the arme harde by  
the shoulder, and so laide on round about him, and after  
him went Sir Peuelon and Sir Rowland of Bygo, and  
didde right valiauntlie, but there were on them moze  
then fortie, and they helde them so short that they  
could not aide the Dolphin, and when Sir Brisebar sawe  
his companie in that case, then he went into the prease and  
closed himselfe iust to Gouvernar, and betweene them they  
slew many of their enemies, for they kept them so close to-  
gether that no man could part them, at last master Stenech  
sawe them in that case, he rusht in with his horse and did  
such wonders, what with his handes and with his horse,  
that his enemies fledde from his strokes and sayde, shame  
haue such a Juggeler that hath taught his horse thus to  
daunce, let vs flie from this feast, shame haue he that giueth  
him any thing, we are but dead and we abide him, therefore  
let vs leaue him, hanged may he be that brought him into  
this Countrie, therewith they departed and fledde awaie  
from the Dolphin, then one knight came againe to the  
Dolphin, and caused him againe to mount on a new horse,  
and did put themselves againe into the battaile, then Sir  
Ansell strake so rudelie a knight that he fell downe Marke  
dead.

And when king Brandalin sawe that he was right soze  
displeased, and strake Sir Ansell so rudelie that he put his  
sword cleane throughout his bodie moze then a spanne,  
therewith the gentle knight fell downe to the earth right  
dolorous hurt and wounded. And when Duke Hector  
sawe that he was right soze displeased, for he thought he  
had

had bene dead, then hee ranne at king Brandalin, & strake  
him with his sword so furiously that he made his head flie  
to the earth and saide, Unhappie king thou hast taken  
from vs a right noble knight, but now thou hast paid for  
the mends I claime thee as quit, then the King of Que-  
nis who had well scene Hector doe that dede, he said, a gen-  
tle knight blessed be that wombe that bare thee, for verilie  
you can well reuenge your friend, then there began greete  
sorrowe in the Emperours host for king Brandalin, then  
much people of them drew together to beare the dead king  
out of the battaile, and Arthur caused sir Ansell to be borne  
to the Blaunch tower to florence, and there his woundes  
to be searched.

And when flozipes heard tidings that king Brandalin  
was slaine, and sawe his people so slaine and wounded, hee  
was so sorrow angrie and nigh out of his minde, and ther-  
with he ranne at a knight of the king of Pozmall with a  
great speare, and pearced him cleane throughout the bodie,  
and so he fell downe dead, and with his sword he strake of  
the head of another, and the third he ridde out of his lyfe.  
And when the gentle king of Pozmall sawe his people so  
slaine, he ranne at king flozipes and gaue him a greete  
stroke on the sheld, but the stroke did him but litle hurt, but  
then the king flozipes gaue him such a stroke that he claued  
his shoulder downe to the saddle, and therewith hee fell  
downe dead, then began there great sorrow among his com-  
panie, for he was a right noble and gentle king. And when  
Arthur sawe that he was neuer so sorrowfull before for a-  
ny thing that euer came vnto him, and therewith in a  
great rage he beganne to flourish with Clarence his good  
sword, & gaue king flozipes such a stroke on high on the  
helme, that he claued him cleane a sunder downe to the sad-  
dle, so that he fell a sunder in two parts, and when his peo-  
ple sawe that they were so abashed that they had no power  
longer to defend themselves but litle, so then Arthur and  
Hector drew of them euen as they list, so thus they were  
cleane discomfited, and so they fled awaie and saued them-  
selves

selues as well as they might. When the gentle King of *Orquenie* came to the place whereas the dead bodie of the noble king of *Ormall* laye, and wept for sorrow and sayde, certainlie my heart is heauie for your death, a gentle King of *Ormall*, this warre was euill begun for you, all truth vountie, and beautie was in you, certainelie he had a hard heart that thus slew you, therewith hee alighted from his horse, then king *Alexander* came to him and all the other *Dukes*, *Carles*, *Barons*, and noble *Knights*, and they all made right great sorrowe, then they dressed sooth the dead bodie and did send it to the *Blaunch tower*. And when *Florence* heard of the great sorrow that they made, she was in greate feare of *Arthur*, and the *Ladie Margaret* hadde great doubt of the matter, till at last shee was certified that it was for the death of the King of *Ormall*, whereof shee was right sorrowfull, and caused the dead bodie royallie to be laide on a rich *Beere* in the middell of the *Duere* of the Church.

Then the King of *Orquenie* sent to the mightie King *Emendus* foure *Knights* in message, certifying him howe that they hadde a grente battaile, wherein the good king of *Ormall* was slaine, and of the *Emperours* part how that King *Brandalyn*, king *Clamedos*, and king *Flozipes* be al thre slaine, and the *Carle* of the *Ile Perdue* taken prisoner and maimed for ever, and so then these messengers departed, and then the king of *Orquenie* caused his Tent to be pitcht by a little beside where as the battaile was, there to abide the coming of king *Emendus*, and kept still in his companie the king *Alexander* of *Palagoze*, and the *Duke* of *Britaine*, and the *Carles* and *Barons* returned to the *Blaunch tower* to keep it, and to beare companie with *Florence*.

How the Emperour died in prison for sorrowe when he knew that his Kings and people were all slaine and discomfited.

Chap. 108.

So it was that when the king of *Ormall*s bodie was brought into the Church within the Castle, there was made great sorrow in all the cite and castle, insomuch that the *Emperour* as he lay in his bedde soze sicke, he heard the great sorrowe that was made without in the Castle, for he empaired euerie daie moze and moze, and as he laye, then he demaunded what it was, and wherfoze that great noise without was made, and then it was shewed him how that it was because of the death of the King of *Ormall*, who was slaine by king *Flozipes*. Then said the *Emperour*, and how doth king *Flozipes*, I charge you tell mee the truth. Sir said hee, for Gods sake enquire no more of that matter till you be perfectlie whole, I will not said the *Emperour*, I will know it, but then he said to a subiect of his owne that was ther with him, I charge thee to tel me the plaine truth, Sir sith it please you I shall tell you the plaine truth, it is so indeed that all your people are destroyed, and your brother king *Flozipes*, and all your other kings are all slaine, and when the *emperour* heard that he had so great sorrow, that he closed his teeth together and cast his handes abroad, and therewith his heart did rive a sunder, and so died for sorrow, and then such as were about him made a greate crie, then *Florence* and the *Duke* of *Britaine* went into the same chamber, and there they found the *Emperour* dead, then the *Duke* of *Britaine* sent for king *Alexander*, and the king of *Orquenie*, and for all the other *Lordes* and *Barons*, and when they were all together then they apparailled the *Emperours* bodie, and conuaided it to Church, and laid him by the king of *Ormall*, and also thether was brought the bodie of king *Flozipes*, and laid by them, then incontinentlie there went a messenger to king *Emendus*, and by that time the first messengers were come to king *Emendus* and said to him, Sir the *Emperour* is in prison and all his hostes discomfited, and all his kinges dead and slaine, then the king demaunded who hadde done those noble deedes, Sir sayde hee, as God helpe vs that hath such *Knights* done as *Arthur* brought hether with him,

for Sir in all your life you neuer sawe such knightes noz  
more to be doubted, ther is nothing that can endure against  
them, but Sir all the world speaketh of Arthur and his co-  
sin Hector, for Arthur all onelie by his noble prowesse hath  
made an end of all his enemies, howbeit Sir there is one  
great mischiese fallen into your grace, for the good king of  
Morzmal is slaine by king Flozipes, but incontinentlye  
Arthur slew him and claus him a sunder in peeces, & when  
king Emendus heard of the death of his good king, he could  
speake no word of a great space, and when he might speak  
he sayd: A gentle knights heart true and honourable to all  
people, alas that I have thus lost you, certainlie it soze  
thinketh me, a Emperour shame have you sir you have ta-  
ken from me my noble and true companion, certainlie I  
shall take vengeance on you as soone as I shall see you,  
and as he was thus talking there came to him the last mes-  
senger, & sayd: Sir the king of Morzmal doth certifie you  
that the Emperour is dead. And howe is he dead quoth the  
king, certainlie Sir quoth the knight, when he heard of the  
death of his brother king Flozipes, and of his other kings,  
and that his host was cleane discomfited, he died for sorow  
as he that was soze sick befoze because of the hurt that he had  
in his backe. Well quoth the king, then I am reuenged on  
him for my king, howbeit I would he were alive againe &  
all his, so that I had againe my good king of Morzmal, goe  
your waie againe to the king of Morzmal, and saye that I  
desire him to ordeine all things in a readinesse to burie the  
bodies of the Emperour and of the king of Morzmal, of king  
Flozipes, of king Branpallin, and of king Clamedos, and  
show him how that I will bee to morrowe next coming  
with him, there to do the obseruance of their burying, then  
the king sayde to his brother the Archbishop, deere brother  
goe to the Blanch tower, and provide right diligently for  
the burying of these kings according to the rites, and  
your selfe this night take the obseruance that belongeth to  
their obsequies, and by Gods licence shall be that to morrowe  
row by service time.

Sir

Sir sayd the Bishop, I shall fulfill your commaundement  
with a right good will, and so he departed and went to the  
Blanch tower, and then Florence came to him and sayde,  
mine owne good knicle and friend you be right hartly wel-  
come, then the king of Morzmal and king Alexander, and  
all other, Charles and Barons welcommed him, and when  
he was chaunged, he and all his garbe together went to the  
Church, and there the Bishop did all the obseruance and all  
the ceremonies, and there was ordained five rich Bares,  
and five rich crowns of gold hanging over them with ban-  
ners and coats armours, beaten with the coulours of theyr  
armes, and when the Bishop had done all the service over  
the bodies, then they returned againe to the Wallace and so  
rested them till the next daie.

How that King Emendus came to the Blanch tower  
with all his noble companie, to the burying of the  
Emperour and of the other foure kings. Chap. 109.

The next daie betimes king Emendus and all his host  
mounted on their horses, & took the waie to the Blanch  
Tower, and commaunded that all his host should goe in  
good ordinaunce as they were wont to doe, with banners  
and standards displayed as though they shoulde enter into  
a battaile if neede were, and then he sent for the king of  
Morzmal to the Blanch tower, and for all his host, and  
as soone as the king of Morzmal knew of the king Emen-  
dus pleasure hee departed from the Blanch tower and  
went to the king, then incontinentlie the king commaun-  
ded him that he shuld arme him and all his, for he said that  
he would that the French men shoulde see the fiercenesse of  
his power, so then the king of Morzmal and his companie  
went into the soze front, & in this manner the king Emen-  
dus came toward the Blanch tower like a mightie puissant  
king, to the intent that he shoulde be the moze praised of the  
French lords, & there was leaning at a window of the castle  
Florence, king Alexander, the Archbisshope and the Duke  
of

of Britaine together, ever thinking of the coming of this  
 Gwendur, and at other times when there was a fight, be-  
 toz Duke Philip and the four Carles and four Barons,  
 and the Dolphin, and the marshall of France, and all the  
 other knights of France, and at last they laid downing  
 downe a great hill the banner of Dauphine waivering with  
 the winde, bearing the shield of gold enrailed with a  
 fure, a barre of gold with a Lion rampant of gold, & then  
 they heard Trumpets, Drumes, and Labours blowing me-  
 rillie, then they sawe cross-bowes and moyle pikes on foot  
 to a great number, and knights on horsebacke well rai-  
 ged and in good ordinaunce, with many standards and Ci-  
 ners waivering with the winde, greene bozles braying and  
 beating with their teete, halbes and helmes shining against  
 the sunne, and then next after came the host of the good  
 King of Poymall weeping and making great sorrow with-  
 out anie Banner saving a little gitrene of bendal of black  
 colour, & euerie knight of that companie bare theyr speares  
 & the heads downward, & the small end of their sheldes up-  
 ward. And when the Archbishop sawe them coming in that  
 manner, he had so great pittie he wept for sorrow, & Flo-  
 rence also could not keep her selfe from weeping, & all other  
 had great pittie of y<sup>e</sup> companie, for it seemed well to them  
 they wer right sorrowful & without a Lord. And after these  
 people came the King of Iudahe with his banner dis-  
 played, wherein was beaten a liure of passing a fure cro-  
 ned with gold, barred with dobores de Luces of silver, their  
 people wer of a fierce countenance, & made great noise with  
 boznes & tabours, and they rode in good ordinaunce wel ran-  
 ged in battail. After them came the Banner of Aragon,  
 bearing a liure de Azur, & a liure atined with gold, on a  
 hoile of muer, and Sir Gomer was chiefe leader of that  
 companie, and so came the Lady Margaret with her ban-  
 ner, the raise to Florence, Madame my people haue not yet  
 forgotten you. While the Duke of Britaine, the Duke of  
 Burgundie, the Duke of Normandie, and the Duke of  
 right good Lord, and the Duke of Burgundie, the Duke of  
 right good Lord, and the Duke of Burgundie, the Duke of

and the Duke of Burgundie came riding with Duke Philip Banner  
 bearing golde and graine medles together, powdered with  
 stoles of aures, then Duke Philip saide, ponder of a my  
 Banner. After that King Alexander, right greafe and  
 mightie, that king that may haue such people at his com-  
 mandement; then they sawe where came the Banner of  
 the King of Wales, rather so maister Steuen, and hee  
 bare a shield vert with crowmes of golde and chaplets of sil-  
 uer. And last of all came the rich Banner of King Gmen-  
 dur, wherein was a great flaming Dragon, and then there  
 came so much people that all the earth was couered with  
 them; and there were so many standards and tokens that a  
 man might saie that all the world was coming, then King  
 Alexander and his companie said, where were all these peo-  
 ple found that belongeth to this King, it seemeth hee hath  
 brought all the world with him. The Florence said to King  
 Alexander, Sir me thinketh it were well done that you and  
 your companie did mount on your horses and go and meete  
 my Lord and Father, so he will take it for a great honour  
 and dour. Truly Madame of the King, you haue said like a  
 noble Ladie, and so they did, then mounted the King & all  
 the other Carles, Barons and knights with anie harness,  
 then King Alexander & the Duke of Britaine rode together, &  
 the Archbishop Arthur, and so all the other Lordes, two &  
 two together, and they wer so goodlie to behold that euerie  
 man had meruaile of them, & so they passed by all the com-  
 panies that they came to King Gwendur, who receiued them  
 all right frendlie, & thanked them greastie of the great aide  
 y<sup>e</sup> they had done to Florence his daughter, the King Alexan-  
 der rode on the upper side of King Gwendur, & the Duke of  
 Britaine on the other side, & so they rode forth till they came  
 to the Blannish fozze, & there they alighted, then Florence  
 came to y<sup>e</sup> King her father, & they embraced each other, & the  
 King said, faire daughter, you haue a good Lord that so gen-  
 tie & compaisie hath brought with him out of his Countre,  
 and y<sup>e</sup> he polde sell well bestowed, then King Gwendur  
 took the Duke of Britaine by the hand, & they two went  
 together

together to church, and there was done the service for them:  
peronne and for the other kinges sol solemnly, and ther they  
wer entered with great honoꝝ, and after that Arthur cau-  
sed a faire church to be builded in the same place where as  
the good king of morrow was slain, and there he founded a  
lodge of richanons and sch of them to have thre hundredeth  
maiche of yearely rent, and when all these foze laide obser-  
uance was done the king Emendus cominaunded that al  
his tents and pavilions shoulde be pight up without the ca-  
stell, the which was done incontinent, and their diner was  
puruaied for in the same place, and the king Emendus and  
king Alexander and the duke of Britaine sate them downe  
together at one table, and all other kinges and princes sate  
downe at an other table euery man after his estate and so  
ther they were serued right richly, and florence remained  
still in the castel, and hir backe the archbishop, duke Philip  
and the maister were with hir, and when king Emendus  
had dyned he called to him Arthur and sayd, Arthur, yehaue  
won on these emperours great treasure and riches, when  
foze cause them to be gathered together and depart them a-  
mong your knightes where as it shall please you best, and  
there as ye shal think them wel employed. My Lord sayde  
Arthur with a right good will, and so than Arthur departed  
such riches as was won in the felde, in such wise that euery  
man helpe him selfe well content, and euery man said noble  
knight Arthur God encrease your bountie and honoꝝ and  
God giue you good life, for we haue a rich and a noble Lord  
of you, than florence and the bishop came out of the castel  
to the kinges tent, and as some say king Alexander saw hir  
he rose up on his feete and put of his cap and brought hir to  
hir father, then the king hir father took hir by the hande &  
set hir down by him and said, faire daughter we haue bene  
right sore displeased for the death of your people, thefore it  
is now time that ye reioyce vs as in taking of Arthur to  
your Lord and his hande for we haue accepted thereto, and I  
will that ye shal go to Sabar, and ther ye shal be wedded.  
My Lord florence all shall be at your pleasure, for we haue  
if it

if it please your grace I will first go to the Port Noire, for  
there is the Dutchesse of Britaine, mother to Arthur, and  
all these other Ladies wiues to these noble Lordes that bee  
come with Arthur, & sir I shall bring them into this Coun-  
trie, and doe them such honour as I canne, as I thinke they  
will doe to me if I were in their Countrie. And when the  
king her father heard that he smiled and said, faire daugh-  
ter florence it pleaseth me right well, goe your wayes to  
morrowe, and the king of Miqueny, Duke Philip, and Ar-  
thur shall go with you, and for the loue of them I shal meet  
with you and them at Argence. And when the Ladie Mar-  
geret heard that the king would go to Argence, she sent ha-  
telie sir Emerie to apparell her pallace, to receiue the king  
and his companie right honourably, and gaue licence to her  
hoast to returne home, so they were all that daie in greate  
ioy and sport, and bare great honour to king Emendus, and  
to all his, thus they passed forth this night.

How after the discomfiture of the Emperour and all  
his people, the king gaue licence to all his hoast to  
depart euery man home, and went himselfe to Ar-  
gence, there to make the wedding betweene Arthur  
and Florence, & how that Florence went to the Port  
Noire, to make cheere to the dutches of Britain & to  
the other Ladies, and to bring them to Aegence to  
her father king Emendus. Cap. iio.

**I**n the next morning the king Emendus rose and gaue  
licence to all his hoast to depart, and he put himselfe for-  
wards on his iourney toward Argence, and toke with him  
king Alexander & the duke of Britaine, & al the other earles  
and Barons, and brought them throughtout diuerse of his  
cities and castles, and made them right great chere & feast,  
and also florence rose that same daie betimes, and entered  
into her chariot, & toke with her the Quene of Miquenie,  
and the faire Ladie Margaret, & after her there were other  
thre Charlots full of faire Ladies and Damselfs, and Co-  
urnar

uernar and Sir Beulon were chiefe rulers of her house, holde, and the king of Arques, Duke Philip, Arthur, and the master kept her companie, and so they rode forth together till they came to the Port Poire. When Arthur, Byssebar, and Clemenson, were sent somewhat before to shew the Dutchesse of the comming of the faire Marie Flozence, daughter to the mightie Emendus king of Sopolys, and to make purveyance for her comming, so they rode forth so farre till at the last on a Waterdaie at night they arrived at the Port Poire, then they alighted and mounted up to the pallasce, & then they found the Dutchesse & all the other Ladies in the chappell hearing of even-song, each of them praying for their Lord, for they were in great doubt of them, for they heard no manner of tidings of them. And as soon as the Dutchesse saw Sir Byssebar then her heart came to her. And then Sir Byssebar knelt downe on his knee, but the Dutchesse would not suffer him to kneele no time, but raised him up, and then she demanded what tidings of the duke her husband. When Jehannet stopt forth to heare some tidings of Arthur, then Byssebar said, madame my Lord the duke doth right wel, and he doth salute you by me, he is with my Lord the king Emendus, who doth to him right greete honour, and to all your other Lordes and knightes, and also madame my Lord Arthur your sonne dooth humbly recommend him to you, as he that is the best knight and most honoured of all the world, and to you faire damsell Jehannet, he recommendeth him, and know you for certaine that within these eight daies as he shewed mee, he will put you unto greete honour, therewith Jehannet cast downe her looke to the earth and gave a great sigh. Madame says Byssebar to the Dutchesse, behold, yonder the gentle Flozence, daughter to the noble king Emendus, who is comming hether to you, and byingeth with her the king of Arques her cousin, and special friend to my Lord Arthur your sonne, and also duke Philip of Sabarie, Arthur, Hector, and master Steuen is with her, and all the people are comming to see you, and so bying you to the mightie king Emendus unto

unto the citie of Argence, and there I think shal be the marriage betwene Arthur your sonne and the noble Flozence, a good lord saide the Dutchesse I thanke the with thou hast given me such a childe that doth me so much honour. Sir Byssebar sayde Jehannet is this my Lord Arthurs love that is comming hether. He truly saide love saide Byssebar. Certainly sayde Jehannet I would gladly see him, & shall serve and love him with a good heart, yet notwithstanding I had rather have had Arthur to have bene my lover than him, so they past forth the daye and night, & in the morning there came messengers before that shewed how that Flozence would be there at dinner, than the Dutchesse and all the other countesses, ladies and damosels dyd aray them right freshly, and mounted on their palfrays and rode to encounter Flozence. And at the last Byssebar saide, madame yonder cometh Flozence out of the forrestes side, and at the same time the king of Arques and Arthur had a sight at an Heron with a gersawcon so that all the ladies had sight thereof. And when Flozence knew that it was the Dutchesse that was comming toward him, she descended out of her chariot, and the Dutchesse did alight from her palfray, and embraced each other with great ioye and feast than Flozence sayde, madame ye be right hartely welcome into my country as she that I am most gladdest to see of all women living. And when the Dutchesse saw him she marvelled greatly of his great beautie and toke him by the hand & saide, mine owne deere ladye blessed be the houre that ever ye were borne, for there is not in all the world againe none so gentil & so faire as ye be. Madame saide Flozence ye say as it pleaseth you, but how so ever it be I am and shall be your daughter and faithful lover, for your son Arthur is given me by the king my father, and so with Gods grace he shall be my Lord and lover. And when Jehannet heard that, his heart trembled, how be it when she sawe Flozence come so richly and that she was of so great beautie, she wished in his hart that Flozence had beene foure and twentie yeares elder than she was, for it grieved him right sore even inwardly to the hart

the assurance of her and of Arthur, howbeit, she helpe her selfe content because of the greates honour and profite of Arthur, and therewith she went to Florence and embraced him and said, madame right high honoured Quene, of you will I make mine owne deare loue the flower of all other, the gentle Arthur. And when Florence heard her she demanded of the Dutchesse what she was, and what she meant by her saying, then Florence and the Dutchesse sate downe together, and there the Dutchesse recounted to Florence all the whole matter as it was of Arthurs first wife, and howe that Jehannet was sent for into the Forrest, and how that she had alwaies loued Arthur, and called him euer her Lord and deare loue, and kept her selfe true to him.

How Florence because of the doubt that shee had least that Jehannet should take from her Arthur, she gaue her to Gouvernar, and gaue them the Realme of Mor-mall, & caused them to be assured together the same houre, and also the same time shee caused the Ladie Margaret to be assured to master Steuen. Cap. 1.

**W**hen Florence had well vnderstood the wordes of the Dutchesse concerning Jehannet and Arthur, then in her minde shee doubted least that Jehannet should let the loue betwene her and Arthur, then shee aduised her selfe and provided therfore right sagely, then shee called to her Arthur and the king of Aquenie, Duke Philip, and the master, who sate them downe all together in a companie, and there she desired the Dutchesse to recount before them all the whole matter betwene Arthur and Jehannet. And when the king of Aquenie had heard all the matter, hee had great ioy & smiled thereat right sweetly & said to Jehannet: and God helpe me faire damsell you haue right well deserued that my lady Florence doe to you much honour and good, trulie if shee doe not. I shall provide for you right highlie for the loue of the noble Arthur. Merilie sayde Florence, by the grace of God I shall make her a great Ladie, call to me Gouvernar, and

and incontinent he was brought to hir, then hee kneled downe before hir. When Florence saide to the duches, madame by the faith that ye owe to your lord the duke of Britaine and to your sonne Arthur here being present, and by the saluacion of your soule tel me the trouth whether that your sonne Arthur and his knight Gouvernar be any thing of kinne and lignage together. As helpe mee God madame quod the Dutchesse they are nothing of blood nor kinred, how be it I would also that Gouvernar were my sonne for he were wel woorthy, for he is a right noble knight, and hath serued my sonne Arthur right nobly and truely, wherefore I am sure my sonne Arthur will remember him when that he seeth time.

Well madame sayde Florence wee shall on our parte remember him, and than she saide to Gouvernar, sir I am well and credibly enfourmed that ye haue serued Arthur wel and truely and nourished and kept him by in his youth right wel & nobly, therfore it is reason that now he make you somewhat amends, and to you faire damogrel Jehannet ye haue alwaies wel and faithfully loued Arthur, wherfore ye shall in likewise haue amends made to you, than shee toke Jehannet by the hand & saide to Gouvernar, sir knight here I giue vnto you this fair damosel Jehannet to be your wyfe and spouse for euer, and to you Jehannet I giue Gouvernar to be your lord and hus band, wherefore I will that eche of you do ensure other here before me. Madame quoth Gouvernar I thanke your grace, sith it pleaseth you I am content, how be it madame in no wyse wil I do it without I haue the licence of my lord Arthur. When Arthur saide it pleaseth me right wel for I am content sith it pleaseth my lady Florence, than a chaplaine of the lady Florence did ensure them together, than Florence said to Gouvernar, friend now haue ye a wife without lande, wherefore here in open audience I giue vnto you and to your heires for euer the noble realme of mor-mall, and thereof I make you king & Lord, so that ye holde it of Arthur to whome I will that ye go and doe him homage, than Gouvernar by his feaute to

Am. b. Ar.

Arthur, and Arthur receiued it with his eyes full of water for ioy that he had. And when the Dutchesse saue Gouvernar in that great honour she wept for ioye, then Gouvernar returned to Florence and thanked her right humbly, then the King of France said to Florence, my right dere Ladie and cousin, as God help me you haue done right well and honourably, for you might not better haue employed your Realme of Normall then you haue done, and then he embraced Gouvernar and saide, Gouvernar I promise you that you shall haue faithfull counsaile and helpe of me, and of mine, and in like manner so did all the other Kings promise him, and so then euerie man bare him honour as they should doe to a King.

Now Lordes quoth Florence, yet haue I not done all that I woulde doe, but nowe sith I haue begunne I will make an end, then she called forth the faire Ladie Margaret of Argenton and master Steuen and sayde, you two haue serued me right faithfully and truly, whereof I thank you both, then shee took the Ladie by the hand & said, mine owne gentle Ladie you haue borne mee faith, loue, and honour, and sweete companie, and you haue bene ever right nere of my counsaile, wherefore madame here I giue to you my friende and my Clarke, and gentle knight master Steuen, who hath kept and nourished me since the beginning of my youth, and knowen the secretnesse euer of my heart, and euer he hath borne the key of steadfastnesse, faire ladie I giue him vnto you, hee is sonne to a King and shall be a King if hee liue, as hee that is the most amiable Clarke, sweete, sage, curteous, honourable, and true in all points, and to you master I saie you shall haue my iewel, wherefore loue well this Ladie Margaret I praye you if you will be my friend and louer, and I giue vnto you my friend and louer. Then the master knelt downe and thanked Florence, then the noble marquesse kept forth who was vncle and gouernour of the Ladie Margaret, and thanked Florence with all his heart, then Florence called to her Duke Phillip, and sayde, Friend, I praye you retourne a-

gaine hastellie to the King my Father, and shew him how that I haue disposed the Realme of Normall and the lands of Argenton, and desire him that he will send me his confirmation in that behalfe vnder his great seale.

When Duke Phillip took his leaue & departed, and rode to King Charles and recounted to him all that Florence had communicated him. And when the King heard all that hee was right ioyous for the loue of Arthur, and so was all the Court, so then the King did confirme all Florence desire, and did send vnto her his Letters patents sealed vnder his great Seale, and then Florence was mounted into her chariot, and the Queene of France, and the Dutchesse, and Jehannet with her, and the Countesses rode each by other next to the Chariots. When the Countesse of Flanders sayd to the Countesse of Forreth, this noble Ladie Florence hath done right wisely and nobly to make these marriages. What is true quoth the Lady of Forreth, she hath done it to the intent that Arthur should not resort to Jehannet other wise then reason and honestie woulde. When the Ladie Rossillon sayd, you holwe Florence will suffer their companie in all honour, and right, thus these Ladies rode forth talking till they came to the Port Poire, whereas they were foure daies in great feast and ioye, and there euerie daie Gouvernar talked of his marriage, and passed the time in honour with his Ladie Jehannet, and the master in lyke manner with his Ladie Margaret, & sayd how that it was good to serue such a Lorde and such a Ladie that so highlie rewarded theyr seruantes and friendes, and by that time Duke Phillip was returned from the Kinges Court, and brought with him the Letters Patentes of the Kinges, and there hee deliuered to Gouvernar and to the master the said Letters, then Duke Phillip saide to Florence, madame the King your father desireth you to make as great hast as you can to the Citie of Argence, so that you may be there on monday next coming, for there the King will be ready against your coming, then Florence made her ready, and on the next morning betimes departed, and

and all her noble companie with her, and did so much by her  
iourneyes that at last she was within the sight of the high  
walls and towers of the Citie of Argence, then the King E-  
mendus when he knew of their coming, he caused all his  
Barons to mount on their horses, and the King Alexander  
and the King of Galetoun, and the King of Asmaelite, and  
such knightes of the King of Morvailles as were abiding  
within the Court, till such time as the King had purveyed  
them of a newe thing. And all the people of the Citie of Ar-  
genton went out to meete Florence, Arthur, and the Ladie  
Margaret, and the people of the lande of Morvaille came to  
Gouvernar and receiued him as their chiefe Lord and King,  
and did to him homage, then they desired to see their newe  
Ladie and Queene, who as then was in the Chariot with  
Florence, apparayled in vestures royall, and when Flo-  
rence knew their desire she caused her to be taken out of the  
Chariot, and set on a goodlie palfrey, to the intent that eu-  
erie man might see her, and so then they were glad to see her,  
for she was a right faire and a goodlie Ladie, and so they  
made to her reuerence and honour, as to their Ladie and  
Queene, and the people of the lande of Argenton receiued  
master Steuen for their soueraigne Lord, and speciallie Sir  
Emerie, and in this wise they came to the citie of Argence,  
then there met with them the Archbishopp and all the whole  
Cleargie of the Citie, and euerie man to his power made  
great feast and ioy, then there alighted Florence and all her  
Kings and Queenes, Dukes, and Dutchesse, Carles and  
Countesses, Lordes and Ladies, knightes and Damselles,  
then the noble King Emendus came out of his Pallace,  
and receiued them right honourable euerie person after  
their estate, then there beganne great feast and ioye, and  
so went by to the pallace, and there this noble companie  
were together in great ioy and triumph.

How Arthur wedded the faire Florence, Daughter  
to the mightie king Emendus with great honour  
and

and triumph, and king Gouvernar wedded the faire  
Iehannet, and master Steuen wedded the faire La-  
dy Margaret of Argenton, all in one daie and one  
houre. Chap. 112.



When that Arthur saie so noble a seignioze  
and companie were assembled together, hee  
went to King Emendus and said, Sir and it  
like your grace there is now in this Citie as-  
sembled right high and noble people, for here  
is now sixe Kings, sixe Dukes, a ten Carles,  
beside other Lordes and knightes, wherefore Sir maye it  
please your grace to kepe open Court for a certaine space,  
for I beloue herilie there was neuer sene in one daie  
so many noble men assembled together. As God helpe  
me sonne quoth the King, I am content, and so shall it be,  
therfore make purueyance, for be it as you shal thinke best  
for your honour and mine, and I will that you wedde Flo-  
rence

rence my daughter here in this citie, and Gouernat Jehan-  
net, and the master & the lady Margaret. Sir qd Arthur in  
the name of God al this shalbe done according to your com-  
maundement, Sir king Alexander shal abyde and be lodged  
here with you in the palays, & my lozde and father the duke  
of Britaine and all the other kings and princes shalbe wel  
lodged in the citie in noble & faire houses, and then Arthur  
made the temple to be apparayled for himselfe to be married  
in, and the abbey of Saint Germaine for Gouernat, than  
there were Jodelers, gessers, and minstrels gathered toge-  
ther to a great number, so that they made great mirth and  
ioy in every part of the citie, so that there was neuer seene  
none such before in no place, than Hector caused a fair quin-  
taine to be pight up in the myddest of the citie, and thereat  
ran these younge knightes bryking and sheuering of their  
speares, and some spake of making of a tournay, than was  
the Dolphin mounted cleane armed holding a great and a  
mightie speare in his hand, and the same time the king E-  
mendus, the king Alexander and Florence, the duke of Bri-  
taine and Arthur were loking out at the windowes of the  
palais, and all other kynges and princes were in likewise  
beholding the lusty knightes bryking of speares in every  
fere of the citie against the quintaines that there were  
made & ordeined, and therewith the dolphin ran at the chiefe  
quintaine, and gaue thereon such a stroke that he claued the  
shielde that hanged thereon cleane a sonder, and brake his  
speare all to sheuers, and so passed forth and kept his course  
and he was greatly praised of all the princes and barons,  
ladies and damosels, and they demaunded who it was, and  
it was shewed them how it was one of the freshe Lozdes,  
whereof many of that countrie had great despite, and spake  
thereof in great displeasure, & at last a knight of the coun-  
trie of Bozolois who was called Sir Bertrade of the four  
sayde to his fellowes, Lozdes and felowes. I se well that  
these frenche men that be now here in this countrie be of  
great proude and of fierse countenance, and by the occasion  
of them we are reputed of the lesse valour, for we may here  
well

well how generallie they be praised, therefore shame haue  
they that will suffer it any longer, wherefore let vs take  
a tourney against them, and then we shall know what they  
can doe. In the name of God so let it be saide diuerse other.  
So therewith water was brought into the hall, and the  
tables laide, then to the Court there came kynges, Dukes,  
Charles, Barons and knightes, from all partes, so that  
king Emendus, king Alexander, and the Duke of Britain  
sate together at one table, and all the other kynges sate  
one against another, and euery man after his estate, and  
there they were right richlie serued, and when dinner was  
done and the Tables taken awaie, some went into the  
Chambers and behelde the Ladies daunce, and some went  
and looked out at the faire windowes. And then Sir Ber-  
trade, Sir Angele, another knight, they two went sporting  
together, and spake of the taking of this tourney against  
the French men, and they found Sir Clemenson and Sir  
Berodias leaning in a windowe, and then they demaunded  
of Sir Bertrade whereof he and his fellowe did talke.  
And he aunswered and saide how that it was of the tour-  
ney.

And when Sir Clemenson heard theyr mindes he was  
well of the same accorde, and saide, let vs goe to Duke  
Goubert of Flaunties and knowe of him whether he will  
be of the same minde, so then they went to the Duke.  
And when he sawe them hee smiled and saide: welcome be  
you Sir knightes, what tidinges is there with you. Cle-  
mille Sir quoth Bertrade, wee saie that wee woulde faine  
know what people these French men be with their swords,  
it is saide how that they did beare themselves valiauntlie  
at the Blaunth Towre against the Emperour, howbeit  
we knowe it not, for we were not there present, therefore  
Sir we are in minde to make a tourney against them, and  
we wold know your minde whether you wil be on our side  
or not.

And when the Duke Goubert hearde theyr mindes,  
it pleased him right well, and sayde, let vs goe to king  
Emen-

Emendus and desire graunt of him for this tourney, and so they all went together and entered into the chamber where as King Emendus and King Alexander of Malagore, and all the other Charles of Fraunce were, there was also Hector Duke of Burgundy, and the Dolphin of Viennes, and the Lord Beauclerc, the marshall of Flanders, and the Lord de la Lound. When the Duke Goubert saide to King Emendus, Sir beholde here this Dolphin who trulie is a gentle knight, and verilie he made yesterdaie a faire course at a Quintaine, wherof he was greatlie praised, and not without a good cause, and he hath thereby quickned the hearts of the knightes of this your Countrie, so that they have a great desire to make a turney here in this Citie if it please you to give us leaue, and Sir we would be right glad and ioyous if it would please some of these French Lordes and knightes to come forth and play them with us in this turney, Sir we would take it for greete loue, and praise them thereof right heartlie. Verilie Sir quoth the King of Malagore, we shal not faile them for so little a thing, if it please them let it be done to morrow next. And so be it quoth Sir Bertrade. In the name of God quoth King Emendus, we will that it shal be to morrow, for to morrow we will make the solchmynization of the wedding of Arthur and of my daughter Florence, and of Gouernar and Jehannet, and of the master and the Ladie Margaret, but the fourth daie after I am content that this tourney bee done. Well quoth Goubert, Sir Bertrade, and their companie departed from the king and went downe into the Pallace, and there they wedded to all the other knightes of their Countrie how that they had taken a turney against the French men to be holden the fourth daie after the marriage, and so there were to the number of five thousand that promised to tourney together of one part against the French men, and made theyr banners that they would beare downe to the earth all the French men, and winne all their horses. So this daie there was great feast and ioy throughout all the Pallace till it

and ioy throughout all the palace till it was night, so every man went to their restes till the next morning. The next morning betimes King Emendus and all other kings and noble Lordes were assembled, that the king caused Arthur to be apparailled in vestures royal like a king, he had on a kyrtle of flaming greene like an emerald and a mantel of scarlet furred with ermines, and so he stood before all the kings with a fresh liuely colour, and he was bygging higher by the head than any other, and ther was held before him by three great lordes a rich crowne of golde as proper royal and a naked sword, in signifying that he was the champion of all the realme, and all that appertaineth to the crowne of Scotland; then the duke his father beheld him wel and the water daubt into his eye for ioy that he had to see his sonne in that great honour, then the archbishop was redy in his pontificalibus to doe thobseruance, and so with great noyse of minstrellie Arthur was rotally brought to church, and then Florence was apparailled like a great Queene as she was, crowned with golde, and the queene of Aqueney went on hir one side, and the Queene of Ismaelite on hir other syde somewhat behinde hir, and all other Queenes and countesses and ladies came after hir, and the King Alexander and the King of Aqueney hir cousin led hir to church, and there Arthur maryed hir with great ioy, and ther was so great feast, ioye and bzuite made, that none could scant here other bicause of the noyse of the instruments. Also Gouernar was in the abbay of S. Germaines apparailled like a king, and with him was duke Philip, the dolphin & Hector, and all the barons of Normall, and there he wedded Jehannet with much great ioye & pleasure. And also the gentil maister was freshly apparailled like the sonne of a king, he was alwayes free and swete of heart, with a smiling countenaunce and a gracions clerke about al other, and also right good and a valiant hardy knight, and with him ther was the king of Walesound his father who had right great ioye when he sawe his sonne gentil and so gracions, there was also with him Sir Penelon, Sir Byssebar, Sir Dozant, &

Sir Rowland of Blois, then the master wedded the faire la-  
 die Margaret with great ioye and triumph, and when his  
 wedding was done he mounted on a great courser, & a man-  
 tel of greene about him, and the thing his father by him, and  
 other knights to the number of five hundred, and such noise  
 of minstrels before him, as though all the world should haue  
 rent a sunder, and in that wise he came to the Court of king  
 Emendus, and also ther came King Gouvernar to the court  
 after that he was wedded with greete ioye and mirth, then  
 there was made the greatest ioy and feast that could be de-  
 uised, and the master kept his feast at sir Emeries, and Go-  
 uernar at the Abbey of Saint Germaines, and Arthur kept  
 the Court in the Wallace, & this feast endured a whole mo-  
 neth, thus Arthur laie that night with the gentle Flozence,  
 and the same night begat on her a faire sonne, to whom the  
 King Alexander did holde ouer the font, and was named  
 Alexander after his name, the which child was after wards  
 Emperour of Inde the moze, and of Constantinople, as you  
 shall heare moze plainlie hereafter.

How the French Knightes, and those of Sorolois, of Ar-  
 gence, of Orquenie, of Mormall, of Ismaelite, of



Valefound, and of Sabarie, did tourney together,  
 whereof Arthur and Gouvernar had the honour,  
 Chapter. 13.

The fourth daye after the mariage during the feast, duke  
 Coubert, sir Bertande, sir Clemenson, and sir Verdicas  
 went to Kinge Alexander and desired him to remembre the  
 tournay that they had enterprised, and with those weydes  
 Arthur came to them, then King Alexander answered and  
 saide. Faire Lordes in Gods name let it be done to morow,  
 then he dyd sende for all the Erles, Barons and knightes of  
 Fraunce and shewed them of the tournay to be holden the  
 next day whereof they had great ioye, and euery man com-  
 manded that their harnesse should be made redy againste  
 the next morning, and then the tidinges spread ouer all the  
 ritie how that the french men should tourney againste the  
 knightes of that countrie who were in number x. againste  
 one french man. And when Arthur vnderstode that he sent  
 for Gouvernar, and when he was come to him he dyd w him  
 apart and said, friend to morow shal be the tourney against  
 our men, wherefore we ought to keepe and defende them,  
 wherfore we must aduise vs how we shall doe, for I see the  
 knightes of this countrie haue great enuie at these frenche  
 knightes, and they are ten times as many as our people be,  
 wherfore I doubt me that our knightes should haue some  
 vilany, and I hadde rather dye then suffre that, therefore I  
 shal shew you what we shall doe, when the tournay shal be  
 to morow begon, I shal come to your lodging as princely as  
 I can, and ther ye shal abide me, and then we wil arme vs  
 both in strange harnesse, to the entent that we should not be  
 knowen, and then we will goe to the turney and help our  
 knightes, for I thinke they shal haue great nede of vs, and  
 Hector and the dolphin shal be in the first front, and if I can  
 duke philip, the master & Wisebar shal not turney against  
 our knightes, because they haue bene in fraunce, & haue had  
 ther right good there, & as for al remnant I care not for, as  
 for the they be our friends & loth I wer to displese the

secret this matter that no man knowe thereof, for I will that you doe this as couerlie, as you can. In the name of God so be it quoth Gouvernar, and so every man drey to his rest for that daie, and the next morning betimes every man rose and so went and heard Service, and after toke a sop in Wine. Then the knightes ran to their harnois on every side, then hornes and Trumpets began to sound in que-rie streete of the Citie, and then Duke Goubert and all his companie were readie apparayled, and so issued into the field. When King Alexander did arme him and all his companie. When Arthur came to king Emendus, and with him was the king of Aquenie, then Arthur said, Sir the knightes of this your countrie are ten times as many as the French knightes are, and sir they are of such conditions that they will never recule back though they die therfore, sir I know not the mindes of these your knightes, for if they thinke to overcome them and sake therfore it cannot be other wise, but that many will die in the quarrel, sir me thinketh therfore that it were well done that I should cause to be armed five hundred knightes; and take them with mee to keepe that none ill should be done. In the name of God quoth King Emendus so be it, then departed Arthur for he had that he desired, then he toke with him sir Brisebar and sir Percelin his nephew, and did shut the chamber doore after them, then he sayd to sir Brisebar, sir I love you and take you of my priuy counsaile, it is so, there be many knightes against our Frenchmen, for I see wel they are overmatched, wherfore I will goe aide them, and I will have sir Percelin armed in my harnois, for he is nigh of the same bignesse that I am of, and he shall take with him five hundred knightes well armed, and goe to the turney to keepe the field, that no hurt shall be done, and no man shall know but what we were I, and you sir Brisebar, and I will goe to Gouvernars lodging as privilie as I can, and there he and I will arme us in some strange harnois, to the intent that no man shall know us, wherfore I praye you discover me not; so then sir Percelin was armed in Arthurs armour, and toke with him five hundred

hundred, and issued out of the Citie with great noise of trumpets and Labours, then Duke Goubert sayd, yonder cometh Arthur to keepe the field to the intent that we should doe no outrage to these French men. So then in the first front was Duke Hector, the Dolphin, and the Lorde de la Lound, and all the other kinges and the Duke of Britaine mounted on their horses to behold the tourney, and also ther came the king of Walesound, and master Steuen his sonne with him, and five hundred knightes in his companie,

And when the French men were entred into the field, they were not the tenth parte so many as the other were. And when master Steuen sawe that he said to his father, Sir beholde yonder the knightes of great hardinesse, seeing their countenances, for they be nothing abashed for all that they be so farre overmatched, then Arthur went privilie to the Abbey of Saint Germaines to Gouvernar, and ther they armed them in strange harnois, and mounted on two great courses. And when the French men wer ranged, then Hector advised well sir Rowland of Wygo, who was coming toward him, then Hector rusht to his horse and encountered sir Rowland so rudelie that hee tumbled over his horse taile, then king Emendus saide to the Duke of Britaine, sir this beginning is on your parte, then the dolphin encountred at one time sir de la Lound and sir Rozand, and overthrew them both to the earth, then the tourney began to be meruailous fierce, but the French knightes were sore overmatched, wherfore they endured much paine, and at last Arthur and Gouvernar came towards the pzease all disguised, then Arthur said to Gouvernar, sir when you see Hector bid him keepe us two companie, but be well ware that hee know you not; with a good will quoth Gouvernar, and so they rode sooth faire and softlie, and when duke Philippe sawe them comming he sayde to the king, Sir beholde yonder cometh two strange knightes, it seemeth by their comming that they are afraid of the first strokes, therewith they approached to the turney, then Gouvernar shewed

to Arthur sir Bertrand by whome the turnay was first begun, & also the duke Goubert to be gane many great strokes with his sword, and therewith Arthur and Gouvernar rode til and beheld them, than king Emenous said, I thinke you ber two knights doubt greatly these strokes. Per sye they do wisely so duke Philip there with Gouvernar ran at sir Bertrand and bare him cleane out of his saddle. Mary saide the king I wene we have moched ponde knights wrongfully, we shall see some what eche other knight can doe, there with Arthur ran at duke Goubert & encountred him so rudely that he sent both horse and knight all to the earth in a hepe, then he toke his sword and layd on round about him so that he confounded all that euer he attained unto, and Gouvernar was not behinde for his part. Merely saide the king who knoweth ponde knights, they seme to be the best knights of all the world. Sir sayde the king of Diqueney but that I see Arthur ponde without the field I would say els plainly that it were he, by that time Arthur had bidden that great preste, then he espied where the Dolphin and Hector and the Erle of mountbelial and xij. of their compaignie were soze overladen, for there were many on them, & by that time the duke Gouberte was hoised new againe, than Arthur ranne at him and strake him so rudely on the helme so that he was therby in a trance, and his horse bare him all about the felde, til at the last he came befoze king Emenous where as he was, and then he came to him selfe againe and said, all the diuels of hell take such a carpenter, & he that first brought him into this countrey, then Arthur was soze handled in the pzease, but then he rushed forth and charged so his sword on these knights in such wise that he and Gouvernar beat downe all that euer was befoze them. And when that the french knights saw that these ii. knights did help and aide them so nobly, then they toke on them so great hardinesse that they confounded all that were befoze them, than knights of the other part saide let vs stie away for our liues, death will follow thereby, and so then they fled away on ebery side from him, then the king and

such as were in his compaignie, and all other that did behold the tourney hadde greates miruaille of the deedes of the two knights, and master Steuen perceiued well the playe of Arthur, then he knew well that it was he, and said softly to himselfe, ah gentle knight thou wilt not faile thy friends, I cannot suffer anie longer that you shoulde endure moze trauaile, then the master blew such a blast that there arose sodainlie in the tourney such a mist that one coulde scarce see another, then Arthur and Gouvernar departed as priuely as they could and went to the Abbey of Saint Germaines, and so then euerie man went to their owne lodgings, and as soone as they were barmied, all the French men went to king Alexanders lodging, and they went all together to the kings Court, and the king Emenous did welcome them and made to them right great feast and ioy, and was right glad of the great prowesse that he had sene in them that daie, then the king toke king Alexander by the hande and demaunded of him what two knights they were that so noblie did tourney on their part that daie, and where they were. And he answered and said, Sir I cannot tell you what they be, nor where they are become. When the king enquired of all the other if they coulde tell anie tidings of them, and when the king sawe that hee coulde haue no knowledge of them, he fell sodainlie in a greates studie, and as he stood so musing, Arthur and Gouvernar came to the Court, then the king embraced them and demaunded if they knew any thing of those two knights that had done so great prowesse: and they answered that they knew nothing of them. So then they washed and went to dinner, & after dinner they sported them euerie man as he lyked best, and as king Emenous sawe these knights sporting of them in the pallace, he remembred the two knights, and againe demaunded if anie bodie knew them: and when the master sawe the king in that case, he came to him and sayde saye and softlye, Sir, beleue mee certainelie that these two knights that you desire so soze to knowe, were Arthur and Gouvernar.

Then the King had right great ioye, and so went to them and embraced them with weeping eyes for ioye, and sayd in open audience, Altho I haue given my daughter to Artbur I repent me not, for I could not haue bestowed her more nobly then on him, for I could not haue believed to haue seene so much noblenes in one knight as I haue seene in him this daie, then the King made so great feast and ioy that it was meruailous to behold, thus endured the feast fiftene daies. Then all the Ladies would returne into Fraunce, where of Florence was right sorrowfull, howbeit she did so much that they all abode other fiftene daies, and so they departed. Then King Emendus and Florence and all the other Lordes and Ladies brought Gouvernar and Jehannet into their Realme of Powmalk, & there they were receiued with great ioy and honour, and tarried there eight daies.

How after the marriage of Artbur the Barons and Ladies of Fraunce returned into their owne coun-



tries, except King Alexander whom King Emendus kept still and made vnto him great cheere, and he tarried there so long till that Florence was deliuered of a faire sonne whom king Alexander held on the Font. Chap. 114.

**A**fter that these seauen daies were finished that the French Lordes, Ladies, and Knightes took their leaue of king Emendus, who conuatted them two daies iourney, then King Emendus and Florence took their leaue of the Duke of Britaine, and of all the other Lordes and Knightes, Ladies and damells, and Florence required them to returne into the Countrie againe as shortly as they might, for she said she would gladly haue gone with them saving for keeping of companie with the King her Father, so each of them kissed other and so departed, and Arthur and Gouvernar did conuey them a little wale, then the Duke of Britaine sayd to Arthur his sonne, god sonne thinke alway to please wel the noble King Emendus, and Arthur promised him so to doe, and then he took his leaue of the Dutchesse his mother and kissed each other with weeping eyes, so then the Dutchesse took theyr wale homewards, and Arthur and Gouvernar returned to the King and found him and King Alexander together, for king Emendus had so intreated King Alexander, that he promised him to abide in his companie for a certaine space, and so he abode there so long in great mirth and pleasure til at last the noble Queene Florence was brought to bed and had a faire sonne. And on a faire daie as king Alexander, Arthur, and Gouvernar, were sporting them by a riuer side, there came a messenger riding to them a greates pace and sayd to Arthur, Sir I haue brought you good tidinges, Sir, King Emendus hath send you worde how that your noble Queene Florence is brought to bed of a faire sonne, wherefore he desireth you to come as fast as you can, for the king will desire king Alexander and King Gouvernar to hold him on the font, and when Arthur heard that he was right ioy-

full,

full,

fall, and said to the messenger, I give thee for thy doings an hundred pound land whersoever thou shalt best to have it, then the Squire thanked him right humbly, so then they rode forth, and at last came to King Emendus, who made right great joy of them, & with great solemnitie the childe was then brought to Church and christened, and had to his Godfathers King Emendus, King Alexander, and King Gouernar, and was called Alexander, and at their coming from the Church there was made such feast and chere and reuel, that it was wonderfull to behold, for there was nothing that could have made King Emendus more ioyfull then he was, for he had then all his request of God, for his prayer was ever that Florence might have an heire male of her bodie bozne to succede in his Realme, and this childe was the most fairest childe toward of the worlde, and well formed, big and mightie, and he had on his shoulder a fayre crosse as ruddy as a fresh rose, wherof King Emendus said that it was a signe that he should attaine to much honour, for so he did after wards, for he was ere he died Emperour of Inde the more, and of Constantinople, and conquered by his prowesse diverse other Realmes.

How king Alexander returned into his Countie, & lead with him Arthur, Gouernar, Hector, and master Steven, and tarried in Britaine so long till Florence sent for Arthur, because that her father king Emendus was departed his life, wherefore shee made great lamentation. Chap. 15.

**W**hen that King Alexander had bene a long season with King Emendus, he took leave of him and returned into France, & there went with him Arthur, Gouernar, Hector, & master Steven, and within a while after that they were departed, King Emendus what for the great love that hee had of his sonne, and for such labour as he took before, hee felt sicke and lay in his bed, and as the proverbe saith hee laid but seven waiks but he died, and King Alexander and such other as went with him rode so long on their journey, till at last they

they arrived in the land of Britaine, then a messenger went before to the duke, and shewed him how that they would be with him on the monday next coming. And when the Duke heard that, hee was never so ioyfull before. then the Duke sent for all his Lords and Ladies of his Countie, that they should be with him at the receiving of his sonne Arthur, and of such other as came with him, and so they did, and the same daie Arthur arrived there & was received with great feast and joy, the which feast endured eight daies, then all they commended King Alexander into his owne Realme. It needeth not to be demanded whether Arthur and his company had there good chere or nat.

How Arthur was sent for because of the death of king Emendus, and how he was crowned king of Sorolais. Chap. 16.



Arthur and his company were a greates season with King Alexander, and had right good chere, and on a day as he sate at the table ther came in a messenger from his Lady Florence, & he kneeled down, & Arthur did arise and went to him and received of him a letter sent to him from Florence, the which Arthur incontinentlie opened, and therein he found howe that the mightie king Emendus was dead, whereof he and all that company made right great sorow, then Arthur desired king Alexander that he would go with him againe into the realme of Sorolais, and he willingly graunted him so to do, so then incontinentlie they prepared for their departing, & mounted on their horses, and did so much by their journeyes that they arrived in the realme of Sorolais, & ther they found Florence making great sorow for the death of the king her father, but as soone as she saw her Lord Arthur, her hart revived in such wise, & shee forgot in a manner halfe her sorow, then the next daie the corps was bozne to the Church with great solemnitie, & buried as appertained to such a prince, then within a while after King Alexander said that it was time

time to make puruevance for Arthur's coronation, then there was sent for all the kinges, dukes, Earles, Barons, knightes and squyers, and all their kinne and friends, and there came thither people without number, then Arthur was there with great triumph crowned with golde, and tooke homage of everie man, and after his coronation the feast endured eight daies, everie man making great joy, saving Flozence, who was still in greatesorrowe for the death of her father, & after this great feast and joy they had made homage to Arthur for their kingdomes, dukedomes, and Baronies, and for all theyr lordes, then everie man departed into their owne Countries, and ever after Arthur, Gouvernar, Vedo, and the master loved each other, and held so fast together that none of their enemies durst ever approach on anye of them, and so they led their lives in great honour and love, and peace and union was ever betweene them, and their subjects for as long as they lived there was never anye of them that ever mooved anye warre against them, thus Arthur and Flozence reigned in great prosperitie, greatly feared and doubted of all the world, and did many sore conquestes, for he conquered ere he died eight Realmes and diverse Countries and rich legnities, but he lived not long after.

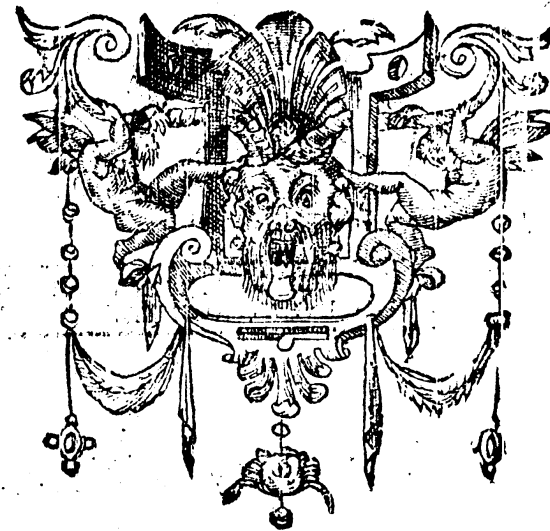
Heere is devised how long Arthur lived, and how that he was buried,

Chap. 17.

The historie recounteth that the noble Arthur lived but two and thirte yeres and then he dyed, and the queene Flozence, whom hee loved so well, died for sorrowe, and so they were both buried with greatesolemnitie, and laid both in the Tombe with king Emendus, on the which Tombe there was written this Epitaph: Heere lieth the mightie king Emendus, Arthur, and Flozence his wife, who leapt so good a life together, that they were never displeased either with other: and Gouvernar, Vedo, and the master,

Her, made greatesorrowe for the death of Arthur, and the young Alexander sonne to Arthur and to Flozence, was in the guiding of king Gouvernar, of Vedo, and of the gentle master Steuen, who afterwarde was Emperour of Inde and of Constantinople. And thus endeth the historie of the valiaunt knight Arthur, sonne to the Duke of Britaine, and of the noble Ladie Flozence, daughter to the mightie king Emendus king of Sodoros: and all those that readeth or heareth this historie shall praise God send them blisse perdurable.

Heere endeth the Historie of Arthur of little Britaine.





MIEUX VAILT. MOVRIR. EN. VERT V.  
QUE. VIVRE. EN. HONCTE.

Imprinted at London by Thomas East.

